CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

(Bust in the Museum of the Louvre.)
CAESAR'S GALIC WAR

(ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S EDITION)

EDITED BY

JAMES B. GREENOUGH

BENJAMIN L. D'OOGGE AND M. GRANT DANIELL

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON

ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO
PREFACE.

The editors have undertaken the task of reediting entirely the well-known Allen & Greenough's *Caesar*, to satisfy the ever-increasing demands of modern secondary education. In view of the improvements lately made in the text of *Caesar* by Meusel and others, they have changed the readings in many places, following chiefly Meusel’s as almost a new *textus receptus*. Most of the changes will at once commend themselves. The editors have in general been conservative in regard to spelling, especially the new spelling of old Gallic names, feeling that much that is proposed of that kind as yet lacks certainty. But they have adopted the spelling *-is* for the accusative plural of i-stems in accordance with the prevailing usage. They have allowed themselves full liberty in enriching the notes as to grammar, exegesis, and subject-matter. They have added very full suggestions for parallel reading, and have spared no pains to enrich the study of this famous piece of literature. The treatises on military affairs and other introductory matters have been rewritten and brought out of the notes under one head, so that a pupil may have a chance to gain some general information before he begins to read. Special attention has been given to indirect discourse, the bugbear of Latin education, and throughout the earlier books the direct form has been printed in full in the notes, that any teacher who desires may
begin either the first or second book and avoid at the start the enormous difficulties of the indirect form. They have endeavored to put in every kind of illustration that might tend to make the story more real to the pupil's imagination.

In order to encourage pupils to associate words together for acquiring a vocabulary they have made a large number of groups of words containing the same elements without introducing the vague notion of roots. It is hoped that these may be found convenient to learn by heart, at least in some measure. Attention is also called to the foot-notes which have been added to the text. In the first four books these refer backward to some previous use of the same word. In the last three books reference is made to words of similar or opposite meaning, whereby it is thought that sight-reading may be facilitated. The editors have not thought it desirable to give any pronouncing vocabulary of proper names, as generally these may be pronounced in the Latin manner, except those few that are familiar enough to have become English words, like Caesar and Cicero, which of course must be pronounced like English. The vocabulary has been enriched by a fuller insertion of idioms, and the etymological matter has been made clearer without sacrificing its peculiar character.

April, 1898.

J. B. G.
B. L. D.
M. G. D.
Note. The numbers on the map give the years of the respective battles and campaigns.
CONTENTS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>List of Maps and Illustrations</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Introduction.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>xiii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>xxix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>xlv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>llii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>liii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI.</td>
<td>liv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII.</td>
<td>lv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII.</td>
<td>lvii</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Groups of Related Words**  443

**Vocabulary.**
LIST OF MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS.

ABBREVIATIONS.

Babelon.—Description historique et chronologique des Monnaies de la République romaine. 1885.

Baumeister.—Denkmäler des klassischen Altertums. 1885-88.

Bertrand and Perrot.—Revue archéologique, 3e Série, Tome X.

Cohen.—Description générale des Monnaies de la République romaine, etc. 1857.

Fleury.—Antiquités et Monuments du département de l'Aisne, etc. 1877-78.

Froehner.—La Colonne trajane d'après le surmoulage exécuté à Rome en 1861-62, reproduite en phototypographie par Gustave Arosa. 1872.

von Göber.—Caesar’s Gallischer Krieg, etc. 1880.

Grasset.—Costumes de Guerre de l’age du bronze et de l’ère gauloise. 1886.

Guhl and Kohner.—The Life of the Greeks and Romans, described from Antique Monuments. 1875.

Head.—A Guide to the Principal Gold and Silver Coins of the Ancients. (Br. Mus.) 1881.

Jeuffrain.—Essai d’Interprétation de Types de quelques Médailles muettes, émises par les Celtes-Gaulois. 1846.

von Kampen.—XV ad Caesaris de Bell. Gall. Commentarios Tabulae. 1879.

Lindenschmidt.—Tracht und Bewaffnung des Römischen Heeres während der Kaiserzeit, etc. 1882.

Oehler.—Bilder-Atlas zu Caesars Büchern de Bell. Gall. 1890.

Rheinhard.—C. Iulii Caesaris Commentarii de Bell. Gall. 1896.

Schreiber.—Atlas of Classical Antiquities.

Stoffel.—Guere de César et d’Arioviste. 1890.

Visconti.—Iconographie romaine. 1817-24.

Fig. 1. Cæsar. Bust in the Museum of the Louvre . . . Frontispiece.


3. Campaign map of B.C. 58 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1

4. Two coins of Cæsar. (1) Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: Æneas with Anchises and the palladium. CAE-SAR. (2) Obverse: head of Venus. Reverse: trophy and captives. CAESAR. Head . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1

5. Pas de l’Ecluse (looking down stream). Photograph . . . 5

6. Map of Helvetia. Oehler . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 5
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Junction of the Rhône and Saône (looking south). <em>Photograph</em>.</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Coin of Piso. Obverse: head of a youth with winged diadem; behind, a star and crown; before, a <em>simpulum</em>. Reverse: M. PISO. M[arci] F[ilius] FRUGI; a <em>patera</em> and a <em>secespita</em>, inclosed within a laurel wreath. <em>Cohen</em>.</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Coin of Cassius. Obverse: head of Apollo with sceptre behind. Reverse: Q. CASSIUS. Eagle resting on a thunderbolt, between a <em>litus</em> and a <em>praefeniculum</em>. <em>Cohen</em>.</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Loading boats with supplies. <em>Froehner</em>.</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Gallic remains. <em>Grasset</em>.</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Cavalryman charging. Gravestone in Mainz. <em>Oehler</em>.</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Cavalryman with <em>vexillum</em>. Col. of M. Aurelius. <em>Oehler</em>.</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Soldiers marching with packs (<em>sarcinae</em>). <em>Froehner</em>.</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Roman javelins (<em>pila</em>). <em>Oehler</em>.</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Plan of battle with the Helvetii. <em>von Kampen</em>.</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Roman swords. <em>Oehler</em>.</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>View of Besançon (Vesontio). From a drawing.</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>View of the fortress of Belfort. <em>Photograph</em>.</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Coin of the Fabian family. Obverse: ROMA Q. MAX. Laurelled head of Apollo, lyre in front. Reverse: horn of plenty filled with fruits; thunderbolts; the whole in a wreath of grain ears and poppy. <em>Cohen</em>.</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Map of the campaign with Ariovistus. <em>Stoffel</em>.</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Soldiers attacked while encamping. <em>Froehner</em>.</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Ostheim, looking towards Zellenberg. <em>Photograph</em>.</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Plan of battle with Ariovistus. <em>Stoffel</em>.</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Campaign map of B.C. 57</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Writing materials: <em>atramentarum</em> (for black and red ink); papyrus letter sealed and addressed (M LVCRETIO FLAM[ini] MARTIS DECVRIONI POMPEI[s]); <em>dip-tycha</em> (folding tablet), stilus, and erasing knife. Wall painting. <em>Overbeck's Pompeii</em>.</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Gaul with trumpet. Restoration from carvings on the <em>Arc de Triomphe</em> at Orange. <em>Grasset</em>.</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Coin of Diviciacus, king of the Suessiones. <em>Fleury</em>.</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Slinger (<em>funditor</em>). <em>Dict. des Antiquités</em>.</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Berry au Bac. <em>Photograph</em>.</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Battle on the Aisne. <em>Oehler</em>.</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**List of Maps and Illustrations.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIG.</th>
<th>Fig.</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>Vinea or Testudo.</td>
<td>Oehler</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td>Hautmont.</td>
<td>Photograph</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35.</td>
<td>Defeat of the Nervii.</td>
<td>Oehler</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>Lituus</td>
<td></td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37.</td>
<td>Tuba</td>
<td></td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38.</td>
<td>Cornu</td>
<td></td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39.</td>
<td>Aquilifer.</td>
<td>Lindenschmidt</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>Centurio.</td>
<td>Lindenschmidt</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41.</td>
<td>Citadel of Namur.</td>
<td>Photograph</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42.</td>
<td>Siege of the stronghold of the Aduatuci. From first ed.</td>
<td></td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>Siege works.</td>
<td>von Göler</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44.</td>
<td>Gallic coins. (1) Obverse: a Gaul running, with torch in one hand and torque (?) in the other. Reverse: bear (?). (2) Obverse: ox-head. Reverse: bear of the Helvetii. Fleury</td>
<td></td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>Shipbuilder. Grave relief (Ravenna).</td>
<td>Schreiber</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46.</td>
<td>Map of Octodurus.</td>
<td>von Kampen</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47.</td>
<td>Cæsar. Bust in the British Museum</td>
<td></td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48.</td>
<td>Galley. From the Præneste relief.</td>
<td>Baumeister</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
<td>Map of the Veneti neighborhood. Altered from modern map</td>
<td></td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50.</td>
<td>View at mouth of the Loire.</td>
<td>Photograph</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51.</td>
<td>Roman battle ship. Wall painting at Pompeii.</td>
<td>Oehler</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52.</td>
<td>Trading vessel. Ancient relief.</td>
<td>Baumeister</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53.</td>
<td>Gallic sword-blade. Museum at Namur.</td>
<td>Photograph</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54.</td>
<td>Soldiers making camp.</td>
<td>Froehner</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56.</td>
<td>Campaign map of B.C. 55-53</td>
<td></td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58.</td>
<td>Scenery on the Meuse.</td>
<td>Photograph</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59.</td>
<td>Bridge. From first ed.</td>
<td></td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60.</td>
<td>Cliffs of Dover. &quot;Shakespeare’s Cliff.&quot;</td>
<td>Photograph</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61.</td>
<td>Catapulta. Modern restoration</td>
<td></td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fig.</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62.</td>
<td>Anchor and tackle. <em>Arc de Triomphe</em> at Orange. <em>Schreiber</em></td>
<td>111</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63.</td>
<td>Soldiers foraging. <em>Froehner</em></td>
<td>113</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64.</td>
<td>Gallic coin. <em>Jeuffrain</em></td>
<td>116</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65.</td>
<td>Map of campaigns in Britain</td>
<td>116</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67.</td>
<td>Boulogne. <em>Photograph</em></td>
<td>118</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68.</td>
<td>Testudo. <em>Froehner</em></td>
<td>123</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69.</td>
<td>Soldiers building camp, with guards. <em>Froehner</em></td>
<td>125</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70.</td>
<td>Signa Militia. <em>Guhl and Koner</em></td>
<td>129</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71.</td>
<td>Roman Transports. <em>Froehner</em></td>
<td>132</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73.</td>
<td>Hollow square. Col. of M. Aurelius. <em>Oehler</em></td>
<td>139</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74.</td>
<td>Roman camp assaulted. <em>Froehner</em></td>
<td>143</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75.</td>
<td>Ballista. Modern restoration</td>
<td>146</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77.</td>
<td>Gallic <em>torques</em>. Museum at Namur. <em>Photograph</em></td>
<td>156</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78.</td>
<td>Cæsar. Bust in the Naples Museum</td>
<td>157</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81.</td>
<td>Gallic coin. <em>Jeuffrain</em></td>
<td>166</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82.</td>
<td>Gallic coins. LVCOTI (Paris ?); human eye in profile, supposed to symbolize the sun. <em>Fleury</em></td>
<td>168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83.</td>
<td>Statue of Ambiorix at Tongres. <em>Photograph</em></td>
<td>174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84.</td>
<td>Sacrifice in camp. Military band (<em>Cornicines</em>). <em>Froehner</em></td>
<td>178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85.</td>
<td>Soldiers marching in presence of the Imperator. <em>Froehner</em></td>
<td>182</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86.</td>
<td>Chain mail. Fragment found at Mainz. <em>Oehler</em></td>
<td>185</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87.</td>
<td>Helmets. <em>Schreiber</em></td>
<td>186</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88.</td>
<td>Campaign map of B.C. 52</td>
<td>186</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90.</td>
<td>Siege of Avaricum. <em>von Kampen</em></td>
<td>194</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91.</td>
<td>Bourges. <em>Photograph</em></td>
<td>196</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92.</td>
<td>View of siege works. <em>von Kampen</em></td>
<td>198</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FIG.</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93.</td>
<td>Plan of siege works. <em>von Kampen</em></td>
<td>199</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95.</td>
<td>Scorpio. Modern restoration</td>
<td>204</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97.</td>
<td>Siege of Gergovia. <em>Oehler</em></td>
<td>209</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98.</td>
<td>Care of the wounded. <em>Froehner</em></td>
<td>216</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99.</td>
<td>Expeditio Labieni. <em>von Kampen</em></td>
<td>225</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100.</td>
<td>Defeat of Veringetorix at the Vingeanne. <em>von Kampen</em></td>
<td>231</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102.</td>
<td>Siege of Alesia. <em>Oehler</em></td>
<td>234</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104.</td>
<td>Light-armed soldier. <em>Lindenschmidt</em></td>
<td>241</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105.</td>
<td>Archer. <em>Lindenschmidt</em></td>
<td>241</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106.</td>
<td>Statue of Veringetorix. Erected at Alesia by order of Napoleon III. Designed by Bartholdi. <em>Photograph</em></td>
<td>244</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>107.</td>
<td>The legionary. Slightly altered from Bartholdi's Model in the Museum of St. Germain.</td>
<td>248</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>109.</td>
<td>Gallic coin. <em>Fleury</em></td>
<td>252</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110.</td>
<td>Gallic coin. Obverse: horse. VIRO (perhaps name of a chief), or VIRO[mandui]. Reverse: various devices. <em>Fleury</em></td>
<td>255</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111.</td>
<td>Gallic coin. Rude representation of a human head. <em>Fleury</em></td>
<td>258</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112.</td>
<td>Gallic coin. Horse, stars, circles. <em>Fleury</em></td>
<td>261</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114.</td>
<td>Signifer. <em>Lindenschmidt</em></td>
<td>267</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>115.</td>
<td>Soldiers. From first ed.</td>
<td>273</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>116.</td>
<td>Scutum. <em>Rheinhard</em></td>
<td>283</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>117.</td>
<td>Scutum. <em>Rheinhard</em></td>
<td>283</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>118.</td>
<td>Wall and ditch. <em>Oehler</em></td>
<td>307</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120.</td>
<td>General view of siege operations. <em>Rheinhard</em></td>
<td>332</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fig.</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Page</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121.</td>
<td>Vexillum</td>
<td>335</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122.</td>
<td>Aquila</td>
<td>374</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123.</td>
<td>Gallic coin. Reverse: L. Hostilius Sasern[a]. Warrior fighting, armed with spear and shield, in a Gallic chariot (essedum) driven by a charioteer holding a whip. Babeion</td>
<td>376</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125.</td>
<td>Caliga. Oehler</td>
<td>379</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>126.</td>
<td>Oppugnatio. From first ed.</td>
<td>390</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>127.</td>
<td>Signum</td>
<td>393</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128.</td>
<td>Tabernaculum. Rheinhard</td>
<td>415</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129.</td>
<td>Pluteus. Modern restoration</td>
<td>427</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130.</td>
<td>Pluteus. Modern restoration</td>
<td>427</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131.</td>
<td>Lilium. Oehler</td>
<td>442</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>132.</td>
<td>Stimulus. Oehler</td>
<td>442</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION.

I.

THE LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

"Julius Cæsar, whose remembrance yet
Lives in men's eyes, and will to ears and tongues
Be theme and hearing ever." — Shakespeare.

"The greatest name in history." — Merivale.

I. THE POLITICAL CONDITION OF ITALY IN THE FIRST CENTURY B.C.

The Roman state was in form and name a commonwealth or republic. While Rome was a small agricultural community and her citizens a body of patriotic, sturdy, and independent freeholders, the task of government was easy and the constitution well adapted to its purpose. The wars that followed for the establishment and extension of her power at first fostered unity and soundness of national life. But in course of time Rome became an imperial state and took upon herself the guardianship of every country in the world. Wealth flowed into her coffers from every quarter of the earth, her citizens became corrupt, and the rule of the people became the rule of a rich landed aristocracy, whose principal ambition was to perpetuate its mischievous power. The organ of this aristocracy was the senate, a body of six or seven hundred men, who became members of it nominally by virtue of holding certain high offices, and who remained senators for life. In theory, therefore, the senate was elective, and rested on the popular will; but the members really became such on account of noble blood, wealth, or political, social, or other influence. Moreover, the great offices of the state came to be bought and sold openly and without shame, and opposing factions contended not with ballots alone, but with iron and
steel, so that the election place was frequently stained with the blood of the slain. It became increasingly difficult for one not possessing and willing to use such means to be elected to any office.

Opposed to the landed aristocracy was a class of wealthy capitalists known as *equites*, the "Equestrian Order." Many of these were as rich as the senators, but their wealth — most of it gained by usury, state contracts, slave-dealing, and tax-gathering — consisted of money instead of land. They took no active interest in politics excepting so far as they could influence legislation to their advantage by lobbying and bribing.

There was no industrious middle class among the free citizens of Rome. Manufacture on a large scale, as a means of wealth, was absolutely unknown; while all mechanical industries were carried on by slaves. The poorer class of citizens, the *plebs*, were wholly influenced in their votes by their wealthy patrons or by scheming demagogues. The freedmen were the only class who could become rich by industry.

The rural portions of Italy were for the most part held in large plantations (*latifundia*), owned by nobles and cultivated by slaves, or, more frequently, occupied by great droves of cattle. This plantation system had crowded out the free peasant proprietors in almost all parts of the peninsula. After throwing up their farms, which foreign competition had made unprofitable, they flocked to Rome to swell the idle mob that lived on what their votes would bring. There still remained, especially in Northern Italy, a considerable body of small land owners; and the municipal towns (*municipia*), about four hundred in number, whose territories comprised, politically speaking, the whole area of Italy, were still the home of a fairly prosperous middle class. These had all received Roman citizenship after the social war (B.C. 90) and might, by their substantial character and intelligence, have served as a strong opposition to the corrupt aristocracy at Rome; but they lacked organization and leadership, and when they went to Rome to vote, they were wholly powerless against the turbulent political clubs of the metropolis, whose violence was a regular feature of all public proceedings. Yet in this class alone was the old Roman virtue to be found, and in it lay whatever hope there was to redeem the state.
Another menace to the government was in the constitution of the armies. After a man had been consul, he was given charge of a province and was put in command of several legions. While abroad he was not amenable to the government at home, and when he returned he used his old soldiers to further his political schemes, and rewarded them at the expense of the opposing faction, often by wholesale spoliation and murder.

Partisans of the nobility were known as Optimates; those opposed to them as Populares. Before Cæsar, the most conspicuous leader of the former had been Sulla, of the latter, Marius, Cæsar's uncle by marriage. These two men by their thirst for power and mutual hatred filled all Italy with bloodshed and terror for years. Under the established régime there was no continuity in government, but a perpetual see-saw between rivals. Rome was kept in a constant electioneering excitement accompanied by the worst forms of demoralization. All the vast interests of the Roman world were sacrificed to the luxury and ambition of a governing class wholly incompetent for its task; and the only resource against anarchy appears to have been that some one man, by craft or by force, should get all the reins of power into his single hand. That man was destined to be Julius Cæsar.

II. Cæsar's Earlier Career.

"Better be first, he said, in a little Iberian village,
Than be second in Rome."—Longfellow.

Caius Julius Cæsar (Gaius Iulius Caesar) was born July 12th, B.C. 100, or, according to some authorities, two years earlier. Assuming the later date, he was six years younger than Pompey, his great rival, and Cicero, the distinguished orator. His ancestry was of the noblest, and was supposed to reach back on his mother's side to Ancus Marcius, the Roman king, and on the father's to Æneas, the founder of the Roman nation and reputed to be the son of a goddess.

The time of his birth was during the great ascendancy of the Populares under Marius, his uncle; and his childhood was passed amid the horrors of the proscriptions that marked Marius's dictatorship. Though Cæsar was connected by blood with the oldest and
Introduction.

proudest houses of Rome, he early showed his predilection for the party of the people; and the sturdy Marius, with all his defects, doubtless exercised a marked influence over the life and destinies of his young nephew. Cæsar lost his father early in life, so that most of the responsibility for his education and bringing up rested upon his mother, Aurelia. She was a typical matron of the old school, managing her house with simplicity and frugality, and holding to the traditions and virtues of the ancient Romans. Tacitus, the Roman historian, couples her name with that of Cornelia, "the famous mother of the Gracchi. Cæsar owed much of his future greatness to her influence, and his love and reverence for her are highly honorable to both.

In the year 86, when Cæsar was still a boy, he was appointed a priest of Jupiter. This office was a perfunctory one and had little real religious significance. In 83 he married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, an act which identified him thus early with the Populares; for Cinna was a very prominent leader of that party. It was soon after this that Sulla, the leader of the Optimates, returned from Asia Minor with a victorious army, prepared to take a terrible revenge for the proscription of Marius. Cæsar soon fell under his displeasure because of his relationship to Marius. He was ordered to divorce his young wife because she was Cinna's daughter. In this crisis Cæsar showed a prominent trait of his character, a trait which led him during all his life to brave every danger rather than allow himself to be controlled. Though but a youth, he refused to obey Sulla's command. A price was set on his head and he was obliged to flee for his life. Often he was in great peril, and once he was taken, and escaped only by bribing his captor. His friends interceded for him, pleading his youth, and finally obtained his pardon, Sulla saying, "Take him, since you will have it so; but I would have you know that the youth for whom you are so earnest, will one day overthrow the aristocracy. I see in him many Mariuses."

Cæsar thinking it safer to leave Italy for a time went to Asia Minor, where he gained some military experience and distinguished himself for valor by saving a comrade's life. Sulla died in 78 and Cæsar returned to his family and resumed his studies. He was a diligent and thorough student and doubtless followed the usual course
of Greek, rhetoric, grammar, philosophy, and oratory. To be a good speaker was essential to political success, and Cæsar was especially anxious to excel in that direction. He gave some public exhibitions of his skill and won much applause; but anxious to perfect himself still farther he went to Rhodes in 76, to study under Apollonius Molon, the most famous teacher of oratory and rhetoric of the day. On this journey, when near Miletus, he was captured by pirates and held for a heavy ransom. He spent some time among them while waiting for the money, and joined in their sports and games with the greatest freedom, at the same time assuring them that he would hang them all as soon as he was free. They seem to have regarded him with mingled awe and admiration. The ransom was paid. Cæsar was released, went at once to Miletus, where he hastily collected a few ships and made a descent on the pirates before they dreamt of danger. He recovered the ransom money and punished the pirates as he had threatened.

On his return to Rome, he began his political career (b.c. 68) by serving as questor, an office connected with the public treasury and the first step toward the consulship. This was followed in 65 by the aedileship. The taking of this office, which was one of the chief magistracies, though it involved only the care of the public buildings and the oversight of the great festivals and games, was considered a direct bid for a future consulship, and a man's claims upon that higher office were determined in large measure by the lavishness and splendor of his aedileship. Cæsar was poor, but with characteristic boldness he played for the highest political stakes and did not hesitate to incur enormous debts, in fact so enormous that those who had not the most perfect confidence in his capacity and his powers believed him irretrievably ruined. His aedileship surpassed all before it in magnificence; but he left it—as he remarked with grim humor—worth more than a million dollars less than nothing.

After his aedileship he identified himself more and more with the popular faction, and even dared to restore some of the statues and trophies of Marius, which had been banished from sight seventeen years before by the order of Sulla. The people began to hope for a successful revival of the Marian party and to look to Cæsar as its leader.
In B.C. 63 he was elected pontifex maximus against the strong opposition of the Optimates. This office was one of great political power and dignity, though not formally a civil office. Cæsar held it for the rest of his life. In 62 he was elected prætor, an office of a judicial character, and this was followed by a year of command in Spain as proprætor. Before leaving for Spain, his creditors became insistent and threatened to detain him unless he paid them. Cæsar then obtained a large loan from the richest man in Rome, Crassus, who was ambitious for office and doubtless hoped to make good use in turn of Cæsar's brilliant abilities to further his own ends.

In Spain Cæsar gained valuable military experience and made his administration so profitable to himself, as was usual with provincial governors, that, though he left Rome owing millions of sesterces, he returned in the year 60 with enough money to pay all his debts. His design was to run for the consulship, the highest office in the gift of the people. To secure his election he effected a union of interests between himself and Crassus and Pompey. These were the two most powerful men in Rome, — Crassus because of his wealth, Pompey because of his fame as a general and his popularity with the army. The latter was, in fact, really the first man in the state. He had but recently returned from Asia Minor laden with the spoils of the Mithridatic war, and might easily have seized the dictatorship had he so chosen; but he disbanded his army and preferred to appear as a private citizen, but with almost autocratic power. He had quarreled with Crassus, but Cæsar reconciled them, and the three formed a sort of offensive and defensive alliance known as the first triumvirate, — what we should call a political deal. This was for Cæsar, who was at that time quite their inferior in fame and influence, a master stroke of craft and diplomacy.

In 59 Cæsar was elected consul almost without opposition. He well understood the critical condition of affairs and saw clearly the dangers that threatened the state, and instituted valuable reforms looking to its regeneration and salvation. The army and the moneyed classes represented by Pompey and Crassus were with him, and he could do almost as he pleased. His first act was the passage of an agrarian law, by which thousands of acres were to be distributed to the poor. This was not a mere act of bribery, but an attempt to
restore the peasant freeholders, who had been dispossessed by the rich. Then he passed the excellent body of laws known as the *Leges Juliae*, which mark an epoch in Roman jurisprudence, and which were devised in the interests of individual rights, purity of justice, morality, and good government. All that one man could do in a single year to save his country from anarchy, Cæsar did.

Cæsar was now forty-three years of age. With the exception of the time spent in Spain, his life had been employed in petty miserable contests with Roman factions. He longed for a new and larger field where he might have freedom to perform deeds worthy of his surpassing abilities and unbounded ambition. This opportunity came to him when, as proconsul, he was entrusted with the protection of the northern frontier against the Gauls, and was assigned the provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum. It was a most hazardous post and doubtless many of the *Optimates* thought that they were well rid of him.

### III. CÆSAR IN GAUL.

*"What security men derive from a resolute spirit."* — *Cæsar.*

By the ‘deal’ of the triumvirate, Cæsar was to have the government of Gaul for five years, while Crassus and Pompey were to remain in the city to look after the interests of the coalition. The bond was farther strengthened by the marriage of Pompey with Julia, Cæsar’s young and beautiful daughter.

Cæsar, as we have seen, was over forty when he went to Gaul. He was more of a civilian than a soldier and was far more at home in the Forum than in the camp. Alexander, Hannibal, and Napoleon had been trained in war from childhood. The qualities that are most potent in war — hope, confidence, audacity, and pugnacity — are qualities that belong to youth. So Cæsar is an anomaly in military history. In spite of his years and his comparative inexperience, he leaped at once to the highest place, and is counted to-day among the three or four greatest generals in history, if not the greatest of them all. He never lost a set battle and he showed infinite versatility in adapting means to ends, always doing the right thing at the
right time. He never admits the possibility of defeat and overcomes the most stupendous difficulties with such ease that he rarely speaks of them. His promptness of decision and rapidity of execution were such that the enemy were constantly overwhelmed with awe and were led to regard him as a supernatural being. 'Forced marches,' 'continuous marching day and night,' 'as quickly as possible' are phrases that recur again and again in his narrative. Only a natural ruler of men could get things done with such swiftness. He carried out his plans with the greatest audacity and, at the same time, without recklessness. No one could be more minute and thorough in preparations than he. No one left less chance for luck, good or bad, to enter into the result. In all that was done, his was the masterful and presiding genius, and the legions rarely accomplished much in his absence. His relations with his soldiers were most cordial. They idolized him and he respected and admired them and constantly labored for their safety and comfort. He allows them to share in the glory of his victories and in his story lingers with delight over their heroic exploits. He shared all their dangers and privations, he excelled personally in deeds of arms, and he allowed himself no luxury but a favorite horse. It is not strange that when trouble came upon their master, his soldiers were true to him, and even volunteered to serve without pay. Only three of his officers, two of them Gauls, went over to the enemy, while thousands came to him from the other side.

After two successful campaigns in Gaul, in the spring of B.C. 56, Caesar met his two confederates at Luca, in Etruria, to arrange their future schemes. The conference was held with great display, almost like a royal court. More than two hundred senators were present, and one hundred and twenty lictors were in attendance, attached to the several magistrates. At this conference it was agreed that Pompey and Crassus should hold the consulship the following year, and, after their term of office, should receive by popular vote a similar command to that held by Cæsar,—namely, that Pompey should command in Spain and Crassus in Syria for five years each; also that when Cæsar's five years were up, he should receive in the same way a second term of five years. His ten years' administration would then close at the end of B.C. 49; after which time
—an interval of ten years having elapsed—he would be eligible again as consul.

The programme was duly carried out. Crassus departed (B.C. 54) to his province, where he was defeated the next year by the Parthians in the battle of Carrhæ, and shortly after entrapped and killed. Pompey put his province into the hands of one of his subordinates, and remained in the neighborhood of Rome, unwilling to remove from the seat of his personal influence.

Cæsar served eight campaigns in Gaul, an account of which is contained in the eight books of his Commentaries. Seven of these he wrote himself. The eighth was written by his friend and staff-officer, Hirtius. During these years he stormed more than 800 towns and subdued 300 tribes, engaged with more than 3,000,000 men, swept over a million human beings from the earth, and took a million more prisoners to be sold into slavery. "He was the first to lead an army into interior Gaul, the first to cross the Rhine into Germany, the first to bring a navy into the Western Ocean or to sail into the Atlantic with an army to make war." He left a magnificent country for the Romans to appropriate and retain until their increasing corruption left it in turn an easy prey to the Germans. He inspired such terror of the Roman arms that the tide of barbarian invasion was stayed for centuries.

IV. CÆSAR'S LATER CAREER.

"The foremost man of all this world."—Shakespeare.

"Cæsar could bear no superior, Pompey no equal."—Lucan.

Meanwhile events had been moving on at Rome. With Crassus dead, Cæsar and Pompey were left in the enjoyment of almost absolute authority. They had been friends from youth, but none the less rivals, and the death of Julia (B.C. 54) sundered the last ties that bound them together. In 52 Pompey had been made sole consul and found himself at the head of a party which, under cover of the constitution, was determined to destroy Cæsar that it might retain the power which his reforms threatened to place in worthier hands.

Cæsar's proconsulship of Gaul would expire at the end of B.C. 49. He wished to run for a second consulship in B.C. 48. The senate
resolved to prevent this, and commanded him to resign his office and disband his army several months before the expiration of his term. If they could once get him to Rome as a private citizen without an army, they knew they could crush him. Cæsar knew this too, and refused to obey the decree unless Pompey should also disband his troops. Pompey would have been willing to agree to this fair proposition, but his friends would not permit him, and were bent on destroying Cæsar. Naturally the charge of false play was made on both sides, and the strife continued until Cæsar was finally declared a public enemy. He therefore crossed the Rubicon, a small stream which formed the boundary of his province and the limit of his authority, and began to march towards Rome. He took but a single legion with him and continued his efforts to come to an understanding with the Optimates, having hopes of a compromise. He made a speech to his soldiers, explaining the situation, and was assured of their enthusiastic support. Labienus alone deserted him, corrupted, it is said, by Roman gold.

Cæsar's march through Italy was like a triumphal procession; the cities opened their gates to him and he was everywhere hailed with enthusiasm. Among the Optimates there was nothing but consternation and fear. They had pinned their faith to Pompey, who had boasted that he had but to stamp his foot on the ground and legions would spring from the earth ready to obey him. He had vastly overrated himself (as was his wont), and had no conception of Cæsar's power and genius. Cicero well sums up the situation in a letter to his friend Atticus: "The consuls are helpless. There has been no levy. With Cæsar pressing forward and our general doing nothing, the men will not come to be enrolled. Pompey is prostrate, without courage, without purpose, without force, without energy." Pompey had been looked upon by his partisans as almost divine. He had been peculiarly fortunate throughout his career and had made a great military reputation by assuming the laurels that others had won. Mommsen says of him: "He was radically a commonplace man, formed by nature to make a good corporal, but forced by circumstances to be a general." Now that he was confronted by a really serious difficulty and by a really able man, he was paralyzed.

Pompey with his forces and accompanied by the senators fled in
a panic to Brundisium and sailed across the Adriatic to Epirus. Cæsar meanwhile continued his victorious advance, and in sixty days was master of Italy. Then he went to Spain, and before autumn closed had met and defeated all opposition there. Returning to Rome he made preparations to follow Pompey. Many prominent Optimates had fallen into his hands, but he let them all go free, to their own great amazement and to Cæsar’s eternal praise. In a letter he says: “I will conquer after a new fashion and fortify myself in the possession of the power I acquire by generosity and mercy.”

Cæsar followed Pompey across the sea from Brundisium, transporting his army in two divisions. He encountered considerable difficulty on account of storms and the lack of ships. After much skirmishing, anxiety, and suffering (on Cæsar’s part), owing to scarcity of food and supplies, he fought a battle at Pharsalia in Thessaly on Aug. 9, B.C. 48. Before the battle Pompey’s officers felt so sure of victory that a rich banquet was spread awaiting their return from the field. In numbers and equipment Pompey was much superior, and with him was all the wealth and respectability of Rome. He had 45,000 infantry and 5000 cavalry against Cæsar’s 22,000 and 1000, respectively; but he was overwhelmingly defeated and the battle ended in a terrible panic and great slaughter, in which 15,000 men lost their lives. As Cæsar viewed the slain he said sadly: “They would have it so. After all that I had done for my country, I, Gaius Cæsar, should have been condemned as a criminal if I had not appealed to my army.”

Pompey fled for his life and took ship to Egypt and was there murdered by the king, who hoped thus to win Cæsar’s favor. When Cæsar arrived there, however, a few days later, and Pompey’s head was presented to him, he is said to have turned away from the sight with horror and grief. He now overcame all remaining opposition in several short and brilliant campaigns. The first of these was in Asia Minor, where he conquered so easily that he reported it to the senate in the words that have since become famous: “Veni, vidi, vici.” By the battle of Thapsus in Africa (B.C. 46) and that of Munda in Spain (B.C. 45), the Pompeian party was finally crushed.

Cæsar now returned to Rome, where he was made imperator—possessing the entire imperium, or military dominion of Rome, not
of a single colony or province merely — and perpetual dictator (*dictator perpetuo*), which offices clothed him with all the political authority of the state. By the powers thus conferred he laid the foundations of the Imperial constitution, which was afterwards (B.C. 30) set in operation by his grand-nephew and adopted son, Octavianus, later known as Augustus. This scheme of government eventually became (as was possibly foreseen from the start) an hereditary monarchy, under the name and form of a republic. During the short period of Cæsar's rule he continued the good work of his first consulship and carried a series of measures of wise and practical statesmanship, such as the reform of the calendar, the regulation of the administrative system, and the policy of checks upon the abuses of the money power. He also planned extensive military expeditions against Parthia, Scythia, and Germany, and large public works and improvements, such as draining the Pomptine marshes and cutting through the isthmus of Corinth. With characteristic energy he accomplished much in a very short time.

But the possession of this exalted authority involved the utter overthrow of the constitution and necessarily excited alarm and jealousy among patriots and demagogues alike. Rumors were abroad that Cæsar was seeking to be king, a name detested at Rome since the foundation of the republic. His rivals were jealous, and not a few friends were disappointed at not having received as large favors as they thought they deserved. Many of his former enemies were bitter against him, because he had been magnanimous enough to forgive them. These feelings culminated in a conspiracy against his life. The leaders were Cassius, a violent and fearless man driven mad by jealousy and baffled ambition; and Marcus Brutus, who had no better friend than Cæsar, but who fancied that he must emulate his ancestor, Brutus the first consul, who expelled the Tarquins. Cæsar received many warnings of what was going on, but disregarded them all with his usual indifference to danger. The deed was consummated in the senate-house on the Ides of March, B.C. 44. The great dictator was struck down by false friends and fell, pierced with wounds, at the foot of Pompey's statue. This dastardly act received the condemnation it deserved, and few have dared to defend it on the ground of patriotism. Those concerned in it all
died violent deaths soon after. Both Brutus and Cassius committed suicide, the latter stabbing himself with the very dagger which he had used against Cæsar.¹

V. PERSON AND CHARACTER OF CÆSAR.

"Death makes no conquest of this conqueror
For now he lives in fame, though not in life."—Shakespeare.
"Great Julius, whom all the world admires."—Milton.

Suetonius describes Cæsar when a youth as tall, slight, and handsome, with dark piercing eyes, a sallow complexion, large nose, lips full, features refined and intellectual, neck sinewy and thick. He adds further that he was neat to effeminacy about his dress and appearance. Fond of athletics, he excelled in all manly sports, especially in riding. In danger he knew no fear and often performed acts of great personal daring. His health was vigorous until his later years, and he could endure an apparently unlimited amount of labor and hardship. Added years gave him a majestic and commanding presence without detracting from the grace and courtesy of his bearing. We judge him to have been a man of singular charm and of unusual personal magnetism.

Thanks to the peculiar skill possessed by the ancients in the art of portraiture, we have good reason to believe that we may see the great dictator as he was, from existing statues and busts. Two of the most noted of these are the busts in the British Museum (Fig. 47) and that in the Louvre (Fig. 1). The one in the Naples Museum (Fig. 78) is judged by competent critics to be conventional and not modelled after the living man. Those first mentioned are thought to be true to life. The one in the British Museum shows us Cæsar the statesman, the man of peace; the one in the Louvre, Cæsar the man of action, the martial hero.²

¹ For a vivid imaginative account of the conspiracy, see Shakespeare's "Julius Cæsar."
Introduction.

What Alexander was to the Greeks, and Hannibal to the Carthaginians, that and much more was Cæsar to the Romans. The two former excelled all men of their times in war only; but Cæsar had such extraordinary abilities in widely different directions that many regard him as the most remarkable man that history records. In whatever he did, he always did the best possible. He had the greatest diversity of gifts: as a student of language, he composed a treatise on grammar while crossing the Alps; as an orator, Quintilian says he would have rivalled Cicero had he devoted his time to this art; as a general, he has had no superior and hardly a peer; and, above all, he was the greatest politician and statesman of his time. To his statecraft all his other acts are subordinate, and by this they should be interpreted.

Cæsar was too great a man to be without enemies. He has been accused of being a traitor to his country, who by a deep-laid scheme overthrew its constitution. He was undoubtedly ambitious for power, and he used it in making such changes in the constitution as were sorely needed to keep it from going to pieces; but how far the acts by which he accomplished this desirable end were the result of a plan to further his personal ambition, and how far they were compelled by the stress of circumstances, we cannot judge. We do know, however, that he professed an earnest desire for peace, until he was driven into war by the hatred and perversity of his opponents.

He has also been accused of immorality, cruelty, and irreligion. It would be vain to maintain that Cæsar was a model of virtue in an age that was notoriously and openly wicked and profligate. We know that Cæsar was a man of perfect self-control, and that he was remarkable for extreme abstemiousness in eating and drinking. As for the rest, he was probably no worse than the average.

Doubtless he was cruel, judged by modern standards. He butchered without mercy thousands of defenceless men, women, and children. But we must remember that Cæsar was a Roman, of a people naturally cruel and careless of bloodshed, and, again, that he was dealing with Gauls and Germans, whom the Romans despised, and for whom he had not, nor could have, any feelings of sympathy or kindness. The doctrine of human brotherhood is something he never heard of. But, on the other hand, contrast with this his constant care
and anxiety for the welfare of his soldiers, his patience and forbearance with their mistakes, such as no modern commander has exhibited in his memoirs, and, above all, recall his mercy to his opponents in the Civil War, whom he freely pardoned and restored to honor and favor. Contrast Cæsar’s dictatorship with the horrors of Marius and Sulla, and we cannot wonder that his clemency became famous.

That Cæsar was a skeptic is no doubt true. The age was skeptical and the learned classes no longer believed in the gods of their forefathers. What Cæsar’s real beliefs were, or if he had any, we do not know. He often speaks of fortune as ruling in the affairs of men, and probably had some vague and dimly defined belief in a supreme power.

VI. Cæsar’s Literary Work.

As a man of letters Cæsar is hardly less eminent. His vast and massive intellect could hold in its grasp a great variety of subjects. He wrote on many different themes, such as philosophy, language, astronomy, and divination. Of all his books only his Commentaries on the Gallic and Civil Wars have come down to us in complete form. They stand as the best military history that was ever written. Their ulterior purpose was to justify him in the eyes of the world for the course he took in opposing the senate and the government. He does this rarely by argument, but by such a tactful and masterful collocation of facts that the unthinking reader feels himself persuaded that Cæsar could hardly have done otherwise.

The style of these memoirs is remarkable for directness, terseness, and simplicity. Cicero, one of the greatest masters of style, says of them, “I pronounce them indeed to be very commendable, for they are simple, straight-forward, agreeable, with all rhetorical ornament stripped from them as one strips off a garment.” While the language is lucid, it is packed full of meaning, and even a good Latinist needs to read slowly and with deliberation that the full thought of each sentence may be gathered. Sometimes a whole sentence is crammed into an adjective or a participle. To translate into good English requires, therefore, frequent amplification.

Like all great men, Cæsar rarely speaks of himself. In his works he refers to himself in the third person and with such modesty and
Impartiality that you would never suspect him to be the writer. He betrays his identity by three slips of the pen where he uses the first person. He never struts or poses for effect, not even when he is narrating sublime deeds of heroism.

Cæsar wrote his Commentaries in the midst of intense activity. They were jotted down as he journeyed and fought; mere notes, as it were, for future amplification. Hirtius says, "While others know how faultlessly they are written, I know with what ease and rapidity he dashed them off."

For us the Gallic War has a peculiar interest because it treats of the peoples with whom we are most familiar and from whom most of us derive our ancestry. It marks, in a sense, the beginning of modern history. Active, keen-sighted, and truthful, Cæsar gives us such insight into these nations as serves to explain many of their present political and social peculiarities.

VII. Important Events in Cæsar's Life.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B.C.</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Born, July 12th.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>Marries Cornelia, the Daughter of Cinna.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80–78</td>
<td>Serves with the Army in Asia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76–75</td>
<td>Studies Oratory at Rhodes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>Quæstor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Ædile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Pontifex Maximus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Prætor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>Proprætor in Spain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Forms the First Triumvirate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Consul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58–49</td>
<td>Proconsul in Gaul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Meeting of the Triumvirate at Luca.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>The Trouble with Pompey begins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Crosses the Rubicon. Civil War begun.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>The Battle of Pharsalia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>The Battle of Thapsus. Declared Dictator for ten years.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>The Battle of Munda. Appointed Imperator for life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>The Conspiracy. Assassinated in the Senate House on the Ides of March.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Roman Military Affairs.

II.

ROMAN MILITARY AFFAIRS.

I. THE ARMY AND ITS DIVISIONS.

1. The Legions. 4. The Engineers and Artisans.
2. The Cavalry. 5. The Artillery.
3. The Auxiliaries. 6. The Baggage Train.
7. The Officers and their Staff.

II. THE STANDARDS.

III. THE MUSIC.

IV. THE LEGIONARY.


V. THE CAMP.

VI. THE MARCH.

VII. THE BATTLE.

VIII. THE SIEGE.

IX. THE FLEET.

I. THE ARMY AND ITS DIVISIONS.

1. The Legions.

The Roman legion corresponded to a modern Division, but was more an organic whole, since it was the smallest unit that had separate line officers. What its normal strength was in Caesar's time we have no means of knowing; but a probable estimate puts it at 5000 men. The actual effective strength in the field, however, was usually much less, falling to 3000 men, as at the battle of Pharsalia (on Caesar's own authority). This variation in number was due to the many absences from duty which always occur in a military organization, and to the losses incurred by the individual legions in previous campaigns. Losses in old legions were not usually made good by new recruits, but the latter were formed into new legions; hence the older the legion, the smaller usually its enrollment. The average effective strength of the legion in the Gallic War was probably near 3600 men.
Introduction.

The subdivisions of the legions were as follows:

1 legion = 10 cohorts of about 360 men each.
1 cohort = 3 maniples of 120 men each.
1 maniple = 2 centuries of 60 men each.

There were, therefore, 10 cohorts, 30 maniples, and 60 centuries in each legion. These divisions did not, however, like our companies, have special "commissioned officers," but were commanded by centurions who came from the ranks. The legions constituted the main body of the army and did most of the fighting, but there were other arms employed for various purposes (see below). The legions were designated by numbers, given in the order of their enlistment.

2. The Cavalry.

The cavalry (equitatus), originally of Roman citizens, was in Caesar's time composed almost exclusively of recruits from subject or allied states. In Caesar's army it was composed of Gauls, Spaniards, and Germans. There was no fixed ratio between the number of legionaries and cavalry. In the campaign against the Helvetians, Caesar had 4000 equites, in the battle of Pharsalia, 1000; but the number of legions was the same in both.

The cavalry was divided into regiments (alae) of about 330 horsemen each; these were subdivided into 10 squadrons (turmae) of 33 horsemen each; and these again into 3 squads (decuriae) of 11 each. See Figs. 12, 13.

3. The Auxiliaries.

The auxiliaries (auxilia peditum) were infantry forces from allied and subject states. Caesar nowhere gives the number of his auxilia, and it was doubtless as various as that of his cavalry. They were the light-armed soldiers (milites levis armaturae), the archers (sagittarii), and the slingers (funditores). See Figs. 30, 104, 105, 115. The best slingers came from the Balearic Islands, the best archers from Crete and Numidia. The light-armed soldiers wore no heavy armor and carried a light round shield (parma). The archers had neither corselet, helmet, nor shield. The latter they could not carry on account of their bows.
Caesar placed little reliance on his auxilia for actual fighting, but used them for the most part to make a show of force and frighten the enemy (Bk. i. 51), and to assist in building fortifications. In engagements the bowmen and slingers were usually stationed on the wings (alae), and from this were called alarii.

4. The Engineers and Artisans.

The engineers and artisans (fabri) sometimes formed a separate corps under the command of a chief engineer (praefectus fabrum), and sometimes they were called from the ranks of the legions when their services were needed. Caesar had a chief engineer, but no special body of men (cf. Bk. v. 11). They were employed in building bridges, ships, winter quarters, and in repairing weapons and equipments.

5. The Artillery.

Engines of war were not often used on the battlefield, where modern artillery forms such an important branch of the service, but mainly in the defence and assault of fortified cities or camps. They had a limited use also in the fleet (Bk. iv. 25).

We have no exact account of the construction of these engines. Caesar almost always calls them tormenta (cf. torquere, to twist), a name which clearly points to the elasticity of twisted rope, sinew, or hair, for the source of their energy. They were of three kinds: catapultae, ballistae, and scorpiones (see Figs. 61, 75, 95). The catapultae shot great arrows in a horizontal direction, like a cannon; the ballistae hurled great stones or heavy blocks of wood through the air in a high curve, as a mortar throws shells. The range of these weapons was from 1500 to 2000 ft. A scorpio was a small catapult having a range of about 350 ft. It was an accurate and deadly weapon. Caesar tells of one at the siege of Avaricum that marked and killed man after man in the same spot (Bk. vii. 25). The tormenta were usually served and kept in repair by the fabri, but as Caesar had no such corps, they were probably in his army served by legionaries.
6. The Baggage Train.

The baggage of the army, except the packs corresponding to knapsacks which the soldiers themselves carried (sarcinae), was borne by horses and mules (iumenta), and in wagons. The latter, however, were used mainly by the traders (mercatores) and sutlers (lixae) that followed the legion. The baggage of each legion was by no means inconsiderable. It consisted of tents, blankets, tools, the tormenta, provisions, etc., and required no less than 500 pack-animals to a legion. The inconvenience and delay occasioned by the care of so much baggage caused the Romans to call it impedimenta (incumbrances), and a legion marching with its baggage was called legio impedita; when without, legio expedita. Along with the baggage train went a multitude of drivers, grooms, officers’ servants, and other menials, all of whom are included in the general term calones. Most or all of these were slaves. See Figs. 14, 55.

7. The Officers and their Staff.

The superior officers were: (1) the commander-in-chief (imperator or dux belli). He possessed the imperium or supreme military authority by virtue of his office, but by etiquette first received the name imperator from his soldiers after his first victory. In Cæsar’s case it was bestowed after his victory over the Helvetii.

(2) The legati. These were men of senatorial rank (i.e. who had once held a curule magistracy). They were appointed by the senate or the people on the nomination of the proconsul. The senate also determined the number that a general should have; Cæsar had ten. They often acted as ambassadors and made treaties, but their chief duties were military. Their powers were in no way independent, but derived from the general, who might put them in command of one or more legions or confer upon them the imperium in his absence (legatus pro praetore). In his battle with Ariovistus Cæsar placed a legatus at the head of each of his legions (Bk. i. 53), thus giving them an independent command, a practice which he afterwards continued to the great advantage of the service.

(3) The quaestores were officers elected by the people annually to administer the financial affairs of the provinces, one for each imperator.
They had charge of the military chest, and saw to the pay, clothing, shelter, and general equipment of the legions serving in their respective provinces. On occasion they exercised the military authority of a legatus (Bk. i. 53); they were the ancient equivalent of a modern quartermaster. Besides these general officers, there were attached to each legion six tribuni militum, who were probably originally in command of the legion. They were divided into three pairs, each pair taking command in its turn. In Cæsar’s time they were no longer trained soldiers, but chiefly young men of equestrian rank, who went into the army for a year or two to get some military experience and thus begin their public career (cf. Bk. i. 39), so that ordinarily the legion had no proper commanding officers. Cæsar was not slow to see that these political and social favorites were not the men to lead his legions into battle, and he therefore introduced the lasting reform of transferring this duty to the legati, as mentioned above (cf. Bk. ii. 20; v. i, 25, 47). Thereafter the duties of the tribunes became mainly administrative and judicial; they cared for the levying, the discharge, and the equipment of the troops, and for the army supplies, under the orders of the quaestor; and they presided at courts-martial and took part in the councils of war. Sometimes they led the legions on the march and received subordinate military commands (cf. Bk. vii. 47, 52).

Surrounding the superior officers there was always a large number of young men, forming a kind of staff, who acted as orderlies and body-guards. The only officers “of the line” were the tribunes, and, as appears above, their command was limited.

The real leaders of the men were the inferior (“non-commissioned”) officers, the centurions. Corresponding to sergeants and corporals, these were always plebeians, often of the lowest birth, who were promoted from the ranks entirely on account of their fighting qualities, and could never rise higher. There were two centurions in each maniple, making six for each cohort and sixty for the legion. The six centurions of the first cohort outranked the others and were called centuriones primorum ordinum, and were the only ones that ordinarily sat with the superior officers in the council of war. The first cohort always contained the flower of the legion, and the men in the first century of this cohort excelled all the others. Their leader,
the first centurion of the whole cohort (*primus* or *primi-pilus*) and so of the whole legion, must needs be a man of great personal prowess and skill, an actual fighter, one to whom all could look as to a model soldier. Such was, for example, Publius Sextius Baculus, who repeatedly deserved the praise of his general (cf. Bk. ii. 25; iii. 5; vi. 38), and Titus Balventius (*vir fortis et magnae virtutis*, Bk. v. 35). As a badge of his office the centurion carried a short staff (*vitis*), but he was armed much like the other soldiers (see Fig. 40).

The chief distinction in dress between the officers and men was the red *tunica militaris* worn by the legates and tribunes, and the purple cloak (*paludamentum*) worn by the general (Bk. vii. 88). The officers wore also coats-of-mail of gilded bronze (see Fig. 86).

Between the centurions and common soldiers in rank were the *speculatorae*, *evocati*, *beneficiarii*, *aquileri* or *signiferi*, and *bucinatores*, *tubicines*, or *cornicines*. The *speculatorae* or scouts obtained news of the enemy and carried despatches. The *evocati* were veterans who had completed their term of service, but remained in the army at the request of their commander. The *beneficiarii* were soldiers that had received some gift or privilege for meritorious service. The *signiferi* or *aquileri* were the standard bearers: soldiers selected for their courage and fidelity. The *bucinatores* and *tubicines* were the musicians. All of these had rights and exemptions not enjoyed by the common soldiers. See Figs. 39, 84, 114.

II. The Standards.

The term *signa* is applied in a general sense to all the standards of the army. That of the legion was an eagle (*aquila*), usually of silver or bronze, about the size of a dove, on a wooden staff. It was sometimes carried by the chief centurion (*primipilus*) of the legion. Sometimes it had below it a little red or white banner (*vexillum*), inscribed with the number or name of the legion. See Figs. 13, 121, 123.

In a narrower sense, *signum* was used for the standard of the cohort or the maniple. Each cohort had its own *signum* (Bk. ii. 21), and in earlier times each maniple, but probably not in Caesar's day.
The cavalry and light-armed troops and all separate detachments carried only the *vexillum* (Bk. vi. 36). The general's flag at headquarters was also called *vexillum*. It was a large white banner with an inscription in red, giving the name of the general and that of his army. A large red *vexillum* displayed at headquarters was the signal for battle (Bk. ii. 20). See Fig. 70.

**III. The Music.**

The difficulty of carrying the voice through the din of battle early led the Romans to use the penetrating tones of brass instruments for giving orders. The four instruments used by them were the bugle (*bucina*), the trumpet (*tuba*), the cavalry trumpet (*lituus*), and the horn (*cornu*). See Figs. 36, 37, 38, 84.

The *bucina*, whose shape and appearance are uncertain, sounded the changes of the night-watch and the reveille in the morning. The *tuba*, a straight trumpet of brass more than three feet long, with a bell-shaped mouth, gave the signal for attack or retreat, the signal being taken up and repeated by the *cornu*. The latter was a circular-shaped instrument which the performer often placed about his neck. The *tuba* had a deep tone; the *cornu* a sharper one. The general's call to an assembly (*contio*) was the *classicum*, sounded by all the instruments at once.

**IV. The Legionary.**

*a. Enlistment.* — The legion was composed of Romans only. Citizens were liable to conscription between the ages of seventeen and forty-six. The recruit must be of sound health and of suitable height. The Romans, as a rule, were rather undersized. Cæsar expressly mentions the small stature of his troops as compared with that of the Germans (Bk. i. 39; ii. 30); but the Romans had learned the lesson of civilization,—that victories are gained not by huge bones and big bodies, but by trained skill and scientific tactics. Man for man, the Germans were doubtless more than a match for the Romans; but against the organized and disciplined legion — the most effective machine for battle that the world had yet seen — they were almost
powerless. The term of service was twenty years, and after this the veteran was discharged with enough to provide for his old age. Often he reënlisted for farther service (evocatus).

b. Clothing. — All the legionaries were clothed alike. Next the skin was a nearly or quite sleeveless woollen shirt (tunica), reaching nearly to the knees; over this a leathern coat strengthened by bands of metal across the breast, back, and shoulders (lorica). In cold or wet weather the soldier wore about him a wide woollen mantle (sagum), which was fastened by a clasp (fibula) on the right shoulder, leaving the right arm free. At night the sagum served as a blanket. About his waist was a leather belt (cingulum militiae), bound with metal and with strips of metal hanging from the front as a protection to the lower part of the body. His feet were covered with strong half-boots (caligae). This might be called his undress uniform. See Figs. 107, 115, 126, etc.

c. Armor. — The defensive armor consisted of a coat-of-mail (lorica, described above), a helmet, and a shield. The helmet (galea or cassis), of iron or of leather strengthened with brass, was open in front and adorned with a white crest, which was one of the insignia put on at the beginning of a battle (Bk. ii. 21). See Fig. 87, etc. The shield (scutum) was rectangular, about four feet long and two feet wide; it was made of wood slightly curved, and covered with linen and heavy leather. About the rim it was bound with metal, and also in the centre. There was a single handle on the inside and opposite it on the outside a boss or knob (umbo) of metal, to divert missiles and to strengthen the whole. A common device on the outside was a winged thunderbolt. See Figs. 116, 117, etc.

d. Weapons. — The weapons of offence were the sword and spear. The sword (gladius Hispanus) was about two feet long, straight and two-edged. It was used more for thrusting than for striking, and was not usually hung from the body-belt, but from a belt passing over the left shoulder to the right hip (balteus). See Figs. 17, 115, etc.

The spear (pilum) of Cæsar's soldiers was between six and seven feet long. The shaft was of wood and about four feet long. Into this was fitted the slender iron shank that ended in a barbed head. From monuments and from remains that have been found in various places, the weight is estimated at about three pounds and the
hurling distance about 100 feet. Each legionary had one of these weapons. See Figs. 15, 107.

e. Baggage (Packs).—Besides his arms and armor, the legionary carried tools for digging, cooking utensils (vasa), food for at least two weeks (cibaria), his cloak or blanket (sagum), and usually one or two stakes (valli) for the rampart of the camp. The weight of the whole was about sixty pounds. For convenience in carrying, the vasa, cibaria, and other small articles were tied in a compact bundle to the end of a forked stick and carried over the shoulder. During a halt this rested on the ground and the soldier could lean on it for support. Upon a sudden call to battle he could quickly lay it down and be ready (expeditus) for the fray. The forked sticks were named Marius's mules (muli Mariani), after the great Marius who introduced their use. The collective personal baggage of the legionary was called his sarcina (see Figs. 14, 115).

f. Food.—The food provided for the legionary was coarse flour or unground wheat or barley. This he must grind for himself. The ration of food for one day was about two pounds. Every fifteen days he received two modii,—about two pecks. This monotonous diet was varied occasionally by meat and such food as he could find by foraging; and there was always the chance of bartering his rations for the greater variety carried by the traders (mercatores), who followed the army in large numbers and did a thriving business with the soldiers.

g. Work.—It has been truthfully said that Cæsar conquered Gaul as much with the spade and shovel as with the sword and spear. The legionary was above all a skilful digger, and besides the actual fighting, no small part of his labor was the almost daily task of fortifying the camp (castra munire). At least three hours were needed for this work. After this there were the watches to keep, the arms to burnish, and all the other busy routine of camp life.

h. Pay.—Cæsar paid his legionaries 12½ cents a day or about $45 a year. This was nearly the same amount that a day laborer could earn at Rome. The soldier was better off than the laborer merely by his shelter and by the certainty of employment. A deduction from the pay was made for food and equipments furnished by the state. Food, however, was very cheap, and a soldier in active
service could always expect a considerable increase in his income from booty and from the gifts of his general.

i. Discipline.—The martial spirit of the soldiers and their attention to duty were maintained and increased by appropriate rewards and punishments. Among the latter the most usual were withholding of wages, degradation in rank, corporal punishment, dismissal from the service, and, in cases of flagrant offences, death. A minor offence committed by a company of soldiers was punished by putting them on barley rations and giving them extra work on the fortifications. Among rewards may be mentioned public praise in the presence of the army, promotion in rank, increase in wages, or the presentation of a crown of leaves or grasses, which corresponded to the bestowal of a modern military decoration.

V. The Camp.

The success of Roman arms in hostile and barbarous countries was largely due to the custom of guarding against surprise by making fortified camps. The summer camp (castra aestiva) and the winter camp (castra hiberna) seem to have been alike in all essential features. In the latter, however, more provision was made for the comfort and convenience of the men. Instead of tents, huts of timber and earth, thatched with straw or covered with hides, were provided for them. The camp was regularly in the form of a square, often with rounded corners, but the lay of the land necessitated many variations from the regular plan (see Fig. 119). Of all the camps of Cæsar that have been discovered, but one, that on the Aisne (Bk. ii. 5), approaches a square form. The site was chosen with great care, and was always on high ground and near wood and water. An ideal spot was the slope of a hill with some kind of natural defence on the sides and rear, and with sufficient ground in front for the array of the legions. Such a position would give the Romans an opportunity for their favorite onslaught e superiore loco (cf. Bk. ii. 8; Bk. v. 50).

A small force of soldiers under centurions was sent ahead to select the site for the camp and stake it out. Two bisecting lines were drawn at right angles to each other to mark the four gates (see Fig. 119): the porta praetoria; facing the enemy; the porta decumana,
in the rear; the *porta principalis dextra*, on the right side; the *porta principalis sinistra*, on the left. Between the gates on the right and left ran a broad street, the *via principalis*. The forward half of the camp was allotted to the soldiers, the rear half to the officers and their attendants. All about the inside of the fortifications ran a broad space, at least one hundred feet wide, left vacant for baggage, evolutions of troops, and to protect the tents within from missiles that the enemy might hurl over the walls. Near the middle of the camp was an open square (*praetorium*), in which stood the general's tent (*tabernaculum ducis*). Before this was the altar on which he sacrificed, and on the left was a sodded mound of earth (*tribunal* or *suggestus*; cf. Bk. vi. 3), from which he pronounced judgment and addressed the assembled soldiers. The full details of the interior arrangement of Cæsar's camp are not known; but every officer, every cohort, every maniple, every man had his appointed place.

No night passed that the army was not housed in such a camp, fortified by wall and ditch. As soon as the soldiers arrive at the spot marked out for them, laying aside helmet, shield, and spear, they begin to dig the ditch (*fossa*), the earth from which is used in constructing the wall (*vallum*). If time permits, the sides of the embankment are covered with sods to hold the earth, or with bundles of brush (*fascines*). The ditch was usually nine feet wide and seven feet deep, the wall six to ten feet high, and wide enough on the top to afford good standing room for a soldier in action. An ordinary camp for a night's sojourn could be fortified in about three hours. If the camp was intended for more than one night (*castra stativa*), the fortifications were made stronger. The earth was made firmer by imbedding in it several lines of fascines parallel to the length, and on its top was set a breastwork of stakes (*valli* or *sudes*; cf. Bk. v. 40; Bk. vii. 72). This breastwork was about four feet high (see Fig. 118). Often wooden towers were erected on the walls (cf. Bk. v. 40; Bk. vii. 72), connected by galleries (*pontes*). The wall was made easy of access on the inner side by steps of brush. Sometimes small redoubts (*castella*) were built at a distance from the main camp. These were made on the same general plan.

After the camp had been fortified and the leathern tents (*tentoria, *pelles*) put up in their assigned places, guards were set at the gates, and the regular routine of camp life began.
Introduction.

VI. The March.

When the trumpet gave the signal (signum profectionis) to break up camp (castra movere), the soldiers struck their tents and packed their baggage (vasa conligere); at the second signal the baggage (impedimenta) was put on the pack-animals and in the wagons; at the third signal the army (agmen) began its march. The start was made usually at sunrise, but it might be made earlier on special occasion. The ordinary day's march lasted about seven hours, and covered about 15 miles; a forced march (magnum iter) about 25. Cæsar made many such, his men travelling immense distances with incredible swiftness.

When marching in the enemy's country, the main body of troops (agmen) protected itself by a vanguard (agmen primum) of cavalry, light-armed infantry, and scouts (exploratores), and by a rear guard (agmen novissimum). Sometimes individual spies (speculatores) were sent far in advance to reconnoitre the country and the movements of the enemy's forces.

The order of march of the main body depended on the nearness of the enemy. When no enemy was near, each legion marched in a single column and was followed by its baggage train (see Bk. ii. 17). In the neighborhood of the enemy, a single column of troops in fighting trim (expediti), i.e. without packs (sarcinae), followed directly after the vanguard; then came the baggage of the whole army, while the remaining forces acted as a rear guard (cf. Bk. ii. 19). Sometimes, for additional security against flank attacks, columns of infantry marched on each side of the baggage train, forming a hollow square (agmen quadratum; see Fig. 73). If, when marching in this order, the army was compelled to halt and defend itself, the soldiers, by facing about, presented to the foe a complete circle (orbis) of armed men. When the foe was near and the ground level and open, the march was sometimes made in three parallel columns, which, by a simple evolution, could be quickly changed to the triple battle line (acies triplex), the regular formation for an engagement.

Streams were crossed either by fords or bridges. Romans could cross deeper fords than we, for they had no powder to keep dry
Roman Military Affairs.

(cf. Bk. v. 18). Sometimes a line of cavalry was sent across the stream to break the force of the current (cf. Bk. vii. 56). Bridges were usually very simple affairs of logs covered with earth and brush, or of boats, but Cæsar's masterpiece of military engineering was his roadway forty feet wide with which he twice spanned the Rhine (Bk. iv. 17; Bk. vi. 9; see Figs. 59, 80).

VII. The Battle.

As has been said (V), the camp was so chosen that the ground in front of it would be suitable for battle. The usual order of battle was *triplux acies*. The first line of the legion was formed of four cohorts and each of the others of three. In each cohort the three maniples stood side by side, and in each maniple the two centuries stood one behind the other, varying in formation according to the depth of the line. As to the distance between the lines we have no definite information; nor even as to whether spaces were left between the cohorts. There were probably spaces between the different legions and doubtless between the centre (*media acies*), where the legionaries stood, and the wings (*cornua*), composed of auxiliaries and cavalry. Cæsar's lines were probably eight men deep. That would give each legion, estimated at 3600 men, a front of 180 legionaries, 45 for each cohort. When standing in open order for fighting, giving to each man the space necessary for the free use of his weapons, the front of each legion covered probably about 1000 feet, supposing the cohorts to stand close together; all this, however, is very uncertain.

When an attacking enemy had reached the right distance, the bugle sounded the charge, and the legions rushed forward, sword in sheath, and the front ranks with spears uplifted ready to hurl. When within range, the spears were thrown in a shower, the swords drawn, and a fierce charge made upon the mass of the foe, more or less disordered by the volley of spears. Along the front of the cohort rages a series of combats. The rear ranks press forward, throw their spears over the heads of their comrades, and take their places as the latter are wounded or weary. When the first line of cohorts has done its best, it makes room for the second line, re-forms, and gets breath for a new onset. Thus the battle goes on with the two
lines in almost constant motion. The enemy are given no rest and are worn out by the repeated charges of the cohorts. The third line, however, is held in reserve, and is brought into action only in case the other two prove insufficient.

The cavalry in the rear, or on the wings, stand ready when the enemy break and flee to ride down the fugitives and cut them to pieces.

There were times when troops had to be arranged in special formations. The most important of these were the *cuneus*, or wedge, the *testudo*, or tortoise, and the *orbis*, or circle. The first was an attack in column instead of in line, and was of use in cutting through and dividing an opposing battle line. The second, in which the shields overlapped above like shingles on a roof, was used especially in approaching and storming walls, or whenever the enemy were to be driven from a higher position (cf. Bk. ii. 6; see Fig. 68). The last formation was like a modern hollow square with officers in the centre—except that from the character of ancient fighting it was rather circular than rectangular. It was necessary when the attack came from all sides at once (see Bk. iv. 37).

VIII. THE SIEGE.

The Romans excelled in the art of taking walled cities, and this skill gave them an immense advantage in their warfare with semi-barbarous and ignorant peoples. There were three methods of doing this: first, by an immediate attack (*oppugnatio repentina*); second, by an active siege, brought to a close by an assault (*expugnatio*); third, by investment and blockade (*obsidio*).

If there seemed to be a chance of success, a city was stormed at once with no formal preparation (*ex itinere*). Its defenders were driven from the walls by a shower of missiles (Bk. iii. 25); the moat was filled with brush and earth; the assaulters with shields locked in a *testudo* attempted to break open the gates or scale the walls with ladders.

If this method proved unsuccessful or impossible, a regular siege was begun. The work of a regular siege centred about the mound or *agger*, and to its construction everything else was subordinated.
It was begun at a distance from the wall, very nearly out of reach of the missiles of the enemy. It was then gradually extended in the direction of the point to be attacked, and was at the same time gradually increased in height until on a level with the top of the wall, or even higher. At Avaricum the mound was 80 feet high (Bk. vii. 23–28). Its width was possibly 40 or 50 feet. It was made of earth and timber, and had connected galleries running through its various stories, through which the soldiers could move under cover (see Fig. 120). The men engaged in constructing the agger had to be protected from the enemy. Those who were building worked behind lines of plutei (see Figs. 130, 131), large standing shields, which were moved forward from time to time as the agger progressed. Those bringing material for the builders walked under rows of sheds called vineae (see Figs. 33, 120), extending the length of the agger. The workmen were protected also by archers and slingers and by engines of war (tormenta) standing behind lines of plutei or upon movable towers (turres). The latter stood on the agger or on either side of it, and advanced with it, and as they advanced increased in height story by story. As the workmen get nearer the wall the plutei will no longer protect them. Then they find refuge under strong sheds of wood called testudines or musculi, placed at the ends of lines of vineae.

When the mound has reached the wall, a breach is made through it for the final assault (expugnatio). Sometimes this was accomplished by undermining the wall, or it was pulled down from the top with huge iron hooks (falces murales). But the most common and most effective means was the battering ram (aries), a huge swinging beam from 60 to 100 feet long with a heavy mass of metal at one end, often shaped like a ram's head. This under a testudo, or in the lowest story of a tower, was brought with tremendous force against the opposing masonry. When the final assault was made, soldiers rushed in from every quarter, over the mound, through the breach, and from the movable towers, from whose highest stories drawbridges stretched to the walls.

Against these forms of assault the inhabitants used such means of resistance as they could. The most effective were masses of stone, thrown from the wall upon the works, and fire. To guard against
the latter, the besiegers had to cover all exposed woodwork with green hides. Battering rams and mural hooks were caught in slings and held fast, or drawn into the city, and mines were met by countermines. See Figs. 92, 93, 127.

When the location of the place was such that it could not be taken by such a siege as that described above, it was invested on every side (obsidio) and the inhabitants starved into submission. Among sieges of this kind were those of Gergovia (Bk. vii. 44-53) and Alesia (Bk. vii. 72-80), of which the last was one of the most remarkable of ancient times; see Figs. 97, 102.

IX. The Fleet.

Caesar mentions two principal classes of ships: *naves longae*, or war galleys, and *naves onerariae*, or freight and transport vessels. As compared with the former, the latter were shorter, broader, and deeper; hence could carry greater burdens and were more seaworthy. They depended mainly on their sails, but often had rowers in addition. The *naves actuariae* of Bk. v. 1 were a special class of transport vessel, with both sails and oars. Caesar used them to carry troops, horses, and munitions of war to Britain. See Figs. 48, 51, 52.

The war galley was long, low, and narrow; armed at the prow with a sharp beam (*rostrum*) shod with bronze, for ramming the enemy's ships; and propelled by one or two sails and a large force of rowers. The seamen (*nautae*) attended to the steering and the managing of the sails, and were freemen. The rowers (*remiges*) were usually slaves. Galleys in Caesar's time mostly had three banks of oars. The steering apparatus was two broad-bladed oars near the stern, one on each side. The speed of these vessels was remarkable, almost equalling that of a modern steamship.

The fighting men were the legionaries embarked for the purpose. In fact, there was no distinct naval service, as with us. A fleet was simply an army afloat, and was commanded by military officers. Before going into action *tormenta* were placed on the deck, and also a *turris*; the mast was taken down and the sails and tackle housed. See Fig. 62.
III.

GAUL AND THE GAULS.

1. THE GALIC PROVINCE.

The district upon whose government Cæsar entered in the spring of B.C. 58 consisted primarily of the two Gallic provinces, Cisalpine and Transalpine. Cisalpine Gaul was the northern portion of Italy, which several centuries earlier had been occupied by invaders from Gaul proper, and was not yet reckoned politically as a part of Italy; it was a wealthy, populous, and orderly country, the proconsul's main dependence for troops and supplies, and his regular winter residence. Transalpine or Narbonnese Gaul received its name from its capital, the Roman colony Narbo. It contained some thriving cities and peaceful districts; but as a whole it had been but recently brought under the authority of Rome, and was still essentially a foreign country. It comprised the whole coast of the Mediterranean from the Pyrenees to the Alps, having for its northern boundary an irregular and uncertain line, which separated the territory of the conquered nations of Gaul from the states which were still free. To these two provinces was added also Illyricum, which was a source of strength, but did not receive much of his attention.

The authority of the governor over his province was that of a military commander, whose power was not limited by the laws which protected the citizens of Rome. A few privileged cities or nations, such as the old Greek city Massilia, were wholly exempted from his authority; but all other parts of the province, including Roman colonies like Narbo, were liable to tribute and under the jurisdiction of the governor, though the rights of Roman citizens were secured to them. A consular army consisted regularly of two legions; to these were added auxiliaries, both foot and horse, but the governor had power to levy new legions as he required them. Thus we find that Cæsar had six legions in his campaign against the Nervii.

The free territories adjoining a Roman province were in no respect under the authority of the governor; but they were regarded as a legitimate field for his ambition, if there was any excuse for war, and
of such excuses there was usually no lack. The Roman policy was to enter into friendly relations with one of the parties or tribes in the free territory, load this with favors and privileges, and make use of it to overcome its rivals; in Gaul the Haedui, attached to Rome through some local rivalries, very well served this purpose.

Caesar's province, at its western extremity, reached to Spain, a country which had belonged to the empire for more than a hundred and fifty years. To the north lay four great nationalities, with all of which he was ultimately brought in contact. These were the Gauls proper, the Belgians, the Germans, and the Britons.

Free Gaul (Libera Gallia) at that time consisted of all the unsubdued territory between the Pyrenees and the ocean on the one side, and the Rhine and the Alps on the other, thus comprising, in general, modern France and Belgium, with parts of Holland, Germany, and Switzerland. The central portion of this territory, fully a half of it in extent and population, was occupied by the Gauls proper, or, as they called themselves, Celts, no doubt originally the same word. Southwest of these were the Aquitani, a separate people of Iberian race, cognate to the Spanish; of these, the Basques of the present day are the representatives. To the northeast lived the Belgians, whose ethnic affinities are much disputed; all that can be considered certain is that they were largely mixed with Germans. The Belgians occupied more territory than is now known as Belgium, including a considerable part of Holland on the one hand, and the northern belt of France on the other.

2. The Gallic People.

a. Origin and Early History.—The Gauls were a branch of the great nations of the Indo-European family that in prehistoric times occupied parts of Asia and the greater part of Europe. They were known to the ancients as Celts or Gauls, and this name was applied without discrimination to all the barbarous peoples of the unknown west of Europe. The term was rather geographical than racial. The Romans, though they had been brought into contact with the barbarians of the north by war and commerce for many centuries, made no distinction, before Caesar's time, between German and Gaul.
The Phœnicians, those pioneer traders and intrepid sailors of antiquity, had had commercial dealings with the Gauls at a very remote period. Several centuries later, but still at an early date (about B.C. 600), the Greeks had made a settlement near the mouth of the Rhône, which afterwards grew into the prosperous city of Massilia (Marseilles), and opened up some trade routes into the interior. Both Phœnicians and Greeks found the most powerful part of the Celts already well established in western Europe, and showing evidence of previous possession for a period going back of any assignable date.

The Celts had been for centuries a migratory and always a warlike people. These characteristics led them into many countries where they made settlements of more or less importance. Besides those who occupied Gaul proper, there were Iberian Celts (Celtiberi) in Spain, British Celts, Belgic Celts, Italian Celts in northern Italy, Celts in the Alps (notably the Helvetii), Illyrian Celts, and Asiatic Celts, who had settled in Asia Minor and were known as Galatians. It was to them, after they were Christianized, that Paul wrote his well-known epistle.

What knowledge the Greeks and Romans had of this powerful nation of barbarians was extremely vague. They had long hung like a dark storm-cloud on the northern frontier of both countries, and at intervals poured forth in overwhelming and destructive numbers. Once they spread desolation and dismay through Greece, and all but succeeded in plundering the rich temple of Delphi. In B.C. 390 Rome was destroyed by these same barbarians, and in B.C. 102 it was only the military genius of C. Marius that spared Italy a similar visitation.

Long before the time of Cæsar, the Romans had succeeded in subduing the Gauls south of the Alps, making the prosperous and orderly province of Cisalpine Gaul, as related above. Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum were more recent additions to the empire, and were less thoroughly subdued and civilized. They had been finally conquered by Q. Fabius Allobrogicus. All to the north had as yet been unexplored and uninvaded by Roman arms. The Gauls, according to circumstances and location, showed at this time various degrees of civilization. Those to the south and west, being nearer to the refinement of the province, had made rapid strides, had built many
flourishing cities, enjoyed prosperous and on the whole peaceful commu-
nity life, and practised the arts and commerce. But those farther
removed in the east and north, and the Britons, were still in a semi-
savage condition. Cæsar’s expeditions among these are somewhat
like similar military expeditions that nations are sending in our day
to explore and subdue unknown Africa; and the trading posts
established among them by the enterprising Greek merchants of
Massilia, like the business ventures formerly sent among the
Indians.

b. Character and Customs.—The Gauls are described as tall and
of great physical strength, with a fair skin and blonde hair, which
they often reddened by artificial means. Men of rank and of author-
ity wore the hair and beard long. The more barbarous tribes gave
themselves a terrible aspect by painting hideous devices on their half-
naked bodies. Their voices were rough and harsh, their words few,
and their language obscure and figurative. Disparaging others,
boastful of themselves, arrogant, fond of idleness, they were very
quarrelsome and always ready to fight, to relieve the monotony of
their existence, if for no other reason. They were, however, high-
spirited and brave to utter recklessness and contempt for death.

The Gallic women are described by an ancient writer as the most
beautiful of all barbarian women and as thrifty housewives. He
adds that, aided by his wife, who is much more formidable than he,
the Gaul will hold his own in any conflict. The Roman invaders
were often witnesses of the heroism of these veritable Amazons.

The Gauls lacked stability of character, and are often criticized by
Cæsar for their fickleness; they were also very avaricious and given
to superstitions. On the other hand, they were not vicious, but
naturally of a simple and teachable disposition. They were very
quick to learn and adopt whatever useful arts their neighbors brought
to them. Their love of freedom was passionate; but their long years
of wandering had not developed in them that feeling of national
unity and that love of the soil that we include under the term
patriotism.

The life of the less civilized tribes was rude in the extreme. Their
houses were little more than huts of clay and wood, thatched with
straw and branches. The dwelling was open to daylight by the door
alone, and had little or no furniture. Their beds were heaps of straw or furs. War was their principal occupation. They gave some attention to agriculture, raising the coarser grains, the better sort of fruits and vegetables being unknown to them. They also had large flocks and herds. They ate but little bread, but large quantities of meat, which they are described as cutting with their swords and eating in a ravenous manner.

The Gauls knew something of the arts and sciences. They did some weaving, and those on the coast had skill in shipbuilding and in navigation, and the Aquitanians were skilful miners. Their attempts at art were mainly imitations of what other lands brought to them. For example, they made more or less successful attempts to imitate the artistic coins of the Greeks and Romans. Several illustrations of Gallic coins may be found in the text (see Figs. 29, 64, 66, 81, etc., etc.). Caesar was the first to bring to the world authentic information about most of these matters, and the student is referred for farther interesting details to his narrative (see especially Bk. vi).

c. Dress. — The details of Gallic dress are not fully known. Like most semi-civilized or savage people, they were very fond of bright colors and finery. They wore much jewelry — both men and women — of gold, if they could afford it, otherwise of bronze. Especially characteristic was the heavy collar of twisted gold (torquis, see Fig. 77), worn about the neck. The principal garments were a short, bright-colored tunic, either with or without sleeves, confined by a girdle of silver or gold, and trousers (bracae). Over the shoulders was worn a short cloak (sagum) often of fine material and of gorgeous color. The character of the costume depended upon the rank and wealth of the wearer. The feet were protected by shoes or by soles of wood strapped on with leathern thongs. See Fig. 28.

d. Arms and Military Tactics. — As has been said, a Gaul's chief business was war. He was always a soldier and, whether in youth or in old age, hastened to war with the same ardor. His principal weapon was a long two-edged sword, hanging from an iron or steel chain at the right side. It was adapted for striking and cutting, but not so much for thrusting, and was but poorly tempered. This in itself gave the Romans a great advantage through the superiority of their arms. The Gallic bronze sword came into use later,
Introduction.

and was a much better weapon. In Cæsar’s time the iron sword probably still predominated. They had also various kinds of pikes, lances, and javelins, some made with peculiar waving and twisted blades to cause an uglier wound. Many weapons are mentioned with special names, but they are not capable of identification. Bows and slings, too, were used by them.

Ordinarily the Gaul wore no defensive armor. In fact, the common soldier went into battle with body almost bare. But the principal warriors wore chain mail (see Fig. 86), which is said to be a Gallic invention. At first this was made of iron. Later, better and lighter suits were made of bronze, and were sometimes adorned with silver and gold. The usual means for defence were the helmet and the shield. Shields were of various shapes and sizes and were adorned with figures of animals, etc., to suit the caprice or wealth of the owner, but the designs were of ancient origin. The helmets were surmounted with great horns, forms of birds or beasts, etc., designed to terrify the enemy (see Fig. 11). These also were, no doubt, survivals of earlier barbarism.

In battle they placed much reliance on their cavalry and in Northern Gaul and Britain on their war chariots. The infantry was arranged in great masses of men in close order, like the old Greek phalanx, with a line of shields before and on the sides, and sometimes with a roof of shields overhead, something like the testudo formation of the Romans. When they had drawn near, champions were accustomed to leave the ranks, and, brandishing their arms, challenge the foe to single combat. The first onset of the Gallic phalanx was terrific and often swept everything before it; but if that could be withstood, the advantage lay with the open and pliable order of the legion. In the latter every soldier was called into action, but in the former the great bulk of the Gallic warriors was practically imprisoned in the mass, and only those on the outside could use their arms.

e. Government.—The Gauls were not a single nation, but a group of nations or tribes, about sixty in number, united by a very slight bond of consanguinity and common religion. These tribes, which may be loosely compared to those of the North American Indians, though most of them were at a very much higher degree of civilization, varied greatly in extent and power, the smaller ones often main-
Gaul and the Gauls.

Attaining only a nominal independence under the protection of some larger one. They were for the most part ruled by a turbulent and oppressive aristocracy, sometimes with an elected chief magistrate. But sometimes an ambitious leader, like Orgetorix, succeeded in establishing for a time a kingly power. Thus the several states were torn by hostile parties, and were at the same time grouped into national factions, under the lead of the more powerful states. At the time of Cæsar, royalty had been almost abolished, and yearly magistrates (vergobrets) were elected instead. Every year representatives from the different states met in assembly, and questions of national policy were discussed. Owing to the violent and excitable natures of the Gauls, these assemblies often ended in tumultuous scenes of disorder.

At the commencement of war, a call to arms was sounded, to which old and young responded. The last man to appear was put to death with tortures in the presence of the assembled people.

_f. Religion._—_The Druids._—Cæsar says that the Gauls were devoted to religious matters. They were under the control of a class of priests known as Druids, who acted not only as priests, but also as arbiters and judges. By them was treasured the religious and philosophic lore of the Gauls, and to them the Gallic youth went for instruction, some of them remaining in training as long as twenty years. One of their most important doctrines was that of the transmigration of souls. Belief in immortality gave the Gauls a contempt for death which enabled them to face the greatest dangers without flinching.

The Druids gave their instructions and performed their bloody sacrifices in the depths of the forest. The oak and the mistletoe were sacred in their eyes. The mysterious rites of their worship are not well known, but many cruel and horrible practices are attributed to them by ancient writers, among them human sacrifices. Cæsar mentions these, but did not know of their actual occurrence from personal observation.

The principal religious observances of the Gauls were gradually abolished under Roman rule, but many of them were ‘baptized’ into Christianity and survive to-day in various modified forms as a part of the popular religion.
The strange monuments of stone found in many lands, called 'cromlechs' and 'menhirs,' popularly supposed to be Druidic monuments, are far older than the Druids and have nothing to do with their religion.

Caesar gives the first authentic information about the Druids in his narrative (Bk. vi. 13–16).


Caesar left Gaul subdued and open to Roman occupation and greed. The country was rapidly colonized and civilized. Augustus divided it into four provinces and established the Roman authority on a firm basis. Only one great patriotic uprising occurred after Caesar's time, though the Gauls took part in the contests later for the imperial throne. In course of time the very language of Gaul became Latin, and this became the parent of modern French. In the fifth century tribes of Germans began to make inroads on the Roman domain, and the Franks, under Clovis as king, firmly established themselves in the north. Their power spread; they subjugated the inhabitants, and gave their name to the country, which it bears to this day,—France, the lands of the Franks. There were many social and political changes after this time, but the same life flowed on from Roman Gaul to modern France. The French still display many of the characteristics of the ancient Gauls; they live in substantially the same limits; many of their mountains, cities, and streams still bear the old names.

IV.

The Britons.

With Caesar begins the history of England. He found there a Celtic people, differing but little from those on the continent, save that they were more barbarous. What the condition or history of the British Isles was before Caesar's invasion is wrapped in obscurity. A few Greek writers refer vaguely to them, and there was an equally vague knowledge of the smaller islands lying near. Even Caesar
The Germans.

The Germans first appear in history in the campaigns of the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 113–101), the latter of whom were undoubtedly of Germanic origin. The Romans obtained their first considerable knowledge of the country from Cæsar. The ancient limits assigned to it were less on the west and south, but indefinitely greater on the east and north, than the modern. In those directions it was terra incognita to the Romans, and always remained so. They never did more than subdue the border tribes along the Rhine and Danube. Cæsar had relatively little to do with the Germans, but made such investigations as he could, the results of which are succinctly given in his narrative (Bk. iv. 1–3; Bk. vi. 21–28). The next account, in greater detail, was given by Tacitus in his “Germania,” who corroborates Cæsar in all important particulars.

The Germans were much less civilized than most of the Gauls. They were just at the end of the nomadic stage, and were settling down and beginning community life. Their last onward nomadic movement was that under Ariovistus, which it was Cæsar’s fortune to arrest (Bk. i. 31–54). They were a more manly and vigorous race than the Gauls, warlike, independent, and virtuous. The country is described as a dismal land, covered for the most part with forests and swamps, producing little food, and subject to almost constant winter.
VI.

THE CAMPAIGNS IN GAUL.

The campaigns of Cæsar in Gaul lasted through eight seasons (B.C. 58–51), and are told in eight books,—the last written by Hirtius, an officer of Cæsar,—each book containing the operations of a single year. The following is a brief outline:

Book I. B.C. 58. Cæsar checks the attempt of the Helvetians to settle in Western Gaul, and, after a bloody defeat, forces the remnant to return to their own territory. He then engages with a powerful tribe of Germans, who had made a military settlement in Eastern Gaul, and drives them, with their chief, Ariovistus, back across the Rhine.

Book II. B.C. 57. A formidable confederacy of the northern populations of Gaul is suppressed, with the almost complete extermination of the bravest Belgian tribe, the Nervii, in a battle which seems to have been one of the most desperate of all that Cæsar ever fought. In this campaign the coast towns of the west and northwest (Brittany) also are reduced to submission.

Book III. B.C. 56. After a brief conflict with the mountaineers of the Alps, who attacked the Roman armies on their march, the chief operations are the conquest of the coast tribes of Brittany (Veneti, etc.), in a warfare of curious naval engineering in the shallow tide-water inlets and among the rocky shores. During the season, the tribes of the southwest (Aquitani), a mining population, allied to the Iberians or Basques, are reduced by one of Cæsar's officers.

Book IV. B.C. 55. An inroad of the Germans into Northern Gaul is repulsed, and Cæsar follows them by a bridge of timber hastily built across the Rhine. Returning, he crosses to Britain in the early autumn for a visit of exploration.

Book V. B.C. 54. The partial conquest of Britain (second invasion) is followed by various movements in Northern Gaul, in which the desperate condition of the Roman garrisons is relieved after serious losses by the prudent and brave conduct of Labienus and Quintus Cicero.

Book VI. B.C. 53. Cæsar makes a second brief expedition across the Rhine against the Germans. Some general disturbances are quelled, and Northern Gaul is reduced to peace.
VII.

READING COURSES.

In order to make a wider acquaintance with the Gallic War easy and practicable, and, further, to bring greater variety and interest to the narrative for teachers and students alike, the following reading courses are suggested, any one of which covers an amount equivalent to the first four books.

Course I.

General Description of Gaul, Bk. i. ch. 1.
The War against the Belgian Confederacy, Bk. ii.
The Campaign against the Usipetes and Tencteri, and the First Invasion of Germany, Bk. iv. chs. 1-19.
The Second Invasion of Germany, and the Customs of the Gauls and Germans, Bk. vi. chs. 9-29.
The General Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix, Bk. vii.

Course II.

General Description of Gaul, Bk. i. ch. 1.
The Campaign against the Helvetii, Bk. i. chs. 2-29.
The First Invasion of Britain, Bk. iv. chs. 20-36.
The Second Invasion of Britain, Bk. v. chs. 1-23.
The General Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix, Bk. vii.
Introduction.

Course III.

General Description of Gaul, Bk. i. ch. i.
The Campaign against the Helvetii, Bk. i. chs. 2–29.
The Campaign against Ariovistus, Bk. i. chs. 30–54.
The Campaign against the Veneti, Bk. iii. chs. 7–16.
Crassus in Aquitania, Bk. iii. chs. 23–27.
The Expedition against the Morini and Menapii, Bk. iii. chs. 28, 29.
The First Invasion of Britain, Bk. iv. chs. 20–36.
The Second Invasion of Britain, Bk. v. chs. 1–23.
The Revolt of Ambiorix, Bk. v. chs. 24–53.
Pursuit of Ambiorix and the Punishment of the Eburones, Bk. vi chs. 29–44.

Course IV.

General Description of Gaul, Bk. i. ch. i.
The Campaign against the Helvetii, Bk. i. chs. 2–29.
The Campaign against Ariovistus, Bk. i. chs. 30–54.
The Customs of the Gauls and Germans, Bk. vi. chs. 11–29.
The Campaign against the Veneti, Bk. iii. chs. 7–16.
The Revolt of Ambiorix, Bk. v. chs. 24–53.
The Pursuit of Ambiorix, and the Punishment of the Eburones, Bk. vi. chs. 29–44.
The Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix, Bk. vii. chs. 1–11.
The Siege of Alesia, Bk. vii. chs. 68–90.

Course V.

General Description of Gaul, Bk. i. ch. i.
The War against the Belgian Confederacy, Bk. ii.
The Campaign against the Usipetes and Tencteri, and the First Invasion of Germany, Bk. iv. chs. 1–19.
The Second Invasion of Germany, and the Customs of the Gauls and Germans, Bk. vi. chs. 9–29.
The First Invasion of Britain, Bk. iv. chs. 20–36.
The Second Invasion of Britain, Bk. v. chs. 1–23.
Directions for Reading.


VIII.

DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

As "Caesar," though in many respects a book for advanced students, is often the first Latin classic put into the learner's hands, it may be well to give a few hints as to the method of study.

1. Before beginning to read, the learner should be familiar with the forms of Inflection, the simpler rules of Agreement and Construction of Cases and Moods, the use of Tenses, and the Definitions of common grammatical terms such as Sentence, Subject, Predicate, Object, Transitive and Intransitive, Phrase, Clause, and the like.

2. Notice at once the inflectional terminations, so that the number, case, tense, person, etc., — which show the corresponding relations of the words and ideas to each other, — may be present to your mind. If the form of the word gives several possibilities, hold them all in your mind, so far as may be, till something occurs in the progress of the sentence to settle the doubt.

3. Always try to take in the ideas in that order in which the Latin presents them. Read every word as if it were the last on a page and you had to turn over without being able to turn back. The mind soon becomes accustomed to the order of any language, as we see by the constant and almost unnoticed inversions of common speech and poetry. If, however, you are obliged to turn back, begin again at the beginning of the sentence and proceed as before. The greatest difficulty to a beginner is his inability to remember the first parts of a complex idea. This difficulty can often be lessened by jotting down, in a loose kind of English, the words as they come in the Latin. In this way it is often easy to see what a string of words must mean, though we should never say anything like it in English.

4. Don't try to translate formally until you have got a complete idea of some integral part of the sentence. It makes nonsense
to render words mechanically, without thinking the corresponding ideas.

5. From the outset, notice that the emphatic position of words plays a most important part in Latin writing, and try to feel the emphasis of position as you read. (See § 595-601 (343-346), and compare B. 348-351; G. 671-687; H. 663-685 (559-573); H-B. 620-630.)

As an illustration of § 5 we append a translation of the first chapter of Book II with especial reference to the emphasis indicated by the order. As the translation is made expressly to bring out explicitly the force of order, it should not be taken as a model of desirable translation. Such a translation as is here given forces the emphasis on the attention more than is perhaps natural in English. The force is all present in the Latin, but in English it may often be left to be brought out by the context or by some kindred emphasis which the English substitutes. A short, easy passage from Book V is also given without comment for study and practice.

And BEING 1 thus in Hither 2 Gaul, as I have shown above, Caesar 3 had frequent 4 rumors brought to him, 5 and despatches 6 also from Labienus 7 continued to inform him that all 8 the Belgæ, 9 who constituted a third part 10 of [the whole of] Gaul, as I had [previously] stated, were conspiring [for an attack] against the Roman gov-

Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliâ, ita uti suprà dēmōnstrāvi-
mus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, litterīisque item Labiēni certior fiēbat omnīs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā popu-
lum Rōmānum consūrēre obsi-

1 The emphasis on being binds this part of the narrative with the situation left at the end of the last book, as if it were "Caesar went to Hither Gaul,—and while he was engaged there."
2 Opposed to Farther Gaul, where the troops were.
3 The main subject of discourse.
4 The repetition of the stories is the significant fact, "he kept hearing," but at the same time the rumors are opposed to Labienus's despatches.
5 An emphasis continued in Latin from Caesar, the main person, but lost in English. See § 598. l (344. l); H-B. 627. 2.
6, 7 Opposed to the rumors.
8, 9 Both words together the subject of discourse, but the adjective most prominent, "the entire body of the Belgæ."
10 Opposed to the whole, as one might say, "a full third of the whole."
Directions for Reading.

**ernment** and exchanging hostages. That for **this conspiracy** the reasons were **these**, namely: in the first place, because **they were afraid** (i.e. in their own minds) that when Gaul was **all subdued**, our army would be brought against **them**; and in the second place, because **some** of the **Gauls** (i.e. from outside) were tampering with them. These Gauls were **partly** those who were disturbed that the **Roman** army should pass the **winter** and get a footing in Gaul, just as they had been unwilling that the **Germans** should **stay any longer** there, and **partly** those who from [mere] fickleness **désque inter sè dare. Coniū-

randī hās esse causās: primum quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Gallīā ad ēōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, — partim qui, ut Germānōs diūtius in Gallīā versārī nōlue-

rant, ita populī Rōmānī exerci-

tum hiemāre atque inveterāscre

in Gallīā molestē ferebant; par-

tim qui mōbilitāte et levitāte

desque inter se dare. Coniurandi hās esse causās: primum quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Gallīā ad ēōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, — partim qui, ut Germānōs diūtius in Gallīā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercītum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Gallīā molestē ferebant; partim qui mōbilitāte et levitāte

11 Here not the conspiracy itself, but the aim of it is the most important part of the idea.
12 The main subject of discourse, “now this conspiracy, the reports said,” etc.
13 The difference between “the reasons why were these” and “these were the reasons why” is obvious. Cæsar might say either.
14 A peculiar emphasis not directly carried out. Cicero would very likely have been more rhetorical and have opposed “fear” to “being tampered with.” But Cæsar changes his point of view in the course of the sentence; and, as if he had said ipsi in the first member, opposes to the motives of the Belgae themselves, the Gauls by whom outside influence was brought to bear.
15, 16 The completion of the business now in hand is first emphasized, then the business itself.
17 Cæsar brings out the whole force of the idea by opposing “them” to “Gaul,” which has not before been emphatic, but which is now made so by being contrasted with the Belgians; cf. Chiasmus, § 598. f (344. f); B. 350. 11, e; G. 682 and r.; H. 666. 2 (562); H-B. 628.
18 See note 14.
19 Opposed to the “Germans.”
20 Opposed to “stay any longer.”
21 The English emphasis here represents the position of the two clauses, relative and antecedent.
22 Opposed to the “Romans.”
23 See note 20.
24 Notice that the view of the first party is a rational idea seriously thought out, to which implied state of mind the inconstancy of the second party is opposed.
and unsteadiness were [always] eager for new forms of government; [they were stimulated] by some also besides, who, inasmuch as in Gaul regal power was regularly usurped by the more powerful and by those who had means to employ soldiers, could not so easily succeed in such usurpations under our imperial control.  

A natural consequence of their character. For no good reason they got tired of the established order and wanted a change.

Opposed to other countries in which the government was more stable.
The two means of attaining regal power.
And consequently wanted to rebel.
The Latin often compresses into an indefinite, and to us unemphatic, word (as rem here) a whole important idea. In such cases the true emphasis appears in English only when a suitable descriptive word is substituted for the vague one according to our way of saying things.

This control, of course, tended towards establishing order.

V. 23. After taking hostages he led his army back to the sea [where he] found the ships repaired. Having launched them, inasmuch as he had a great number of captives, and some of the ships had been lost in the storm, he proceeded to transport his army in two voyages. And [fortunately] it so happened that out of so many ships in so many voyages not a single one was lost that carried soldiers either that year or the year before, while of the ships which were sent back to him empty from the continent after discharging the soldiers of the first voyage, as well as of the seventy others that Labienus had built later, very few reached their destination. Almost all the rest were driven back.

Obsidibus acceptis exercitum deductit ad mare, nāvis invenit refectās. His dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, et nōn nūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre instituit. Āc sic accidit uti ex tantō nāvium numerō, tot nāvigationibus, neque hōc neque superiōre annō ālla omnīnō nāvis quae militēs portāret désiderāretur; at ex eis quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur, [et] priōris commeātīs expositīs militibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae fērē omnēs réicerentur.
THE GALLIC WAR.

BOOK I.

CAMPAIGNS AGAINST THE HELVETII AND ARIOVISTUS. B.C. 58.

The Nations of Gaul.

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partis tres; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam qui ipsōrum lingua Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hi omnēs lingua, institutīs, légibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana dividit.1

Their Characters Compared.

Hōrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximique sunt Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt,2 quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētii quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedēunt, quod fērē cotidiānīs proelīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suis fīnibus eōs prohibit aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

Cf. 1 dīvīsa, l. i.—2 incolunt, l. 2.
The Territories of Each.

Eorum ūna pars,\(^1\) quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, ini-
tium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquānis et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmis Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad in-
feriōrem partem flūminis Rhēni, spectant in septentri-
ōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montis et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet;\(^2\) spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septen-
triōnēs.

Orgetorix with his Fellow Nobles Forms a Plan to Invade Gaul.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē\(^3\) nōbilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgni cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvi-
tāti persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exīrent : perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Gal-
liae imperiō potīrī.

He Persuades his People, the Helvetii.

Id hoc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur:\(^4\) ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, qui agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, qui est inter Sēquānos et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, qui prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit.

They Assent, being Warlike and feeling Cramped by their Narrow Limits.

Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quà ex parte homi-

Cf.\(^1\) partis, p. 1, l. 1. —\(^2\) pertinēnt, l. 5. —\(^3\) longissimē, 1, 7. —\(^4\) continētur, l. 2.
nēs bellandi cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitudine autem hominum et prō gloriā belli atque fortitūdinis, angustōs sē finīs habēre arbitrābantur, qui in longitūdinem milia passuum ccxl, in latitūdinem clxxx patēbant.

They Employ Two Years in Preparations.

3. His rebus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī constituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparaēre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum, coēmere, sēmentis quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frumentī suppeteret, cum proximīs civitātibus pācem et amicitiam cōnfīrmaēre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiēndās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectionēm lēge cōnfīrmanτ.

Orgetorix Conspírēs with Other Gallic Chiefs.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiēndās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi légātionem ad civitātis suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Cas-ticō, Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et a senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in civitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduo, frātrī Diviciāci, qui eō tempore principātum in civitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnā-rētur persuādet, eīque filiām suam in mātrimōnium dat.

His Arguments.

Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quīn tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possent; sē suīs cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōn-

Cf. finibus, p. 2, l. 3.— pertinent, 2, 5.— proximī, 1, 9.— persuāsit, 2, 14.— obtinēre, 2, 1.
The Gallic War.

firmat. Hāc őrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissi-
mōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

Orgetorix is Brought to Trial.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiis per indicium ōnūntiāta. Mōribus
5 suis Orgetorīgem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt. Dam-
nātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut ĭgni cremārētur.

He Escapes.

Dīē cōnstitūtā causae dictionis Orgetorix ad iūdicium
omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique
coēgit, et omnīs clientīs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrūm māgnun
numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam
diceret sē ēripuit.

His Death.

Cum civitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs īús suum exsequī
cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs
cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut
Helvētīi arbitrantur, quīn ipse sībi mortem cōnscīverit.

Still the Helvetii Persist in the Attempt.

5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi id quod cōn-
stituerant facere cōnantarū; ut ē finibus suīs exeqiū
ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua
omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua
privāta aedīficia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod
sēcum portāturī erant, combūrunt, ut — domum reditiōnis
spē sublātā — parātiōres ad omnia pericula subeunda essent;
trium mēnsium molīta cibāria sībi quemque domō efferre
iubent.

— coēgit, l. 9. — cōnārētur, l. 13. — exīrent, 2, 14. — frūmentī,
3, 10.
Other Tribes are Persuaded to Join them.

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimis utī eōdem üsi cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vicisque exūstīs, ūnā cum eis proficiscantur¹; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum iccoluerant et in agrum Nóricum trānsierant Nóreiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

Two Routes for Invasion Described.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singuli carri² dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut

Cf.¹ proficiscendum, p. 3, l. 7. — ² carrōrum, 3, 8.
The Gallic War.

facile perpauci prohibère possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, qui nūper pācāti erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trānsītūr.

5 Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva.

They Decide to March through the Province.


Cæsar Resolves to Stop them, and Destroys the Bridge near Geneva.

7. Cæsārī cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnāri, mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī, et quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliām ulteriorēm con- tendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriorē legiō ūna), pontem qui erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindī.

They Ask Cæsar’s Permission.

Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civītātīs, cūius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verudoctius principem locum obtinēbant, qui dicerent sībi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prō- vinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut ēius voluntāte id sībi facere liceat.

Cf. prohibent, p. 1, l. 14.—2 trānsierant, 5, 4.—8 proximīs, 3, 10. —4 coēgit, 4, 9.—6 cōnantur, 4, 17.—6 proficiscantur, 5, 3.—7 lēgā- tiōnem, 3, 14.—8 itinera, 5, 6.
Caesar Unwilling, but Puts them off to Gain Time.

Caesar, quod memoria tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occasīum exercitumque ėius ab Helvētiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faci-undi,1 temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficīō existimābat.2 Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset dum militēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent,8 lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad delīberandum sūmptūrum; si quid vellent, ad Íd. Apr. reverterentur.

Caesar Constructs Fortifications to Stop the Helvetii.

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque 10 qui ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ālacū Lemannō, qui in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, qui finis Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perducit. Eō opere perfectō 4 praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō 15 facilius, si sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

The Helvetii Attempt to Pass, but are Repulsed.

Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituērat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum reverterunt,5 negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rō- mānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, si vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētii, ēa spē dēiectī, 20 nāvibus iūnectis ratibusque complūribus factis, aliī vadis8 Rhodanī, quā7 minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius8 noctū, si perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsi, hoc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

Cf. 1 facere, p. 6, l. 25.—2 existimābant, 6, 9.—8 conveniant, 6, 12. —4 perficere, 3, 23.—6 reverterentur, l. 9.—6 vadō, 6, 4.—7 quā, 5, 8. —8 saepe, 7, 8.
Through the Influence of Dumnorix, a Hæduan, they are Allowed to Pass through the Sequanian Territory.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quà Sēquanīs invitīs¹ propter angustīās² īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeuuum mittunt, ut ēō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorix grātīā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plurīrum⁵ poterat et Helvētiis erat amīcus, quod ex ēa civitāte Orgetorīgis filiām in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgni adductus novis ōibus studēbat et quam plurīmās civitātīs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finīs suōs Helvētiōs īre patientur,⁴ obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficīt: Sēquani, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Cāesar Opposes this Movement also.

10. Caesari renūntiātur Helvētiis esse in animō⁶ per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeuōrum iter in Santōnum finīs facere, qui nōn longē⁶ ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in Prōvinciā. Id si fieret,⁷ intellegēbat māgnō cum perīculō⁸ prōvinciae futūrum ut homīnēs bellicōsōs, populi Rōmāni inimīcōs, locīs patenterūs⁹ maximēque frūmentariīs finitimos habēret.

He Takes Active Measures.

Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōnī¹⁰ quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficīt; ipse in Italiam māgnīs itineribus contemdit duāsque ibi legiōnēs conscribit, et trēs quae circum

Aquiléiam hiemabant ex hibernis éducit, et, quà proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpis erat, cum his quinque legiônibus ire contendit.

Some Tribes Resist his March, but he Crosses the Rhone with his Army.

Ibi Ceutrones et Gráioeci et Caturiges locis superióribus occupatís itinere exercitum prohibère cónantur. Complúri-bus his proelíis pulsis,² ab Oceló, quod est citeriórís prövin-ciae extrémmum, in finis Vocontiörum ulteriöris prövinciae dié septimö pervenit;³ inde in Allobrogum finis, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiávös exercitum dúcit. Hí sunt extrë prövinciam tránse Rhodanum primi.

The Helvetii Commit Depredations on their March, and Several Tribes Ask for Cæsar’s Help against them.


The Helvetii Attempt to Cross the Saône.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finis Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrēdibili lēnitāte ita ut oculus in utram partem fluat iūdicāri nōn possit. Id Helvētii ratibus ac lintribus iūncīs trānsībant. Ubi per fiveplōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partīs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse,¹ quartam fērē partem cītrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertīā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus,² ad eam partem per vēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

Caesar Cuts to Pieces a Part (the Tigurini), Who had not yet Crossed.

10 Eōs impeditōs et inopīnantīs addgressus māgnam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās³ silvās abdīderunt. Is pāgus appellābatur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divisa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset,⁴ patrum nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et eīus exercitum sub iugum miserat.

Thus he Wipes out a Long-standing Disgrace.

Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars civitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat,⁵ ea princeps poenas persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar

Cf.¹ trādūxerant, p. 9, 1.12. — ² proficisci, 6, 15. — ³ proximum, 9, 1.⁴ exīre, 5, 7. — ⁵ īnferre, 2, 24.
nôn sōlum pūblicās sed etiam pribās iniūriās ultus est; quod ēius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proelīō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

Caesar Crosses the Saōne.


The Helvetii Send an Embassy.

Helvētiī repentīnō ēius adventū¹ commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant,² ut flūmen trānsīrēnt, illum unō diē fēcisse intellegērent,³ lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis Dīvīcō princeps fuit, qui bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Dīvīco's Speech.

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: 'Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiīs ubi ēōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bellō persequī perseverāret, reminiscērētur et vēteris incommodi populī Rōmānī et pristīnae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum ēi quī flūmen trānsissent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribu- eret aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus māioribusque suis didicisse ut magis virtūte contendorēnt quam dolō aut insidiās niterentur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et internecīōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.'

Cf. ¹ adventū, p. 6, l. 21. — ² cōnficiendās, 3, 11. — ³ intellegebat, 8, 17. — ⁴ cōnstitūtā, 4, 7. — ⁵ auxilium, 9, 15.
Cæsar's Reply.

14. His Cæsar ita respondit: 'Eo sibi minus dubitatiōnis dari quod eas rés quās légāti Helvētii commemorassent memorīā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidissent; quī si alicuius iniūriae sibi conscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavere; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum a sē intellegērat quā rē timēret, neque sīne causā timendum putāret. Quod si veteris contumēliae oblīvisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptassent, quod Haeduūs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Čonsuēsse enim deōs immortālis, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, his secundiōrēs interdum rés et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.'

He Proposes Terms, Which are not Accepted.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ab eis sibi dentur, uti ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduūs dē iniūriis quās ipsīs sociisque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eis pācem esse factūrum.' Dīvīcō respondit: 'Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suīs instītūtōs esse uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, ĉonsuērint; ēius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem.' Hōc respondō datō discessit.

Slight Reverse of Caesar's Cavalry.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociis coāctum habēbat, praemittit qui videant quās in partis hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidiōs novissimum agmen insecūti aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et pauci dē nostrīs cadunt.

The Helvetii Move on; Caesar Follows.

Quō proelīō sublātī Helvētii, quod quingentīs equītibus tantam multitudinem equītum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissīmō agmine proelīō nostrōs lacessere coeptūrunt. Caesar suōs ā proelīō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praeuentiā hostem rapīnīs [pābulātiōnibus] populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnīs milibus passuum interesset.

The Haeduī Neglect to Furnish Grain.

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum quod essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitāre. Nam propter frigora, quod Galliā sub septentriōnibus (ut ante dictum est) posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis māgna cópia suppētēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvēxerat propterea minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētii āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcēre Haeduī; cōnferrī, comportāri, adesse dicere.

Caesar Summons their Chiefs and Upbraids them.

Ubi sé diūtius dūci intellēxit et diem instāre quō diē frūmentum militibus métiōri oportēret, convocātis eōrum principibus, quōrum mágnam cópiam in castris habēbat, — in

his Diviciācō et Liscō, qui summō magistrātui praeerat quem 5 vergobretum appellant Haeduī, qui creātur annuus et vitae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, — graviter eōs accusat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agris sūmi posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eis nōn

Cf. 1 intellegēbat, p. 8, l. 17. — 2 gravius, 12, 14. — 3 sumptūrum, 7, 8.
sublevētūr; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum prēcibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravior quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

Liscus Explains the Situation: a Party Opposed to the Romans Prevents the Supply.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: 'Esse nōn nūllōs quōrum auctōri-tās apūd plēbem plurimum valeat, quī privātim plūs possint quam ipsi magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrāti-
ōne multitudinem dētērēre nē frūmentum cōnferant quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūī. Ab eisdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus ēnūntiāri; hōs sē coērсērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus Caesari ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuissē.'

Liscus Privately Discloses the Ambition and Treachery of Dumnorix, who Favors the Helvetii.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Lisci Dumnorigem, Diviciācī frātrem, désignāri sentiēbat; sed, quod pluribus praeam-i-bus eās rēs iactāri nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dix-
erat. Dicit liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab alīis quaerīt; reperīt esse vēra: 'Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summā audāciā, māgnā apūd plēbem propter liberaλītātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūris anūs portōria 25

Cf. suspicit, p. 8, l. 10. — 2 nōn nūllis, 6, 4. — 3 plēbī, 3, 21. — 4 cōn-
The Gallic War.

reliquaque omnia Haeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contrā licēri audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātis ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnum numerum equitātūs suō sumptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domi sed etiam apud finitimās civitātis largiter posse; atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātīs conlocāsse. Favere et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam adfinitātem, ēdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Diviciācūs frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānis, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgni obtinendi venīre; imperīō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē ēa quam habeat grātiā, dēspērāre.' Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium [ēius] fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus, — nam equitātūi, quem auxiliō Caesari Haeduī miserant, Dumnorīx praērerat; eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātūm perterritum.

Cāesar Thinks that Dumnorix should be Punished.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, — quod per finis Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trāduxisset, quod obsidēs inter ēos dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et civitātis sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, — satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā rē in

Fig. 11. — Gallic Remains.

eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitatem animadvertere iubet.

But Summons Diviciacus, Whom he does not Wish to Offend.

Hís omnibus rébus únum repúgnábát, quod Diviciáci frárís summum in populum Rómanum studium, summan m in sé voluntátem, ēgregiam fídem, iústitiam, temperantiam cógnóverat: nam nē éius supplició Diviciáci animum offenderet verébatur. Itaque prius quam quícum cónárétur,2 Diviciácum ad sē vocári iubet, et cotidiániús interpretibus remotís per C. Valerium Procillum, princípem Galliæ pròvinciae, familiárem suum, cui summam omnium rérum fidem habébat, cum eō conloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsó praesente in concilió [Gallórum] dē Dumnorige sint dicta; et ostendit6 quae sēpárātim quisque dē eō apud sé dixerit; petit atque hortátur ut sine éius offénsione animi vel ipse de eō, causá cógnitā, statuat6 vel civitatem statuere iubet.

Diviciacus Pleads for his Brother's Pardon.

20. Diviciácus, multís cum lacrimís Caesarem complexus, obsecráre coepit nē quid gravius in frártem statueret: 'Scire sē illa esse véra, nec quemquam ex eō plús quam sē dolóris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grátia plúrum domi atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter aduléscentiam possét, per sē crévisset; quibus opibus ac nervís nón sōlum ad minuendam grátiam sed paene ad pérnicem suam ùterētur; sēsē tamen et amóre frárternō et existimátiōne volgī commovēri. Quod si quid eī à Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem 10

Cf. 1 voluntáte, p. 6, l. 26.—2 cónárī, 6, 15.—3 cotidiániús, 1, 12.—4 principibus, 14, 2.—5 ostendit, 7, 20.—6 statuit, 9, 25.—7 dolóre, 3, 1.—8 útí, 13, 23.—9 accidat, 16, 14.—10 némō, 16, 3.
existimáturum¹ non suā voluntāte factum; quá ex rē futūrum uti tōtius Galliae animi à sē āverterentur.'²

And for his Sake Dumnorix is Spared.

Haec cum pluribus verbis flēns à Caesare peteret, Caesar eiús dextram prendit; cōnsolātus rogat finem orandi faciat; 5 tanti eiús apud sē grātiam esse ostendit uti et rei publicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eiús voluntāti ac precibus⁶ condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur⁴; prōpōnit;⁵ monet ut in reliquum tempus omnis suspicīōnēs vitet; praeterīta sē Diviciācō frātri condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgi custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scire possit.

Caesar Prepares for a Battle.

21. Eōdem dieī ab explōrātōribus⁶ certior factus hostis sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius castrīs octō, 15 qualis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, qui cōgnōscerent misit. Renūntiātum⁷ est faciēm esse. Dē tertīā vigiliā⁸ T. Labiēnum, lēgātum [prō praetōre], cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant, sum- 20 mum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sūi cōnsili⁹ sit ostendit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, qui reī militāris peritiissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum explō- rātōribus praemittitur.¹⁰

Cf. ¹ existimābat, p. 7, l. 5.—² āverterant, 13, 23.—⁶ precibus, 15, 1.—⁴ queritur, 15, 3.—⁶ prōpōnit, 15, 5.—⁶ explōrātōres, 10, 5.—⁷ renūntiātur, 8, 14.—⁶ vigiliā, 10, 7.—⁹ cōnsilia, 15, 13.—¹⁰ praemittit, 13, 4.
Considius, being Panic-stricken, Delays the Plan.

22. Primâ luce, cum summus mōns à Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius 1 mille et quingentis passibus abesset, 2 neque, ut posteā ex captīvis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus 3 esset, Cōsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dīcit montem quem à Labiēnō 5 occupāri 4 voluerit 5 ab hostibus tenērī; id sē à Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum 6 collem subdūcit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum à Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiāe prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique ūnō 10 tempore in hostis impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proelīōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique dīē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem à suis tenērī et

Cf. 1 longē, p. 8, 1. 16. — 2 absunt, 1, 7. — 3 cōgnōverat, 17, 5. — 4 occupātīs, 9, 5. — 5 velint, 12, 15. — 6 proximās, 10, 12.
Helvētiōs castra mōvisse¹ et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vidisset prō visō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervālō, hostīs sequitur et milīa passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Cāser Tūnvs towards Bibracte to Get Supplies. The Helvēti, Emboldened, Follow him.

5 23. Postridiē ēius diēi, quod omnīnō² biduum supererat cum exercitū frūmentum metīrī³ oportēret,⁴ et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius⁵ milibus passuum xviii aberat, reī frūmentāriāe prōspiciendum existimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit.⁶ Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemili, decurīōnis equītum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commississent,⁷ sive eō quod rē frūmentāriā⁸ interclūdi posse cōnsiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinerare conversō nostrōs ā novissimō⁹ agmine īnsequi¹⁰ ac lacesse¹¹ coēpērant.

Both Sides Prepare for Battle.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Cāser in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum¹² mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplīcem aciem instrūxit¹³ legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre¹⁴ proximē cōnscripserat et omnia auxilia conlocārī, [ac tōtum monstem hominibus complēri, et interēa] sarcīnās in ūnum locum

cōnferri, et eum ab his quī in superiōre aciē cōnstitērant¹ mūnīri iussit. Helvētīi cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī,

impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciēm successērunt.

Cf. ¹ cōnstitiissent, p. ii, l. 23.
The Battle.


Cf. cōnspectū, p. 9, l. 16. — impedītōs, 10, 10. — successērunt, 21, 5. — adgressus, 10, 10.
Campaign against the Helvetii.

26. Ita ancipiti proeliiō diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre¹ nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alteri sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alteri ad impedimenta² et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliiō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum ⁵

Cf. ¹ sustinēret, p. 20, l. 19. — ² impedimenta, 21, 3.
The Gallic War.

_Cæsar_

The Gallic War.

24

sit, áversum hostem vidére némô potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta púgnátum est, propterea quod pró valló carrós obiécerant et é locó superiöre in noströs veni-

tentis têla coniciébant, et nôn nûlli¹ inter carrós rëdásque

5 matarâs ac trâgulâs subiciébant nostrósque volnerâbant. Diù cum esset púgnátum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti² sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus é filiis captus est. Ex eó proeliö circiter hominum milia cxxx superfœ-

runt, eâque tôta nocte continenter³ iërunt: [nûllam partem

10 noctis itinere intermissô] in finis Lingonum dië quartó per-
vênëruit,⁴ cum et propter volnera militum et propter sepul-
tûram occisôrum⁵ nostri [triduum morâti] eós sequi nôn

potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterâs nûntiosque misit

15 né eós frûmentô nève aliâ rē iuvârent; qui si iuvissent, sê

eódem locó quô Helvëtiiös habitûrum. Ipse triduô inter-

missô cum omnibus côpiis⁶ eós sequi coepit.

Negotiations for Surrender.

27. Helvëtii omnium rērum inopia adducti lêgâtôs dê
dêditioë ad eum misëruit. Qui cum eum in itinere con-
vênissent sêque ad pedès prôiécissent suppliciterque locûti

20 flentês⁷ pâcem petissent,⁸ atque eós in eó locó quô tum

essent suum adventum⁹ exspectâre iussisset, pâruëruit.

Eó postquam Caesar pervênit, obsidës,¹⁰ arma, servôs qui

ad eós perfûgissent poposcit.

Six Thousand Helvetii Flee, but Later are Captured.

Dum ea conquîruntur et côñferuntur,¹¹ [nocte intermissâ]

25 circiter hominum milia vi ëius pâgi¹² qui Verbîgenus appel-
lâtur, sive timôre perterriti,¹³ nê armis trâditis suppliciô¹⁴

Cf. ¹ nôn nûllös, p. 15, l. 5. — ² potîrí, 2, 16. — ³ continenter, 1, 10.

⁴ pervênít, 10, 8. — ⁵ occisum, 7, 2. — ⁶ côpiás, 19, 7. — ⁷ flëns, 18, 3.

⁸ peteret, 18, 3. — ⁹ adventû, 16, 12. — ¹⁰ obsidës, 12, 18. — ¹¹ côñferi,

²¹, 1. — ¹² pâgus, 10, 12. — ¹³ perterrîtös, 20, 12. — ¹⁴ suppliciô, 17, 6
Campaign against the Helvetii.

adficentur, sive spē salūtis inducti, quod in tantā multitū-
dine dēditiciōrum suam fugam aut occultāri aut omnīnō

ignōrāri posse existimāre,1 primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiō-
rum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finisque Germanōrum cōntendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescīt, quōrum per finīs ierant, his
uti conquirerent2 et reducerent, si sibi pūrgāti esse vellent,
imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit;3 reliquōs
omnis, obsidibus, armis, perfugīs trāditis in dēditionem4
accēpit.

The Helvetii Forced to Return.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finīs suōs, unde erant 10
profectī, revertī iussit; et quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs
domi nihil erat quō fāmem tolerārent, Allobrogibus impe-
rāvit ut eis frūmentī cōpiam5 facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōs-
que, quōs incenderant,6 restituere7 iussit. Id eā maximē
ratīōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētii diēces-
erant8 vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germanī, qui
trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finis
trānsirent, et finitimi9 Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque
essent. Bōios petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā10 virtūte
erant cōgniti, ut in finibus suīs conlocārent, concessit;11 20

Cf.1 existimātūrum, p. 18, l. 1.—2 conquiruntur, 24, 24.—3 habitū-
rum, 24, 15.—4 dēditioœ, 24, 18.—5 cōpiam, 14, 3.—6 incendunt,
4, 20.—7 restitutus, 16, 14.—8 discēdere, 20, 12.—9 finitimās, 16, 6.
—10 ēgregiam, 17, 5.—11 concēdere, 12, 17.
quibus illi agrös dedérunt, quósque posteá in pæram iūris libertätisque condicionem atque ipsi erant recépérunt.

Census of the Tribes Before and After their March.

29. In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis cŏnfectae et ad Caesarem relātæ, quibus in tabulis nŏminātīm ratiō cŏnfecta erat, qui numerus domō exisset eōrum qui arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm quot pueri, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum milium ccclxiii, Tulingōrum milium xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiii, Rauracōrum xxiii, Bōiōrum xxii ; ex his qui arma ferre possent, ad milia xcii. Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia ccclxviii. Eōrum qui domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x.

Gallic Chiefs Congratulate Ĉæsar.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cŏnfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgāti, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: 'Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populi Rōmāni ab his poenas bellō repetisset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populi Rōmāni accidisse ; propterēa quod eō cēnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī reliquisserunt, uti tōti Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potiērentur locumque domiciliō ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omni Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque civitātis stipendiāriās habērent.'

They Request a Council.

25 Petiērunt uti sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: sēsē habēre

Campaign against Ariovistus.

31. Eō conciliō dimissō idem principēs civitātum qui ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt 2 petiēruntque uti sibi sēcrētō [in occultō] dē suā omniumque salūte 3 cum eō agere 4 licēret. Eā rē impertrātā 5 sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesari ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: 6 'Nōn minus sē id contendere et laborāre, nē ea quae dixissent ēnūntiārentur, quam uti ea 10 quae vellent impertrārent; propterea quod, si ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.'

Speech of Diviciacus the Haeduan. He Complains of the Encroachments of the Germans.

Locūtus 7 est prō hīs Diviciācus Haeduus: 'Galliāe tōtius factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius principātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentiātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse uti ab Arvernis Sēquanisquē Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs feri ac barbari adamatissent, traductōs plurīs; nunc esse in Galliā 20 ad centum et xx milium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientis semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs 8 accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātem ámississe. 9 Quibus proelīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, qui et suā virtūte et populi 25 Rōmāni hospitātus atque amicitia plūrimum ante in Galliā
The Gallic War.

potuissent, coāctos 1 esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrandō civitātem obstringere 2 sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs 3 neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implō-
rātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum 5 dicīone atque imperīō essent. Ěnum sē esse ex omni civi-
tāte Haeduōrum qui addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs dare. Ob eam rem sē ex civitāte profūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium pos-
tulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus 10 tenērētur. 4

The Hard Lot of the Sequani.

Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanis quam Haeduīs victīs acci-
disse, propertēa quod Ariovisti, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdisset 5 tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, qui esset optimum tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā 15 parte tertia Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, propertēa quod pau-
cis mēnsibus 6 ante Harūdum mīlia homīnum xxiii ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucis annīs utī omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsirent; neque enim cōnferen-
dum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam.

Tyranny of Ariovistus.

Ariovisti autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vice-
rīt, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetōbrigam, superbē et crūdēlīter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimi cūiusque 7 liberōs 25 poscere, 8 et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque 9 ēdere, si qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius 10 sustinēri.

Cf. 1 coāctus, p. 15, l. 15.—2 obstrictās, 8, 9.—3 repetīset, 26, 17.—4 tenēri, 19, 6.—5 cōnsēdisse, 18, 14.—6 mēnsium, 4, 23.—7 quisque, 17, 13.—8 poposcit, 24, 23.—9 cruciātum, 27, 12.—10 diū, 23, 1.
The Gaurs have no Hope but in Caesar.

Nisi quid in Caesare populoque Rōmānō sit auxili, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētīi fēcerint, ut domō emigrent, aliud domicilium alīās sēdis remōtās ā Germānis petant fortūnamque, quae cumque accidat, expe- riantur. Haec si ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus qui apud eum sint gravissimum sup- plicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōrītāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī dēterrēre posse nē māior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur,1 Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.'

The Sequani Remain Silent. Diviciacus Shows their Desperate Condition.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Diviciācō habitā omnēs qui āderant māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coeperunt.2 Animad- vertit Caesar ūnōs3 ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil ēarum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed tristīs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Ėius rei quae causa esset mīrātus ex ipsis quae- siit.4 Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in ēadem tristitiā taciti permanēre. Cum ab īs saeptius quaereret neque ūllum omninō vocem exprimere posset, īdem Diviciācus Haeduus respondit: 'Hoc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum,5 quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem quērī6 neque auxilium implōrāre audērent; absen- tisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrē- rent, propūerā quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās7 darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, qui intrā finīs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestate ēius essent, omnēs cruci- ātūs essent perferendī.'

30

The Gallic War.

Cæsar's Reasons for Checking Ariovistus.

33. His rébus cōgnitis¹ Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbis cōnfīrmāvit, pollicitusque² est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; māgnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriis factūrum. Hāc ārati-5 ōne habītā concilium dimīsit. Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur ⁸ quā rē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret: imprīmis, quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsan-guineōsque⁴ saepenumerō a senātū appellātōs, in servītūte atque in diciōne⁶ vidēbat Germānōrum tenēri, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperīō populi Rōmānī turpissīmum sibi et reī publicae esse arbitrābātur.⁸ Paulātīm autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere⁷ Rhēnum trānsire et in Gallīam māgīnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs⁸ existimābat quīn, cum omnem Gallīam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonique fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliam contenterent; [praesertim cum Sēquanōs a prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret]; quibus rēbus quam mātūrīmē 20 occurrēndum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantō sibi spiritūs, tantam adrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn viderētur.

He Requests an Interview with Ariovistus, Who Declines.

34. Quam ob rem placuit ei ut ad Ariovistum légātōs mitteret, qui ab eō postulārent uti aliquem locum medium 25 utriusque conloquiō dēlīgeret: velle sēsē dē rē pública et summis utriusque rēbus cum eō agere.⁹ Eī légātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: 'Sī quid ipsī à Caesare opus esset, sēsē

ad eum ventūrum fuisse; si quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venire oportere. Praeterea sē neque sine exercitū in eās partis Galliae venire audēre 2 quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque mōlmēntō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibī autem mīrum vidērī 3 quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesari aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negotī esset.’

Caesar Sends a Second Message Stating his Demands.

35. His responsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātīs mittit: ‘Quoniam tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rex atque amīcus a senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in conloquium venire invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī 4 rē dicendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: primum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius 6 trāns 15 Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet, Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quōs illi habērent voluntāte ēius reddere illis licēret; nēve Haeduōs inīuriā lacesseret, 6 nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret. Si id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpe- 20 tuam grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, 7 sēsē, — quoniam M. Messālā M. PISONē cōn- sulibus senātūs cēnsuisset uti quicumque Galliām prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī publicae facere possēt, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, — sē Haeduō- 25 rum inīuriās nōn negligēturum.’

Ariovistus’s Haughty Reply.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: ‘Iūs 8 esse belli ut

qui vicissent eis quōs vicissent quem ad modum vellent imperāre; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius præscriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Si ipse popūlo Rōmānō nōn præscriberet quem ad modum suō iūre ụtētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri. Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stipendiāriōs esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dētēriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum inlātūrum, sī in eō manērent quod convenissent stipendumque quotannis penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē eīs frāternum nōmen populi Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sī Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sīne suā pernicie contendisse. Cum vellet, congrēderētur; intellectūrum quid invictī Germanī, exercitātissīmi in armīs, qui inter annōs xiv tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.  


37. Haec eōdem tempore Cæsari mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haeduī ques-tum quod Harūdes, qui nūper in Galliām trānsportātī essent, finīs eōrum populārentur; sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēvōrum ad ripam Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, qui Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberīum frātrès. Quibus rēbus Cæsar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sībi existimāvit, nē, si nova manus Suēvōrum cum veteribus cópiis Ariovisti sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam

celerrime¹ potuit comparāta, māgnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Both Strive to Reach Vesontio.

38. Cum trīduī² viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontiō-nem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, [trīduīque viam a suis finibus prōcessisse]. Id nē accideret³ māgnopere sībi praecavendum Caesar existimābat. Namque omniūm rērum quae ad bellum īsū erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nāturā locī sic mūniēbātur ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem,⁴ propterea quod fūmen Dubīs, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sexcentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs montis ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis contingent. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficīt et cum oppidō coniungīt. Hūc Caesar māgnis nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit,⁵ occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

The Roman Soldiers are Panic-stricken.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frūmentāriae commeātūsque⁶ causā morātūr,⁷ ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, qui ingenti māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibili virtūte atque exercitātīōne in armīs esse praedicābant, — saeepenmerō⁸ sēsē cum his congressōs⁹ nē voltum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse, — tantus subītō timor omnem exer- citum occupāvit ut nōn mediocrīt omnium mentis animōsque perturbāret. Hīc prīrum ortus est ā tribūnis militum,

praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūti nōn māgnum in rē militārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alīa causā īnlatā quam sībi ad proficiscendum necessāriam esse diceret, petēbat ut ēius voluntāte 1 discēdere licēret; nōnnūlli pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspicīōnem vitārent, 2 remanēbant. Hī neque volūm fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditi 3 in tabernāculis aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus 4 suiis commūne periculum miserābantur. Volgō tōtis castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vocībus ac timore paulātīm etiam ei quī māgnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, militēs centūriōnesque quīque equitātū praerant, perturbābantur. Qui sē ex his minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et māgnitūdinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentāriam, ut satis commodē 5 supportāri posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōn nūlli etiam Caesari nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferri iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientīs militēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

Cāesar Makes Light of their Fears, and Proposes to Advance at Once.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, 6 convocātō cōnsiliō omni-umque ordinum ad id cōnsilium adhibītīs 7 centūriōnisbus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: prīnum quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur sībi quae rēndum aut cōgitandum 8 putārent. ‘Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populi Rōmāni amīcitiam adpetīsse; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam 9 ab officiō discēsūrum iūdicāret? 10 Sibī quidem persuādērī, cōgnitis suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condicioānum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populi Rōmāni

Cf. 1 voluntāte, p. 31, 1. 18.— 2 vītēt, 18, 10.— 8 abdidērunt, 10, 12. — 4 familiārem, 17, 10.— 5 commodē, 22, 9.— 6 animadvertit, 29, 12. — 7 adhibet, 18, 7.— 8 cōgitandum, 30, 6.— 9 quemquam, 17, 19.— 10 iūdicāssent, 26, 23.
grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentiā despērarent? Factum ēius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonis ā Gāiō Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīli tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nōbis accēpissent sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicāri posse quantum habēret in sē boni cōnstantia, propertēā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermīs sine causā timuissent, hōs postēā armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.

Dēnique hōs esse ēōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepe-numerō Helvētii congressi, nōn sōlum in suīs sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superārunt; qui tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitū nōn potuerint. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, si quaererent, reperire posse diūturnitāte belli dēfatigātīs Gallīs Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsis castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque sui potestā-

Cf. 1 despērāre, p. 16, l. 17. — 2 merītōs, 9, 16. — 3 ūsum, 34, 2. — 4 sublevētur, 15, l. — 5 superāverint, 15, l. — 6 dēnique, 19, 12. — 7 parem, 26, l.
The Gallic War.

36

36. Tem fécisset, déspérantis iam dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō adortum, magis ratione et consilio quam virtūte vicisse. Cui rationi contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitus capi posse.

Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere adrogaanter, cum aut dē officiō imperatōris déspērāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sībi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingōnēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; de itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs.

Quod nōn fore dictō auditentēs neque signa lātūri dicantur, nihil sē eā rē commovēri; scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse, aut aliōqu facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocēciēm perpetuā vitā, fēlicitātem Helvētiorum bellō esse perspectam.

Itaque sē quod in longīorem diem conlātūrus fuisset repraesentātūrum, et proximā nocte dē quartā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīnum intellegere possent utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod si praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohōtem futūram. Huic legiōni Cæsar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfidēbat maximē.

Effect of Cæsar's Speech. He Advances.

41. Hāc orātiōne habitā mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās belli gerendi innāta est; princepsque decimā legiō per tribūnōs.
militum ei grātiās¹ égit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcīs-
set, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et prīmōrum ōrdīnum centuriōnibus ēgērunt uti Caesarī satis-
facerent;² 'Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuīsse neque dē summā belli suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse existimāvisse.' Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere ex-
quisiūtō per Diviciācum, quod ex aliīs ei maximam fidem³ habēbat, ut milīm amplius quīnquāgentā circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quartā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus 10 est. Septimō dīē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātō-
ribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs milia pas-
sum quattuor et vigintī abesse.

Ariovistus Requests an Interview. Cēsār’s Precautions.

42. Ĉognitō Caesarīs adventū Ariovistus ēgātōs ad eum mittit: 'Quod anteā dē conloquiō⁴ postulāsset, id per sē 15 fīeri licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine peri-
culō facere posse existimāret.' Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānītātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id quod anteā petenti⁵ dēnegāsset ultrō pollicērētūr; māg-
namque in spēm veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populique Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cōgnitis suīs postulātīs,⁶ fore uti pertināciā désisteret.

Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō dīē quintus. Interim saepe cum lēgāti ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ari-
vistus postulāvit nē quem peditem ad conloquiūm Caesar 25 addūceret: 'Verēri sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumveniērēt; uterque cum equitātū veniēret; aliā rationē sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.' Caesar, quod neque conloquiūm interpositā causā tollī⁷ volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equi-

Cf.¹ grātiām, p. 31, l. 12.—² satisfaciunt, 12, 21.—³ fidēm, 17, 11.—⁴ conloquiō, 30, 25.—⁵ petēbat, 34, 4.—⁶ postulārent, 30, 24.—⁷ tolleret, 22, 2.
tātui committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus dētractis, eō legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōnfidēbat,1 impōnere, ut praesidium2 quam amicissimum, si quid opus3 factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inridiculē quidam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum;4 ad equum rescribere.

Caesar Plead with Ariovistus, but Renews his Demands.

43. Plānitiēs erat māgna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequō ferē5 spatiō ab castrīs Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equīs dēvēxerat passibus ducentis ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equītēs Ariovistī pari intervālō cōnstitērunt.6 Ariovistus ex equīs ut conloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad conloquium adducerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit,7 quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amicus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō māgnīs homīnūm officiīs consuēsse tribui docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac liberālitāte suā ac senātūs ea præmia cōnsēcūtum. Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessītūdinis ipsīs cum Haeduis intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta, quotiēns quamque honōrificā in eōs facta essent, ut omni tempore tōtius Galliāe principātum Haedui tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam adpetissent. 'Populi Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem8 ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo sui nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte,

Fig. 20. — Belfort.
honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amicitiam populi Rōmānī adtulissent, id eīs ēripī quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātis in mandātis dederat: nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociis bellum īnferret; obsidēs red-deret; si nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittēre posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

Ariovistus Arrogantly Repeats his Claims.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit; dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: ‘Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallis; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnisque praemiis domum propinquōsque reliquisse; sēdīs habēre in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere īūre bellī quod victōrēs victis impōnere cōnsuērunt. Nōn sēsē Gallis, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnis Galliae civitātis ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnis cōpiās sē ūnō proelīō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si iterum experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūti velint, iniquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint.’

Amicitiam populi Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportere, idque sē hāc spē petisse. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittātur et dēditicii subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsāturum populi Rōmānī amicitiam quam adpetierit.

Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliām trādūcat, id sē sui mūniendi, nōn Galliae impūgnandae causā facere: ēius reī testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in

Cf. ēreptūri, p. 15, l. 12.— reddītūrum, 32, 10.— praedicābant, 33, 23.— propinquās, 16, 10.— īūs, 31, 27.— iterum, 31, 8.— penderent, 32, 12.— praesidium, 38, 4.— dēditiciōrum, 25, 2.— adpetiissent, 38, 27.
Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populi Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressum. 1 Quid sībi vellet? Ĉur in suās posses-

sionēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut 5 illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdi 2 nōn oportēret, si in nostrōs finīs impetum faceret, sic item nōs esse inīquōs quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus.

Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum 3 esse rērum ut nōn 10 scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs, in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populi Rōmānī usōs esse.

Dēbēre 4 sē suspicāri simulātā Caesarem amicitiā quem 15 exercitum in Galliā habēat sui opprimendī causā habēre. Qui nisi dēcédât 5 atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, 6 multīs sēsē nōbilibus principibusque populi Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum; id sē ab ipsis per 20 eōrum nūntiōs compartum 7 habēre quōrum omnium grātiam atque amicitiam ēius morte redimere 8 posset. Quod sī dis-
cessisset et liberam possessionēm Galliae sībi trādidisset, 9 māgnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum, et quaecumque bella gerī vellet sine ūllō ēius labōre et periculō cōnfectūrum.' 10

Caesār Does not Yield.

25 45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quā rē negotiō 11 désistere nōn posset: 'Neque suam neque populi Rōmānī consuētūdinem patī 12 utī optimē meritōs sociōs désereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse

Ariovisti quam populi Römānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Römānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quōdque tempus spectāri oportēret, populi Römāni iūstissimum esse

in Galliā imperium;1 si iūdicum senātūs observāri oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus utī voluisset.’

The Germans Make a Treacherous Attack, and Cæsar Withdraws.

46. Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur,2 Cæsari nūntiātum est equītēs Ariovisti propiūs3 tumulum accēdere,4 et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere.5 Cæsar loquendi finem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostīs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ullō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum non putābat, ut pulsīs hostibus dici posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs.6 Posteaquam in volgus militūm ēlātum est quā adrogāntiā in conloquiō Ariovistus īsus omnī Galliā Römānis interdixisset, impetumque7 in nostrōs īeus equītēs fēcissent, eaque rēs conloquiōm ut dirēmisset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandi māius exercitui iniectum est.

Seizure of Two of Caesar's Envoys by Ariovistus.


Manœuvering and Skirmishing.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvīt et milibus passuum sex à Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postridíē éius diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cópiās tràduxit et milibus pas-
suum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit, eō cōnsiliō uti frūmentō commeātūque qui ex Sēquanis et Haeduīs supportārētur Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quinque Caesar prō castrīs suās cópiās prōduxit et aciem înstrūxit.
Campaign against Ariovistus.

Fig. 22. — Map of the Campaign with Ariovistus.

habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, ei potes-
tās¹ non deēset.² Ariovistus his omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proeliō cotidiē³ contendit.

German Method of Fighting.

Genus hōc erat pūgnae quō sē Germanī exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimi ⁵

Cf. ¹ potestātem, p. 35, l. 18. — ² défuisse, 36, l. 15. — ³ cotidiē, 13, l. 17.
ac fortissimi, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salū-
tis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in prōeliīs versābantur. Ad
eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; 1 hī, si quid erat dūrius, concurr-
rebant; si quī graviōrē 2 volnere acceptō equō dēciderat,
circumsistēbant; si quō erat longius prōdeundum aut cele-
rius 3 recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitatiōne celeritās
ut iūbis sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

Cæsar Fortifies another Camp.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Cæsar intellexit, nē diūtius
commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Ger-

![Fig. 23.—Soldiērs Attacked while Encamping.](image-url)

mānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab hīs, castrīs
idōneum locum dēlēgit, aciēque triplicī i 느tūctā ad eum
locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse,
tertīam castra munīre 4 iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter

— 4 muniēbātur, 33, 9.
Campaign against Ariovistus.

passus sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum numerō sēdecim milia expedita cum omni equitātū Ariovistus misit, quae cópiæ nostrōs terrērent et mūni-
tionē prohibērent. Nihilō sēcius Caesar, ut ante cōnstitu-
erat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnitis castris duās ibi legiōnēs reliquīt et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit.

More Skirmishing, but No General Engagement.

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ē castris utrisque cópiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs prōgres-

Reason for the Germans' Delay.

Cum ex captivis quae reret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiebat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuetūdō esset ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārarent utrum proelium committi ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dicere: 'Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, si ante novam lūnam proelīō contendissent.'

Cæsar Forces a Battle.

51. Postridiē ēius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrisque castris quod satis esse visum est reliquit, ālāriōs omnīs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs mīnōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multi-

túdine militum legiónāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplici instructā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cópiās castris ēdūxērant generātīmque con-
stituērant paribus intervāllis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tri-
bocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēvōs, omnemque aciem suam rēdis et carris circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērant, quae ad proelium proficiscēntis, passis manibus flentēs, implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs tràderent.

Description of the Battle.

52. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs légātōs et quae-
stūrem praefēcit, uti eōs testis suae quisque virtūtis habē-
ret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Ita nostri ācriter in hostīs signō datō impetu fēcērunt, ita-que hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pilā in hostīs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectis pilīs cōminus gladiis pug-
nātum est. At Germānī celerīter ex cōnsuētūdīne suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Reperti sunt complūrēs nostri qui in phalangā insilīrent et scūta manibus revellent et dēsuper volnerērent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertīsset P. Crassus adulēscēns, qui equitātui praerat, quod expeditiō erat quam ei qui inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōran-
tibus nostri subsidīō misit.


53. Ita proelium restitútum est atque omnès hostès terga vertérunt, neque prius fugere désitíeruntquam ad flúmen

Rhēnum, milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quinque, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpauci aut viribus cōn̄fisi\(^1\) trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus\(^2\) inventis sibi salūtem repperērunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, qui nāviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnīs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostri interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēva nātiōne, quam domō sécum dúxerat, altera Nórica, régis Voccionis soror, quam in Galliā dúxerat ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periiit. Duae filiae hārum altera occisa, altera capta est. Gāius Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus\(^3\) in fugā trīnīs catēnīs\(^4\) vinctus traheōrētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostis equitātū inequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesari nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem adtulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium, sibi restituērum vidēbat; neque ēius calamitātē dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna déminuerat.\(^5\) Is sē praeōnte dē sē ter sortibus\(^6\) cōnsultum dicēbat utrum ēgni statim necārētur an in aliud tempūs reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incoluīm. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

The Army Goes into Winter Quarters. Cæsar Goes to Hither Gaul.

54. Hoc proelīō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēvi, qui ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī\(^7\) coepērunt; quōs Ubīi, qui proximī Rhēnūm incolunt, perterrītōs īnsecūtī māgnum ex eīs numerum occidērunt. Cæsar ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius\(^8\) paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercītum dēdūxit; hibernīs Labiēnūm praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs predictus est.

Cf. \(^1\) cōnfidēbat, p. 36, l. 25. — \(^2\) līntribus, 10, 4. — \(^3\) custōdēs, 18, 11. — \(^4\) catēnīs, 42, 21. — \(^5\) dēminūta, 16, 13. — \(^6\) sortībus, 45, 20. — \(^7\) revertī, 37, 18. — \(^8\) mātūrrimē, 30, 19.
BOOK II.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY. B.C. 57.

All the Belgian Tribes Conspire against the Romans. Reasons for this.

Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliâ ita uti supra dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbri ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēni certior 2 fīebat omnis Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandi hās esse causās: primum quod verērentur 3 nē omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōn nūllis Gallīs sollicitārentur,—partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versāri 4 nōluerant, ita populi Rōmāni exer-citum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferē-bant; partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant,—ab nōn nūllis etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōri-bus atque eīs quī ad conducēndōs homīnēs facultātīs habē-bant volgō rēgna occupābantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsecuī 5 poterant.

Caesar promptly Moves against them.

2. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscripsit, et inītā aēstātē in in-
teriōrem Galliām qui dēdūceret Q. Pedium lēgātum misit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum 5 vēnit. Dat negotium Senonibus litterisque Galliā qui fini-
timī Belgis erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgi, exercitum in ūnum locum con-
dūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit quīn ad eōs 10 proficiscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad ūnis Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi Submit and Promise Aid.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmi, qui proximi Galliāe ex Belgis sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andoconambogium, primōs civitātis, misē-
15 runt, quī dicerent: 'Sē suaque omnia in ūdim atque in potestātem populi Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquis Belgis cōnsēnssisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniū-
rāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidis recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; 6 reliquōs omnīs Belgās in ūmis esse, Germanōsque, qui cis Rhēnum incolant, sē sē cum īs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, qui eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum īpsīs 25 habeant, dēterrēre potuerint quin cum īs cōsentīrent.'

Origin and Strength of the Belgē as Told by the Remi.

4. Cum ab īs quaereret quae civitātēs quantaeque in ūmis essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: plē-

Cf. 1 aēstātē, p. 48, l. 25. — 2 manūs, 32, 27. — 3 celerius, 44, 5. — 4 con-
— 8 cōnsanguineōs, 30, 7. — 9 dēterrēre, 29, 8. — 10 quaereret, 45, 17.
Fig. 28. — Gaul with Trumpet (carnyx).
The Belgian Confederacy.

rōsque Belgās esse ortōs¹ ab Germānis, Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductōs propter loci fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōsque quī ea loca incolentēs expulisse, sōlōsque² esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoria, omni Galliā vexātā,³ Teutonōs Cimbrosque intrā suōs finis ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri uti eārum rērum memoria māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spiritūs⁴ in rē militāri sūmerent.⁵ Dé numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dicēbant, propterea quod propinquitātibus adfinitātibusque coniunctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum con-

---

maximē feri inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quindecim milia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem milia, Morinōs xxv milia, Menapiōs vii milia, Caletōs x milia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs decem et novem milia; Condūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Paemānōs, qui ūno nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrāri ad xl milia.

Cēsar Marches to the Aisne, and Encamps beyond it.

5. Cēsar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque orātiōne prōsecūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenire principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Haeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet quantō opere rei publicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinēri, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūno tempore cōnfligendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suās cōpiās Haedui in finis Bellovacōrum intrōduxerint et eōrum agrōs populāri coeperint. His datīs mandātis eum ā sē dimittīt. Postquam omnis Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre [vidīt] neque iam longē abesse ab eis quōs miserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmis cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmis Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trāducere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum ripīs flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commēātūs ab Rēmis reliquisque civitātibus ut sine periculō ad eum portāri possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in altera parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum xir vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīri iubet.

Cf. 1 aberat, p. 45, 1. 1. 2 appēllātōs, 40, 8. 3 māgnopere, 33, 7. 4 salūtem, 48, 3. 5 manūs, 50, 8. 6 populārentur, 32, 22. 7 cōgī, 50, 8. 8 mātūrandum, 32, 27. 9 commeātū, 42, 26.
The Belgae Attack Bibrax, a Town of the Remi, Eight Miles Away.

6. Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impētū Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē¹ eō die sustentātum est. Gal- lōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci coeptī sunt² mūrusque défēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā [portās] succédunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multi-
tūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūlli. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fēcisset, Iccius 10 Rēmus summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, qui tum oppidō praerat, ūnus ex eis qui légātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēne-
rant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius³ sustinēre nōn posse.

Cf. ¹ aegerrimē, p. 11, l. 8. — ² coeptae, 42, 2. — ³ diūtius, 49, 9.
Caesar Sends Relief and the Belgæ Advance on his Camp.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem ducibus īsus quī nūntiī ab Iccō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et fundītōrēs Bālērēs subsidiō 1 oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmis cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studiō 2 prōpūgnandi accesit, et hostibus ēadem dē causā spēs potiundi oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morāti agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulāti, omnibus vīcis 3 aedificiisque quō adire potuerant incēnsis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiis contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Caesar Strengtheneth his Position.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opiniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedere statuit; 4 cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliis quid hostis virtūte posset 15 et quid nostrī audērent 5 periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem ĭnstruēdam nātūrā opportūnō 6 atque idōneō,—quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē 7 ĭditus, tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs ĭnstrūcta 20 occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte laterīs 8 dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēnīter fastīgātus paulātīm 9 ad plānitiem redībat,—ab utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadrantērōrum et ad extrāmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum 25 aciem ĭnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantis suōs circumveniēre possent. Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōnscripsērat 10 ĭn castrīs

Cf. 1 subsidiō, p. 46, l. 27.— 2 studiōm, 41, 21.— 3 vīcōs, 25, 13.— 4 statēt, 38, 1. — 5 audēbat, 38, 1.— 6 opportūnisīmum, 26, 22.— 7 plānitiēs, 38, 9.— 8 lātus, 52, 21.— 9 paulātim, 34, 10.— 10 cōnscripsit, 50, 2.
relictis, ut, si quò opus esset, subsidiiō dūci possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstruxērunt.

The Belgae Try to Cross the Aisne to Attack him in the Rear.

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri trānsirent hostēs exspectābant; nostri autem, si ab illīs initiōm trānseundi fieret, ut impedi-tōs adgrederentur¹ parāti in armīs erant. Interim proelīō equestri inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutri trāns-

---

**FIG. 32—BATTLE ON THE AISNE (AXONA).**

eundī initiōm faciunt, secundīōre² equitūm proelīō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum³ est. Ibi vadīs repertīs⁴ partem sua-

Cf. ¹ adgressī, p. 22, l. 16. — ² secundīōres, 12, 16. — ³ dēmōnstrāvimus, 49, 1. — ⁴ reperīēbat, 50, 27.
Caesar Crosses, and Defeats them. They Decide to Disband.


On their Retreat, they are Pursued with Great Slaughter.

11. Ea rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castris ēgressī nūlī certō ārdine neque imperiō,
The Belgian Confederacy.

cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesaer per speculātōrēs cōgnitā, īnsidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfirmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum qui novissimum agmen morārētur praemisit. His Q. Pedīm et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; T. Labīēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mília passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium conciderunt; cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum militum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur neque ūlla necessitāte neque imperīo continērentur, exaudītō clamōre perturbātīs ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllo periculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostri interfēcerunt quantum fuit diēi spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequi dēstītērent sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

The Suessiones, Alarmed by Cæsar's Advance, Surrender.

12. Postrīdiē ēius diēi Cæsar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finīs Suessiōnum, quī proximi Rēmis erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrique altitūdinem paucis dēfendentibus expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs vineās agere quaereque ad oppūgnandum úsui erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā

Cf. 1 profectiōnem, p. 6, l. 10. 2 statim, 48, 19. 8 cōgnōscant, 50, 6. 4 discessisset, 40, 21. 5 adortum, 36, 2. 6 prōsecūtūs, 52, 7. 7 continēbat, 13, 11. 8 proximi, 50, 13. 9 oppūgnāre, 53, 3. 10 cōnantīs, 56, 11.
The Gallic War. [Cæsar

nocte convénit. Celeriter víneís ad oppidum áctís, aggere iactō turribusque cónstitútis, magnitudine operum, quae

neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dé déditione² mittunt et petentibus Rēmis ut cōnservārentur impetrant.³

In Like Manner the Bellovaci Surrender.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs prīmis civitātīs atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus filīis, armīisque omnibus ex oppidō tradītīs in déditionem Suessionēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs māiorēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in īūs fidēm⁴ ac potestatem venire neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs⁵ manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

Cf. ¹ cōnstituit, p. 54, l. 24.— ² déditionem, 25, 8.— ³ impetrāret, 31, 22.— ⁴ fidēm, 50, 15.— ⁵ passīs, 46, 9.

14. Prō his Diviciācus — nam post discessum Belgārum dimissīs 1 Haeduōrum cópiis ad eum reverterat — facit verba: 'Bellovacōs omni tempore in fidē atque amicitia civitātis Haeduæae fuisses; impulsōs 2 ab suis principibus, qui dicerent Haeduōs à Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs 3 omnis indignitātis contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs défēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Qui ēius cōnsili principēs fuissent, quod intellegērent quantam calamitātem civitāti intulissent, in Britanniam profūgīsse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō his Haeduōs ut suā clēmen-
tiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod si fēcerit, Hae-
duōrum auctōritātem 4 apud omnis Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, 5 si qua bella inciderint, sustentāre 6 cōnsuērint.'

The Ambiani Surrender. Reports of the Nervii, Who are Waiting to Give Battle beyond the Sambre.

15. Caesar honōris Diviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē 15 eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dixit, et quod erat civitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multi-
tūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātīs, ab eō locō in finīs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdi-
dērunt. Eōrum finīs Nervī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaerēbat, sic reperīēbat: Nūllum adītum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīni reliquārum-
que 7 rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferri, quod his rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem existimārent; esse 25 homīnēs fēros māgnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incū-
sārē 8 reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdīdissent

Cf. 1 dimissō, p. 27, l. 5.— 2 impulsus, 35, 1.— 3 redēgisset, 41, 3. 4 auctōritātem, 51, 6.— 5 opibus, 17, 22.— 6 sustentātum, 53, 3.— 7 reliquis, 50, 5.— 8 incūsāvit, 34, 22.
The Gallic War.

patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfirmārē 1 sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condicionem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum finis triduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvis Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suis non amplius milia 5 passuum x ābesse; ūrans id flūmen omnīs Nervīōs cōnsē-
disse2 adventumque ībi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, fīnitimīs suis (nam īs utrisque 3 persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur4); exspectārī etiam āb īs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque ēsse in 10 itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur ēn ēum locum coniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs 5 exercitūi aditus nōn esset.

The Nervii, on Information Given by Deserters, Decide to Attack Cæsar while Pitching Camp.

17. Ĥis rēbus cōgnītīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittīt quī locum castrīs idōneum6 délīgant.7 Ĉum ex 15 dēditiciis Belgis reliquīisque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex īs, ut posteā ex captīvis cōgnītum est, ēōrum diērum cōnsuētūdīne itinerīs nostri exercītūs perspectā,8 nocte ā Nervīōs pervēnērunt; atque ēs ēs dēmōnstrārunt īnter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum 20 māgnūm numerum intercēdēre, neque ēsse quicquam negōtī, cum prima legiō īn castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnūm spatium ābessent,9 hanc sub sācīnis adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentīsque diērētīs futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōnīstere nōn audērēnt. Aduvābāt etiam ēōrum cōnsīlium 25 qui rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antiquītūs,10 cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus ēi rei studēnt,11 sed quicquid possunt pedestrībus valent12 cōpiis), quō facilius

finitimorum equitatum, si praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, teneris arboribus incisis atque īnflexīs, crēbrisque in lātitūdinem rāmis ēnātīs, et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs, effecerant^{1} ut īnstar mūri hae saepēs mūnimenta praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrāri sed nē perspici quidem posset. His rēbus cum īter agminis nostri impedīrētur, nōn omissendum sibi cōnsilium Nervīi existimāvērunt.

**Fig. 35. — Defeat of the Nervīi.**

**Nature of the Ground.**

18. Loci nātūra erat haec quem locum nostri castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vērgebāt. Ab eō flūmine pari^{2} acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversūs^{3} huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus apertus,^{4} ab superīore

Cf.^{1} efficiēbat, p. 52, l. 24. —^{2} paribus, 46, 5. —^{3} adversus, 54, 18. —^{4} apertīs, 37, 9.
The Nervii Make a Furious Assault and Throw the Romans into Confusion.

5 19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnis copiis; sed ratiō orduque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus adpropinquabat, consuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās totius exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equītēs nostri cum fundītoribus sagittāriisque flūmen trāngressi cum hostium equitātū proelium commiserunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs recipērent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetus facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertīnebant cēdentīs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra mūnire coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedimenta nostri exercitūs ab eīs quī in silvīs abditi latēbant vísa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committēndi proelium convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ordīnēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē confirmāverant, subītō omnibus copiis prōvolāvērunt impe- tumque in nostrōs equītēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdībili celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine [et iam in manibus nostris] hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs qui in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

The Critical Situation. The Discipline of the Roman Army.

20. Caesar i omnia únō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum (quod erat īnsigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret), signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandi militēs, qui paulō longius aggeris petendi causā prōcesserant arces- sendi, aciēs instruenda,1 militēs cohortandi,2 signum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat.3 His difficultātibus duae rēs erant

subsidiō,4 — scientia5 atque īsus militum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitāti quid fieri oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sībi praescribere quam ab aliīs docērī6 poterant; et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caes- sar discēdere nisi mūnitōs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesāris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur admi- nistrābant.

Cæsar Addresses the Tenth; the Rest are Already Engaged.

21. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs ad cohortandōs militēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad

The Gallic War.

legionem decimam dēvēnit. Milītēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus quam uti suae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retnērent neu perturbārentur¹ animō hostiumque impetum fortīter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adici posset, proeli committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus, pūgnantibus occurrīt. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus² ad dimicandum animus ut nōn modo ad insignia accommodanda sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīisque tegimenta détrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prima signa cōnspēxit ad haec cōnstitit,³ nē in quae rēndis suis pūgnandi tempus dīmitteret.

22. Ínstrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusquē⁴ collis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque⁵ dēnsissimīs (ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus) interiectī⁶ prōspectus impedirētūr, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus⁷ esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum iniquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

Two Legions Force the Atrebates into the River; Two Pursue the Viromandui, but the Nervii Gain the Camp.

23. Legiōnīs nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pilis ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs volneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs — nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat — celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsire cōnantis⁸ insecutī gladiis māgnam

partem eorum impeditam interfécerunt. Ipsí tránsíre flú-
men non dubious pertérent, et in locum iníquum próscessí
fürsus resistentís hostís redintegrátó proelió in fugam
coniécérint. Item allá in parte diversae duae legiônés, in-
decima et octáva, prófligátis Viromandúis, quibuscum erant
congressi, ex locó superióre in ipsís flúminis rípsis proelíá-
bantur. At tótís feré castrís á fronte et ab sinistrá parte
núdátis, cum in dextró cornú legió duodecima et nón
mágnó ab eá interválló septíma cónsstitisset, omnés Nervii
cónfertissímó agmine duce Boduógnató, qui summam im-
peri tenébat, ad eum locum contendérunt; quórum pars
apertó latere legiônés circumvenire, pars summum castró-
rum locum petere coepit.

The Enemy have the Advantage. The Treveri, Panic-stricken, Withdraw
to their Homes.

24. Eódem tempore equités nostri levisque armátúrae pedités, qui cum eis ūnā fuerant, quós primó hostium ímpetū pulsós dixeram, cum sé in castra recipérent, adversís hostibus occurrébant ac rúrsus aliam in partem fugam peté-
bant; et cálonēs, qui ab decumánā portá ac summó iugó
collis nostrós victórēs flúmen tránsisse cónsplexerant, prae-
dándi causā égressi, cum respexisent et hostís in nostrís castrís versàri vidissent, praeципitéis fugae sése mandábant. Simul eórum qui cum impedimentís veniérant clámor fre-
mitusque oriébatur, aliique aliam in partem perterríti
ferébantur. Quibus omnibus rébus permótí equités Treveri, quórum inter Gallós virtútís opínió est singuláris, qui auxilii causā á civítáte missi ad Caesarem vénérent, cum multítudine hostium castra cómpléri, legiônés premí et paene circumventás tenêri, cálonēs, equités, fundítórēs,

Cf. 1 iniquiōrem, p. 56, 1. 15.— 2 núdátius, 53, 7.— 3 cornū, 46, 22. — 4 summam, 51, 20.— 5 armátúrae, 56, 7.— 6 praeándi, 61, 1. — 7 mandárun, 10, 11.— 8 opíniōnem, 54, 13.— 9 premébant, 46, 24.
Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnīs partis fugere vidissent, dēspērātīs1 nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentisque eōrum hostīs potītōs, cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Caesar Enters the Fight in Person and Inspires his Soldiers.

5 25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī sīgniisque in ūnum locum conlātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs2 mīlitēs sībi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedimentō3 vidit,—quartae cohortis om- nibus centuriōnibus occīsis,4 signiferō interfectō, signō5 10 āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus

Cf. 1 dēspērāntīs, p. 36, 1. 1.—2 cōnfertissimo, 65, 10.—3 impedimentō, 22, 6.—4 occīdērunt, 56, 10.—5 signum, 63, 5.
aut volnerâtis aut occisis, in his primum P. Sextiô Baculô, fortissimô virô, multis gravibusque volneribus convictô, ut iam sê sustinère non posset; reliquós esse tardiôrês et non nûllós¹ ab novissimis désertô proeliô excédere ac têla vitâre, hostis neque à fronte ex inferiorô locô subeuntis intermittere et ab utrôque latere instâre, et rem esse in angustô vidit neque üllum esse subsidium quod submiti² posset,— scûtô ab novissimis [înî] militî détrâctô, quod ipse eô sine scûtô³ vênerat, in primam aciem prôcessit; centurionibusque nûminâtîm appellâtîs reliquós cohortâtus militês signa inferre et manipûlôs laxâre iussit, quô facilius gladiis sustinère non posset,—sciitô ab novissimis [uni] militi detracto, quod ipsê eo sine scutto, in primam aciem processit; centurionibusque nominâtur appellâris reliquos cohortatios milités signa inferre et manipulos laxare iussit, quod facilius gladiis sustineri non posset,—sciito ab novissimis [uni] militi detracto, quod ipsius esset, tardiiores et non nullo ab novissimis deserterunt, et tela vitare, hostis neque a fronte ex inferior loco subeuntis intermittere et ab utroque latere instare, et rem esse in angusto vidit neque ullum esse subsidium quod submitisse posset,—scuto ab novissimis [uni] militi detracto, quod ipse eum sine scuto venerat, in primam aciem processit; centurionibusque nominatum appellatum reliquos cohortatos milités signa inferre et manipulos laxare iussit, quod facilius gladiis sustineri non posset.

Cuius adventî spî inlátâ militibus ac redintegrâtô⁴ animô, cum pró sê quisque in conspectus imperâtôris etiam in extremis suis rebus operam návare cuperet, paulum⁵ hostium impetus tardâtus est.

Meanwhile Labienus, having Taken the Enemy's Camp, Sends a Reinforcement to Cæsar.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiônem, quae iûxtâ cóstite-rat, item urgêri ab hoste vidisset, tribûnös militûm monuit ut paulatim sése legiônês coniungerent et conversa signa in hostis inferrent.⁶ Quô factô, cum alius alii subsidium ferret neque timèrent nê âversî àb hoste circumvenirentur, audàvî-⁷ cius resistere ac fortius pûgnâre coeperunt. Interim militês legiônum duûrum quae in novissimô agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerat, proeliô nûntiâtô, cursû⁷ incitâtô in summô colle ab hostibus cûnspectûbantur; et T. Labiënus castris hostium potitus⁸ et ex locô superiores quae réss in nostris castris gererentur⁹ cûnspectûsus, decimam legiônem subsidium nostris misit. Qui, cum ex equitum et câlônûm fugâ quô in locô réss esset quantōque in periculô et castra et

Cf. ¹ nôn nullis, p. 49, 1. 8.—² submittât, 53, 13.—³ scûtis, 64, 10.—⁴ redintegrâtô, 65, 3.—⁵ paulum, 45, 9.—⁶ intulérunt, 22, 19.—⁷ cursû, 64, 24.—⁸ potiundî, 54, 5.—⁹ gerantur, 50, 6.
legiónēs et imperātor versārētur cōgnōvissent, nihil ad cele-
ritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

The Tide of Battle Turns.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut
nostri, etiam qui volneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtis
5 innixī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterrītōs hostīs
cōspicāti etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; 2 equītēs vērō,
ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte délērent, omnibus in locīs pūg-
nant, quō sē legiōnāriiis militibus praeferrerent. At hostēs
etiam in extrēmā spē salūtīs tantam virtūtem praestitērunt
10 ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insiste-
rent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; his déiectīs et
cocervātīs cadāveribus, qui superessent ut ex tumulō tēla
in nostrōs conicerent 3 et pilā intercepta remitterent; ut nōn
nēquiquam tantae virtūtis homīnes iūdicāri débēret ausōs
15 esse trānsire lātíssimum 4 flūmen, ascendere altissīmās ripās,
subire iniquissīmum 5 locum; quae facilia ex difficillīmis
animī māgnītūdō redēgerat.

The Nervii Utterly Routed, and Most of them Slain.

28. Hoc proelīō factō et prope ad internecionem gente ac
nōmine Nervīōrum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum
20 puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāriā ac palūdēs 6 coniectōs
dixerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedi-
tum, victīs nihil tūtum 7 arbitrārentur, omnium qui supererant
cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque ei dēdidērunt; 8
et, in commemorandā 9 civilitātis calamitātē, ex sexcentīs ad
25 trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum militibus LX vix ad quīngentōs
qui arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs
Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērē-

Cf. 1 cōnfectōs, p. 64, l. 25. — 2 occurrēbant, 65, 17. — 3 conicerent,
FIG. 41.—CITADEL OF NAMUR.
tur, diligentissime cōnservāvit suīisque finibus atque oppidis útī iussit, et finitimis imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōisque prohibērent.¹

The Aduatuci Withdraw to a Strongly Fortified Position.
Account of their Origin.

29. Aduatuci, dē quibus suprā diximus, cum omnibus cópiis auxiliō Nerviis venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūntīs oppidis castellīsque² désertis

![Diagram](image-url)

Fig. 42.—Siege of the Stronghold of the Aduatuci.

sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contulērunt.³ Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rupis déspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter⁴

Cf. ¹ prohibuerint, p. 51, l. 5.—² castellum, 56, 2.—³ contulissent, 58, 10.—⁴ lēniter, 54, 21.
acclivis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius pedum cc reliquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō munierant; tum māgni ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabīs in mūrō conlocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonisque prōgnāti, qui, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ætālam facerent, eīs impedīmentīs quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs, custōdiam ex suis ac praeсидium sex mīlia hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitīmis exagitāti, cum aliās bellum inferrent aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

They Scoff at the Roman Siege Works.

30. Ac primō adventū exercitus nostri crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīisque proelīis cum nostrīs contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum xii, in circuitū xv mīlium, crēbrisque castellīs circummūnitī oppidō sēsē contīnebant.

![Figure 43. Siege Works.](image)

Ubi vineīs actīs aggere extrūctō turrim procul cōnstituit vidērunt, primum inrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vocibus quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō instituerētur: 'Qui-busnam manibus aut quibus viribus praeertim homīnēs tantulae statūrae'—nam plērumque hominibus Gallīs prae

Cf. ¹ adventum, p. 60, 1. 6. — ² crēbrī, 49, 2. — ³ vineās, 57, 26. — ⁴ aggere, 58, 1. — ⁵ viribus, 48, 2.
māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptui est—‘tanti oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē conlocāre cōnsiderent?’

They Become Alarmed, and Offer to Surrender Conditionally.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre1 moenibus2 vidērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī₃ lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī:5 'Nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope divīnā bellum gerere, qui tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritātē₄ prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere₅ dīxērunt. ‘Ūnum petere ac dēprecāri: si forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine,₆ quam ipsī ab aliīs audiērent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sībi omnīs fērē fīnitīmōs esse inimīcōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditis armīs nōn possent. Sībi praestāre, si in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab his per cruceiātum⁷ interfici inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.'

They Accept Cæsar’s Terms, but Treacherously Retain Part of their Arms.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: ‘Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam merītō eōrum civitātem cōnservātūrum, sī, prius quam₈ mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdīsset; sed dēditiōnīs nūllam esse condicionem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in₉ Nervīs fēcisset factūrum, fīnitīmisque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiōcis populi Rōmānī iniūriām inwertent.’ Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt. Armōrum māgnā multītūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdīnem acervī armōrum adaequārent,₁₀ et tamen circiter

They Make a Sally from the Town, but are Repulsed. More than 50,000 Sold as Slaves.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudi militēsque ex oppidō exire iussit, nē quam noctū oppidāni a militibus iniūriam acciperent. Illi ante initō (ut intellectum est) consiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant,—partim cum eis quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vimīnibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguītās postulābat, pellībus indūxerant,—tertīa vigilīa, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitīōnēs ascēnsus vidēbatur, omnibus cōpiis repente ex oppidō ēruptīōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximis castellīs eō concursūm est, pūgnātumque ab hostībus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, iniquō locō, contrā eōs quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, nāvēs ēdēbīt,5 cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōnsisteret. Occīsis ad homīnum milibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum rēiectī sunt. Postrīdiē ĕius diēī refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs militibus nostrīs, sectiōnem ĕius oppidi ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eis quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est milium quinquāgintā trium.

Crassus Subdues many Coast Towns.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolītās, Esuvīōs, Aulercōs, Redōnes, quae sunt maritimae civitātēs Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnīs eās civi-

Cf. oppidānis, p. 54, l. 3.—2 exiguītās, 64, 7.—3 concurri, 63, 2.—4 vāllō, 52, 27.—5 dēbēret, 68, 14.
tātēs in dictionem potestātemque populi Rōmānī esse redāctās.\textsuperscript{1}

The Army Goes into Winter Quarters. A Thanksgiving for Caesar's Victories is Decreed at Rome.

35. His rēbus gestīs, omni Galliā pācātā,\textsuperscript{2} tanta hūius belli ad barbarōs opinīō perlāta est utī ab eis nātionibus quae trāns Rhēnum incoerent lēgāti ad Caesarem mitterentur qui sē obsidēs datūrās, imperātā\textsuperscript{3} factūrās pollicērentur.\textsuperscript{4} Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliām Īlyricumque pro-perābat, initā proxīmā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque civitātēs propinquae eis locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hiberna dēductīs in Ītaliām profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diēs quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlī.

Cf. \textsuperscript{1} redāctō, p. 68, l. 19. — \textsuperscript{2} pācātā, 49, 6. — \textsuperscript{3} imperātā, 50, 18. — \textsuperscript{4} pollicitōs, 51, 13.

\textbf{Fig. 44. — Gallic Coins.}
Cæsar's Third Campaign. B.C. 56.

Galba is Sent to Guard the Passes of the Alps about the Upper Rhone.

Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legione xii et parte equitātūs in Nantuātis, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque misit, quī a finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpis pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit quod iter per Alpis, quō māgnō cum periculō māgnīsque cum portōriis\(^1\) mercātōrēs ire cōnsuērant, patēfieri volēbat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in his locīs legiōnem hiemandi causā conlocāret. Galba, secundīs aliquot proeliās factīs castellīisque complūribus eōrum expūgnātīs, missis ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datis et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortīs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquiīs ēius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, qui appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; qui vicus positus in valle, nōn māgnā adiectā plānītīe, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partīs flūmine dividerētur, alteram partem ēīs vici Gallīs [ad hiemandum] concessit, alteram vacuām\(^2\) ab hīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

Cf.\(^1\) portōria, p. 15, l. 25. —\(^2\) vacuum, 57, 24.
Having Gone into Winter Quarters, He is Threatened by Large Numbers of the Native Tribes, Who Occupy the Neighboring Heights.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsisse sunt frūmentumque eō comportāri iussisset, subitō per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex ea parte vici quam Gallis concesserat omnīs noctū discussisse, montisque quī impedērēnt a maximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenēri. Id aliquot de causis acciderat ut subitō Galli bellī renovāndi legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: primum, quod legiōnem — neque eam plēnissimam, dētrāctīs cohortibus duābus et complūrībus singillātim, qui commeātūs petendi causā missī erant — propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam quod propter iniquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrentēs et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem posse impetum suum sustinēri existimābant. Accēdēbat

Cf. 1 déspiceret, p. 11, l. 20.
quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolē-bant, et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnāri et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habē-

Galba Calls a Council. He will Defend the Camp, if Possible.

3. His nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitionēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquoque commeātū satīs esset prōvisum, quod dēditioō factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīsti-māverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirēre coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentinī 2 periculi praeter opinionem accidisset, ac iam omnia fērē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicercuntur, neque subsidīo venīri neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nullae ēius modī sententiae 3 dicēbantur ut, impedimentīs relictīs ēruptiōne factā, īsēm itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contendērent. Māiōri tamen partī placuit hoc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō interim reī ēventum experīri et castra dēfendere.

The Gauls Attack Vigorously.

4. Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut eis rēbus quās cōstitu-issent conlocandīs atque administrāndīs tempus dārētur, hōstēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum concicere. Nostrī primō integrīs viribus fortiter prōpūgnāre neque ēllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō supe-riōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī 4 vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superāri quod diūturnitāte pūgnae hostēs dēfessī 5 proeliō excēdébant, alīi integrīs viribus succēdébant: quārum

Cf. 1 doleant, p. 12, 1. 15.— 2 repentinō, 11, 7. — 3 sententiam, 56, 21. — 4 premī, 65, 27. — 5 dēfessī, 22, 11.
Fig. 47. — Gaius Iulius Caesar.
rērum ā nostris propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo défessō ex pūgnā excēdendi, sed nē saucīō quidem ēius locī ubi cōnstiterat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

The Battle Rages for Six Hours. The Only Hope is in Making a Sortie.

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pūgnārētur ac nōn sōlum vires sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent,1 atque hostēs ācrius ĭnstāreōt languardīōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque essem iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmi pīli centuriō, quem Nervīcō proeliō complūribus cōnfactum volneribus dīximus, et item Gāius Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsili māgnī et virtūtīs, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam essem spēm salūtis docent, si ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit paulisper2 intermitterent proelium, ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque exlabōre reficerent; post datō signō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spēm salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

The Gauls are Defeated with Great Loss; but Galba Withdraws to the Province.

6. Quod iūssi sunt faciunt ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendi quid fieret neque suī conligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā3 fortūnā eōs qui in spēm potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt; et ex homīnōrum miliibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertīa parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armaisque exūtīs sē intrā mūniōniōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō

Cf. 1 déficere, p. 56, l. 16. — 2 paulisper, 54, 6. — 3 commūtātō, 20, 15.
sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rebus viderat, maximē frumentī commeātūsque inopiā
per-mōtus, posterō die omnibus ēius vici aedificiūs incēnsīs in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut
5 iter dēmorante incoloumen legiōnem in Nantuātīs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

Operations in Northwestern Gaul on the Seacoast. Crassus Sends
Messengers to Collect Supplies.

7. His rebus gestīs cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācā-
tam Galliām existimāret [superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germā-
nīs, victīs in Alpībus Sedūnīs], atque īta īnitā hieme in
Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātīōnēs adīre et
regionēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subītum bellum in Galliā coōr-
tum est. Ėius belli haec fuit causā. P. Crassus adulēscēns
cum legiōne vii proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hi-e-
mābat. Is, quod in īs locīs inopiā frūmentī erat, praefectōs
15 tribūnōsque militūm complūris in finitimās civitātīs frūmentī
causā dīmisit; quō in numerō erat T. Terrasidius missus in
Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velāniius cum
T. Siliō in Venetōs.

The Messengers are Seized by the Veneti, under whose Lead the Maritime
Tribes Demand a Return of their Hostages.

8. Hūius est civitātīs longē amplissima auctōritās omnis
ōrae maritimae regiōnūm āeārum, quod et nāvis habent Veneti
plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvīgāre consuērunt, et
scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt, et
in māgnō impētū maris vāstī atque aperti paucīs portibus
interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnis ferē qui eō mari ūtī cōn-
25 suērunt habent vectigālis. Ab ēīs fit initium retinendī Sili
atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō
dedissent recuperātūrōs existimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte
finitimi adducti (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentina cōn

silia), eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent; et celeriter missis lēgātīs per suōs principēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnis fortūnāe exitum esse lāturōs; reliquāsque civitātēs sollicitant ut in eā libertāte quam ā māiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālīnt. Omni ārā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā communēm lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: ‘Si velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sībi remittat.’

**Fig. 48 — Galley.**

*Caesar Orders a Fleet to be Built on the Loire. The Veneti Prepare for War and Summon Allies.*

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvis interim longās aedificāri in flūmine Ligeri, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā instituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparāri iubet. Hīs rēbus

Cf. 1 sollicitārentur, p. 49, l. 8. — 2 remittere, 39, 5.
celeriter administrātīs ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Veneti reliquaque item civitātēs cōgnitō Caesaris adventū [certiōrēs factī], simul quod quantum in sē facinus\(^1\) admīssissent intellegēbant, lēgā-

---

**FIG. 49. — MAP OF THE VENETI NEIGHBORHOOD.**

---

\(5\) tōs — quod nōmen ad omnīs nātiōnēs sāncrum inviolātumque semper fuisset — retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine periculī bellum parāre et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre īnstituunt, hoc māiores spē quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuārīs, nāvigātiōnem impeditam propter inscientiam locōrum pauciētemque portūm sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē mōrāri posse cōnfidēbant; ac iam ut omnia contrā opiniōnem

*Cf. \(^1\) facinore, p. 36, l. 15.*
acciderent, tamen se plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllum facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūri essent vada, portūs, insulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō mari atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. His initiis cōnsiliis oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvis in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat,1 quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablīntēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt; auxilia 10 ex Britannīā, quae contra eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.2

Caesar's Reasons for Prosecuting the War. His Strategy "Divide and Conquer."

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendi quās supra ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitūm Rōmānōrum, rebellīō facta post dēditionem, dēfectīō datīs obsidibus, tot civitātum 15 coniūrātiō, imprīmis nē hac parte nēglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegēret omnis fērē Gallōs nōvis rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitāri, omnis autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condicionem servitūtis ōdisse,3 priusquam plūrēs 20 civitātēs cōnspirārent, partiendo sibi ac lātiōs distribuēndum exercitum putāvit.

Labienus Sent to the East, Crassus to the South, Sabinus to the North. Brutus has Charge of the Fleet.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, qui proximi flūmini Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō 25 contineat; Germānōsque, quī auxiliō à Gallis arcessiti dīcē-

Cf. 1 cōnstābat, p. 77, l. 25. — 3 arcessendi, 63, 4. — 8 ōdisse, 16, 11.
bantur, si per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, pro-
hibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriis xii et
māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, nē
ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae
5 nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum
cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque
mittit, qui eam manum distinctam¹ cūret. D. Brūtum
adulēscetem classī Gallicīisque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus
et Santonis reliquisque pācātis regiōnibus convenire iussērat,
praeficet, et cum primum possit in Venetōs proficisci iubet.
Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

Situation of the Strongholds of the Veneti.

12. Erant eīus modi ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in
extrēmīs lingulis prōmuntūriīisque neque pedibus aditum
habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset (quod [bis]
accidit semper hōrārum xii spatiō), neque nāvibus, quod
rūrsus minuente² aestū nāvēs in vadis adfictārentur. Ita
utraque ré oppidōrum oppugnatiō impediēbatur; ac si
quandō — māgnitūdīne operis forte superāti, extrūsō mari
aggere ac mōlibus atque his oppidi moenibus adaequātis —
20 despērāre fortūnis suis coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium
adpulsō, cūius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēpor-
tābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida reciproeībant; ibi sē
rūrsus isdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō
facilius māgnam partem aestātīs faciēbant, quod nostrae
25 nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur summaque erat vāstō
atque aperto mari, māgnis aestibus, rāris ac prope nūllis
portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

Description of their Ships. Comparison with those of the Romans.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armā-
taeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum

Cf. ¹ distineri, p. 52, l. 12.— ² minuendum, 17, 23.
nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere pos-
sent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs ad māg-
nitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs
tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvis vim et contumēliam per-
ferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus cōn-
fixa clāvis ferreis digitī pollicis crassitūdine; anchrae prō
fūnibus ferreis catēnīs revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis alītaeque
tenuiter cōnfectae, sive propter inopiam līni atque ēius āsūs

inscientiam sive eō (quod est magis vērisimile) quod tantās
tempestātīs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinēri ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae clāssi ēius modi congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum prae-
stāret; reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vi tempestātum, illīs
essent aptīōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant—tanta in eīs erat firmitūdō—neque

Cf. 1 catēnīs, p. 48, l. 11. — 2 pellibus, 72, 10.
The Gallic War.

propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulis continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cōtīs tīmērent; quārum rērum omnium nostriē nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

The Battle. How the Romans Overcame their Disadvantages.

14. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidīs Cæsar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque eīs nocērī posse, statuit exspectan-
dam classem.1 Quae ubi convenīt ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omni genere armōrum ārūnātissimae profectae ex portū nostriē adversae cōnstitērunt; neque sātis Brūtō, qui classi praeerat, vel tribūnīs militum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cōgnōverant; turribus autem excitātīs tamen ħās altītūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat ut neque ex īnferiōre lōcō sātis commodē tēla adigi possent et missa ā Gallis gravius acciderent. Ūna erat māgnō īūsī rēs prae-
parāta ā nostrīs,—falcēs præacūtāe2 insertae adfīxaeqve longurīs nōn ābsimili formā mūrāliīm falceī. Hīs cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmis incitātō praerumpēbantur. 25 Quibus absēsis antemnæa necessāriō concīdēbant; ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlis armāmentīsque cōnsis-
steret, his ēreptīs3 omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperē-
tur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostriē militēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesarīs atque omnis exercītūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum

Cf. 1 classī, p. 82, 1. 8. — 2 præacūtās, 70, 3. — 3 ēripī, 39, 2.
Campaign against the Veneti.

15. They Defeat the Enemy and Capture their Ships.

Disiectis (ut diximus) antemnis, cum singulās binae ac ternaē nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī trānscedere in hostium nāvīs contendēbant. Quod postquam bar-bāri fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātis complūribus nāvibus, cum ei rei nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacīa ac tranquillītās exstītit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negotiōnem conficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostri consoncētātī expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē IIII úsque ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.

Cf. 1 latēbant, p. 62, l. 19.
The Veneti Surrender. Their Leaders are Put to Death, the Rest Sold as Slaves.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque òrae mari-
timae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnīs iuventūs, omnēs
etiam graviōris aētātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsili aut digni-
tātis fuit, eo convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubīque fuerat in
ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs reliquī neque quō
sē recipient neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent
habēbant. Itaque sē suāque omnia Cæsāri dēdidērunt.
In quōs éō gravius Cæsar vindicandum statuīt, quō diligen-
tiūs in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnser-
vārētur. Itaque omnē senātū necātō reliquōs sub cōrōnā
vēndidit.

Meanwhile Sabinus Goes among the Venelli, and is Challenged by them.
He Avoids an Engagement.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabinus
cum eīs cópiis quās ā Cæsāre accēperat ēn finīs Venellōrum
pervēnit. His praerat Virīdovīx ac summam imperī tenē-
bat ēārum omnīm civĭtātum quae dēfēcerant, quīs exercītum māgnāsque cópiās coēgerat; atque ēs paucīs
diēbus Aulerīcī, Eburgācīs, Lexoviāque senātū suō inter-
fectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nólibant, portās clausūrant
sēque cum Virīdovīcī coniūnxērunt; māgnaque praeterea
multītūdō undique ēx Galliā perditōrum homīnīm latrō-
umque convēnerat, quōs spēs praeandī studiūmque
bellāndī ab agrīcultūrā et cotīdīānō labōre revocābat.
Sabinus idōneō omnībus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat,
cum Virīdovīx contra eum duōrum milīm spatiō cōnsēdīsset
cotīdiēque prōductīs cópiis pūgnāndi potestātem faceret, ut
iam nōn sōlum hostībus ēn contemplōnem Sabinō veniret
sed etiam nostrōrum militōrum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur;
tantāque opinīōnem timōris praebuat ut iam ad vāllum cas-
trōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id ēa dē causā faciēbat

Cf. 1 dēfēcisse, p. 59, l. 6. — 2 cotīdīānīs, 17, 8.
Campaign against the Veneti.

quod cum tantâ multitūdine hostium, præsertim eō absente qui summam imperi tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportunitàte aliquā datā, lēgātō dimicandum nōn existimābat.

By a Stratagem he Induces Viridovix to Attack him.

18. Hāc cōnfīrmātā opiniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eis quōs auxilli causā sēcum habēbat. Huic māgnis praemīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet uti ad hostīs trānseat et quid fieri velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā1 ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetis premātur docet; neque longius abesse quin proximā nocte 10

Sabinus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxili ferendi causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs occasiōnem negōtī bene gerendi āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra īrī oportēre. Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabini 15 cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfīrmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab eis erat prōvīsum, spēs Venetici bellī, et quod fērē libenter2 hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovicum reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt quam ab eis sit concessum arma uti 20 capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque conlēctis quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant,3 ad castra pergunt.

Complete Victory of Sabinus.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus4 et paulātim ab īmō acclivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt, 25

Cf. 1 perfugīs, p. 25, l. 8.—2 libenter, 39, 23.—3 complēta, 76, 13.—4 ēditus, 54, 18.
ut quam minimum spati ad se conligendos armandosque Römānis darētur, examinātīque pervēnērunt. Sabinus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditīs hostibus prop-
ter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptōnem 5 fieri iubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium inscien-
tiā ac dēfatigātiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum pūgnā-
rum exercitātiōne, ut nē primum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga vererent. Quōs integrīs viribus militēs nostri cōnsecūtī māgnīm numerōm eōrum occidē-
runt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsecūtī paucōs qui ex fugā ēvāserant reliquērunt. Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvāli pūgnā Sabinus et dē Sabīni victōriā Cæsar est certior factus; civitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est 15 animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātīs per-
ferendās mēns eōrum est.

In Aquitania Cæsar est certior factus: civitatesque omnes se statim Titiūriō dediderunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātīs per-
erendās mēns eōrum est.

Cæsar

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus cum in Aquītāniam pervēnisset,—quae, ut ante dictum est, [et regiōnum lātītū-
dine et multitūdine hominum] est tertia pars Galliae [est 20 aestimanda],—cum intellegēret in eīs locīs sībi bellum gerendum ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praeōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfēctus esset, atque unde L. Man-
lius prōcōnsul impediōmentīs āmissis provīgisset, nōn medio-
crem sībi diligentiam adhibēdam intellegēbat. Itaque rē 25 frūmentāriā prōvīsā, auxiliis equitātūque comparātō, multis praetereā virīs fortībus Tolōsā et NARBōne (quaē sunt civitātēs Galliae prōvinciae finītīmae [ex] hīs regiōnibus) nōminātīm ēvocātīs, in Sōtiātium finīs exercitūm intrō-
dūxīt. Cūius adventū cōgnitō Sōtiātēs māgnīs cōpiis 30 coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrīmum valēbant, in itinerē agmen nostrum adortī prīnum equestre proelium commisē-

Cf. 1 integrīs, p. 76, l. 29.
runt; deinde equitátu suó pulso atque insequentibus nostrís, subító pedestrís cůpiás, quás in convalle in insidiis conlocáverant, ostendérunt. Hí nostrós disiectós adorti proelium renovárunt.\(^1\)

He Defeats them in Battle and Besieges their Stronghold. They Surrender.

21. Púgnátum est diú atque ácriter, cum Sótiátes superíoribus victóriis fréti in suá virtúte tótius Aquítáníae salútem positam putárent; nostrí autem quás sine imperátore et sine reliquís legiónibus aduléscentuló duce efficere possent perspici\(^3\) cuperent; tandem cónfecti volneribus hostés terga vertérunt. Quórum mágnó numeró interfecés Coníncrассus ex itinere oppidum Sótiátiúm oppügnáre coeptit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineás turrisque égit. Illí, aliás érup- tiónes temptáta, aliás cuniculis ad aggerem vineásque actís (cuíus reí sunt longě peritíssími\(^8\) Aquítání, propteréa quod multís locís apud eós aeráriae sectúraeque sunt), ubi dili- 

gentiás nostrórum nihil hís rébus prófici posse intelléxérunt, légátós ad Crassum mittunt, sèque in déditéiónem ut recipiat petunt. Quá ré impestrátá, arma trádere iússí, faciunt.

The Soldurii, or Brothers in Arms.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrórum intentís animís, aliás ex parte oppídi Adiatunnus, qui summam imperi tenébat, cum díc dévótís, quós illí soldúriós appellant, — quórum haec est condíció uti omnibus in vítā commodís\(^4\) únā cum eís fruantur quórum sē amicitiae dédiderint; si quád hís per vim accidat, aut eundem cásum únā ferant aut sibi mortem cónsciscant;\(^5\) neque adhúc homínem memóriá repertus est quisquam qui, eód interfecés cuíus sē amicitiae dévóvisset, mortem recúsáret, — cum hís Adiatunnus éruptiónem facere cónátus, clámóre ab eá parte münítiónis sublátó, cum ad

---

Cf. \(^1\) renovándì, p. 75, l. 6. — \(^2\) perspiciébant, 8\(\text{r}1\). 5. — \(^3\) peritíssimus, \(18, 22\). — \(^4\) commodó, \(31, 24\). — \(^5\) cónsíverit, 4, 15.
The Gallic War.

Crassus proceeds against other Aquitanian tribes who are conspiring, and decides to give battle.

23. Armis obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in finis Vocatium et Tarusatium profectus est. Tum vērō barbari commōtī, quod oppidum et nātıra loci et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expūgnātum cōgnōverant, légātōs quōqueversus dimittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitātīs légātī quae sunt citeriōris Hispaniāe finitimae Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur; quōrum adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et māgnā homīnum multitudine bellum gerere cōnātur. Ducēs vērō eī dēliguntur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnis annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimābantur. Hi cōnsuētūdine populi Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere instituunt.1 Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit,—suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile didūci, hostem et vagāri et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praevidi relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sībī supportāri, in diēs hostium numerum augēri,—nōn cunctandum existimāvit quīn pūgnā dēcerēt. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium délātā, ubi omnēs idem sentire intellexit, posterum diem pūgneae cōstituit.

The enemy keep to their camp, which Crassus attacks.

24. Prīma lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiās, duplicī acīe institūtā, auxiliis in medium aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsili caperent exspectābat. Illī, etsi propter multitudinem et veterem belli glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dimicāturōs existimābant, tamen tūtius2 esse arbitrā-

Cf. 1 instituunt, p. 80, l. 8. — 2 tūtius, 84, 4.
bantur obsessis viis, commeātū interclūsō, sine volnere victōriā potīri; et, si propter inopiam rei frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coeppissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinis infirmiōrēs animō adoriri cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probāto, ab ducibus prōdūctīs Rōmānōrum cōpiis, sēsē castris

![Fig. 54. — Soldiers Making Camp.](image-url)

tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opiniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur exspectāri diūtius nōn oportēre quīn ad castra irētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupiēntibus ad hostium castra contendit.

They Hold their Own for a Time.

25. Ibi cum alī fossās complērent, alī multīs tēlis co◯n◯iectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllo mūnītiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque (quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfidēbat) lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis speciem atque opiniōnem pūgnantium prae-
The Gallic War.

berent; cum item ab hostibus constanter ac non timidè pugnaretur telaque ex loco superiore missa non frustra accidere, equites circumitis hostium castris Crassō renuntiāverunt non eadem esse diligentia ab decumānā portā castra mūnita facilemque aditum habère.

But are Forced to Abandon their Camp and Flee.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut māgnīs praemīis pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitāre, quid fieri velit ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, dēvectis eīs cohortibus quae praesidiō castris relictae intritae ab labōre erant et longiōre itinere circumductis, nē ex hostium castris conspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pūgnam intentis, celeriter ad eās quās diximus mūnītiōnēs pervēnērunt, atque hīs prōrūtīs prius in hostium castris cōnstitērunt quam pānē ab hīs vidēri, aut quid rei gerērur cógnosci posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte audītō nostri redintegrātīs viribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriāe accidere consuevit, acrius impūgnāre coeperunt. Hostēs undique circumventī, despērātī omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnītiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōnsecatūs, ex milium numerō, quae ex Aquitānīā Cantabrīisque convēnisse cōnstitābat, vix quartā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Most of the Aquitanian Tribes Surrender to Crassus.

27. Hāc audītā pūgnā máxima pars Aquitānīae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō misit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbelli, Bigerriōnes, Ptīnii, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gātēs, Auscī, Garumni, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs anni tempore cōnfisae, quod hiems suberat, id facere negligērunt.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exacta iam aestās erat, tamen quod omni Galliā pācātā Morini Menapīique supererant qui in armis essent neque ad eum unquam légātōs de pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnfici posse, eō exercitum dūxit; qui longē aliā ratione ac reliqui Gallī bellum gerere coeōrunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō conten-dissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentisque silvās ac pālūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre instituisset neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersī in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostri cele-rīter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās repulērunt, et compūrībus interfecēs longius impeditiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

He Ravages their Territory, and then Goes into Winter Quarters.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diebus Caesar silvās caedere in-stituit et, nē quis inermībus imperūdentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fierī possēt, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus extrūebat. Incredībili celeritāte māgnō spatiō paucīs diebus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, ēius modī sunt tempestātēs consēcutae uti opus necessāriō intermitterētūr et continuātiōne imbrium diūtiūs sub pellibus militēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiīisque incēnsīs, Caesar exer-citum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīisque, reliquis item civitātibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hibernis con-locāvit.

Cf. 1 inermēs, p. 68, l. 6. — 2 exstrūctū, 70, 16.
FIG. 55.—PACK-WAGONS AND CARTS.

BOOK IV.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE GERMANS.—FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN. B.C. 55.

German Tribes, Pressed by the Suevi, Cross the Rhine.

Eaque secūta est hieme, qui fuit annus Cn. Pompeīo, M. Crasso cōnsulis, Usipetes Germānī et item Tenc-terī māgnā [cum] multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā mari quō Rhēnus influit. Causa 5 trānseundi fuit quod ab Suēvis complūris annōs exagītātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Customs of the Suevi.

Suēvōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hi centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armātōrum bellandi causā 10 ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliqui, qui domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt.1 Hi rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illi domī remanent. Sic neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus belli intermittitur. Sed privātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō co-15 lēndi causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in vēnā- tionibus; quae rēs et cībī genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne

Cf. 1 alere, p. 16, l. 5.
et libertāte vitae, quod ā pueris nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā adsuēfacci nihil omninō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et viris alīt et immāni corporum māgnitudine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē consuētūdinem addūxérunt ut locis frigidissimi neque vestitūs praeter pellīs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem māgna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

Their Intercourse with Other Tribes.


Their Cavalry Tactics.

Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equīs désiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vestigiō adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ehippiis ūti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ehippiātōrum equītum quamvis pauci adire audent. Vinum ominō ad sē importāri nōn sinunt, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēmināri arbitrāntur.

The Ubii, Tributaries of the Suevi.

3. Públicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significāri māgnum numerosum civitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque unā ex parte ā Suēvis circiter milia passuum sexcenta agri vacāre dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubii, quōrum fuit civitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānō-

Cf. 1 officiō, p. 81, l. 25.— 2 vēndidit, 86, 11.— 3 turpissimum, 30, 11.
The Gallic War.

rum; eī paulō, quamquam sunt ēiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propīnquitātem [quod] Gallicīs sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēvi multīs saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātīs finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālis sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs īnfīmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

The Usipetes and Tencteri, Expelled from Germany, Overcome the Menapii.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetes et Tencteri, quōs suprā dīximus, qui complūris annōs Suēvōrum vim sustinuerunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsi et multīs locīs Germanīaē triennium vagāti ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt; quās regionēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque ripam flūmi-

nīs agrōs aedificia vīcōsque habēbant; sed tantae multītūdinīs adītū perterrītī ex eīs aedificiīs quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāverant, et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiis Germānīs trānsīre prohibēbant. Iīli omnia expertī, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdīs regionēsque simulāvērunt et tridūi viam progressī rūrsus revertērunt, atque omnī hoc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū confectō insciōs inopinantisque Menapiōs oppressērunt; qui dē Germanōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs

Cf. 1 īnfīmiōrēs, p. 91, l. 4. — 2 vagāri, 90, 19. — 3 simulātā, 40, 14. — 4 inopinantis, 10, 10.
Campaign against the Germans.

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliis capiendis mōbilēs et novis plērumque rēbus student, nihil his committendum existimāvit. Est enim hoc Gallicē cōnsuētūdinis uti et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnspicere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit quaeārent; et mercātōrēs in oppidis volgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. His rēbus atque auditionibus permōtī dē summis saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestigiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et plērique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

Caesar Distrusts the Gauls on Account of their Fickle Character. He Fears their Alliance with Germans.


He Resolves to Make War on the Germans.

Cf. 1 invitō, p. 12, l. 9. — 2 évocātīs, 88, 28.
They Send him a Defiant Message.

7. Rē frumentāriā comparātā equitibusque délēctis, iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locis esse Germānōs audīebat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgāti ab eis vēnerunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: 'Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, si lācessantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum consūtūdō [haec] sit ā māiōribus trādīta, quīcumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecāri. Haec tamen dicere, vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; si suam grātiam Rōmānī ve-lint, posse eīs útīlis esse amīcōs; vel sī bi agrōs attribuānt vel patiantur eōs tenère quoś armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnis Suēvis concēdere, quibus nē dī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.'

He Orders them to Withdraw from Gaul.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae visum est respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: 'Sībi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse posse, si in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse quī suōs finīs tuēri nōn potuerint aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī dari tantae praeśerūm multītūdīnī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, si velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsidere, quōrum sint lēgāti apud sē et dē Suēvōrum iniūriis querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hoc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.'

They Delay.

9. Lēgāti haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixērunt et rē dēlibe-rātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; interēā nē propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē imperārī posse dixit. Cōgnōverat enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab eis aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmen-

Cf. 1 laccēseret, p. 34, l. 19. — 2 vidēbantur, 62, 14.
Fig. 53.—Scenery on the Meuse.
tandique causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectāri equités atque ēius rei causā moram interpōni arbitrābātur.

The Meuse and the Rhine Described.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā quae appel-lātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batavōrum [in Ōceanum in-fluit] neque longius inde milibus passuum lxxx in Ōceanum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpis inco-lunt, et longō spatiō per finis Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomaticum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citā-tus fertur; et ubi Ōceanō adpropinquavit, in plurīs défluit partīs multīs ingentibusque ā īnsulis effectīs, quārum pars māgna ā feris barbarisque nātiōnibus incolitur, — ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur, — multīs capītibus in Ōceanum influit.

Caesar Advances. More Parleying to Gain Time.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn āmplius passuum xii milibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī reverentur; qui in itinere congressī māgnopere nē longius prōgrederētur ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equités qui agmen antecessissent praemitteret, ēōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātēm faceret in Ubios lēgātōs mittendi; quōrum si principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condicione quae ā Caesarē ferrētur sē ūsu-rōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnfiendiās sibi tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar ēōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut tridui morā interpositā equités eōrum qui abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius milibus passuum iiiī aquātiōnis causā processūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimi conveniērent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cōgnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs qui cum omni equitātū 30
antecesserant mittit qui nūntiārent nē hostis proeliō lacesse-
rent; et, si ipsi laceressentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum 
exercitū propius accessisset.

The German Cavalry Treacherously Attack and Rout the Roman.

12. At hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexē-
5 runt, quōrum erat v milium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius 
vccc equitēs habērent, quod quī frūmentandi causā 
ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus 
nostrīs, quod lēgāti eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesse-
rait atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab his petitus, impētū factō 
10 celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus ās resistentibus, 
cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt,1 subjōssīisque equis 
complūrībusque nostrīs dēiectīs, reliquōs in fugam con-
iēcērunt atque ita perrertitōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā 
dēsisterent quam in cōnspectum agminīs nostri vēnisserant.

Gallant Conduct and Death of the Brothers Piso.

15 In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur 111 ct 
1 lxx; in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquītānus, amplissimō 
genere nātus, cūius avus in civitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat 
amīcus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātri inter-
clūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit, 
20 ipse equō volnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit fortissimē restitit; 
cum circumventus multis volneribus acceptīs cecidisset, 
atque id frāter, qui iam proeliō excesserat, procul animad-
vertisset, incītātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus 
est.

Envoys Come to Cæsar, Whom he Detains. Vigorous Action 
Demanded.

25 13. Hōc factō proeliō Cæsar neque iam sībi lēgātōs 
audiendōs neque conditionēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab 
eis qui per dolum atque insidiās petītā pāce ultrō bellum 

Cf. 1 dēsiliunt, p. 95, l. 15.
intulissent: exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiāe augē rentur\(^1\) equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiāe esse iūdīcābat; et cōgnitā Gallōrum infirmitāte quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proelīō auctōritātīs essent cōnsecūti sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatī dandum existimābat. His cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cūm légātīs et quaestōrē communicātō, nē quem diem pūgnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postridiē ēius dīē māne ēadem et perfidiā et simulātīōne ľiī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus principibus māiōribusque nātū adhibītīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt: simul, ut dicēbātur, pūrgandi\(^2\) suī causā, quod (contra atque esset dictum et īpsi petissent) proelium pridiē commisissent; simul ut, si quid possent, dē indūtiis fallendō\(^3\) impestrārent. Quōs sībi Cæsar oblātōs gāvisus illōs retinēri iussit; ipse omnīs cōpiās castris ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proelīō perterritum esse existimābat, agmen subsequi iussit.

Cæsar Surprises the German Camp.

14. Acie triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter viii milium itinere cōnfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnīt quam quid agerētur Germānī sentire possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discissū suōrum, neque cōnsili habendī neque arma capiendī spatīo datō perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere an castra dēfendere an fugā salūtem petere praestāret.\(^4\) Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, mīlitēs nostrī prīstīnī dīē perfidiā incitātī in castra inrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimenta que proelium commisērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulie- rumque — nam cum omnibus suis domō excesserant 30

---

Rhēnumque trānsierant—passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

The Germans are Defeated and Flee; Many are Slain or Perish in the River.


Caesar’s Reasons for Crossing the Rhine and for Building a Bridge.


Cf. 1 terga, p. 89, l. 10.— 2 lassitūdine, 64, 24.— 3 impulsōs, 59, 4.
Fig. 59 — Pons a Caesare in Rheno factus.

aa, tigna bina sesquipedalia; bb, trabes bipedales; cc, fibulae;
dd, directa materia longuriis cratibusque constrata;
cc, sublicae ad inferiori partem fluminis pro ariete oblique actae;
ff, sublicae supra pontem immissae;
g, castellum ad caput pontis positum.
invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimāret, cur suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret? ’ Ubiī autem, quī ūni ex Trānsrhēnānis ad Caesarem lēgātōs miserant, amicitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrābant ut sībi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēvis prēmerrentur; vel, si id facere occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sībi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opinīōnem ēius exercītūs Ariovistō pulsō et hoc novissimō proeliō factō etiam ad ultīmās 1 Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opinīōne et amicitā populi Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

Description of the Bridge.

17. Caesar hīs de causis quās commemorāvī Rhēnum 15 trānsire dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populi Rōmānī dignitātīs esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficūltās faciēndā pontis prōpōnēbātur propēter lātitūdīnem, rapidītātem, altitūdīnemque flūminis, tamen id sībi contendorum aut aliter nōn tradūcendum exercitum existimābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipēdālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta, dimēnsa 3 ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchīnātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcisque adēgerat, 25 — nōn pūblicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastigātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, — eīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque 30 īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus 3 immissis, quantum eōrum

Cf. 1 ultimae, p. 92, l. 28.—2 dimēnsō, 62, 18.—3 trabibus, 83, 5.
tignōrum iūncūrā distābat, bīnis utrimque fibulis ab extrāmā parte distinēbantur; quibus discīlus atque in contrāriam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis fīrmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō māior vis aquae sē incitāvisset, hoc artiūs inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contextēbantur ac longūriēs crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sēcius sublacēs et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis oblique āgēbantur, quae prō ariete subjectae et cum omni opere coniunctae vim flūminis exciperent; et aliae item supra pontem mediocri spatiō, ut, si arborum truncī sive nāvēs deiciendi operis essent ā barbarīs immissae, his dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vis minuerētur, ne pontī nocērent.

Caesar Enteris Germany.

18. Diēbus x quibus māteriā coepta erat comportāri omni opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finis Sugambīōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitātibus ad eum lēgāti veniunt; quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentiībus liberālīter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambīri ex eo tempore quo pōns instituēs coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus eis quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetībus apud sē habēbant, finibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

He Learnis that the Suevi are Preparing to Resist him, and after Eighteen Days Returns to Gaul.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vicīs aedificiīisque incēnsīs frumentīisque succīsīs, sē in finīs Ubiōrum recēpit; atque his auxiliīm suum pollicitus, si ab Suēvis premerentur, haec ab eis cōgnōvit: 'Suēvōs,

Cf. 1 distinendam, p. 82, l. 7. — 2 māteriām, 93, 19. — 3 mediocrem, 88, 23. — 4 nocēre, 83, 16.
posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fieri comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimississe, utī dē oppidīs dēmīgrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs, suāque omnia in silvis dēpōnerent, atque omnēs qui arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenirent; hunc esse dellēctum medium fērē regiōnum eārum quās Suēvī obtinērent; hic Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre, atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisset.

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus cōnfectīs quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētūr, ut Ubīōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad utīlicitatem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliām recēpit pontemque rescidit.

Caesar Determines to Invade Britain.

20. Exiguā parte aestātīs reliquā Caesar, etsi in his locīs (quod omnīs Galliā ad septentriōnēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit: quod omnibus fērē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et, sī tempus [anni] ad bellum gerendum dēsiceret, tamen māgnō sībi ūsi fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum perspīxisset, loca, portūs, adītūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia fērē Gallis erant incōgnīta. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adīt quisquam, neque eīs ipsis quīcquam praeter ōram marītimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contra Gal- 25 liās nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae māgnitudō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incoherent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quībus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque qui essent ad māiōrem nāvium multītūdinem idōneī portūs reperīre poterat. 30

He Sends Volusenus on a Reconnaissance, then Commius.


The Morini Submit. A Fleet is Prepared.

22. Dum in his locis Caesar návium parándarum causá morátur, ex mágni parte Morinórum ad eum légáti vénërunt qui sè dè superiöris temporis cónsilió excüssàrent, quod hominës barbarë et nostræ cónsuëtudinis imperití bellum populó Römánö fécissent, sèque ea quae imperásset fác-turós policérentur. Hóc sibi Caesar satis opportünë acci-

Cf. 1 perláta, p. 73, l. 4. — 2 imperitum, 40, 9.
disse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque belli gerendi propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs ¹ Britanniae antepōндās iūdicābat, māgnūm eis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus circiter lxxx onerāriīs coāctīs [contrāctisque], quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praeterea nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōri, lēgātis preāfectisque distribuīt. Hūc accēdēbant xviii onerāriāe nāvēs, quae ex eō locō a milibus passuum viii ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venire possent; hās equitibus distribuīt. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabinō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātis in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgāti nōn vēnerant dūcendum dēdit; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō prae- sidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

The Fleet Crosses the Channel, Finds Difficulty in Landing, and Comes to Anchor.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus² idōneam ad nāvigan-
dum tempestātem tertīā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēisque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvis cōncendere et sē sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset admini-
strātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quartā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cūius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur utī ex locīs superiōribus in litus tēlum adigi³ posset. Hunc ad ēgrediēndum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō conveniēnt ad hōram nōnam in ancorās exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīisque militum convo-
cātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset et quae fieri vellet

Cf. ¹ occupātiōnibus, p. 103, l. 7. — ² nactus, 48, 5. — ³ adigēbātur, 84, 1.
osťendit, monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, maximē ut mari-
timae rēs postulārent (ut quae celerem atque instābilem mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eis administrārentur. Hīs dimissīs et ventum et aestum

5 ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs an-
corīs, circiter milia passuum vii ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvis cōnstituit.

The Britons Resist the Landing of the Romans.

24. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō
equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliūs ūtī
cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi
prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās quod
nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn
poterant; militibus autem, ignōtis locis, impeditīs manibus,
māgnō et grāvi onere armōrum oppressīs, simul et dē nāvī-

10 bus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hosti-
bus erat pūgnandum; cum illī aut ex aridō aut paulum in
aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expeditīs, nōtissimīs
locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitat-
rent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūius omnīnō
generis pūgnae imperītī nōn eādēm alacrītāte ac studiō quō
in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant nītēbantur.

Cæsar Manœuvres for an Advantage. Valor of a Roman Centurion.

25. Quod ubi Cæsar animadvertit, nāvis longās, quārum
et speciēs erat barbarīs īnúsitātīor et mōtus ad ūsum
expeditīor, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs

15 incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī, atque inde
fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostis prōpelli ac submovēri
iussit; quae rēs māgnō īsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium
figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et īnúsitātō genere tormentōrum
permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem ret-

Cf. 1 ad nūtum, p. 28, l. 26.—2 speciē, 71, 4.—8 rēmōrum, 83, 13.
tulērunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altītūdinem maris, qui x legiōnis aquilam ferēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōni fēliciter ēveniret, “Dēsilīte,” inquit, “commilitōnēs, nisi voltis aquilam hostibus prōdere;

ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōri officium prae-
stītērō.” Hōc cum vōce māgnā dixisset, sē ex nāvī prōlēcit atque in hostīs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūnīversi ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs [primīs] nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūti hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.

The Romans Effect a Landing, but, Having no Cavalry, Cannot Pursue the Fleeing Britons.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrisque ēcriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmaōter īnstitere neque signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscum-
que signis occurrerat sē adgregābat, māgnopere perturbā-

bantur; hostēs vērō nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex litōre alīquōs singulāris ex nāvī ēgredientis cōnspexerant, inci-
tātīs equīs impeditōs adorībantur, plurēs paucōs circum-

Cf. 1 cunctandum, p. 90, l. 22.
sistēbant, alii ab latere apertō in universōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complēri iussit, et quōs labōrantis 1 cōnspexerat his subsidia submittēbat. Nostri 5 simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostīs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equītēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesarī défuit.

Conference with British Envoys, Who Sue for Peace.

27. Hostēs proeliō superāti, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem légātōs dē pāce misērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs esse polliciti sunt. Ūnā cum hīs légātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniām praemissum. 15 Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ērātōris modō Cae- sarīs mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant: tum proeliō factō remisērunt; et in petendā pāce ēius rei culpam īn multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut īgnōscerētur 2 petīvērunt. Caesar questus 3 quod, cum ultrō in continentem légātīs missīs pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, īgnōscere imprūdentiae dixit obсидēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquōribus locīs arces- sitam paucīs diebus sēsē datūrōs dixērunt. Intereā suōs re- 25 migrāre īn agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē civitātīsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

The Cavalry Transports Driven Back by a Storm.

28. His rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā, post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs xvīī dē quibus suprā

Cf. 1 labōrantibus, p. 46, l. 26.— 2 īgnōvisset, 41, 3.— 3 questum, 32, 20.
The Fleet almost Wrecked by Storms and High Tides.

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, qui diēs 10 maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Oceānō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ǔnō tempore et longās nāvis, [quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat] quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestūs complēverat; et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflīctābant, 8 neque īlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs 8 reliquae

Cf. 1 solvit, p. 107, l. 18. — 2 adflīctārentur, 82, 16. — 8 frāctōs, 27, 25.
cum essent — funibus, ancoris reliquisque armamentis āmissis — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna (id quod necesse erat accidere) tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportāri possent; et omnia deērant quae ad reficiendās nāvīs erant ūsuī; et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemāri in Gallīā oportēre, frūmentum in his locis in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

The Britons Seize the Opportunity and Plan to Renew Hostilities.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnītīs prīncīpēs Britanniae, qui post proeliōn ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum et equītēs et nāvīs et frūmentum Rōmānīs dēesse intellege- rent, et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitātē cōgnōscerent,—quae hōc erant etiam angustīōra quod sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat,—optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebellīōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere; quod his superātīs aut reditū interclūsis nēminem posteā bellī infe- rendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfidēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

Caesār Suspects their Design.

31. At Caesār, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnīs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae gra- vissimē adflectae erant nāvēs, cārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās ūrē erant ūsuī ex continentīi comportāri iubēbat. Itaque cum summō studiō à militibus administrārētur, xii nāvibus āmissīs, reliquis ut nāvīgāri satīs commodē posset effēcit.

Cf. 1 exignitātem, p. 90, l. 18. — 2 suspicātus, 97, 20.
He Takes Measures to Thwart them. They Attack a Foraging Party.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frū-mentātum missā, quae appellābātur vii, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, — cum pars hominum in agris remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, — eī qui prō portīs castrōrum in stātiōne erant Cāsāri nūntiāvērunt pulvere māiore quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā partē vidēri quam in partem legiō īter fēcisset. Cāsār id quod

erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsili, cohortīs quae in stātiōnibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquis duās in stātiōnem succēdere, reliquās ārmāri et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō lon-gius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod omni ex reliquis par-tibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī

Cf. 1 cōnfertōs, p. 66, l. 7.
hostēs huc nostrōs esse ventūros noctū in silvās dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositus armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus pertur-bāverant, simul equitātū atque essedis circumdederant.

Mode of Fighting with War Chariots.

5 33. Genus hoc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Prīmō per omnīs partīs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant; et cum sē inter equītum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgāe interim paulātīm ex proelīō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant utī, sī illī ā multitūdine hostīum premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equītum, stabilitātem pedītum in proelīis praestant; ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in dēclīvī ac praecipītī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

The Foragers Rescued. Large Numbers of Britons Assemble.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs nōvitāte pūgnae tempore opportūnissimō Cæsar auxilium tulit; namque ēius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostri sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacesseundum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtāe sunt continuōs complūris diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērēnt et hostem a pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntīos in omnīs partīs dimisērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum

Cf. 1 strepitū, p. 56, l. 26.—2 dēclīvis, 61, 9.—3 aliēnō, 13, 6.—4 continuōs, 42, 27.
suis praedicāvērunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultās dārētur, si Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitūdine peditātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.

They Give Battle and are Defeated.

35. Caesar, etsi idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat,—ut, si essent hostēs pulsi, celeritāte periculum effugerent,—tamen nactus equītēs circiter xxx, quōs Commiūs Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est) sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. 10 Commissō proeliō diūtiūs nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūti quantum cursū et virībus efficere potuērunt, complūris ex eis occidērunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

Cēsar Returns to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē lēgāti ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pace vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem antēa imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūci iussit; quod, propinquā diē. aequinoctī, īnfirmī nāvibus hiemi nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse ĭdōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediām nocem nāvis solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eis onerāriā duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

Attack of the Morini on Cēsar's Troops.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī militēs circiter 25 ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morīni, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adductī primō nōn īta māgnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, si sēsē interfici nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt.
Cum illi orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia vi convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suis auxiliō misit. Interim nostri militēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris iii fortissimē pūgnāvērunt, et paucis volneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occidērunt. Postea vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

The Rebellious Morini Subdued. Thanksgiving at Rome.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eis legiōnibus quās ex Britānniā redŭxerat in Morinōs, qui rebellionem fēcerant, misit. Quī cum propter siccitātis palūdum quō sē recipērent nōn habērent (quō perfugīō superiōre annō erant ūsi), omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgāti, qui in Menapiōrum finīs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vastātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hiberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō civitātēs ex Britānniā obsidēs misērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesāris diērum xx supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.
BOOK V.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN.—FRESH RISINGS OF THE GAULS. B.C. 54.

Caesar, Contemplating a Second Invasion of Britain, Orders a Suitable Fleet Built. Settles Disturbances in Illyricum.

DOMITIŌ Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus, discēdēns ab hibernis Caesar in Ítaliam, ut quotannis facere consuērat, lēgātīs imperat quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat utī quam plūrīmās possint hieme nāvīs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrent. Eārum modum formamque 1 dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnisque paulō facit humiliōrēs quam quibus in nostrō mari úti cōnsuēvimus; atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fieri cōgnōverat; ad onera ac multitūdinēm iūmentōrum trānsportandam, paulō lātiōrēs quam quibus in relīquis útimur maribus. Hās omnīs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuval. Ea quae sunt ūsui ad armandās 2 nāvīs ex Hispāniā adpor-tāri iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliāe citeriōris perāctīs in Íllyricum proficiscitur, quod ā Pirūstīs fīnitīmam 3 partem prōvinciae incursionibus vāstāri audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitātibus militēs imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pirūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt qui doceant 4 nihil ēārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō,

Cf. 1 figuram. — 2 ōrnandās. — 3 opp. ultimam. — 4 ostendant.
sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus ratiōnibus dē
inīūriis satisfacere. Perceptā<br>1<br>ōrātiōne eōrum Caesar<br>obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūci iubet: nisi<br>ita fēcerint, sēsē belliō cīvitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat.<br>5<br>Eis ad diem adductīs ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter cīvitātīs<br>dat qui litem aestimēnt poenamque cōnstituānt.<br>

Returns to Gaul. Orders the New Fleet to Assemble at the Port Itius.<br>Finds Trouble Brewing among the Treveri.<br>

2. His cōnfectis rēbus conventibusque perāctīs, in citeriōrem Gālliam revertitur<br>atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumvītīs omnibus hibernīs, singulaīrī militūm studiō in summā omnium rērum inōpiā circiter<br>dc ēius generis, cūius suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, nāvis et longās<br>xxvīiii invēnit inūctās, neque multum abesse ab eō quīn<br>paucīs diēbus dēdūci possint. Conlaudātīs militibus atque<br>eis qui negotiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit ostendit<br>atque<br>omnis ad portum Itium conveniēre iubet, quō ex portū<br>commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse cōgnōverat cīcīter<br>milium passuum xxx [transmissum] ā continentī.<br>Huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum reliquīt; ipse<br>cum legiōnibus expeditīs III et equītibus dccc in finīs Trē−
verōrum proficiscitur; quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant<br>neque imperiō pārēbant, Germānōsque Trānshēnānōs solli−
citāre dicēbantur.<br>

Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, Rival Chiefs of the Treveri, Appeal to<br>Caesar.<br>

3. Haec cīvitās longē plurīum tōtīus Gālliae equitātū<br>valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut<br>suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit. In eā cīvitāte duo dē princi−
pipātū inter sē contendēbant, Indutiomārus et Cingetorix; ex quībus alter, simul atque dē Caesāris legiōnumque ad−

ventū cognitum est, ad eum vēnit; sē suōsque omnis in officiō futūros neque ab amicitia populi Rōmānī défectūros confīrmāvit; quaeque in Trēverīs gerentur ostendit. At Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, eisque qui per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant in silvam Arduenna admitterat, quae ingenti māgntūdine per mediōs finīs Trēverōrum a flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre instituit. Sed posteāquam nōn nūlli principēs ex ēā civitāte et auctōritāte Cingetorigis adducti et adventū nostri exercitūs perterriti ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suīs privātīs rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitātī consulure nōn possent; veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur. Indūtiomārus lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: 'Sēse idcirco ab suīs discēdere atque ad eum venire nōluisse, quo facilius cīvitātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātīs diessessū plēbs propter imprudēntiam lāberētur; itaque cīvitātem in suā potestāte esse sēque, si Caeser permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum et suās cīvitātīisque fortūnās ēius fidei permīssūrum.'

He Settles the Dispute in Favor of Cingetorix.

4. Caesar etsi intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dīcerentur quaeque eum rēs ab institūto cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aetātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmovere cōgerētur omnibus rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātīs, Indūtiomārum ad sē cum cc obsidibus venire iussit. Hīs adductīs, in eis filiō propinquisque ēius omnibus, quōs nōminātim ēvocāverat, cōnsolātus Indūtiomārum hortātusque est uti in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen sēcius principibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātīs hōs singillātim Cingetorigī conciliāvit; quod cum meritō ēius a sē fierī intellegēbat, tum māgni interesse arbitrābātur ēius auctōritātem inter suōs quam plurīmum

valère, cūius tam ėgregiam\(^1\) in sē voluntātem perspexisset. Id factum graver tuliō Indūtiomārus [suam grātiām inter suōs minui]; et qui iam ante inimīcō in nōs animō fuisset multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.\(^2\)

Assembling of Troops at the Port Itius.

5 5. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs Caesar ad portum Ītium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit LX nāvis, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās\(^3\) cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque ēōdeme unde erant protectae revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus īnstrūctās invenit.\(^4\) Ēōdēm equitātus tōtius Galliae convenit, numerō milia III, principēsque ex omnibus civitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, reliquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat,\(^5\) quod, cum ipse abesse, mōtum\(^6\) Galliae verēbātur.

Dumnorix, the Hāeduān, Again Appears.

15 6. Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorix Hāeduus, dē quō ante ab nōbis dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in primīs cōnstituērat,\(^7\) quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, māgni animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctoritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Hāeduōrum Dumnorix dixerat sībī a Caesare rēgnum civitātis dēferri;\(^8\) quod dictum Hāeduī gravīter\(^9\) ferēbant neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille omnibus primō precībus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinquerētur; partim quod īnsuētus nāvigandi māre timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impedīrī\(^10\) sēsē diceret. Posteāquam id obstinātē sībī negāri vidit, omni spē impetrandī adēmptā,

principēs Galliae sollicitāre, sévocāre singulōs, hortārique coeptit utī in continenti remanērent; metū territāre nōn sine causā fierī ut Gallia omni nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris ut, quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnīs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquis interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem déferēbantur.

Flight, Capture, and Death of Dumnorix.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum civitātī Haeduae dignitātis tribuēbat, coercendum atque dēterrendum quibuscumque rēbus posset Dumnorigem statuēbat; quod longius ēius ēmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, prōspiciendūm nē quid sibi ac rei públicae nocēre possēt. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigationēnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in his locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, dābat operam ut in officiō Dumnorigem continēret; nihilō tamen sēcius omnia ēius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret. Tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem militēs equītēsque cōnsendendrē nāvis iubet. At omnium impeditīs animīs Dumnorīx cum equītibus Haeduōrūm ā castrīs inscendentē Caesarem domum discēdere coeptit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectione atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs, māgnam partem equītātūs ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; si vim faciāt neque pāreat, interfici iubet; nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātūs quī praēsentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coeptit, saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse.

The Gallic War.

Caesar Sets Sail for Britain. The Natives in Alarm Withdraw from the Coast.

8. His rebus gestis,\(^1\) Labiēnō in continentē cum III legiōnibus et equitum milibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tuērētur et rei frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gerentur cōgnōsceret cōnsiliūmque prō tempore et prō ré caperet, ipse cum v legiōnibus et pari numerō equitum, quem in continentī reliquerat, ad \(^2\)sōlis occāsum nāvis solvit; et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit; et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōnspexit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmis contendit ut eam partem Īnsulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriis gravibusque nāvīgis nōn intermissō rēmigandi labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiānō\(^4\) ērē tempore;\(^4\) neque in eō locō hostis est visus, sed, ut posteā Caesār ex captīvis cōgnōvit,\(^5\) cum māgnae manūs\(^6\) eō convēnissent, multītūdine nāvium per territae,\(^7\) quae cum annōtinis privātīisque, quās sui quisque commodi fēcerat, amplius CCC ünō erant visae tempore, ā litore discesserant\(^8\) ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

The Army Lands and Advances. The Natives Resist, but are Defeated.

9. Caesār expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvis cōgnōvit quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis et equitibus CCC qui praesidiō\(^9\) nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostīs contendit,

Cf. \(^1\) cōnfectīs. — \(^2\) occidentem sōlem. — \(^3\) primā lūce. — \(^4\) meridiē. — \(^5\) repperit. — \(^6\) cōpiae. — \(^7\) permōtae. — \(^8\) excesserant. — \(^9\) subsidiō.
—eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore molī atque apertō délīgātās ad ancorās relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvi-
busque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia
passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās cōspicātus est. Illī
equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre
nostros prohibēre et proelium committere coeptērunt.

Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdīderunt, locum nactī
gregiē et nāturā et opere mūnītum, quem domestici belli
(ut vidēbantur) causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam cré-
brīs arboribus succīsis omnēs introitūs erant praeclūsi. Ipsi
ex silvis rāri prōpūgnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs
ingredi prohibēbant. At militēs legiōnis vii, testūdīn
factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adiectō, locum cēpērunt

Cf. 1 lēnītē acclīvī. — 2 profectus. — 3 impedīre. — 4 multīs.
6 aditus, opp. exitus. — 6 introire. — 7 exstrüctō.
The Gallic War.

The Fleet Suffers from a Storm, is Hastily Repaired and Drawn up on Shore.

10. 2 Postridie eius diei mane tripartitō militēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem misit, ut eōs qui fūgerant sequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressus, cum iam extrēmi essent in prōspectū, equitēs a Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt qui nūntiārent, superiōre nocte maximā coōrtā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvis adflictās atque in litus eīectās esse; quod neque ancorae fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis pati8 possent. Itaque ex eō concursū nāvium māgnum esse incommodum4 acceptum.

11. His rēbus cognitis Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocāri atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvis rever-titur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiis [litteris] cōgnōverat cōrum perspicit, sic ut āmissis6 circiter xl nāvibus reliqua tamen refici posse māgnō negotiō6 vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs deligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scribit7 ut quam plūrimās possit eōs legiōnibus quae sunt apud eum nāvis instituat.8 Ipse, etsi rēs erat multae opera ac labōris, tamen commodissimum9 esse statuit omnis nāvis subdüci10 et cum castris ūnā mūnitiōne coniungi. In his rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs quidem tempōribus ad labōrem militum intermissis. Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēregiē mūnitis ēādem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit; ipse eōdem unde redierat proficiscitur.11 Eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique in eum

locum cópiae Britannórum convénérant, summá imperí belli quē administrándi commúnì cōnsíliō permissā Cassi-vellaunō; cūiús finēs à maritimis civítātibus flūmen dividit, quod appellātur Tamesis, à mari circiter mília passuum

**Fig. 69. — Soldiers Building Camp, with Guards.**

LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquis civítātibus cont-
tinentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permôti Britanni hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

The Inhabitants of Britain and its Resources.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab eis incolitur quōs nātōs in insulā ipsī memorī prōditum dicunt; maritima pars ab eis qui praedae ac bellī inferendi causā ex Belgīō trānsiērunt (qui omnēs ferē eis nōminibus civitātum appellantur quibus

Cf. 1 mandātā. — 2 perpetua. — 3 praeposuerant. — 4 gerendi.
The Gallic War.

orti ex civitātibus eō pervēnērant) et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērant atque agrōs colere coepērant. Hominum est infinita multitūdō crēberrimaque\(^1\) aedīfīcia ferē Gallicīs consimilia,\(^2\) pecoris māgnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere [aut 5 nummō aereō] aut tāleis ferreis ad certum pondus exāminātis prō nummō. Nācitur ibi plumbum album in mediterūaneis, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ēius exigua\(^3\) est cōpia; aere utuntur importātō. Māteria cūiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abīetem. Leporem et gallinam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant;\(^4\) haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā remissiōribus frigoribus.

Shape and Size of the Island.

13. Īnsula nātūrā\(^5\) triquētra, cūius įnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium,\(^15\) quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat.\(^6\) Hoc latus pertinet circiter milia passuum \(d\). Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quà ex parte est Hibernia, īnsula dimidīō minor (ut existimātur) quam Britannia, sed pari 20 spatiō trānsmissūs\(^7\) atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hoc mediō cursū est īnsula quae appellātur\(^8\) Mona; complūrēs praeterea minōrēs subiectae\(^9\) īnsulae existimantur; dē quibus īnsulis\(^10\) nōn nūlli scripsērant diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōni-25 bus\(^11\) reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūris breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctis vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert\(^12\) illōrum opiniō,\(^13\) dcc milium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs, cui partī nūlla est objecta\(^14\) terra; sed ēius angulus lateris maximē ad Germā-

Cf.\(^1\) frequentissima.—\(^2\) paria.—\(^3\) parva.—\(^4\) arbitrantur.—\(^5\) forma.—\(^6\) vergit.—\(^7\) trāiectūs.—\(^8\) nōminātur.—\(^9\) propinquae.—\(^10\) quīdām.—\(^11\) quaestīone.—\(^12\) est.—\(^13\) sententia.—\(^14\) opposita.
niam spectat. Hoc milium passuum dccc in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu viciēs centum milium passuum.

Customs of the Britons.

14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī qui Cantium incolunt (quae regiō est maritima omnis), neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērique frū-menta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnēs vērō sē Britanni vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in pūgnā adspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omni parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēni duodēnique inter sē commūnis, et maximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum liberis; sed qui sunt ex his nāti eōrum habentur liberi quō primum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

Battle with the Britons, Who are Driven Back.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriūque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflixeōrunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collisque compulerint; sed complūribus interfecēs cupidius insecūti nōn nullōs ex suis āmisērunt. At illi intermissō spatiō, imprudentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūni- tiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt, impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in stātiōne prō castrīs conlocāti, ācriter pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missī subsidīō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque his prīmis legiōnum duārum, cum eae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterrētīs nostrīs, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumīs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q.

Laberius Dūrus tribūnus militum interficitur. Illī pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

Their Methods of Fighting.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculīs omnium ac prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter 5 gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnequī cēdentīsī possent neque ab signīs discēdere audērunt, minus aptōs esse ad hūius generis hostem; equītēs autem māgnō cum periculō proelīō dīmicāre, propterēā quod illī etiam cōnsultō plē-rumque cēderent, et cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs 10 remōvissent, ex essēdis dēsilīrent et pedibus disparē proelīō contenderent. [Equestris autem proelī ratiō et cēdentibus et insequentiōs pār atque idem periculum inferēbat.] Accēdēbat hūc ut numquam cōnfertī 8 sed rāri māgnīisque intervāllis proelīārentūr 4 stationēsque 5 dispositās habērent, 15 atque aliōs alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentēs dēfatigātīs succēderent.

They are Again Defeated.

17. 6 Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōn-stitērunt, rārique sē ostendere et lēnius quam pridiē nostrōs equītēs proelīō lacesserē 7 coepērunt. Sed meridiē, 8 cum Caesar pābulandi causā iii legiōnēs atque omnem equitā-tum cum C. Trebōnīō lēgātō misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sic utī ab signis legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. 9 Nostri ācriter in eōs impetū factō repulērunt, neque finem sequendi fēcērunt quoad 25 subsidiō cōnfisi equītēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt; magnōque eōrum numerō interfecētō neque suī conligendi neque cōnsistentiī aut ex essēdis

Cf. 1 sē recipientīs, terga vertentīs. 2 idōneōs. 3 dēnsī. 4 dīmicārent. 5 subsidia. 6 postrīdiē ēius diēī. 7 vexāre. 8 meridiānō tempore. 9 discēderent.
dēsiliendi facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus quae undique convēnerant auxilia discessērunt; neque post id tempus umquam summis nōbiscum cōpiis hostēs contendērunt.

**Fig. 70.**—Signa Militaria.

**Cæsar Crosses the Thames.**

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in finis Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnino locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsiri potest. Ėō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium istrūctās; rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus praeūxīisque mūnīta, ēiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. His rēbus cōgnitīs a captivīs perfugīisque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestīm legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū militēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possēnt rīpāisque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

Cassivellaunus Avoids a General Engagement, but Annoys Caesar by Guerilla Tactics.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut supra démonstrāvimus, omnī deposītā spē contentiōnis, dimissis ampliōribus cōpiis, milibus circiter iii essedāriōrum relictis itinēra nostra servābat; paulumque ex via excēdēbat locisque impeditīs ac silvestri-bus sēsē occultābat atque eis regiōnibus quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat pecora atque homīnēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat; et cum equitātus noster liberius praedandi vāstantique causā sē in agrōs ēiēcerat, omnibus viis sēmitisque essedāriōs ex silvis ēmittēbat; et māgnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitūm cum eis cōnfigēbat atque hoc metū lātiōs vagāri prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum in agrīs vāstantis incendiīisque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur quantum in labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī militēs efficere poterant.

The Trinobantes Yield to Caesar.


Other Tribes also Yield. A British "Oppidum."


Cassivellaunus at Last Submits.

22. Dum haec in his locîs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprâ dêmônstrâvîmus, quibus regiônibus IIII rëgês præerant, Cîngetorîx, Carvîlius, Taxi-magûlus, Segonax, nûntiôs mittit atque his imperat uti coacîs omnibus cûpiis castra nàvâlia dê imprövisô adorîntur atque oppûgnent. Hi cum ad castra vëniissent, nostri ëruptiônê factâ multis eôrum interfectís, captô etiam nôbîli duce Lugotorîge, suûs incolmûs redûxêrunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proelli nûntiâtô, tot défîrîmentis acceptis, vâstâtîs fini-

20

bul, maximë etiam permôtûs dëfectiônê civîtâtum, lêgâtôs per Atrebâtem Commium dê dëdîtîône ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cônsitüsset hiemâre in continentî propter repentinôs Galliæ mûtûs, neque multum aestâtîs super-esset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellegeret, obsídês

imperat, et quid in annós singulós vectígális populó Rómanó Britannia penderet cónstituit. Interdicit atque imperat Cassivellaunó nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Cæsar Returns to Gaul.

23. Obsidibus acceptís exercitum reducit ad mare, nāvis invenit refectás. Hís dēductís, quod et captivórum mágnum numerum habēbat et nōn nūllae tempestāte déperierant

nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Ac sic accidit uti ex tantō nāvium numerō, tot nāvigationiibus, neque hoc neque superiōre anno ülla omnino nāvis quae militēs portāret dēsiderārētur; at ex eis quae inānēs

Cf. 1 opp. subductīs. — 2 aliquot. — 8 multitūdine. — 4 déperīret.
ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, [et] priōris commeātūs expositis militibus, et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent;\(^1\) reliquaē fērē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāset, nē anni tempore ā nāvigationē excluderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat,\(^2\) necessāriō angustius militēs conlocāvit, ac summā tranquilliūtē\(^3\) cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit\(^4\) omnīisque incolumīs nāvīs perdūxit.

**On Account of the Scarcity of Supplies, the Army is Widely Distributed for Winter Quarters.**

24. Subductis nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samaro-brivae perāctō, quod eō anno frūmentum in Galliā propter siccitātis angustius prōvēnerat, coāctus est aliter ac superiōribus annīs exercītum in hibernīs conlocāre legiōnēsque in plūris civiūtās distribuere;\(^6\) ex quibus ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nervīōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōsciō; quartam ān Rēmis cum T. Labiēnō in confiniō Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit; trēs in Bellovacīs conlocāvit; his M. Crassum et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōinium lēgātōs praefēcit. Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōnscripterat, et cohortīs v in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Ambiorīgis et Catuvolci erant, mīsit. Hīs militibus Q. Titūriūm Sabinum et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtīs legiōnibus faciillimē inopiae frūmentāriae sēsē medēri posse existimāvit.\(^9\) Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnūm hiberna, praeter eam quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quīétissimam partem dūcendam dederat, milībus passuum c continēbantur. Ipse interēa, quoad\(^10\)

---

\(^1\) Cf. 1 pervenirent ad. — 2 aderat. — 3 malaciā. — 4 capit. — 5 quam. — 6 dividere. — 7 finibus. — 8 nūper. — 9 putāvit. — 10 dum.
legionēs conlocatās munītāque hiberna cognōvisset, in Galliā morāri cōnstituit.

Tasgetius, a Friendly Chief, Slain by the Carnutes.


Fig. 72. — Coin of L. Plancus.

10 pluris pertinēbat, nē civitās eōrum impulsū déficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgīō celeriter in Carnutēs proficisci iubet ibique hiemāre; quōrumque operā cognōverit Tasgetium interfēctum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus quibus locumque hibernīs esse munitum.

Revolt of Ambiorix and Catuvolcus. Sabinus's Camp Attacked.

26. Diēbus circiter xv quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentinī tumultūs ac défeciōnis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolcō; qui, cum ad finis rēgni sui Sabinō Cottaeque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hiberna com-

Ambiorix Treacherously Advises Sabinus to Abandon his Camp and Join Cicero or Labienus.

27. Mittitur ad eós conloquendī causā C. Arpīnēius, eques Rōmānūs, familiāris Q. Titūri, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quidam, qui iam ante missū Caesari ad Ambiorīgem ventitāre consuērāt; apud quōs Ambiorix ad hunc modum locūtus est: 'Sēsē prō Caesari in sē beneficiis plurimum ei cōnfītēri dēbēre, quod āius operā stipendiō liberātus esset quod Aduatucīs, finitimīs suis, pendere consuēsset, quodque ei et filius et frātris filius ab Caesare remissi essent quōs Aduatucī obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnis tenuissent; neque id quod fēcerit dē oppūgnātiōne castrōrum aut iūdicīo aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū civitātis; suaque esse ēiusmodi imperia ut nōn minus habēret īūris in sē multitūdō quam ipse in multitūdinem.

'Civitātī porrō hanc fuisse belli causam, quod repentinēae Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit; id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperitus rērum ut suis cōpiis populō Rōmānum superāri posse cōnfidat. Sed esse Galliae commune cōnsilium; omnibus hibernīs Caesari oppūgnandīs hunc esse dictum diem, nē
The Gallic War.

qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidies 1 venīre posset; nōn facile Gallōs Gallis negāre potuisset, praesertim cum dē recupe-
randā 2 commūnī libertāte cōnsilium inītum vidērētur.

'Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre nunc
5 sē raṭiōnem offici prō beneficiis Caesaris; monēre, ōrāre 3
Titūrum prō hospitīō ut suae ac militūm salūtī cōnsulat.
Māgnam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trāns-
isse; hanc adhore bīduō. Ipsiōrum esse cōnsilium, velintne
prius quam fīnitimi sentiat, 4 ēductōs ex hibernis militēs aut
ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēdūcere, quōrum alter
milia passuum circiter L, alter paulō amplius ab eis absit.
Illud sē pollicērī et iūre iūrandō cōnfirmāre tūtum sē iter
per suōs finīs datūrum; quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē
cōnsulere, quod hibernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō ēius meritīs 5
15 grātiam referre.' Hāc ōratiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorīx.

Some of his Officers are Opposed to Such a Movement.

28. Arpīnēius et Iūnius quae audierant 6 ad lēgātōs
dēferunt. Ilii repentinā rē perturbātī, 7 etsī ab hoste ea dicē-
bantur, tamen nōn neglegenda 8 existimābant; maximēque
hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem ignōbilem atque
20 humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum
facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōnsilium
rem dēferunt māgnaque inter eōs existit contrōversia. 9
L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque 10 tribūnī militum et primōrum
ordinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum, neque ex
25 hibernīs inīußī Caesarīs discēdendum existimābant; quantāsvis [māgnās] cópiās etiam Germānōrum sustinērī 11 posse
mūnitis hibernīs docēbant; rem esse testimōniō, quod
primum hostium impetum multīs ultrō 12 volneribus inlātīs
fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; 13 interē

Cf. 1 auxiliō. — 2 recipienda. — 6 obsecrāre. — 4 intellegant. — 6 benefi-
ciās. — 6 cōgnōverant. — 7 permōtī. — 8 praetermittenda. — 9 disputā-
tiō. — 10 plērique. — 11 resistī, w. dat. — 12 praeterea. — 18 urgēri.
et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō, quid esse levius aut turpius quam auctōre hoste dē summis rèbus capere cōnsilium?

But Sabinus Argues in Favor.

29. Contrā ea Titūrius 'Sērō factūrōs' clāmitābat, 'cum māiōrēs manūs hostium adiūnctīs Germānīs convēnissent, aut cum aliqūid calamitātīs in proximis hibernis esset accep-tum; brevem cōnsulendi esse occasiōnem.' Caesarem sē arbitrāri profectum in Æūgarianī; neque aliter Carnutēs inter-ficiendi Tasgetī cōnsilium fuisset captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventū-rōs esse. Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhēnum; māgnō esse Germānīs dōlōri Arioβiṣī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victoriās; ardēre Galliam tot contumēliis acceptīs sub populi Rōmānī imperium redāc-tam, superiōre gloriā reī militāris existūntā. Postrēmō, quis hoc sibi persuādēret sine certā spē Ambiorīgem ad ēiusmodī cōnsilium dēscendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtam: sī nihil esset dūrius, nūllō cum periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōnsentīret, inam esse in celeritāte positam salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum qui dissentī- rent cōnsilium quem habēre exitum? in quō sī nōn prae-sēns periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda.'

māgna pars militum exaudiret; "neque is sum," inquit, "qui gravissimē ex vobis mortis periculō terre"; hī sapient; si gravius quid acciderit, abs tē rationem reposcet; qui, si per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proximīs hibernīs coniūnctī commūnem cum reliquīs belli cāsum sustineant, nōn réiectī et relēgātī longē ab cēteris aut ferrō aut fame intereant."

Sabinus Prevails, and the Army Marches Out of Camp.

31. Consurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et órant 'Nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum periculum dēdūcant; faciēm esse rem, seu maneant quartum proficiscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere.' Rēs disputātiōne ad medium noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs; superat sententia Sabinī. Pronūn- tiātur primā lūce itūrōs. Consūmitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumpliceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex īnstrūmentō hibernōrum reliquere cogētur. [Omnia excōgitantur quā rē nec sine periculō maneātur et languōre militum et vigillīs periculum auge- ātur.] Prīmā lūce sic ex castris proficiscuntur ut quibus esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste sed ab homine amicissimō [Ambiorīge] cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine maximis- que impedimentis.

They are Suddenly Attacked in a Narrow Defile.

32. At hostēs, posteā quam ex nocturnō fremitū vigili- isque dē profectione eōrum sēnsērunt, conlocātīs insidiis bipartītō in silvis opportūnō atque occultō locō a mīlibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectā- bant; et cum sē māior pars agminis in māgnam convallem

dēmisisset, ex utrāque parte ēius vallis subitō sē ostendē-
runt novissimōsque premere et primōs prohibēre adscēnsū
atque iniqüissimō nostris locō proelium committēre coe-
pērunt.

Sabinus Loses his Self-possession. Cotta Does Nobly, but Makes a Fatal
Mistake.

33. Tum dénum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset, tre-
pidāre et concursāre cohortisque dispōnere, haec tamen
ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia déficere vidērentur; quod
plērumque eis accidere cōnsūēvit quī in ipsō negōtiō

Cf. 1 dēscendissent. 2 exstitérunt. 3 aliēnissimō. 4 distribu-
ere. 5 évenire. 6 discrimine. 7 mūnera. 8 agendum.
The Gallic War.

Quod cōnsilium, etsī in ēiusmodi cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommode cecidit; nam et nostrīs militīs bus spem minuit et hostīs ad pūgnam alacrīrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et déspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut volgō militēs ab signīs discēderent, quaeque quīisque eōrum cārissima habēret ab impedimentis petere atque abripere properāret; clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

Policy of Ambiorix.

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā acī prōnūntiārī iussėrunt nē quis ab locō discēderet; illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent; proinde omnia in victōriā posita existimārent. [Erant et virtūte et numerō pūgnandō parēs.] Nostri tametsī ab duce et ā fortūnā désērēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant; et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte māgnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorīx prōnūntiārī iubet ut procul tēla coniciant ne propius accēdant, et quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint cēdant [levitāte armōrum et cotidiānā exercitātiōne nihil his nocērī posse], rūrsus sē ad signa recipientis īnsequantur.

The Fight Continues, the Romans Continually Worsted.

35. Quō praeceptō ab eis diligentissimē observātō, cum quaepliam cohors ex orbe exessērat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam partem nūdāri necesse erat et ab latere aperto tēla recipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum unde erant prōgressī reverti coeperant, et ab eis quī cesserant et ab eis quī proximi

steterant circumveniēbantur; sin autem locum tenēre vel-
lent, nec virtūti locus\(^1\) relinquēbātur neque ab tantā multi-
tūdine coniecta tēla cōnferti vitāre poterant. Tamen tot
incommodis cōnflictāti,\(^2\) multīs volneribus acceptīs resistē-
bant;\(^3\) et māgnā parte diēi cōnsūmptā, cum ā primā lūce
ad hōram octāvam pūgnārētur, nihil quod ipsīs esset indig-
num committēbant.\(^4\) Tum T. Balventiō, qui superiōre annō
primum pilum dūxerat, virō fortī et māgnae auctōritātīs,
utrumque femur trāgulā trāicitur;\(^5\) Q. Lūcānius, ēiusdem
ōrdinis, fortissīmē pūgnāns, dum circumventō fīliō subvenit,\(^6\) 
interficītur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnis cohortis ordinēsque
adhortāns in adversum ös fundā volnerātur.

Sabinus Seeks an Interview with Ambiorix.

36. Hīs rēbus permotūs Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambio-
rigem suōs cohortantem cōnspexisset, interpretēm suum Cn.
Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum\(^7\) ut sībī militibusque par-
cat.\(^8\) Ille appellātus\(^9\) respondet: 'Si velit sēcum conloqui,
licēre; spērāre ā multītūdine impertrāri posse quod ad mili-
tum salūtem pertinēat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum īri, inque
eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnerē.' Ille cum Cottā sau-
ció commūnicat, sī videātur, pūgnā ut excēdant et cum
Ambiorige ūnā conloquantur: spērāre sē ab eō dē suā ac
militum salūte impertrāri posse. Cotta sē ad armātum ho-
stem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.\(^10\)

He is Treacherously Slain. The Army Utterly Defeated. Few Escape.

37. Sabinus quōs\(^1\) in praesentīa tribūnōs militum circum
sē habēbat et primōrum ōrdinum centurionēs sē sequī iubet; \(^2\)
et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, īssus arma ab-
icere,\(^3\) \(^4\) imperātum facit suisque ut idem faciant imperat.

Cf. \(^1\) occāsiō. — \(^2\) exagitāti. — \(^3\) repūgnābant. — \(^4\) admittēbant. —
\(^5\) trānsfigitūr. — \(^6\) auxilium fert. — \(^7\) petitum. — \(^8\) clēmentiā útātur in.
— \(^9\) invitātus. — \(^10\) perstat. — \(^11\) illō tempore. — \(^12\) dépōnerē. — \(^13\) pāret.
The Gallic War.

Interim, dum dē condicionibus inter sē agunt longiorque consultō ab Ambiorīge instituitur sermō, paulātim circum-ventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō more victoriam conclā-mant atque ululātum tollunt, impetūque in nostrōs factō 5 ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pũgnāns interficitur cum maximā parte militum. Reliqui sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressi ; ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum māgnā multitūdinē hostium premerētur,¹ aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pũgnāns occiditur. Illī 10 aegrē² ad noctem oppũgnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proe-liō ēlāpsi incertis itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgā-tum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certi-ōrem faciunt.

Ambiorix Persuades the Aduatuci and Nervii to Join the Revolt.

38. Hāc victoriā sublātus Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in Aduatucōs, qui erant ēius rēgnō finitimi, proficiscitur ; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditātumque sē subsequi iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduatucisque concitātis, posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit, hortāturque nē suī in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs prō eis quās accēperint iniurīs occāsiōnem dīmittant; ⁶ interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs māgnamque partem exercitūs interisse dēmōn-strat; nihil esse negotī subitō oppressam legiōnem quae cum Cicerōne hiemet interfici; sē ad eam rem profiētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc ōratiōne Nerviīs persuādet.

A Large Force Attacks the Camp of Q. Cicero.

39. Itaque cōnfestim dimissis nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudīōs, Levacōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, qui omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās possunt manūs cōgunt,

et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut non nūlli militēs, qui līgnātiōnis mūnitōnisque causā in silvās discississent, repentīnō equi- tum adventū intecipherentur. His circumventīs, māgnā

manū Eburōnēs, Nervii, Aduatucī atque hōrum omnium socii et clientēs legiōnem oppūgnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adeptī victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrés cōnfidēbant.

Cicero Makes Vigorous Preparations for Resistance.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnestim ab Cicerōne litterae, māgnis prōpositis praemiis si pertulissent; obsessis

Cf. 1 properant. — 2 māteriandī. — 3 semper. — 4 cōstitūtīs.
omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctū ex materiā quam mūnitioinis causā comportāverant turres admodum cxx excitantur incrēdibili celeritāte; quae deesse operī vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō maiōribus coāctīs cōpiis castra oppūgnant, fossam complent. Ā nostris eādēs ratione quā pridiē resistitur: hoc idem reliquis deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars noctūnī temporis ad labōrem inter- mittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn volnerātīs facultās quiētīs datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēi oppūgnātiōnem opus sunt noctū comparantur; multae praēūstae sudēs, māgnus mūrā- lium pilōrum numerus instituitur; turres contabulantur; turres contabulantur; pinnae lōricaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō militum concursū ac vōcibus sibi par cere cōgerētur.

The Nervian Chiefs Try to Persuade Cicero to Retire. He Refuses.

41. Tunc ducēs principēsque Nerviōrum, qui a liqueum sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habē- bant, conloqul sese velle dicunt. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat commen- sorat: ‘Omnem esse in armīs Galliām, Germānōs Rhēnum trānsisse, Caesā- ris reliquōrumque hiberna oppūgnāri.’ Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fidei faciendae causā. Errāre eōs dicunt, sī quicquam ab eis praesidī spērent qui suis rébus diffidant; sēsē tamen hoc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsent, atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illis per sē incolūmibus ex hibernis discēdere et quāscumque in partīs velint sine metū proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: ‘Nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populi Rō-
mānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; si ab 1 armīs discèdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō ēius iūstitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.'

They Lay Siege to the Camp.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsi Nervii vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum quāndecim hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrūm annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbis cōgnōverant2 et quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captivōs ab hīs docēbantur; sed nūllā ferramentōrum cōpiā quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea,3 gladiis caespitēs circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaūrīrē4 cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cōgnōsci potuit; nam minus hōris tribus milīum pas-suōm xv in circuitū mūnitionēm5 perfēcērunt. 6 Reliquīisque diēbus turris ad altitūdinem vālli, falcīs testūdinēsque, quās iīdem captīvi docuerant, parāre ac facere coepercērunt.

They Make a Furious Assault, Which is Gallantly Resisted.

43. Septimō oppūgnātiōnis dīe maximō coōrtō ventō ferventīs fūsilēs ex argillā glandīs fundīs et fervefacta iacula7 in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepercērunt. Hae celerērē ignēm comprehendērunt et ventī māgnitūdīne in omnem locum8 castrōrum distülerunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sēc utī partā iam atque explōrātā victōriā, turnīs testūdinēsque agere et scālis vāllum adscendere coepercērunt. At tanta militūm virtūs9 atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flamma torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitūdīne premerentur suaque omnia impedi-menta atque omnīs fortūnās consagrāre10 intellegērunt,11 nōn modo [dēmigrandi causā] dē vāllō décēderet nēmō, sed

paene\textsuperscript{1} nē respiceret quidem quisquam; ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnārent. Hic diēs nostri longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum ut eō diē maximus numeros hostium volnerārētur atque interficerētur, 5 ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstipāverant\textsuperscript{2} recessumque prīmis ultimi nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turri ādāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae

cohortis centurīōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt\textsuperscript{3} suōisque omnis remōvērunt; nūtū vōcipusque hostēs si in- 10 troīre vellent vocāre coopērunt, quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectīs dēturbātī\textsuperscript{4} turrisque succēnsa est.

\textbf{Rivalry of Two Centurions.}

\textbf{44.} Eranō in ea legiōne fortissimī virī, centurīōnēs, qui iam prīmis ordinibus adpropinquārent, T. Pulō et L. Vorē-

\textit{Cf.} \textsuperscript{1} ferē. - \textsuperscript{2} cōnferērant. - \textsuperscript{3} sē recēpērunt. - \textsuperscript{4} dēpulsī.
B. G. V. 45. \textit{Fresh Risings of the Gauls.} 147

nus. Hi perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annis dē locō summis simul-
tātibus contendēbant. Ex his Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnitionēs pūgnārētur, "Quid dubitās," inquit, "Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit." Haec cum dixisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitionēs, quaque pars hostium cōnferti-
sima est visa inrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus existimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocrē spatīō relictō Pullō pilum in hostīs immittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trācit; quō percussō et examinātō hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversi tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendi facultātem. Trāns-
figitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur. Āver-
tit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impeditūmque hostēs circumsistunt. Suc-
currīt inimicus illī Vorēnus et labōrāntī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōnē omnis multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfixum arbitrantur. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnīs interfectō reliquōs paulum prō-
pellit; dum cupidīus īnstat, in locum dēiectus infēriōrem con-
cidit. Huic rūrus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolūmēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnitionēs recipiunt. Sic fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit ut alter alterī inimicus auxi-
liō salūtique esset, neque diūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūtē anteferendus vidērētur.

Efforts to Inform Cæsar of the Danger.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppūgnā-
tiō, et maximē quod māgnā parte militum cōnfectā vol-

The Gallic War.

Caesar

neribus rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrōrum¹ pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nōntique ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ānus intus Nervius nōmine 5 Verticō, locō nātus² honestō, quī ā primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat³ suamque ei fidem⁴ praestiterat. Hic servō spē libertātīs māgnīisque persuādet praemīis ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculo inligātās effert, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūlla suspiciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē periculis Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.⁵

Caesar Immediately Sends Messages to his Lieutenants.

46. Caesar acceptīs litterīs hōrā circiter xī diēī statim nūntium in Bellovacoīs ad M. Crassum mittit, cūius hiberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte legiōnēm proficiscī celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit⁶ cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium finīs legiōnēm addūcat, quā sībi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, si reī publicae commodō facere possit, cum legiōne ad finīs Nerviōrūm veniāt; reliquam partem exercitus, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandum; equītēs circiter cccc ex proximis hibernīs conligīt.⁷

Crassus Meets him; Labienus Thinks it Best to Stay Where he is.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus⁸ de Crassi adventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum xx prōgre-ditur. Crassum Samarobrivae praeficit⁹ legiōnēmque eī attribuit,¹⁰ quod ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsidēs civitātum, litterās públicas, frumentumque omne quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat¹¹ relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperā-

tum erat, non ita multum moratus in itinere cum legione occurrit. Labienus interitum Sabini et caede cohortium cognita, cum omnès ad eum Tréverorum cœpiae vēnissent, veritus ne, si ex hibernis fugae similem profectionem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinère non posset, praesertim quōs recenti victoriā efferrī sciret, litterās Caesarī remittit quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernis ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscribit; docet omnès equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Tréverorum III milia passuum longē ab suis castris cōnsēdisse.4

How a Letter is Conveyed to Ciceron.

48. Caesar cōnsiliō ēius probātō, etsi opiniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum commūnī salūtī auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit māgnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum finīs. Ibi ex captīvis cōgnōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in periculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis māgnīs praemiis persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc Graecīs coṃscriptam litterīs mittit, nē interceptā epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cōgnōscantur. Si adire nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnitionēs castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scribit sē cum legiōnibus profection celeriter adfore; hortātur ut pristinam virtūtem retineat.9 Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ab nostrīs bidūō animadversa, tertió diē ā quōdam militē cōnspicitur; dēmpta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlectam in conventū militūm recitāt maximāque omnīs laetitīā adficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.14

The Gauls Abandon the Siege and March against Cæsar, Who Avoids a Conflict.

49. Galli rē cōgnītā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relin-
quunt; 1 ad Cæsarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt; haec erant armāta circiter milia Ix. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne quam suprā dēmōnstrāvimus repetit qui litterās ad Cæsarem déferat; 2 hunc admonet iter cautē diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litterīs hostīs ab sē dis-
cessisse omnemque ad eum multītūdinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Cæsar adlātīs suōs facit certīōrēs eōsque ad dimicandum animō cōnfirmat. 3 Posterō diē lūce primā movet castra, et circiter milia passuum IIII prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multītūdinem hostīum cōn-
spicātur. Erat māgni periculi rēs tantulis 4 cōpiīs iniquō 5 locō dimicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum Cicerō-
nem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exis-
timābat. Cōnsidit et quam aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit. Atque haec, etsī erant exīgua 6 per sē, vix homi-
num milīum VII, praeerstīm nūllīs cum impedimentīs, tamen angustīs viārum quam maximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō ut in summam contemptiōnem hostībus veniat. Interim speculātōris 7 in omnīs partīs dimissīs explōrāt 8 quō com-
modissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit.

Cæsar, Feigning Fear, Draws the Enemy on to his Own Ground.

50. Eō diē parvulis equestribus prōeliīs ad aquam factīs utrique sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod amplīōrēs 9 cōpiās quae nōndum convēnerant exspectābant; Cæsar, si forte timōris simulātiōne hostīs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castrīs prōeliō contenderet; si id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātis itineribus minōre cum

perículô vallem rivumque trânsiret.\(^1\) Prîmâ lûce hostium equitâtus ad castra accédit\(^2\) proeliumque cum nostrîs equitibus committit. Caesar cônsultô equitês cédere\(^3\) sèque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiôre vâllô mûnîrî portâsque obstrui atquê in his 5 administrandîs\(^4\) rêbus quam maximê concursârî et cum simulâtiône agî timôris iubet.

In the Attack which Follows the Enemy are Routed.

51. Quibus omnibus rêbus hostês invitâtî\(^5\) côpiâs trâ-dûcunt aciemque inîquô locô cônstituunt; nostrîs vêrô etiam dê vâllô dêductîs propius accédunt et têla intrâ mûnitionem 10 ex omnibus partibus coniciunt praeconibusque circummissis prônûntiârî iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rômânus velit ante hôram tertiam ad sê trânsire, sine perículô licêre; post id tempus nôn fore potestâtêm. Ac sic nostrôs contempsûrunt ut obrûctûs in speciem portîs singulîs ordinibus caespitum, 15 quod eà nôn posse intrôrumpere vidêbantur, aliî vâllum manû scindere, aliî fossâs complûre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portîs érupțiône factâ equitâtûque émissô celerîter hostîs in fugam dat, sic utî omnînô pûgnandi causâ resisteret nêmô; mûnîmque ex eis numerum occidit atquê omnîs 20 armîs exuit.

Cæsar Reaches the Camp of Cicero and Congratulates him and his Men on their Gallant Defense.

52. Longius prôsequî veritus, quod silvae palûdêsque intercêdêbant [neque etiam parvûlo dêtrîmentô illôrum locum relînquî vidîbât], omnibus suîs incolumibus eôdem diê ad Cicerônem pervênit. Înstitûtâs\(^6\) turris, testûdinês 25 mûnitionêsque hostium admirâtur; prôductâ legiône côgnôscit nôn decînum quemque esse reliquum militem sine

Cf. \(^1\) trângredère. — \(^2\) adgreditur. — \(^3\) pedem referre. — \(^4\) ge-rendîs. — \(^5\) adlectî. — \(^6\) exstrûctâs.
volnere. Ex his omnibus iūdicat¹ rēbus quantō cum periculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae.² Cicerō-

nem prō ēius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat; centurīōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque militum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam ³ ⁵ fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sōbinī et Cottae certius ex captīvis cōgnōscit.⁴ Posterō diē contiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, militēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfirmat; quod dētrimentum⁵ culpā et tēmeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequōre animō ferendum docet, quod, beneficīō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō ⁶ incommodō, neque hostibus diātina⁷ laetitia neque ipsis longior dolor relinquātur.

Indutiomarus Defers his Intended Attack on Labienus. All Signs Point to a General Uprising of the Gauls, so that Cūsar Decides to Spend the Winter with his Army.

53. Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdibilī celeritāte dē victōriā Cūsaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernis Cicerōnis mīlia passuum abesset circiter sexāgintā, eōque post hōrām nōnām diēi Cūsar pervēnisset, ante medium noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orīrētur, quō clāmōre significātiō victōriāe grātulātiōque ab Rēmis Labiēnō fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā Indūtiomārūs, qui posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppūgnāre dēcrēverat,⁸ noctū profugit cōpiāsque omnīs in Trēverōs redūcit. Cūsar Fabium cum

Cf. ¹ existimāt. — ² gestae. — ³ īnsignem. — ⁴ reperit. — ⁵ dam-

suā legiōne remittit in hiberna, ipse cum IIII legiōnibus circum Samarobrivam trīnis hibernis hiemāre cōnstituit; et, quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstiterant, tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit. Nam illō incommodō dē Sābīnī morte perlātō omnēs fērē Galliae cīvitātēs dē bellō cōnsultābant; nūntiōs lēgātiōnēsque in omnis partis dimittēbant; et quid reliqui cōnsili caperent atque unde initium bellī fieret explōrābant, nocturnaque in locīs dēsértīs concilia habēbant. Neque āūm fērē totius hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdīne Caesaris intercessit quīn aliquem dē cōnsiliis ac mōtū Gallōrum nūntium accepīerat. In īs ab L. Rōsciō, quem legiōnī xiii praeēcerat, certīor factus est māgnās [Gallōrum] cōpiās eārum cīvitātūm quae Aremoricae appellantur oppūgnāndī suī causā convēnisse neque longius milibus passuum VIII ab hibernīs suīs afuisse, sed nūntiō adlātō dē victōriā Caesaris, discēssisse adeō ut fugae similis discēssus vidērētur.

The Senones and Other Tribes are Ready to Revolt.

54. At Caesar, principibus cūiusque cīvitātis ad sē ēvocātīs, aliās terrītandō, cum sē scīre quae fīrent dēnūntiāret, aliās cohortāndō, māgnam partem Galliāe in officiō tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est cīvitās in primīs firma et māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis, Cavarinum, quem Caesār apud ēōs règem cōnstituerat (cūius frātēr Moritašgus adventū in Galliām Caesāris, cūiusque māiōrēs règnum obtīnuerant), interficere públicō cōnsiliō cōnātī, cum ille prae- sēnsisset ac profūgisset, ūsque ad finis insecūtī règnō domōque expulērunt; et missīs ad Caesarem satisfaciēndī causā lēgātīs, cum is omnem ad sē senātum veniēre iussisset, dictō audientēs nōn fuērunt. Ac tantum apud hominēs barbarōs

The Gallic War.

valuit esse aliquōs repertōs prīncipēs belli inferendī, tan-
tamque omnibus voluntātum commūtātiōnem attulit 1 ut—
praeter Haeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs praeципuō semper honōre
Caesar habuit, alterōs prō vetere ac perpetuā ergā populum
5 Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallicī belli officiis 2
—nulla fērē civitās fuerit nōn suspecta nōbis. Idque adeō
haud sciō mirandumne sit, cum complūribus aliis dē causis,
tum maximē quod quī virtūte belli omnibus gentibus praē-
ferēbantur, 3 tantum sē ēius opiniōnis 4 dēperdidisse 5 ut
10 populi Rōmānī imperia perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

Activity of Indutiomarus.

55. Trēveri vērō atque Indūtiomārus tōtius hiemis nūl-
sum tempus intermīsērunt quīn trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mit-
terent, civitātīs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicērentur, māgnā
parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō minōrem superesse
15 dicerent partem. Neque tamen ūllī civitātī Germānōrum
persuādērī potuit ut Rhēnum trānsīret, cum sē bis expertōs
dicerent, Ariovīstī bellō et Tencterōrum trānsītū; nōn esse
amplius fortūnam temptātūrōs. Hāc spē lápus 6 Indūti-
io-
mārus nihilō minus cōpiās cōgere, 7 exercĕre, ā finitimis
20 equōs parāre, 8 exsulēs damnātōsque tōtā Galliā māgnīs
praemiis ad sē adlicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam his
rēbus in Galliā auctōritātem comparāverat 9 ut undique ad
eum lēgātiōnēs concurrerent, grātiam atque amicitiam pū-
visible privātimque peterent.

Many Tribes Join him, and he Decides to Attack Labienus.

25 56. Ubi intelligēxit ultrō ad sē venīrī, alterā ex parte
Senonēs Carnūtēsque conscienziā facinoris 10 instigāri, 11 alterā
Nervīōs Aduatūcōsque bellum Rōmānīs parāre, neque sibi
voluntāriōrum cōpiās dēfore si ex finibus suis prōgredi coe-

— 11 impelli.
pisset, armatum concilium indicit. Hoc more Gallorum est
initium belli, quò légé commūnī omnēs pùberēs armātī con-
venire cōguntur; qui ex eis novissimus venit in cōnspectū
multitūdinis omnibus cruciātibus affectus necātur. In eō
conciliō Cingetorigem, alterius principem factiōnis, generum
suum, quem supra dēmōnstrāvimus Caesāris seclūtum fidem
ab eō nōn discēssisse, hostem iūdicat bonaque ēius publicat.
His rēbus cōnfectis in conciliō prōnūntiat arcessītum sē ā
Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque complūribus Galliae civi-
tātibus; huc itūrum per finis Rēmōrum eōrumque agrōs popūlātūrum; ac prius quam id faciat, castra Labiēnī

57. Labiēnus, cum et locī nātūrā et manū mūnitissimīs
castrīs sēsē tenēret, dē suō ac legiōnis periculō nihil timē-
bat; nec quam occasiōnem reī bene gerendae dīmitteret cōgītābat. Itaque ā Cingetörige atque ēius propinquis òratiōne Indutiōmāri cōgnitā quam in conciliō habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad finītimās civitātīs equītēsque undique ēvocat; ħis certam diem conveniendi dicit. Interim prope cotidiē cum omni equitātū Indutiōmārus sub castrīs ēius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum cōgnōsceret, aliās conloquendi aut territandi causā: equītēs plērumque om-
nēs tēla intrā vāllum coniciēbant. Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnitionem continēbat timōrisque opiniōnem quibuscumque poterat rēbus augēbat.

Indutiōmarus is Defeated by a Sudden Sally, and Slain.

58. Cum máiorē in diēs contemptionē Indutiōmārus ad
casta accēderet, nocte ūnā intrōmissis equītibus omnīm

Cf. 1 iuvenēs.— 2 postrēmus.— 3 ēius.— 4 vocātum.— 5 vāstātūrum.— 6 imperat.— 7 praetermitteret.— 8 necessāriīs.— 9 proximās.— 10 arcessit.— 11 locum.— 12 explōrāret.— 13 ferē.— 14 castra.— 15 ad-
grederētur.
finitimārum civitātum quōs arcessendōs cūrāverat, tantā diligentiā omnīs suōs custōdiis intrā castra continuit ut nūlla ratione ea rēs ēnūntiāri aut ad Trēverōs perferri posset. Interim ex cōnsuētūdine cotidiānā Indūtiomārus ad castra accēdit atque ibi māgnam partem diēi cōnsūmit; equitēs tēla coniciunt et māgnā cum contumēliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pūgnam ēvocant. Nūllō ab nostrīs datō responsō, ubi visum est sub vesperum dispersī ac dissipātī discēdunt. Subītō Labīēnus duābus portīs omnem equitātum ēmittit; praecipt atque interdictī, prōterrītīs hostībus atque in fugam coniectī (quod fore, sīcut accidit, vidēbat), ūnum omnēs petant Indūtiomārum; neu quis quem prius volneret quam illum interfunctum viderit, quod morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere nōlēbat; māgna prōpōnit eis quī occiderint præmia; submittit cohortīs equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat hominis cōnsilium fortūna; et cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indūtiomārus interficitur caputque ēius refertur in castra; redeuntīs equitēs quōs possunt cōnsectantur atque occidunt. Hāc rē cognitā omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviōrum quae convenerant cópiae discēdunt; paulōque habuit post id factum Caesar quiētiōrem Galliam.


Fig. 77 — Gallic Torques.
BOOK VI.

SECOND EXPEDITION INTO GERMANY. B.C. 53.

Caesar Increases his Forces in Order to Cope with the Rebellious Gauls.

MULTIS de causis Caesar maiorem Galliae motum exspectans, per M. Silanum, C. Antistium Reginum, T. Sextium legatos delictum habere instituit; simul ab Cn. Pompéio prœconsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperió rei publicae causâ remaneret, quos ex Cisalpinâ Galliâ cónsul sacramentō rogāvisset ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci iubēret; māgni interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opiniōnem Galliae existimāns tantās vidēri Italiae facul-

Cf. 1 tumultum. — 2 dēcrēvit. — 3 iūre iūrandō.
tātīs ut, si quid esset in belli dētrimenti acceptum, nōn modo id brevī tempore sarcīri, sed etiam māērībus augēri cōpiīs posset. Quod cum Pompēius et rei pūblicae et amicitiae tribuisset, celeriter cōnfectō per suōs dēlēctū, tribus ante exāctam hiemem et cōnsūtūs et adductīs legiōnibus, duplicātōque eārum cohortium numerō quās cum Q. Titūriō amiserat, et celeritāte et cōpiīs docuit quid populi Rōmānī disciplīna atque opēs possent.


He Again Ravages the Nervian Territory and Marches against the Senones.

3. Itaque nōndum hieme cōnfectā, proximīs IIII coāctīs legiōnibus dē imprōvisō in finis Nerviōrum contendit, et prius quam illī aut convenīre aut profugere possent, māgnō pecoris atque homīnum numerō captō atque eā praedā militibus concessā vāstātisque agrīs, in dēditionem venīre atque obsidēs sibi dare cōgīt. Eō celeriter cōnfectō negotiō rūrsum in hiberna legiōnēs redūxit. Conciliō Galliae primō vēre, ut instituerat, indictō, cum reliqui praeter Senonēs,

Cf. 1 opēs. 2 calamitātis. 3 explēri. 4 amplificāri. 5 dēmōn-strāvit. 6 principātus. 7 sollicitant. 8 aliquot. 9 exāctā. 10 repente. 11 properāvit. 12 datā. 13 iterum.
Carnutes, Trèverosque vénissent,¹ initium bellī ac défec-
tiōnis² Höc esse arbitrātus, ut omnia postponere vidērētur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiōrum transīt. Cônfīnēs³ erant hi Senonibus civitātemque patram memoriā consīnxeant; sed ab Höc cōnsiliō āfuisse existimābantur. Hāc rē prō 5 suggestū prōnūntiātā eōdem diē cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficiscitur māgnisque itineribus eō pervenīt.

The Senones and Carnutes Submit.

4. Cōgnitō ēius adventū Accō, qui prīnceps ēius cōnsiliī fuerat, iubet in oppida multitūdinem convenire; cōnantibus, prius quam id effici posset, adesse Rōmānōs nūntiātur. 10 Necessāriō sententiā⁴ dēsistunt lēgātōsque dēprecandi causā ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Haeduōs, quōrum antiquitus erat in fidē civitās. Libenter Caeser petentibus Haeduīs dat veniam excūsātiōnemque ⁵ accipit, quod ⁶ aestīvum tempus instantis bellī, nōn quaestīōnis esse arbitrābatur; 15 obsidibus imperātīs c, hōs Haeduīs custōdiendōs trādit. Eōdem Carnutes lēgātōs obsidēsque mittunt, úsi dēprecā-
tōribus Rēmis, quōrum erant in clientēlā; eadem ferunt responsa. .PERagit concilium Caesar equitēsque imperat civitātibus.

Next he Goes against the Menapii; he Forbids them to Harbor Ambiorix.

5. Höc parte Galliae pācātā tōtus et mente et animō in bellum Trèverōrum et Ambiorīgis insistit.⁷ Cavarinum cum equitātū Senonum sēcūm proficiscī iubet, nē quis aut ex hūius irācundiā,⁸ aut ex eō quod meruerat odiō, civitātis mōtus exsistat. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs, quod prō explōrātō ⁹ habēbat Ambiorīgem proeliō nōn esse contentūrum,¹⁰ reliqua ēius cōnsilia animō circumspiciēbat. Erant Menapī propin-

Cf. ¹ convēnissent. — ² mōtūs. — ³ proximī. — ⁴ cōnsiliō. — ⁵ satis-
qui Eburōnum finibus, perpetuīs palūdibus silvisque mūnītī, qui ūnī ex Galliā dē pāce ad Caesarem lēgātōs num-
quam mīserant. Cum his esse hospitium Ambiorīgi sciēbat; itēm per Trēverōs vēnisse Germānīs in amīcitiam cōgnō-
verat. Haec prius illī dētrahenda auxilia existimābat quam ipsum bellō lacerēset, nē despērātā salūte aut sē in Menapīōs abderet aut cum Trānsrḥēnānīs congreō cōgerētur. Hōc initō cōnsiliō tōtius exercītūs impedimenta ad Labiēnum in Trēverōs mittit duāisque ad eum legiōnēs proficisci iūbet; ipse cum legiōnibus expeditīs quīnque in Menapiōs proficisciāvit. Illī nūlla coāctā manū, locī praesidīō frētī, in silvās palūdēsque cōnfugīunt suāque eōdem cōnferunt.

Caesar, partītīs copīs cum C. Fabiō lēgātō et M. Crassō quaeōtore celeriterque effectī pontibus, adit tripar-
itō, aedificiā vicōsque incendit, māgnō pecoris atque homi-
um numerō potītūr. Quibus rēbus coāctī Menapīi lēgātōs  
ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptīs hostium sē habitūrum numerō cōnfirmat, si aut Ambiiōrigem aut ēius lēgātōs finibus suōs recēpissent. Hīs cōnfirmātis rēbus Commium Atrebātēm cum equītātū cūs-
tōdis locō in Menapiōs relinquit; ipse in Trēverōs proficisciāvit.

Labienus among the Treveri.

Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī māgnis coāctīs 
 peditātūs equitātūs copīs Labiēnum cum ūnā legiōne 
quae in eōrum finibus hiemābat adorīr parābat; iamque 
ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse 
legiōnēs missū Caesarīs cōgnōscunt. Positis castrīs mili-
bus passuum xv auxilia Germānōrum expectāre cōn-
stituunt. Labiēnus, hostium cōgnitō cōnsiliō, spērāns 
temeritāte eōrum fore aliquam dimicandi facultātem, prae-

Fig. 79. — Ancient Statue of Gallic Chief.

After Much Manoeuvring he Brings on an Engagement and Utterly Defeats them.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūniōnēs prōcesserat, cum Gallī—cohortātī inter sē nē spērātam praedam ex manibus dēmitterent; longum esse perterritīs Rōmānīs Germanōrum auxilium exspectāre; neque suam patī dignitātem ut tantis cōpiis tam exiguum manum praeertim fugientem atque impeditam adorīri nōn audeant—flūmen trānsire et iniquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnīs citrā flūmen ēliceret, eādem ĕsus simulātīone itineris placīdē prōgrediēbātur. Tum praemissīs paulum impedīmentis atque in tumulō

quodam conlocātis, "Habētis," inquit, "militēs, quam petīstis facultātem; hostem impeditō atque iniquō 1 locō tenētis; praeṣtāte 2 eandem nōbīs ducibus virtūtem quam saepenumerō imperatōri praeṣtīstis; atque illum adesse et 5 haec cōram cernere existimāte." Similū signa ad hostem convertī aciemque dērīgi 3 iubet; et paucīs turmiūs praeṣidīō ad impedimenta dimissīs reliquōs equitēs ad latera dispōnit. Celerīter nostri clāmōre sublātō pīla in hostīs immittunt. 4 Illī, ubi praeter spem quos fugere credebant infestīs signīs ad sē ire vidērunt, impetum nostrōrum ferre 5 nōn potuērunt, ac primō concursū in fugam coniectī proxīmās silvās petiērunt. Quōs Labiēnus equitātū cōnsectātūs, 6 māgni numero interfectō, complūribus captīs, paucīs post dīēbus civitātem recēpit. Nam Germānī qui auxiliō veniēbant perceptā Trē- 15 verōrum fugā sēsē domum contulērunt. 7 Cum his propin- qui Indūtiomāri, qui dēfeciōnis auctōrēs fuerant, 8 comitātī eōs ex civitāte excessērunt. Cingetorīgī, quem ab initiō permānsisse in officiō dēmōnstrāvimus, principātus atque imperium est trāditum.

Caesar Again Crosses the Rhine.

20 9. Caesar postquam ex Menapiis in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causis Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit: quārum ūna erat quod Germānī auxilia contrā sē Trēveris mīserant; altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorīcī receptum 9 habēret. His cōnstitūtīs rēbus paulō suprā eum locum quō ante exercitum trādīxerat facere pontem institūt. Nōtā atque īnstitūtā ratīōne, māgni militūm studiō, paucīs dīēbus opus efficītur. Firmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praeṣidiō relictō, nē quis ab hīs subītō mōtus 10 orīrētur, 11 reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcīt. Ubī, qui ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditiōnem vēne-

Cf. 1 opp. idōnēo. 2 praebētē. 3 ĭnstruī. 4 coniciunt. 5 sustinērē. 6 insecūtus. 7 retulērunt. 8 cum eīs. 9 recessum. 10 sēditiō. 11 coōrerētur.
FIG. 80. — PONS A CÆSARE IN RHENO FACTUS.
rant, purgandi\(^1\) sui causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt qui doceant neque auxilia ex suā civitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab se fidem laesam:\(^2\) petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat, nē com-mūni odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenaēs pendant;\(^3\) si amplius obsidum velit darī, pollentur. Cōgnitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēvis auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem\(^4\) accipit; aditūs viāsque in Suēvōs perquirīt.\(^5\)

He Learns from the Ubii that the Suevi have Retreated to the Forest Bacenis.

10. Interim paucis post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēvōs omnis in ūnum locum cōpiās cógere, atque eis nātiōnibus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia pediātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs cōgnitis rébus rem frumentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum\(^6\) locum déligit, Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrī in oppida cōnferant, — spērāns barbarōs atque imperitōs hominēs inopiā cībāriō-\(^7\)rum adductōs ad inīquam pūgnandi condiciōnem posse dēdūcī; mandat ut crēbrōs\(^8\) explōrātorēs in Suēvōs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant.\(^9\) Illī imperāta faciunt et paucis diēbus intermissis referunt:\(^10\) 'Suēvōs omnis, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exerciō Rōmānōrum vēne-rint, cum omnibus suis sociōrumque cōpiis quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs\(^11\) finīs sē recēpisse;\(^12\) silvam esse ibi infinitā māgnitūdine, quae appellātur Bācenis; hanc longē intrōrsus\(^13\) pertinēre, et prō nātīvō mūrō obiectam Čhēruscōs ab Suēvōrum Suēvōsque ab Čhēruscōrum iniūriis incursiōni-busque prohibeōre; ad eīus silvae initium Suēvōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnstituisse.'

Cf. \(^1\) excūsāndī. — \(^2\) violātām. — \(^3\) persolvant. — \(^4\) excūsātiōnem. — \(^5\) explōrāt. — \(^6\) opp. inīquum. — \(^7\) rērum frumentāriārum. — \(^8\) frequen-tēs. — \(^9\) perquirant. — \(^10\) dēferunt. — \(^11\) ultimōs. — \(^12\) contulisse. — \(^13\) penitus. — \(^14\) opp. profectiōnem.
11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differe
rant hae nātīōnes inter sēsē prōpōnerē.

In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus civitātibus atque in
 omnibus pāgis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis
domibus factōnēs sunt; eārumque factōnum principēs sunt
qui summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre existimantur,
quōrum ad arbitrum iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque ēius rei causā anti-
quītus institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiō-
rem auxili egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumveniri
nōn patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat
auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius
Galliae; namque omnēs civitātēs divisae sunt in duās partīs.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factōnīs prin-
cipēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī, cum per sē
minus valērent (quod summa auctōritās antiquitās erat in
Haeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae), Germānōs
atque Aриovistum sibi adiūnξerant eōsque ad sē māgnis
iactūris pollicitātiōnibusque perdūzerant. Proelīis vērō
complūribus factīs secundīs atque omni nōbilitāte Haeduō-
rum interfecēt, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut māgnam
partem clientiūm ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque
ab his principum filūs acciperent, et públicē iūrāre cōgerent
nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsili initūrōs, et partem fīnītīmi
agri per vim occupātam possidērēt, Galliaeque tōtius prīncipātum obtinērēnt. Quā necessitāte adductus Diviciācus

Cf. imperium. — sententīā. — revertātur. — carēret, w. abl. —
factōnēs. — nōn. — adscīverant. — praēmiōs. — potestāte. —
praestiterant.
auxili petendi causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus infectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlis restitūtīs, novis per Caesarem comparātīs, quod eī qui sē ad eōrum amicitiam adgregāverant melliōre condicioōne atque aequōre imperiō sē útī vidēbant, reliquis rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquani principātum dimiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, eī qui propter veterēs inimicitiās nullō modo cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmis in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī diligenter tuēbant; ita et novam et repente conlēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat ut longē principēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dignitātīs Rēmī obtinērent.

Two Classes of Gallic Nobility, Druids and Knights. The Druids and their Power.

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominum qui aliqūo sunt numero atque honōre genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nullī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērique, cum aut aere aliēnō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut inīriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōibilibus; quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē his duōbus gene
ribus alterum est druidum, alterum equītum. Illī rēbus divīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pública ac privāta prōcūrant, religionēs interpretantur. Ad eōs māgnus adulescentium numerus disciplīnāe causā concurrīt, māgnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiis públicis privātīisque consītuent; et, sī quod est admīssum facinus, sī caedes facta, dē hērēditāte, dē finibus contrō-

The Gallic War.

versia est, idem dēcernunt; praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; si qui aut privātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō īmpiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, his omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodi accipiānt, neque eis petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs

ullus communícātur. His autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, qui summam inter eōs habet auctoritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut sī qui ex reliquis excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs dē principātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtius Galliāe media habētur, cōnsidunt in locō cōnsecrātō; hūc omnēs undique qui contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque pārent. Disciplina in Britannīā reperta atque inde in Galliām trānslātā existimātur; et nunc quī diligen-tiōs eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō discendi causā proficiscuntur.

Their Privileges and Immunities. Their Education and Beliefs.

14. Druides ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquis pendunt; [militiae vacātiōnem omniumque rērum habent immūnitātem]. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et

suā sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Māgnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nūlli vicēnos in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās esse existimant ea litteris mandāre, cum in reliquis fērē rēbus, publicis privātīisque rationibus, Graecis litteris ātantur. Id mihi duābus dé causis instituisse videntur; quod neque in volgus disciplinam efferri velint neque eōs qui discunt litteris confisōs minus memoriae studēre, — quod fērē plērisque accidit ut praeśidō litterārum diligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant. In primis hōc volunt persuādere, nōn interire animās, sed ab aliis post mortem trānsire ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitāri putant metū mortis neglectō. Multa praeterea dē sideribus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī ac terrārum māgnitudine, dē rērum nāturā, dē deōrum immortālium vi ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

**The Knights are the Fighting Men.**

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod fērē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās inferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur; atque eōrum ut quīse est genere cōpiūsque amplissimus, ita plurīmos circum sē ambactōs clientīsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

**Human Sacrifices.**

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōni-bus; atque ob eam causam qui sunt adfectī graviōribus morbis, quique in proelīs periculīsque versantur, aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent,

administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ütuntur, — quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vita reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācāri arbitrantur; publicēque ēiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī

5 māgnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta viīminibus membra vivīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsīs 2 circumventī flammā exanimantur homīnes. Supplicia eōrum qui in fūrtō aut lātrōciniō aut aliā noxiā 3 sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dis immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum ēius

10 generis cōpia dēfīcit, 4 etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

Gallic Deities. Consecration of the Spoils of War to Mars.


tōs cumulōs¹ locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicāri licet. Neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre² aut posita tollere³ audēret; gravissimumque ei reī⁴ supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.

They Claim Descent from Pluto. Peculiar Treatment of Boys.

18. Gallī sē omnis ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs⁵ praedicant ⁵ idque ab druidibus prōditum⁶ dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālis et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic obser-vant ut noctem diēs subsequeātur. In reliquis vitae institūtīs⁷ hoc ferē ab reliquis differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur; filiumque puerilī ætāte in pūblīcō in cōnspectū patris adsistere turpe⁸ dīcunt.


19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtīs nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōti-bus communicant. Hūius omnis pecūniāe coniunctīm ratiō habētur⁹ frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utrisque cum frūctibus superiōrum¹⁰ temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs sicut in liberōs vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum paterfamiliae industriē locō ²₀ nātus dēcessit,¹¹ ēius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, si rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servīlem¹² modum quaestiōnem habent, et si compertum est, ignī atque omni-bus tormentīs¹⁸ excru-ciātās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum māgnificā et sūmptuōsā; omniaque quae vivīs cordī¹⁴ fuisse arbitrantur in ignem inferunt,¹⁵ etiam ani-mālia; ac paulō supra hanc memoriam servi et clientēs,

The Gallic War.

quōs ab eis dilēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstis ūnebribus cōn-
fectis ūnā cremābantur.

All Rumors from Outside to be Reported to the Magistrates.

20. Quae civitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre existimantur habent lēgibus sānc tum, si quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rūmōre aut fāmā accēperit, uti ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs falsis rūmōribus terrēri et ad facinus impelli et dē summīs rēbus cōn-
silium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae visa sunt occultant, quae esse ex ūsū iūdicāvērunt multitūdīnī prō-
dunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per conciliōm loqui nōn concē-
ditur.

Customs of the Germans.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent qui rēbus dīvinīs prae sīnt neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Volcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēperunt. Vita omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī militāris cōnsistit; a parvis laborī ac dūritiae student. Qui dīūtissīmē impu-
berēs permānsērunt maximam inter suōs fērunt laudem; hoc ali statūram, ali vīris nervōsque cōnfīrmāri putant. Intra annum vērō vīcēsimum fēminae nōtitiam habuisset in turpissimīs habent rēbus: cūius reī nulla est occultātiō, quod et prōmiscūe in flūminibus perluuntur, et pellibus aut parvis rēnōnum tegimentīs ūuntur, māgnā corporīs parte nūdā.

No Agriculture or Private Ownership of Land.

22. Agri cultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carnegōnās consistit. Neque quisquam agrī mo-

dum certum aut finis habet propriōs;\(^1\) sed magistrātūs ac principēs\(^2\) in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō visum est agri attribuunt, atque annō post aliō trānsire\(^3\) cōgunt. Eius rei multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā\(^4\) cōnsuētūdine captī studium belli gerendi agri cultūrā commūtēnt; nē lātōs finis parāre\(^5\) studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātiōs\(^6\) ad frigora atque aestus vitandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupidītās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut\(^7\) animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimis aequāri videat.

Their Isolation. How Chiefs are Appointed; their Power. Freebooting no Disgrace. Rites of Hospitality Observed.

23. Civitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vastātīs finibus sōlītūdinēs\(^8\) habēre. Hoc proprium virtūtīs existimant, expulsōs agrīs finītimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōnsistere:\(^9\) simul hoc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum civitās aut inlātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs qui eī bellō praesint, et vitae necisque habeant potestātem, deliguntur. In pāce nūllus est communis magistrātus, sed princīpēs regiōnum atque pagōrum inter suōs iūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.\(^10\) Latröcinia nūllam habent īnfae miam\(^11\) quae extrā finis cūiusque civitātīs fiant, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac désidiae minuendae causā fieri praedīcant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in conciliō dixit \(^2\) ′sē ducem fore, qui sequī velīnt profiteantur,′ — cōnsurgunt ei qui et causam et hominem probant suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitūdine conlaudantur; qui ex his

Cf. \(^1\) privātōs. — \(^2\) quotannis. — \(^3\) dēmigrāre. — \(^4\) perpetuā. — \(^5\) aqüirere. — \(^6\) diligentius. — \(^7\) aequō animō. — \(^8\) loca déserta. — \(^9\) cōnsiderē. — \(^10\) compōnunt. — \(^11\) ignōminiam.
Secūti nōn sunt in désertōrum ac próditōrum numerō dūcuntur omniumque his rērum posteā fidēs dérogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quàcumque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibent sāncōsque habent: hisque omnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur.

Migration of Certain Gallic Tribes to Germany.

24. Ac fuit anteā tempus cum Germānōs Galli virtūte superārent, ultrō bella īnferrent, propter homīnum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circūm Hercyniam silvam (quam Eratostheni et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī Orcyniam appellant), Volcae Tectosages occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt. Quae gēns ad hōc tempus his sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem. Nunc quidem in ēadem inopīa, egestāte, patientiāque Germānī permanent, eōdem victū et cultū corporis ītuntur; Gallīs autem prōvin-ciārum propīnquitās et trānsmarinarum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsum largītur. Paulātīm adsuēfactī supe-rārī multisque victī proelīs, nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs vir-

tūtē comparant.

The Hercynian Forest and its Fauna. The Reindeer (?).

25. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae supra dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdō VIII diērum iter expeditō patet; nōn enim alter finīri potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus, rēctāque flūminis Dānuvi regiōne pertinet ad finis Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectī sinistrōrsus diversis ab flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium finīs propter māgnītūdī-

Cf. perfugārum. — habentur. — ðētraḥitūr. — adhūc. — fā-
nem attingit. Neque quisquam est hūius Germāniae qui sē [aut audisse] aut adisse ad initium eius silvae dicit, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit. Multaque in eā genera ferārum nāscī cōnstat quae reliquis in locis visa nōn sint; ex quibus quae maximē differant ab cēteris et memoriae prōdenda videantur haec sunt.


The Elk and its Habits.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsmilis caprīs figūra et varietās pellium; sed māgnitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaēque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdis articulisque habent; neque quiētis causā prōcum-bunt neque, si quō adflictae cāsū condiderunt, ērigere sēsē āc sublevāre possunt. His sunt arborēs prō cubilibus; ad eās sē adplicant atque ita paulum modo reclinātæ quī-ētem capiunt. Quārum ex vestīgiis cum est animadversum a vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādicibus subruunt aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine reclināvērunt, īnfīrmās arborēs pondere adfli-gunt atque ūnā ipsae condidunt.

The Wild Ox.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūri appellantur. Hi sunt māgnitūdine paulō infra elephantōs; speciē et colōre

Caesar Returns to Gaul and Proceeds against Ambiorix.

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explōrātōrēs comperit Suevōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frumenti verītus (quod, ut supra dēmōnstrāvimus, minimē omnēs Germānī agri culturae student), cōnstituit non prōgredi longius; sed, nē omnīnō metum rēditūs suī barbarīs tolleret, atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū partem ultimam pontis, quae ripās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitūdinem pedum cc rescindit, atque in extrēmō ponte turrīm tabulātōrum III cōnstituit praesidiumque cohortium XII pontis tuendī causā pōnit māgnisque eum locum mūniōnibus firmat. Eī locō praesidiōque C. Volcātium Tullum adulēscen tem praefīcit; ipse, cum mātūrēscere frumenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiōrigis profectus, per Arduennam silvam—queae est tōtius Galliae maxima atque ab ripīs Rhēnī finibusque Trēverōrum ad Nerviōs pertīnet, milibusque amplius in longitūdinem patet—L. Minucium Basīlum cum omni equitātū praemittit, sī quid celeritātē itineris atque opportūnitātē temporis prōficere possit; monet ut ignīs in castrīs

Fig. 83.—Statue of Ambiorix.
fieri prohibeat, nē qua ēius adventūs procul significātiō fiat; sēsē cōnfestim subsequi dicit.

Ambiorix Has the Good Luck to Escape.

30. Basilus ut imperātum est facit. Celeriter contrāque omnium opinioñem cōnfectō itinere multōs in agrīs inopiñantis dēprehendit; eōrum indiciō ad ipsum Ambiorigem contendit, quō in locō cum paucīs equītibus esse dicēbātur. Multum cum in omnibus rēbus tum in rē militāri potest fortūna. Nam ut māgnō accidit cāsū ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imperātum inciderat, priusque ēius adventus ab omnibus vidērētur quam faṃa ac nūntius adferrētur, sīc māgneae fuit fortuṇae, omnī militāri īnstrumentō quod circum sē habēbat ēreptō, rēdis equīisque comprehēnsis, ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hoc factum est, quod, aedificiō circumdatō silvā, ut sunt ferē domicilia Gallōrum, qui vitandi aestūs causā plērumque silvārum ac flūminum petunt propinquitātis, comitēs familiārēsque ēius angustō in locō paulisper equītum nostrōrum vim sustinuērunt. His pūgnantibus illum in equum quidam ex suīs intulit; fugientem silvae tēxērunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum et ad vitandum multum fortūna valuit.

His Forces Disband and Withdraw to the Forest and Marshes. Catuvolcus Commits Suicide.

31. Ambiorix cōpiās suās iūdicīōne nōn condūxerit, quod proeliō dimicandum nōn existimāret, an tempore exclūsus et repentīnō equītum adventū prohibitus, cum reliquum exercītum subsequi crēderet, dubium est. Sed certē dimissis per agrōs nūntiīs sibi quemque cōnsulere iussit. Quōrum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentis palūdēs

profugit; qui proximi Oceanō fuērunt hi insulis sēsē occultāvērunt quās aestūs efficere consuērunt; multi ex suis finibus egressi sē suaque omnia alienissimis crēdidērunt. Catuvolcus, rex dimidiae partis Eburōnum, qui ūnā cum Ambiorīgēs cōnsilium inierat, aetāte iam cōnfectus, cum labōrem belli aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus precibus dētestātus Ambiorīgem, qui ēius cōnsili auctor fuisset, taxō (cūius māgna in Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est) sē exanimāvit.

Caesar Proceeds to Aduatuca and Puts Q. Cicerō in Command there.

32. Sēgni Condūrisique, ex gente et numerō Germānōrum, qui sunt inter Eburōnēs Trēverōisque, lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt ōratum nē sē in hostium numerō dūceret nēve omnium Germānōrum quī essent citrā Rhēnum ūnam esse causam iūdicāret; nihil sē dē bellō cōgitāvisse, nūlla Ambiōri origi auxilia misisse.' Caesar explorātā rē quaestīone captivōrum, si qui ad eōs Eburōnēs ex fugā convēnissent, ad sē ut redūcerentur imperāvit; si ita fēcissent, finis eōrum sē violātūrum negāvit. Tum cōpiis in trēs partēs distribūtīs impedimenta omnium legiōnem Aduatucam contulit. Id castellī nōmen est. Hoc fērē est in mediis Eburōnum finibus, ubi Titūrius atque Aurunculēius hiemandi causā cōnsēderant. Hunc cum reliquis rēbus locum probābat, tum quod superiōris anni mūniūnēs integrae manēbant, ut militum labōrem sublevāret. Praesidio impedimentīs legiōnem xiii reliquit, ūnam ex hīs tribus quās proximē conscriptās ex Italīa trādūxerat. Eī legiōni castrīisque Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praefēcit ducentōisque equitēs attribuīt.

Divides his Forces and Proceeds in Search of Ambiorix.

33. Partîō\(^1\) exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus ad Ōceanum versus in eās partīs quae Menapiōs attingunt proficisci iuabet; C. Trebōnium cum pari\(^2\) legiōnum numerō ad eam regiōnem quae Aduaucis adiacet dépopulandam\(^3\) mittit; ipse cum reliquis iii ad flūmen Scaldim, quod influit in Mosam, extrēmāsque\(^4\) Arduennae partīs ire cōnstituit, quō cum paucis equitūs prosequitur in praesidiō reliquīs Ambiorigem audiēbat. Discēdens post diem vii sēsē reversūrum\(^5\) cōnfirmat; quam ad diem eī legiōni quae in praesidiō reliquēbātur frūmen tum dēbēri sciēbat. Labiēnum Trebōniumque hortātur, sī rei pūblīcae commodō facere possint, ad eum diem revertantur; ut, rūrsus communicātō cōnsiliō explōrātīisque hostium ratiōnibus,\(^6\) aliūd initium bellī capere possint.

The Difficulties of the Situation Explained. Cāesar Seekēs Alliance with Gallic Tribes against the Eburones.

34. Erat, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, manus certa nūlla, nōn oppidum, nōn praesidium quod sē armīs dēfenderet, sed in omnīs partīs dispersa\(^7\) multītūdō. Ubi cuique aut vallēs abdita\(^8\) aut locus silvestris aut palūs impedita spem praesidiō aut salūtīs aliquam offerebat, cōnsēderat. Haec loca vicīnitātibus\(^9\) erant nōta, māgnamque rēs diligentiam\(^10\) requīrēbat, nōm in summā exercitūs tuendā (nūllum enim poterat ūniversis ā perterrītis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulīs militibus cōnservāndis; quae tamen ex parte rēs ad salūtem exercitūs pertinēbat. Nam et praedae cupiditās multōs longius sēvocābat, et silvae incertīs occultūs itineribus cōnfertōs adire prohibēbant. Si negotiōm\(^11\) cōnfici stirpemque\(^12\) hominum sceleratōrum interfici vellet, dimittendae plurēs manūs didūcendique\(^13\) erant.

militēs; si continēre ad signa manipulōs vellet, ut ĭnstitūta ratiō et cōnsuētūdō exercitus Rōmāni postulābat, locus ipse erat praesidiō barbarīs, neque ex occultō insidiandi et di-
spersōs circumveniendi singulis deerat audācia. Ut in ēius 5 modī difficultātibus, quantum diligentīā prōvidēri poterat prōvidēbātur; ut potius in nocendō aliquid praetermitterē-
tur, etsī omnium animī ad ulciscendum ārdēbant, quam cum aliquō militum dētrimentō nocērētur. Dimittit ad finitimās civitātīs nūntiōs Caesar; omnīs ĭvocat spē praedae ad 10 diripiendōs Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvis Gallōrum vita quam legiōnārius miles periclitētur; simul ut māgnā multi-
tūdine circumfūsā prō tāli facinore stirps ac nōmen civitātīs tollātur. Māgnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

Cf. 1 requīrēbat.— 2 dēpopulāndōs.— 3 dēleātur.
An Invasion from Germany. The Sugambri Come for a Share in the Plunder of the Eburones. They Advance towards Caesar's Camp.

35. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur, diēsque adpetēbat\(^1\) vii, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedi-
menta legiōnemque revertī cōnstituerat. Hīc quantum in
bellō fortūna possīt et quantōs adferat cāsūs cōgnōscī potuit.
Dissipātis\(^2\) ac perterritis hostibus, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, ma-
nus erat nūlla quae parvam modo causam tīmōris adferret.
Trāns Rhēnum ad Germānōs pervenit\(^3\) fāma diriπi Eburō-
nēs atque ultrō omnis ad praedam ēvocārī.\(^4\) Cōgunt equi-
tum duo mīlia Sugambri, qui sunt proximī Rhēnō, a quibus
receptōs ex fugā Tencterōs atque Usipetēs suprā dociūmus.

Trānseunt Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque xxx nilibus pas-
sum īnfrā eum locum ubi pōns erat perfectus\(^5\) praesidium-
que ab Caesare relictum. Primōs Eburōnum finis adeunt;
multōs ex fugā dispersōs excipiunt,\(^6\) māgnō pecoris numerō,
cūius sunt cupidíssimi barbarī, potiuntur. Invitātī\(^7\) praedā 15
longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūdēs bellō lātrōciniīisque
nātōs, nōn silvae morantur.\(^8\) Quibus in locīs sit Caesar ex
captīvis quaerunt; profectum longius reperīunt omnemque
exercitum discēssisse cōgnōscunt. Atque ünus ex captīvis:
"Quid vōs," inquit, "hanc miseram ac tenuem sectāminī 20
praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortūnātissimōs? Tribus
hōris Aduatucam venīre potestis; hūc omnīs suās fortūnās\(^9\)
exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit. Praesidī tantum est ut nē
mūrus quidem cīngī\(^10\) possīt, neque quisquam ēgredi extrā
mūnitionēs audeat." \(Hāc\) oblātā spē Germānī quam nactī\(^11\) 25
erant praedam in occultō relinquent; ipsī Aduatucam con-
tendunt üsi eōdem duce cūius haec indiciō cōgnōverant.

Cf.\(^1\) accēdēbat. — \(^2\) disiectīs. — \(^3\) perfertur. — \(^4\) accessī. — \(^6\) factus.
— \(^6\) dēprehendunt. — \(^7\) inductī. — \(^8\) tardant. — \(^9\) rēs familiāris. — \(^10\) dē-
fendi. — \(^11\) invēnerant.
Cicero Unwisely Sends Large Numbers out to Forage.

36. Cicero (qui omnīs superiōrēs diēs praeceptis ¹ Caesariōs summā diligentiā militēs in castrīs continuisset, ac nē cālōnem quidem quemquam extrā mūnitiōnem ēgredi passus ² esset) vii diē, diffidēns ³ dē numerō diērum Caesarem fidem servāturum, quod longius prógressum audiēbat neque ūlla dē reditū ēius fāma ⁴ adferēbat; simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus ⁵ quī illius patientiam paene obsessionem ⁶ appellābant, si quidem ex castrīs ēgredi nōn licēret; nūllum ēius modi cāsum exspectāns quàō, VIII oppositis legiōnibus maximōque equitātū, dispersīs ac paene délētis hostibus, in milibus passuum tribus offendi posset, — v cohortīs frūmentātum in proxīmās segetēs ⁷ mittit, quās inter et castra ūnus omninō cōllis intererat. Complūrēs erant in castrīs ex legiōnibus aegri relictī; ex quibus qui ⁸ hoc spatīo diērum con- valuerant, circiter ccc, sub vēxillō ūnā mittuntur: māgna praetereā multitūdō cālōnūm, māgna vis ⁹ iūmentōrum, quae in castrīs subsēderat, factā potestāte sequitur.

The Germans Assault the Camp. Panic Within.

37. Hoc ipsō tempore ¹⁰ [et] cāsū Germānī equitēs interveniunt, prōtīnusque eōdem illō quō vēnerant cursū ab de- cumānā portā in castra inrumpere cōnantur; nec prius sunt visi, obiectīs ab eā parte silvis, quam: castrīs adpropinquārent, ūisque eō ut quī sub vāllo tenderent ¹¹ mercātōrēs recipiendi sui facultātem nōn habērent. Inopināntēs nostri ōe novā perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statī- ²⁵ ōne sustinet. Circumfunduntur hostēs ex reliquis partibus, si quem aditum ¹² reperire possint. Aegrē ¹³ portās nostri tuentur, ¹⁴ reliquōs aditūs locus ipse per sē mūnitiōque dēfendit. Tōtīs trepidātur castrīs atque alius ex aliō causam

tumultūs quaerit; neque quō signa ferantur neque quam in partem quisque conveniat\textsuperscript{1} prōvident. Alius castra iam capta prōnūntiat; alius dēlētō exercitu atque imperātōre victōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit; plērique novās sibi ex locō religionēs fingunt, Cottaque et Titūri calamitātem\textsuperscript{2} qui in eōdem occiderint castellō, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tālī timōre omnibus perterritīs\textsuperscript{3} cōnfīrmātur opinīō barbarīs, ut ex captīvō audierant, nūllum esse intus praeсидium. Perrumpere\textsuperscript{4} nituntur\textsuperscript{5} sēque ipsī adhortantur nē tantam fortūnam ex manibus dīmittant.

P. Sextius Baculus again Distinguishes Himself.

38. Erat aeger in praeсидίō relictus P. Sextius Baculus, qui prīnum pilum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cūius mentiōnem superiōribus proeliīs fēcimus, ac diem iam quintum cibō caruerat. Hic diffīsus suae atque omnium salūtī inermīs\textsuperscript{6} ex tabernāculō prōdīt; videt imminēre hostīs atque in summō rem esse discriminē; capīt arma ā proximīs atque in portā cōnsistit: cōnsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs ēius cohōrtis quae in statione erat; paulisper ūnā proelium sustīntent. Relinquīt animūs Sextium gravibus acceptīs volneribus; aegrē per manūs trāditus\textsuperscript{7} servātur. Hōc spatiō\textsuperscript{8} interpositō reliquī sēsē cōnfīrmant\textsuperscript{9} tantum ut in mūniōni-bus cōnsistere audeant speciemque dēfēnsōrum\textsuperscript{10} praebēant.

The Foragers Return and Reach the Camp with Some Difficulty and Loss.

39. Interim cōnfectā frūmentātiōne militēs nostri clāmōrem exaudīunt; praecurrunt equītēs; quantō rēs sit in periculō cōgnōscunt. Hic vērō nūlla mūniō est quae perterritōs recipiat; modo\textsuperscript{11} cōnscriptī atque ēus militāris imperītī ad tribūnum mīlitum centuriōnēsque ōra convertunt; quid ab his praecipiātur exspectant: nēmō est tam fortīs quīn reī

novitāte perturbētur. Barbarī signa procul cōnspicāti oppùgnatiōne dēsistunt: redīsse prīmō legiōnēs crēdunt quās longius discississe ex captīvis cōgnōverant; postēa dēspectā paucitāte ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

**Fig. 85. — Soldiers Marching in Presence of the Imperator.**

5 40. Cālōnēs in proximum tumulum prōcurrunt. Hinc celeriter dēiecti sē in signa manipūlosque coniciunt; eō magis timidōs perterrent militēs. Alīi cuneō factō ut celeriter perrumpant cēnsent, quoniam tam propinquā sint castra; etsi pars alīqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquōs servāri posse [confidunt]; alīi ut in iugō cōnsistant atque eundem omnēs ferant cāsum. Hōc veterēs nōn probant militēs, quōs sub vēxillō ūnā profectōs docuimus. Itaque inter sē cohortātī, duce C. Trebōniō, equite Rōmānō, qui eis erat praepositus, per mediōs hostīs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad

B.G.VI.42. Second Expedition into Germany.

únum omnēs in castra perveniunt. Hōs subsecūti călōnēs equītēsque eōdem impētū mīlitūm virtūte servantur. At ei qui in iugō cōnstiterant, nūllo etiam nunc ūsū rei mīlitāris perceptō, neque in eō quod probāverant cōnsiliō permanēre, ut sē locō superiōre dēfenderent, neque eam quam prōfuisset aliīs vim celeritātemque viderant, imitāri potuērunt; sed sē in castra recipere cōnātī iniquum in locum dēmisērunt.

Centuriōnēs, quōrum nōn nūlī ex īnferiōribus ĵōdinibus reliquārum legiōnum virtūtis causā in superiōrēs erant ĵōdīnēs hūius legiōnis trāductī, nē ante partam reī mīlitāris laudem āmitterent, fortissimē pūgnantēs concidērunt. Mīlitūm pars, hōrum virtūte submŏtīs hostibus, praeter spēm incolūmīs in castra pervēnīt; pars ā barbarīs circumventā perīt.


41. Germānī dēspērātā expūgnātiōne castrōrum, quod nostrōs iam cōnstitisse in mūnitiōnibus vidēbant, cum eā praedā quam in silvīs dēposuerant trāns Rhēnum sēsē recēpērunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror ut eā nocte, cum C. Volusēnus missus cum equitātū in castra vēnisset, fidem nōn faceret adesse cum incolūmī Cæsarem exercītū. Sic omnium animōs timor praecoccūpāverat ut paene aliēnātā mente, dēlētīs omnibus cōpiīs, equitātūm sē ex fugā recēpisse dicerent, neque incolūmī exercītī Germānōs castra oppūgnātūrōs fuisse contenderent. Quem timōrem Cæsaris exercītus sustulit.

42. Reversus ille, — ēventūs bellī nōn ignōrāns, ūnum quod cohortēs ex statione et praesidiō essent ēmissae questūs, nē minimum quidem căsūi locum relinqui dēbuisse, — multum fortūnam in repentinō hostium adventū potuisses iūdicāvit; multō etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipsō vāllō

portisque castrorum barbaros avertisset. ¹ Quārum omnium rerum maximē admirandum vidēbātur, quod Germāni, qui eō cōnsiliō Rhēnum trānsierant ut Ambiorigis finis dēpopulārentur, ad castra Rōmānōrum dēlāti ² optātissimum Ambi-
5 origi beneficium obtulerant.

After Inflicting Further Military Severities upon the Resisting Tribes, Caesār Returns to Italy.

43. Caesār, rūrsus ad vexandōs hostis profectus, māgnō equitum coāctō numerō ex finitimis civitātibus, in omnis partis dimittīt. ³ Omnēs vici atque omnia aedificia quae quisque cōnspexerat incendēbantur; praeda ex omnibus locis agēbātur; frūmenta nōn sōlum a tāntā multitudine iūmentōrum atque hominum consūmēbantur; sed etiam anni tempore atque imbris prōcubuerant; ut, si qui etiam in praesentiā sē occultāssent,⁴ tamen his dēductō exercitu rērum omnium inopiā pereundum ⁵ vidērētur. Ac sāpe in eum locum ventum est, tantō in omnis partis dimissō equi-
tātū, ut [nōn] modo visum ab sē Ambiorigem in fugā circumspicerent captivi, nec plānē etiam abisse ex cōnspectū contenderent; ut, spē consequendi inlātā atque infinitō ⁶ labōre susceptō, qui sē summam à Caesare grātiam initiūrōs putārent, paene nātūram studiō vincerent, semperque pau-
sum fēlicitātem dēfuisset vidērētur; atque ille latebris aut saltibus ⁷ sē ēriperet; et nōctū occultās aliās regionēs partisque peteret nōn māiore equitum praeсидió quam mī, quibus sōlis vitam suam committere ⁸ audēbat.

25 44. Tāli modō vāstātīs ⁹ regionibus exercitum Caesār duārum cohortium damnō ¹⁰ Dūrocortorum Rēmōrum dēdūcit; conciliōque in eum locum Galliae indictō dē coniūratiōne Senonum et Carnutum quaestionem habēre instituit; et dē Accōne, qui princeps ēius cōnsili fuerat, graviōre sententiā

pronuntiáta, more maiórum supplicium\(^1\) súmpsit. Non nulli iúdícium veriti profúgérunt; quibus cum aqua atque igni interdixisset, duás legiônés ad finís Tréverórum, duás in Lingonibus, sex reliquás in Senonum finibus Agédinci in hibernís conlocávit; frúmentóque\(^2\) exercitui prövisó,\(^3\) ut instituerat, in Itáliam ad conventús agendós probactus est.

Cf. \(^1\) poenás. --- \(^2\) ré frúmentáriá comparáta.

---

**Fig. 86. — Chain Mail (lorica hamata).**
BOOK VII.

UPRISING OF GAUL UNDER VERCINGETORIX. B.C. 52.

General Movement among the Gauls for Independence.

QUIÉTA¹ Galliā Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs proficiscitur. Ibi cōgnōscit dē P. Clōdī caede; dē senātusque cōnsultō certior factus ut omnēs iūniōres Italiae coniūrārent, dēlēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre instituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpinam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et adfīngunt rūmōribus Gallī (quod rēs poscere² vidēbātur) retinēri urbānō mōtū³ Caesa-rem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venire posse. Hāc impulsi⁴ occāsiōne qui iam ante sē populi Rōmāni imperiō subiectōs dolērent⁵ liberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia īnire⁶ incipiunt. Indictīs⁷ inter sē princi-pēs Galliae concilīs silvestribus ac remōtīs⁸ locīs queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōnstrant;⁹ miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemiis dépōscunt qui belli

initium faciant et sui capitis periculō Galliam in libertātem vindicent. In primīs rationem esse habendam dicunt, priusquam eōrum clandestīna cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente imperātōrem ex hibernīs ēgredi, neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenire possit; postrēmō, in acīē praestāre interfici quam nōn veterem belli gloriām libertātemque quam ā māliōribus accēperint recuperāre.

The Carnutes Begin the Revolt. Rapid Spread of the News.

2. His rēbus agitātīs profitentur Carnutes sē nūllum periculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, principēsque ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur; et, quoniam in praeuentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrandō ac fidē sanctiātur petunt, conlātīs militāribus signīs (quō mōre eōrum gravissima caerimōnia continētur), nē factō initiō belli ab reliquis dēserantur. Tum conlaudātīs Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab omnibus qui aderant, tempore ēius rei cōnstitutō, ā conciliō discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutes Cotuātō et Conconneto-dumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Čenabum signō datō concurrunt, civīs Rōmānōs qui negotiāndi causā ibi cōnstiterant, in his C. Fūsum Citam, honestum equītēm Rōmānum, qui rei frumentāriae iūssū Caesaris praerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnis Galliae civitātīs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae māior atque inlustrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque signifiānt; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Čenabī oriente sōle gesta essent ante primam cōnfectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernōrum audita sunt, quod spatium est mīlium passuum circiter clx.

Vercingetorix, Chief of the Arverni, Takes the Lead, and Induces Many Tribes to Join him. Severity of his Rule.

4. Simili ratione ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius, Arvernum, summae potentiae \(^1\) adulēscēns, —cūius pater principātum tōtius Galliae obtinuerat, et ob eam causam quod rēgnum adpetēbat\(^2\) ā civitāte erat interfexus,—convocātis suis 5 clientibus facile incendit.\(^3\) Cōgnitō ēius cōnsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn existimabant; expellitur\(^4\) ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agris habet dēlēctum egentium ac perdītūrum. Hāc coāctā manū quōscumque adit ex civitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut communius libertātis causā arma capiant; māgnisque coāctis cōpiis adversāriōs\(^5\) suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex civitāte. Rēx ab suis appellātur. Dimittit quōque versus lēgātiōnes; obtestātur\(^6\) ut in fidē maneant. Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parīsiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovicēs, Andōs, reliquōsque omnīs quī Oceanum attingunt adiungit\(^7\); omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā\(^8\) potestāte omnibus hīs civitātibus obsidēs imperat; certum numerum militum ad sē celeriter addūci iubet; armōrum quantum quaeque cīvitās domī, quodque ante tempus efficiat,\(^9\) constituent; in prīmis equitātū studet. Summae diligentiae summam imperī sevēritātem addit; māgnītūdine supplicī dubītantīs cōgit\(^10\): nam māiōre commissō dēlictō\(^11\) ignī 25 atque omnibus tormentīs necat; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectīs aut singulīs effossīs oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documentō\(^12\) et māgnītūdine poenae perterreant aliōs.

Cf. \(^1\) potestātis. — \(^2\) cupiēbat. — \(^8\) incitāvit. — \(^4\) ēicitur. — \(^5\) inimi-

cōs. — \(^6\) obsecrātur. — \(^7\) adsciscit. — \(^8\) trāditā. — \(^9\) paret. — \(^10\) perdūcit.

— \(^11\) facinore. — \(^12\) exemplō.
He Goes among the Bituriges, Who Appeal to the Hædui for Help. Being Refused, They Join him.

5. His suppliciis celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium Ca-
dūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in
Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturigēs proficiscitur. Ėius adventū
Bituriges ad Haeduōs (quōrum erant in fidē) légātōs mittunt
subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinērē possint. Hædui dē cōnsiliō légātōrum, quōs Caesar ad
exercitum reliquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidīō
Biturigibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturigēs ab Haeduīs dividit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī
neque flūmen trānsīrē ausī, domum revertuntur, légātīisque
nostrīs renūntiāntē sē Biturigum perfidiā veritōs revertisse,
quibus dē cōnsili fuisse cōgnōverint ut, si flūmen trānsīssent,
ūnā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent.4 Id
eāne dē causā quam légātis prōnūntiārunt an perfidiā adductī
fēcerint, quod nihil nōbis cōnstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse 15
pōnendum. Bituriges eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arver-
nīs iungunt.

Caesar’s Difficulty in Reaching his Army. He Proceeds to Narbo to
Counteract the Plans of Lucterius.

6. Hīs rēbus in Ītaliam Caesari nūntiātīs, cum iam ille
urbānās rēs virtūtē Cn. Pompēi commodiōrem in statum
pervēnisse intellegēret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliām profectus est.
Ēo cum vēnisset, māgnā diffīcultāte adficiēbātur, quā
ratione ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam sī legiōnēs in
prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dimicā-
tūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eīs
quidem eō tempore qui quītē vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē
committī vidēbat.

Cf. 1 resistere, w. dat. — 2 sē recipiunt. — 3 referunt. — 4 circumveni-
rent. — 5 perlātis. — 6 meliorem. — 7 permovēbātur. — 8 pūgnātūras.

Cæsar Crosses the Cevennes Mountains through the Snow. Vercingetōrix Goes to Protect the Arverni.

8. Hīs rēbus comparātis, 6 repressō iam Lucterīō et remōtō, 7 quod intrāre intrā praesidēa periculōsum putābat, in Helviōs proficiscetur. Etsī mōns Cevenna, qui Arvernōs ab Helviis disclūdīt, 8 dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nīve iter impedēbat; tamen, discussā nīve in altitūdinem pedum vi atque ita viīs patefactīs, 9 summō militum labōre ad finis Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressīs inopinantibus, quod sē Cevennā ut mūrō mūnitōs existīmābant, ac nē singulāri 10 quidem umquam homīnī eō tempore annī sēmitae 11 patuerant, equītūs imperat ut quam lātissimē possint va- gentur et quam maximum hostibus terrōrem inferant.

Celeriter haec fāma ac nūntīi ad Vercingetōrigem perfe-
25 runtur; quem perterritī omnēs Arverni circumsistunt atque obsecrānt 12 ut suīs fortūnīs cōnsulat, neu sē ab hostibus diripī patriātur; praesertim cum videat 13 omne ad sē bellum trāns- lātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs versus.


9. At Caesar biduum in his locis morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorige ūsū ventūra opiniòne praecēperat, per causam supplēmenti equitātīisque cōgendi ab exercītū discēdit; Brūtum adulēscentem hīs cōpiīs praeśicit; hunc monēt ut in omnīs partīs equītēs quam lātissimē pervagentūr; datūrum sē operam nē longius triduō ā castrīs absīt. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, suis inopinantibus, quam maximēs potest itineribus Viennam pervenīt. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quem multis ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per finīs Haeduōrum in Lingo- nēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant; ut, sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Haeduis inirētur cōnsili, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit, prīusque omnīs in ūnum locum cōgit quam dē ēius adventū Arvernīs nūntiāri posset. Hāc rē cōgnitā Vercingetorīx rūrsus in Biturīgēs exercītum redūcit, atque inde profectus Gorgobīnam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proelīō victōs Caesar conlocāverat Haeduisque attribuerat, oppūgnāre instituit.

Caesar, though Much Perplexed, Determines to Relieve the Boii.

10. Māgnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum adferēbat: si reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō

The Gallic War.

Caes. legiōnēs continēret, nē stipendiāriis Haeduōrum expūgnātis cūnta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amīcis in eō praesidium posītum vidēret; sī mātūrius ex hībernīs ēdūcerer, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūris subvectionibus labōrāret. Praestāre visum est tamen omnīs diffīcultātīs perpetī quam, tantā contumēliā acceptā, omnium suōrum voluntātīs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Haeduōs dē supportandō commeātō, praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant, horenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impētum màgnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agēdinci legiōnibus atque impedimentīs tōtius exercitus relictīs ad Bōiōs proficiscitur.

Caesar Takes Two Towns near the Loire.

11. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum, Vellaunodūnum, vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem reliquieret, ēt quō expeditiōre rē frūmentāriā ēterētur, oppūgnāre instituit, eōque biduō circumvāllavit; tertīō diē missīs ex oppidō légātis dē dēdītiōne, arma cōnferrī, iūmenta prōdūcī, sexcentōs obсидēs dari iubet. Ea qui cōnferent C. Trebōnium légātum reliquit; ipse ut quam prīnum iter cōnferent, Cēnabum Carnutum proficiscitur; qui tum prīnum adlātō nūntiō diē oppūgnātiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longius eam rem ductūm īri existimārent, praesidīum Cēnābī tuendi causā, quod eō mitterent, comparābant.

Hūc biduō pervenit. Castrīs ante oppidum positis, diēī tempore exclusūs in posterum oppūgnātiōnem differt, quaeque ad eam rem īsuī sint militiae imperat; et, quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus nē noctū ex oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in armīs excubāre iubet. Cēnabēnsēs, paulō ante mediam noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressī flūmen trānsire coepercunt. Quā rē per explō-

rātōres nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs, quās expeditās esse iusserat,
portīs incēnsīs,1 intrōmittit atque oppidō potitūr, perpaucīs ex
hostium numerō désiderātīs quīn cūnctī caperentur, quod pontīs atque itinerum angustiae multitūdīnī fugam interclūserant.2
Oppidum dirīpit atque incendit, praedam militibus dōnat; exercitum Ligerim trādūcit atque in Biturīgum finīs pervenit.

Noviodūnum Surrenders, but the Inhabitants, Seeing Vercingetorix
Approaching, Prepare for Defense.

12. Vercingetorix ubi de Caesarīs adventū cognōvit, oppūgnātiōne dēsistit atque obviam Caesarī proficiscitur. Ille oppidum Biturīgum posītum in viā Noviodūnum oppūgnāre instituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum lēgāti ad eum vēnissent 10 óratūm 3 ut sībi ignōsceret suaēque vitae cōnsuleret,4 ut celebritāte reliquās rēs cōnficeret quā plēraque erat cōnsecūtus,6 arma cōnferri, equōs prōdūci, obsidēs dāri iubet. Parte iam obsidum trādītā, cum reliqua administrārentur, centuriōnibus et paucis militibus intrōmissis qui arma iūmentaque 15 conquirerent,6 equitūsus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetorīgis antecesserat. Quem 7 simul atque oppidāni cōnsplexērunt atque in spēm auxilī vēnērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, portās claudere, mūrum complēre coepērunt. Centuriōnēs in oppidō, cum ex significātiōne Gallōrum novi 20 aliquid ab his inīrī cōnsili intellēxissent, gladiis dēstrictīs portās occupāvērunt suōsque omnis incolumīs 8 recēpērunt.

Caesar Takes Noviodūnum and Marches towards Avaricum.

13. Caesar ex castrīs equitātūm ēdūci iubet, proeliumque equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suīs Germānōs equités circiter cccc submittit,9 quōs 10 ab initiō sēcum habēre insti-
tuerat. Eōrum impetum Galli sustinēre nōn potuērunt,

Cf. 1 exūstīs.— 2 impedīrant.— 3 obsecrātum.— 4 parceret.— 5 cōn-
fecerat.— 6 quaererent.— 7 ut semel.— 8 tūtōs.— 9 auxiliō mittit.— 10 prīmō.
atque in fugam coniecti multis amissis se ad agmen recē-perunt; quibus prōfligātis rūrsus oppidāni perterriti com-prehēnsōs eōs quōrum operā plēbem concitātam existimābant ad Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque ei dēdidērunt. Quibus

5 rēbus cōnfectī Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum mūnitissimumque in finibus Biturigum atque agri fertilissimā regiōne, profectus est; quod eō oppidō receptō civitātēm Biturigum sé in potestātem redēctūrum cōnfidēbat.

Cf. 1 conversī. — 2 dēpulsīs. — 3 iterum. — 4 opp. amissō.
Vercingetorix Advises the Gauls to Lay Waste their Country, and thus Keep the Romans from Supplies.

14. Vercingetorix tot continuis incommodis¹ Vellaunoduni, Cēnabī, Novioduni acceptis suōs ad concilium vocat. Docet 'longē alīā ratīōne esse bellum gerendum atque anteā gestum sit; omnibus modis huic reī studendum ut pābulātiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur: id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsī abundant² et quod anni tempore subleventur; pābulum secārī nōn posse; necessāriō³ dispersōs hostīs ex aedificiis petere; hōs omnīs cotidiē ab equitibus dēlēri posse. Praetereā, salūtis causā reī familiāris commoda neglegenda; vicōs atque aedificia incendi oportēre hōc spatiō [ā Bōiā] ⁴ quōque versus, quō pābulandi causā adire posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppetere, quod quōrum in finibus bellum gerātur eōrum opibus subleventur ⁵: Rōmānōs aut inopiam ⁶ nōn lātūrōs aut māgnō cum periculō longius ā castrīs processūrōs; neque ¹⁵ interesse ipsōsne interficiant an impedimentīs exuānt,⁷ quibus āmissīs bellum gerī nōn possit. Praetereā, oppida incendi oportēre quae nōn mūnitiōne et locī nātūrā ab omni sint periculō tūta; nē suis sint ad dētrectandum ⁸ militiam receptācula, nec Rōmānīs prōposita ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollendam. Haec si gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa gravius aestimāri dēbēre, liberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahī, ipsōs interfici; quae sit necesse accidere victis.'

They Burn Many Cities, but Spare Avaricum.

15. Omnium cōnsēnsū hāc sententiā probātā ūnō diē amplius xx urbēs Biturīgum incenduntur.⁹ Hōc idem fit in reliquis civitātibus. In omnibus partibus incidia cōn-

Cf. ¹ cladibus. — ² plūrum possint. — ⁸ necessitāte adductōs. — ⁴ undique. — ⁵ iuventur. — ⁶ opp. cōpiam. — ⁷ dēspolient. — ⁸ vitan-
dam. — ⁹ combūruntur. — ¹⁰ accidit.
spiciuntur; quae etsi māgnō cum dolore omnēs ferēbant, tamen hoc sibi sōlāci prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope explorātā 1 victoriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūrōs cōfīdēbant. Dēlīberātur 2 dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō, incendīi placeat an 5 dēfendi. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallis ad pedēs Bituriges, nē pulcherrimam prope tōtius Galliae urbem, quae et prae-sidiō et ōrnāmentō sit civitāti, suis manibus succendere cōgantur; facile sē loci nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dicunt, quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdata, ūnum habeat et perangustum 3 aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuādente primō Vercingetōrīge, post concēdentе, et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā volgi. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōnei dēliguntur.


Although Suffering from Lack of Supplies, the Roman Soldiers Maintain a Resolute Spirit.

17. Castrīs ad eam partem oppidi positīs Caesar quae 25 intermissa [ā] flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā diximus, angustum habēbat, aggerem adparāre, 7 vīnēās agere, turrīs duās cōnstituere 8 coepit; nam circumvāllāre locī nātūrā prohibēbat. Dē re frūmentāriā Bōīōs atque Haeduōs adhor-tārī nōn dēstitit: quōrum alterī, quod nūllō studiō 9 agēbant, 

Fig. 91. — Bourges.
nön multum adiuvabant; alteri nön magnis facultatibus, quod civitas erat exigua 2 et infirma, celeriter quod habuerunt consumpsérunt. Summā difficultāte rei frumentāriae adfectō exercitū, tenuitāte 3 Bōiōrum, indiligentiā Haeduōrum, incendīis aedificiōrum, — usque eō ut complūris diēs frumentō militēs caruerint, et pecore ē longinquiōribus 6 vicis adactō extrēmam famem sustentārunt, — nulla tamen vox est ab eis audita populi Rōmānī māiestāte 6 et superiōribus victīris indigna. Quin etiam Caesar cum in opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret, et, si acerbius inopiam ferrent, sē dimissūrum 8 oppūgnātiōnem diceret, universi ab eo né id faceret petēbant: 'Sic sē complūris annōs illō imperante meruisse ut nūllam ignōminiam acciperent, numquam infectā 9 ré discēderent; hoc sē ignōminia lātūros locō, si inceptam oppūgnātiōnem reliquisset 10: praestāre omnīs perferre acerbitātis 11 quam nōn civibus Rōmānīs quī Cēnabī perfidiā Gallōrum interissent 12 parentārent.' Haec eadem centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum mandābant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem dēferrentur.

**Caesar Marches towards Vercingetorix.**

18. Cum iam mūrō turres adpropinquassent, ex captīvis 20 Caesar cognōvit 14 Vercingetorīgem consūmptō pābulō castra móvisse proprius Avaricum, atque ipsum cum equitātū expeditisque qui inter equitēs proelīāri consueссent, insidianti causā eō prefectum quō nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus rēbus cognitis mediā nocte 25 silentiō prefectus ad hostium castra māne pervēnit. Illi, celeriter per explōratōrēs adventū Caesaris cognitō, carrōs impedimentaque sua in artiōrēs 16 silvās abdidērunt, copiās

omnis in locō ēditō atque apertō ėstruxērunt. Quā
rē nǔntiātā Caesar celeriter sarkanās cōnferri, arma ex-
pediri iussit.

He Finds him too Strongly Intrenched to Warrant an Attack.

19. Collis erat lēniter ab īnfimō acclīvis. Hunc ex
omnibus fērē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedita cingē-
bat, nōn lātior pedibus L. Hōc sē colle interruptīs ponti-

bus Gallī fidūciā locī continēbant, generātimque distribūtī
[in civitātīs] omnia vada [ac saltūs] ēius palūdis obtinēbant,
sic animō parātī ut, si eam palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere
cōnārentur, haesitantīs premerent ex locō superiōre; ut,
qui propinquitātem locī vidēret, parātōs prope aequō Mārte
ad dimicandum existimāret; qui iniquitātem condiciōnis
perspiceret, inānī simulātiōne sēsē ostentāre cōgnōsceret.
Indignantīs militēs Caesar, quod cōnspectum suum hostēs
ferre possent tantulō spatīō interiectō, et signum proelī

B. G. VII. 20.] *Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix.* 199

exposcentis,\(^1\) edocet quantō dētrimentō\(^2\) et quot virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōnstāre victōriam; quōs cum sic animō parātōs videat ut nūllum prō suā laude\(^3\) periculum recūsent, summae sē inīquitātīs condēmnāri dēbēre, nisi eōrum vitam laude suā habēat\(^4\) cāriōrem. Sic mīlitēs cōnsōlātus eōdem diē redūcit in castra; reliquaque quae ad oppūgnātiōnem oppidi pertinēbant administrāre\(^5\) instituit.

**Fig. 93. — Plan of Siege Works.**

**Suspicions against Vercingetorix, Who Makes a Successful Defense and Appeal to his Countrymen.**

20. Vercingetorix cum ad suōs redisset, prōditionis insimulātus,\(^6\) — quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod cum omni equitātū discessisset, quod sine imperiō\(^7\) tantās 10 cópiās reliquisset, quod ēius discessū Rōmānī tantā opportūnitāte\(^8\) et celeritāte vēnissent; nōn haec omnia fortuitō\(^9\) aut

Cf. \(^1\) petentis. — \(^2\) damnō. — \(^3\) glōriā. — \(^4\) existimet. — \(^5\) comparāre. — \(^6\) accūsātus. — \(^7\) imperātōre. — \(^8\) occāsiōne. — \(^9\) forte, cāsū.
sine cōnsiliō accidere potuisse; rēgnum illum Galliae mālle Caesaris concessu quam ipsōrum habēre beneficiō,—tāli modō accūsātus ad haec respondit: 'Quod castra mōvisset, factum inopiā pābuli, etiam ipsis hortantibus; quod propius Rōmānōs accessisset, persuāsum loci opportūnītāte, qui sē ipse sine mūnitiōne défenderet; equitum vērō operam neque in locō palūstrī dēsiderāri dēbusisse, et illic fuisse ūtilem quō sint protectī. Summam imperī sē cōnsultō nūlli discédentem trādīdisse, nē is multitūdīnis studiō ad dimican-10 impellerētur; cui rei propter animī mollītiem studēre omnis vidēret, quod diūtius labōrem ferre nōn possent. Rōmāni sī cāsū intervēnerint, fortūnae; si alicīus indiciō vocāti, huic habendam grātīam, quod et paucitātem eōrum ex locō superiōre cōgnōscere et virtūtem dēspicere potue-rint, quī dimicāre nōn ausi turpīter sē in castra recēperint. Imperium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nūllum dēsiderāre, quod habēre victōriā posset, quae iam esset sībi atque omni-bus Gallīs explōrāta: quīn etiam ipsīs remittere, si sībī magis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē salūtem accipere vide-15 rint, quī dimicāre nōn ausi turbīter sē in castra recēperint. Imperium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nūllum dēsiderāre, quod habēre victōriā posset, quae iam esset sībi atque omni-bus Gallīs explōrāta: quīn etiam ipsīs remittere, si sībī magis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē salūtem accipere vide-
20 antur.' "Haec ut intellegātis," inquit, "ā mē sincērē prō-
nūntiāri, audite Rōmānōs militēs." Prōducit servōs, quōs in pābulātiōne paucīs ante diēbus excēperat, et famē vincu-lisque exerciūciāverat. Hi, iam ante ēdoctī quae interrogātī prōnūntiārent, militēs sē esse legiōnāriōs dīcunt; famē et inopiā adductōs clam ex castrīs exīsse, si quid frūmenti aut pecoris in agrīs reperī possent; simili omnem exercitum inopiā premī, nec iam virīs sufficere cūiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse: itaque statuisse imperātōrem, si nihil in oppūgnātiōne oppidi prōfēcissent, trīduō exercitum dēdūcere.
25 "Haec," inquit, "ā mē," [Vercingetorīx] "beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnīs insimulātis; cūius operā sine vestrō san-

guine tantum exercitum victorem famē cōnsumptum vidētis; quem turpiter sē ex hac fugā recipientem né qua civitās suīs finibus recipiat, a mē prōvisum est."

21. Conclāmat omnis multitudō et suō mōre armīs concrepat, — quod facere in eō cōnsuērunt cūius ērātiōnem adprobant: 'Summum esse Vercingetorīgem ducem, nec dē ēius fidē dubitandum, nec māiore rațiōne bellum administraī posse.' Statuunt ut x milia hominum dēlecta ex omnibus cōpiīs in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlis Biturīgibus commūnem salūtem committendam cēnse; quod paene in eō, si id oppidum retinuissent, summam victōriāe cōnstāre intellegēbant.

The Gauls Make a Most Skilful Defense against the Roman Works.

22. Singulāri militum nostrōrum virtūti cōnsilia cūiusque modī Gallōrum occurrēbant, ut est summae genus sollertiae, atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae ā quōque trāduntur aptissimum. Nam et laqueis falcīs āvertēbant, quās, cum dēstīnāverant, tormentīs intrōrsus redūcēbant; et aggerem cuniculis subtrahēbant, eō scientius quod apud eōs māgnae sunt ferrāriae, atque omne genus cuniculōrum nōtum atque īsītātum est. Tōtum autem mūrum ex omni parte turribus contabulāverant atque hās corīs intēixerant. Tum crēbris diurnīs nocturnīisque ēruptīōnibus aut aggerī ignem inferēbant aut militēs occupātōs in opere adōriebant; et nostrārum turrium altitūdinem, quantum hās cotidiānus agger expresserat, commissis suārum turrium mālis adaequābant; et apertōs cuniculōs praedīstā et praeautē māteriā et pīce fervefactā et maximi ponderis saxis morābantur moenibusque adpropinquāre prohibēbant.

23. Mūri autem omnēs Gallicī hac fere formā sunt. Trābēs dirēctae, perpetuae in longitudinēm paribus intervāllis, distantēs inter sē binōs pedēs, in solō conlocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur; ea autem quae diximus intervālla grandibus in fronte sāxis effariunt. His conlocātīs et coagmentātīs alius insuper ārdō additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed, paribus intermissīs spatiīs, singulāe singulīs sāxis interiectīs artē contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus contexitur dum iūsta mūri altītūdō expleātūr. Hōc cum in speciem varietātemque opus déforme nōn est, alternīs trabibus ac sāxis, quae rēctīs lineīs suōs ordīnēs servant, tum ad utilitātem et dēfensiōnem urbium summam habet opportūnitātem; quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete māteria dēfendit, quae perpetuīs trabibus pedum quadrā-

Cf. 1 opp. intermissae. — 2 integuntur. — 3 complentur. — 4 confixis.
The Gauls Set Fire to the Roman Works and Make a Sortie.

24. His tot rebus impeditā oppūgnātiōne militēs, cum tōtō tempore frigore et adsiduis imbris tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt, et diēbus xxv aggerem lātum pedēs cccxxx, altum pedēs lxxx exstrūxērunt. Cum is mūrum hostium paene continget, et Caesar ad opus cōnsuētūdine excubāret militēsque hor-tārētur nē quod omnīnō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, — paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmāre ag- gerem, quem cuniculō hostēs succenderant; eōdemque tem-pore, tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portīs ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō fiēbat. Alii facīs atque āridam māteriam dē mūro in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant; picem reliquāsque rēs quibus ignis excitāri potest fundēbant; ut, quō primum occurrerētur aut cui rei ferrētur auxilium, vix ratiō iniri posset. Tamen, quod īnstitūtō Caesaris duae semper legiōnēs prō castris excubābant, plūrēsque partītīs temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut alii ēruptiōnibus resisterent, alii turris reducērent aggerem-que interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castrīs multitūdō ad restinguendum concurreret.

Heroism of the Gauls.

25. Cum in omnibus locīs, cōnsūmpťa iam reliquā parte noctīs, pūgnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriāe redin-tegrārētur, — eō magis quod deūstōs pluteōs turrium vidēbant, nec facile adire apertōs ad auxiliandum animad-vertēbant, — semperque ipsī recentēs dēfessis succēderent,
omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vestigio temporis positam arbitrárentur; accidit inspectantibus nōbis quod dignum memoriā visum praetereundum nōn existimāvimus. Quidam ante portam oppidi Gallus per manūs sēbī ac picis trāditās glēbās in ignem ē regiōne turris prōiciēbat; scorpionē ab latere dextrō trāiectus exanimātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximīs ūnus iacentem trānsgressus eōdem illō mūnere fungēbātur; eādem ratiōne ictū scorpionis exanimātō alterō successit tertius et tertīō quartus; nec prius ille est ā prō- pūgnātōribus vacuus relictus locus quam, restīntō aggere atque omni parte submōtīs hostibus, finis est pūgnandi factus.

The Gauls Prepare to Abandon the Town, but are Dissuaded by the Women.

26. Omnia experti Gallī, quod rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē cōnsilium cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere hortante et ūbente Vercingetorige. Id silentiō noctis cōnāti nōn māgnā iactūrā suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant; propterea quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbat, Rōmānōs ad Insequen-

Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix.

Storming of the Walls.


The Town is Taken, and Most of the Inhabitants are Butchered.

28. Hostēs ré novā perterriti, mūrō turribusque dēiectī, in forō ac locīs patentiōribus cuneātīm cōnsitērunt, hoc animō ut, si quā ex parte obviam [contrā] venīrētur, acīe instrūctā dēpūgnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī vidērunt, veritī nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectis armīs ultimās oppīdi partīs continentī impētī petīvērunt; parce

The Gallic War.

ib i, cum angustō 1 exitū portārum sē ipsi premerent, a militibus, pars iam ēgressa portīs ab equitibus est interfecta; nec fuit quisquam qui praedae studēret. Sic et Cēnabēnsī caede et labōre operis incitāti nōn actātē cōnfectīs, nōn mulieribus, 2 nōn infantibus pepercērunt. 3 Dēnique ex omni numerō, qui fuit circiter milium x 1, vix dccc, qui prīmō clāmōre audītō sē ex oppidō ēiēcerant, incolumēs ad Veringetorīgem pervēnērunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit, et veritus nē qua in castrīs ex eōrum concursū et misericordiā volgi sēdiūto orerētur, [ut,] procul in viā dispositīs famīliāribus 4 suīs princīpibusque civitātum, disparandōs 5 dēdūcendōsque ad suōs currāvit, quae cuique civitātī pars castrōrum ab initiō 6 obvēnerat.

Veringetorīx Appeals to the Gauls to Continue the War.

29. Posterō diē conciliō 7 convocātō consōlātus cohortātusque est: 'Nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent, nēve perturbārentur incommōdō; nōn virtūte neque in aciē vicīsse Rōmānōs, sed artificī quōdam et scientiā oppūgnātiōnis, cūius rei fuerint ipsi imperīti; errāre, si qui in bellō omnīs secundōs 8 rērum prōventūs 9 exspectent; sībī numquam placuisse Avaricūm dēfendi, cūius rei testīs ipsōs habēret, sed factum imprudentiā Biturīgum et nīmīa obsequentiā reliquōrum utī hoc incommōdum acciperētur; id tamen sē celerītē maiōribus commodīs sānātūrum. Nam, quae ab reliquis Gallis civitātēs dissentīrent, 10 hās suā diligentiā adiunctūrum atque ūnum cōnsilium tōtius Galliae effectūrum, cūius cōnsēnsuī nē orbīs quidem terrārum possit obstītere; id quē sē prope iam effectum habēre. Interea aequum esse ab eīs commūnīs salūtis causā impertrāri 11 ut castra mūnīre instituerent, quō facilius repentinōs 12 hostīum imper-

They are Inspired by his Appeal to Renewed Efforts.

30. Fuit haec orātiō non ingrāta Gallīs, et maximē quod ipse animō non dēfēcerat 1 tantō acceptō incommodō, neque se in occultum 2 abdiderat et cōnspectum multitūdinis fūgerat 3; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praesentēre existimābātur, quod rē integrā primō incendendum Avaricum, post déserēdum cēnsuerat. Itaque, ut reliquōrum imperātōrum rēs adversae 4 auctōritātem minuunt, sic 5 hūius ex contrāriō dignitās incommodō acceptō in diēs augēbātur. Simul in spem veniēbant ēius adfirmātiōne dē reliquis adiungendis civitātibus; primumque eō tempore Galli castra mūnire 10 instituērunt, et sīc erant animō cōnfirmāti, hominēs īnsvētī labōris, ut omnia quae imperārentur sibi patiēnda 6 existimārent.

He Levies New Troops.

31. Nec minus quam est pollicitus Vercingetorīx animō labōrābat ut reliquās civitātīs adiungeret, atque eārum prīncipēs dōnis pollicitātiōnibusque adliciēbat. 7 Huic rēi idōnēos 8 hominēs dēligēbat, quōrum quisque aut ērātiōne subdolā 9 aut amicitīā facillimē capere posset. Quī Avaricō expūgnātō refugērant, armandōs vestiendōsque cūrāt. Simul, ut dēminūtae 10 cōpiae redintegrārentur, imperat certum numerum militum civitātibus, quem, et quam ante diem, in

castra adduci velit; sagittariöseque omnis, quorum erat permagnus in Galliä numerus, conquiri et ad sē mitti iubet.

His rebus celeriter id quod Avarici deperierat explētūr. Interim Teutomatus, Ollovicōnis filius, rēx Nitiobrigum, cūius pater ab senātū nostrō amicus erat appellātus, cum māgnō numerō equitum suōrum et quōs ex Aquītāniā condūxerat ad eum pervēnit.

The Hædui Appeal to Cæsar to Settle a Dispute.

32. Caesar Avarici complūris diēs commorātus summam-
que ibi cōpiam frūmenti et reliquī commeātūs nactus, exercitum ex labōre atque inopīa reficit. Iam prope hieme confectā,—cum ipsō annī tempore ad gerendum bellum vocārētur et ad hostem proficisci constituisset, sive eum ex palūdibus silvisque ēlicere sive obsidiōne premere posset,—lēgātī ad eum principēs Hæduōrum veniunt ērātum ut maximē necessāriō tempore civitātī subveniat: 'Summō esse in periculō rem; quod, cum singuli magistrātūs antiquītūs creāri atque rēgiam potestātem annum obtinēre consuēssent, duo magistrātūm gerant, et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creadum dicat. Hōrum esse alterum Convictolitae, flōrentem et inlustrem adulēscentem; alterum Cotum, antiquissimā familia nātum, atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et māgniā cōgnātiōnis, cūius frāter Valetiacus proximō annō eundem magistrātum gesserit. Civitātem esse omnem in armis, divisum senātum, divisum populum, suās cūiusque eōrum clientēlās. Quod si diūtius alātur contrōversia, fore uti pars cum parte civitātīs cōnfligat; id nē accidat positum in ēius diligentīā atque auctōritātē.'

He Goes to them in Person and Decides the Case.

33. Caesar etsi a bellō atque hoste discēdere dētrimento- sum esse existimābat, tamen nōn ignōrans quanta ex dissēnsiōnibus incommoda oriri 1 consuēssent, nē tanta et tam coniūncta populō Rōmānō civitās, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rēbus ōrnāset, ad vim atque arma dēscenderet, atque ea pars quae minus 2 sībi cōnfidēret auxilia a Vercingetorīge arcesseret, 3 huic reī praeventum 4 existimāvit; et quod lēgibus Haeduōrum eīs quī summum magistrātum obtī- nērent 5 excēdere ex finibus nōn licēret, nē quid dē iūre aut dē lēgibus eōrum ēminuisset 6 vidērētūr, ipse in Haeduōs 10 proficiscī statuit, senātumque omnem et quōs inter contrō- versia esset ad sē Decetiam ēvocāvit. Cum prope omnis civitās eō convēnisset, docērēturque, paucīs clam 7 convocātīs, aliō locō, aliō tempore atque 8 oportuerit, frātrem ā frātre renūntiātum, cum lēgēs duo ex ūnā familiā vivō 9 utrōque 15 nōn sōlum magistrātūs creārī vetārent, 10 sed etiam in senātū esse prohibērent, — Cotum imperium dēpōnere coēgit; Convictolitavem, quī per sacerdōtēs mōre civitātīs intermissis magistrātibus esset creātus, potestātem obtinēre iussit.

Cāsar Sends Labienus Northward and himself Proceeds towards Gergovia.

34. Hoc dēcrētō interpositō,—cohōtātus Haeduōs ut 20 contrōversiārum ac dissēnsiōnīs oblīviscerentur atque omni- bus omissīs 11 [his] rēbus huic bellō servirent, eaque quae meruissent praemia ab sē dēvictā 12 Gallīa exspectārent, equi- tātumque omnem et peditum milia decem sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiis rei frumentāriae causā dispō- neret, 13 — exercitum in duās partis divisīt: quattuor legiōnēs in Senōnēs Parisiōsque Labiēnō dūcēndās dedit; sex ipse

in Arvernōs ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flūmen Elaver dūxit; equitātūs partem illī attribuit, partem sībi reliquit. Quā rē cōgnītā Vercingetorix, omnibus interruptīs ēius flūminis pontibus, ab alterā flūminis parte iter facere coepit.

He Succeeds in Crossing the Allier River.

5 35. Cum uterque utrimque exisset exercitus, in cōnspectū ferēque ē regiōne castrīs castra pōnēbant. Dispositīs explōrātōribus, nēcubi effectō ponte Rōmānī cōpiās trādūcerent, erat in māgnis Caesari difficultātibus rēs nē māliōrem aestātis partem flūmine impedīrētur; quod nōn fērē ante autumnum Elaver vādō trānsiri solet. Itaque, nē id accideret, silvestri locō castrīs positīs, ē regiōne ēnīus eōrum pontium quōs Vercingetorix rescindendōs cūrāverat, posterō diē cum duābus legiōnibus in occultō restītīt; reliquās cōpiās cum omnibus impedimentīs, ut cōnsuērat, misit, distractīs quibusdam cohortibus, ut numerus legiōnum cōnstāre vidērētur. His quam longīssimē possent prōgresī iūssīs, cum iam ex diēī tempore coniectūram caperet in castra perventum, īsdem publicīs, quārum pars inferior īntegra remanēbat, pontem reficere coepit. 7 Celeriter effectō opere legiōnibusque trāductīs et locō castrīs idōneō dēlēctō, reliquās cōpiās revocāvit. Vercingetorix rē cōgnītā, nē contrā suam voluntātem dimicāre cōgerētur, māgnīs itineribus antecessit.

At Gergovia he Gains an Advantage of Position over Vercingetorix.

36. Caesar ex eō locō quintīs castrīs Gergoviam per- vēnit, equestīque eō diē proeliō levī factō, perspectō urbis sitū, quae posita in altissimō monte omnis aditūs difficilīs habēbat, dē oppūgnātiōne dēspērāvit; dē obsessiōne nōn habēbat, dē oppūgnātiōne dēspērāvit; dē obsessiōne nōn

prius agendum cōnstituit quam rem frūmentāriam expedit-set. At Vercingetorix castris prope oppidum in monte positis, mediocribus circum sē intervāllis sēparātīm singulārūm civitātūm cōpiās conlocāverat; atque omnibus ēius iūgī collibus occupātīs quā dēspīcī poterat, horribilem speciem praebēbat; princīpēsque eārum civitātūm, quōs sībi ad cōnsilium capiendum dēlēgerat, primā lūce cotīdiē ad sē convenire iūbēbat, seu quid communicandum seu quid administrandum vidērētur; neque ullum fere diem intermitēbat quin equestrī proeliō, interiectīs sagittāriis, quid in quoque esset animi ac virtūtis suōrum periclītārētur. Erat ē regione oppidī collis sub ipsis radīcibus montīs ēgregē munitūs atque ex omni parte circumcisus, quern si tenebant nostri, et aquae māgni parte et pābulātiōne liberā prohibētūri hostis vidēbantur; sed is locus praeсидiō ab ās nōn īnfīrmō tenēbātur; tamen silentiō noctis Caesār ex castris ēgressus, priusquam subsidiō ex oppidō venīrī posset, dēiectō praeсидiō potitus locō, duās ībi legiones conlocāvit fossamque duplicem duōdēnum pedum ā maiōribus castrīs ad minōra perdūxit, ut tūtō ab repentinō hostium incursū etiam singuli commeāre possent.

Some of the Hāeduī Organize a Revolt.

37. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis Hāeduus, cui magistrātum adiūdicātum ā Caesāre dēmōnstrāvimus, sollicitātus ab Arvernīs pecūniā cum quibusdam adulēscentibus conloquitur, quōrum erat princeps Litāvicus atque ēius frātrēs, amplissimā familiā nāti adulēscentēs. Cum ēis praeedium communīcat hortāturque ut sē liberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint: ‘Una esse Hāeduōrum civitātem quae certissimam Galliae victoriam distineat; ēius

The Gallic War.

[Caesar

...auctóritáte reliquás continéri; quà tráductá locum cónsistendi Rómánis in Galliá nón fore. Esse nón nullo sé Cæsarís beneficíó adfectum, sic tamen ut iústitissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plús commúni libertáti tribuere.

5 Cúr enim potius Haedui dé suó iúre et dé légibus ad Caesarem disceptástrem, quam Rómáni ad Haeduós veniant? Celeriter aduléscentibus et órátióne magistrátús et præmió déductís, cum sè vel principés éius cónsili fore profitérentur, ratió perficiendi quaerébátur, quod civitátem temeré ad suscipientiúm bellum addúcí posse nón cónfidébant. Placuit ut Litavicus decêm illis milibus quae Cæsari ad bellum mitterentur praeficeretur, atque ea dúcenda curáret fratrésque éius ad Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua quà ratióne agi placeat cónstituunt.

Litavicus at the Head of the Hæduan Contingent Stops at Some Distance from Gergovia, and Incites his Troops to Abandon the Roman Cause.

15 38. Litavicus acceptó exercitú, cum milia passuum circiter xxx á Gergoviá abesset, convocátís subitó militibus lacrimáns, "Quo proficiscimur," inquit, "milités? Omnis noster equitáts, omnis nóbilitás interiit; principés civitáts, Epóredoríx et Virídomárus, insimulátí préditiónis, ab Rómanís indíctá causá interfécti sunt. Haec ab his cógnóscite qui ex ipsá caede effugérunt; nam ego, frátribus atque omni-bus meis propínquís interféctis, dolóre prohibeor quae gesta sunt prónúntiáre." Pródúcuntur eí quós ille édocuerat quae dici vellet, atque eadem quae Litavicus prónúntiáverat multitudíni expónunt: 'Omnés equítés Haeduórum interfécit, quod conlocúti cum Arvernis dicerentur; ipsós sè inter multitudinem militum occultásse atque ex mediá caede effúgisse.' Conclámant Haeduí et Litavicum obsécrant ut

sibi cônsulat. "Quasi vêrô," inquit ille, "cônsili sit rés, ac nôn necesse sit nôbis Gergoviam contendere \( ^1 \) et cum Arver-nis nôsìt met coniungere! An dubitâmus quin nefâriô faci-nore admissâ Rômânî iam ad nôs interficiendôs concurrânt? Proinde, si quid in nôbis animî \( ^2 \) est, persequâmur \( ^3 \) eôrum \( ^5 \) mortem quî indignissimè interièrunt, atque hôs latrônês interficiâmus!" Ostendit civis Rômânôs quî éius praesidi fidücìa \( ^4 \) ûnâ erant; continuô màgnûm numerûm frûmenti commeâtûsque diriûpit; ipsôs crûdèlûter excruciâtûs interficît. Nûntiôs tôtà cívitâtê Haedûrôrum dimitit; eôdem mendâciô \( ^6 \) \( ^10 \) dê caede equitûm et principûm permovet; hortâtur ut simili ratione atque ipse fècerit suàs iniûriàs persequantur.

Eporedorîx Conveys the News to Cæsâr.

39. Eporedorîx Haedûus, summô \( ^6 \) locô nâtus adulèscêns et summæ domî potentiæ, et ûnâ Viridomârus, pari ætâtë et gràtiå \( ^7 \) sed genere disparî, quem Cæsar ab Diviciâcô sibi \( ^15 \) trâditum ex humîli locô ad summam dignîtatem perdûxerat, in equitum numerô convênerant nôminâtim ab eô ëvocâtì. His erat inter sê dê principâtû contentiô; et in illâ magistrâ-tuûm contrôversiâ alter prô Convictolitave alter prô Côtô, summis opibus \( ^8 \) pûgnâverant. Ex eis Eporedorîx cõgnîtô \( ^20 \) Litavici cõnsiûi media fêrë nocte rem ad Cæsarem défert; õrat nê patiâtur cívitâtem prâvis \( ^9 \) adulèscèntiûm cõnsiliûs ab amicitià populi Rômâni dëficere; quod futûrum prôvideat, sî sê tot homûnum milia cum hostibus coniûnixerint, quôrum salûtem neque propinquî neglegere neque cívitâs levi \( ^10 \) \( ^25 \) mômëntô aestimâre possìt.

Cæsar Immediately Goes to the Hædui and Suppresses the Revolt.

40. Mâgnâ adfectus sollicitûdine \( ^11 \) hóc nûntiô Cæsar, quod semper Haeduôrûm cívitâtû praecipûe indulserat, \( ^12 \)

Cf. \( ^1 \) concurrere. — \( ^2 \) virtûtis, opp. timrôris. — \( ^3 \) ulîscâmûr. — \( ^4 \) opp. perûdiâ. — \( ^5 \) simulâtioûne. — \( ^6 \) opp. humîli. — \( ^7 \) auctôriûte. — \( ^8 \) facul-tâtûbus. — \( ^9 \) opp. bonûs. — \( ^10 \) opp. grâvi. — \( ^11 \) cúrah. — \( ^12 \) fâverat.
nulla interposita dubitatiōne legionēs expeditās quattuor equitātumque omnem ex castrīs ēdūcit; nec fuit spatiun tāli tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod rēs posita in celeritāte vidēbātur. C. Fabium lēgātum cum legiōnibus duābus castrīs praesidiō rerlinquit. Frātrēs Litavici cum comprehendī iussisset, paulō ante reperit ad hostīs profūgisse. Adhortātus militēs nē necessāriō tempore itineris labore permoveantur, cupidissimīs omnibus progressus milia passuum xxv, agmen Haeduōrum cōspicātur, immissō equitātū iter eōrum morātur atque impedit; interdictīque omnibus nē quemquam interficiant. Eporēdorīgem et Viridomarum, quōs illī interfecēs eximīmābant, inter equītēs versāri suōsque appellāre iūbet. Hīs cōgnitis et Litavici fraude perspectā, Haeduī manus tendere, et dēditionēm significāre, et prōiectīs armīs mortem déprecāri incipiunt. Litavicus cum suīs clientibus, quibus mōre Gallōrum nefās est etiam in extrēmā fortūnā dēserere patrōnōs, Gergoviam profugit.

Hastens Back to Gergovia to Relieve Fabius.

41. Caesar nūntiis ad civitātem Haeduōrum missīs qui suō beneficiō cōnservātōs docērent, quōs īure bellī interficere potuisset, tribusque hōris [noctīs] exercitūi ad quiētem dātis castra ad Gergoviam movet. Mediō ferē itinere equītēs a Fabiō missī quantū rēs in periculō fuerit expōnunt; summis cópiis castra oppūgnāta dēmōnstrant, cum crēbrō integri dēfessīs succēderent nostrōsque adsiduō labōre dēfatigārent, quibus propter magnitudinem castrōrum perpetuō esset īsdem in vallō permanendum; multitudīne sagittārum atque omni genere tēlōrum multōs volnerātōs; ad haec sustinenda māgnō īsuī fuisse tormentā; Fabium discessū

eōrum, duābus relictis portis, obstruere cēterās pluteōsque vāllō addere et sē in posterum diem similemque cāsum adparāre. Hīs rēbus cōgnītīs Caesār summō studīō militum ante ortum sōlis in castra pervēnit.

Further Plots among the Gauls.

42. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Haedui primīs nūntiīs ab Litavicō acceptīs nūllum sībi ad cōgnōscendum spatium reliquunt. Impellit aliōs avāritia, aliōs irācundia et temerītās, quae maximē illī homīnum generī est īnnātā, ut levem auditiōnem habēant prō rē compertā. Bona civīum Rōmānōrum diripiunt, caedes faciunt, in servītūtem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem prōclīnātam Convictolitavis plēbemque ad furōrem impellit, ut facinore admissō ad sānitātem revertī pudeat. M. Aristium, tribūnum militum, iter ad legionēs facientem, fīdē datā ex oppidō Cabillōnō ēdūcunt; idem facere cōgunt eōs qui negōtiandī causā ībi cōnstiterant. Hōs continuō in itinere adortī omnīs impedimentīs exuunt; repūgnantīs diem noctemque obsident; multis utrimque interfectīs māiōrem multitudīnem ad arma concitant.

The Hāedui Seek Reconciliation with Cæsar, but do not Cease Plotting.

43. Interim nūntiī adlātī omnīs eōrum militēs in potestāte Cæsaris tenēri, concurrent ad Aristium; nihil pūblicō factum cōnsiliō dēmonstrant; quaestīonem dē bonis direptīs dēcernunt; Litavicī frātrumque bona pūblicant; lēgātōs ad Cæsarem pūrgandi sui grātiā mittunt. Haec faciunt recuperandōrum suōrum causā; sed contāminātī facinore et capti compendiō ex direptīs bonīs, quod ea rēs ad multōs pertinēbat, et timōre poenae exterriūtī cōnsilia clam dē bellō inīre incipiunt civitātisque reliquās lēgātiōnibus sollicitant.
Quae tametsi Caesar intellegebat, tamen quam mitissimē potest légātōs appellat: 'Nihil sē propter inscientiam levitatemque volgi gravius dē civitate iūdicāre, neque dē suā in Haeduōs benevolentiā déminuere.' Ipse māiōrem Galliāe

5 motum exspectāns, nē ab omnibus civitātibus circumsisteret, cōnsilia inibat quern ad modum ā Gergoviā discēderet ac rūrsus omnem exercitum contraheret, nē profectiō nāta ab timōre défectiōnis similisque fugae vidēretur.

Cf. 1 lēnissimē. — 2 quā ratiōne.
Caesar now Devotes himself to the Capture of Gergovia.

44. Haec cógitanti accidere visa est facultás bene geren-
dae rei. Nam cum in minóra castra operis perspiciendi
causa vénisset, animadvertit collem qui ab hostibus tenéba-
tur nūdātum hominibus, qui superiōribus diēbus vix prae
multitudine cernī poterat. Admirātus quaeit e ex perfugis
causam, quorum māgnus ad eum cótidiē numerus cōnfluēbat.²
Cōnstat inter omnīs, quod iam ipse Caesar per explōra-
tōrēs cógnōverat,³ dorsum esse īugi prope aquum, sed silvestre et angustum,⁵ quā esset aditus ad alteram par-
tem oppidi; vehementer huic illōs locō timēre, nec iam aliter
sentire, ūnō colle ab Rōmānis occupatō, si alterum āmisis-
sent, quin paene circumvāllāti atque omni exitū et pābulā-
tiōne interclūsi vidērentur; ad hunc mūniendum omnīs ā
Vercingetorīge évocātōs.

He Skilfully Arranges his Troops.

45. Hac rē cógnitā Caesar mittit complūris equitūm tur-
mās eō de mediā nocte; imperat ut paulō tumultuōsīus
omnibus locīs pervagentur. Prīmā lūce māgnum numerum
impedimentōrum ex castris múlōrumque prōducī dēque his
strāmenta dētrahī múliōnēsque cum cassidibus, equitum
speciē ac simulātiōne, collibus circumvehi iubet. Hīs pau-
cōs addit equitēs qui lātiōs ostentātiōnis causā vagentur.
Longō circuitū ēāsdem omnīs iubet petere regionēs. Haec
procul ex oppidō vidēbantur,⁹ ut erat ā Gergoviā déspectus
in castra; neque tantō spatiō,¹⁰ certī quid esset, explōrāri
poterat. Legiōnem x ēōdem lūce mittit et paulum prōgres-
sam inferiōre cōnstituit locō silvisque occultat.¹² Augētūr
Gallis suspendiō atque omnēs illō ad munitiōnem cópiae trādū-

The Gallic War.

He Makes a Sudden Attack and Captures the Enemy's Camp.

46. Mūrus oppidī ā plānitiē atque initiō ascēnsūs rēctā regiōne, si nullus ānfrāctus intercēderet, mccc passūsaberat; quicquid hūc circuitūs ad molliiendum clivum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. 4 Ā mediō ferē colle in longitudinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex grandibus saxis vi pedum mūrum qui nostrōrum impetum tardāret praedūxerant Gallī atque, inferiōre omnī spatiō vacuō relictō, superiōrem partem collis ūsque ad mūrum oppidi dēnsissimīs castrīs complēverant. Militēs datō signō celeriter ad mūniōnem pervenīunt eamque trāngressī trīnis castrīs potiuntur. Ac tanta fuit in castrīs capiendī celerītās ut Teutomatus, réx Nitio-brīgum, subītō in tabernāculō oppressus, 8 ut merīdiē conquīverat, superiōre parte corporis nūdā, volnerātō equō vix sē ex manibus praedantium milītum erto eruert. 9

The Troops are Eager to Assault the Town.

47. Cōnsecūtus id quod animō propōsuerat Caesar receptui canī iussit, legiōnisque x, quācum erat, contiōnātus, signa cōnstituit. At reliquārum legiōnērum milītēs nōn auditō

sonō tubae, quod satis māgna vallēs intercēdēbat, tamen ā tribūnis militum légātīisque, ut erat ā Caesare praeceptum,1 retinēbantur. Sed ēlāti spē celerīvae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundīs 2 proelīs, nihil adeō arduum 3 sibi existimābant quod nōn virtūte cōnsequī 4 pos- sent; neque fīnem prius sequendī fecérunt quam mūrō oppidi portisque adpropinquārunt.5 Tum vērō ex omnibus urbīs partibus ortō clāmöre, qui longius aberant repentinō tumultū perterrītī, cum hostem īntrā 6 portās esse existimā- rent, sē ex oppidō eiēcėrunt. Mātrēs familiae dē mūrō 10 vestem argentumque iactābant; et pectore nūdō 7 prōminen- tēs, passīs manibus obtestābantur Rōmānōs ut sībi parce- rent; neu, sicut Avaricī fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinērent. Nōn nūllae dē mūrō per manūs dēmissae sēsē militibus trādēbant.8 L. Fabius, centuriō 15 legiōnis viii, quem inter suōs ēō die dīxisse cōnstābat excitāri sē Avaricēnsibus praemīsīs, neque commissūrum ut prius quisquam mūrō ascendēretr, trēs suōs nactus manipulāris atque ab eīs sublevātus 9 mūrum ascendit. Hōs ipse rūrsus singulōs exceptāns in mūrō extulit. 

The Gauls are Reënforced.

48. Interim ei quī ad alteram partem oppidi, ut suprā 10 dēmōnstrāvimus, mūnitionis causa convēnerant, primō exau- dītō clāmöre, inde etiam crēbris nūntiīs incitāti oppidum ab Rōmānīs tenērī, praemīssīs equitibus 11 māgnō cursū ēō conten- dērunt. Eōrum ut quisque primus vēnerat, sub mūrō 25 cōnsistēbat suōrumque pūgnantium numerum augēbat. Quō- rum cum māgna multitūdō 12 convēnisset, mātrēs familiae, quae paulō ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō manūs tendēbant,13 suōs obtestārī et mōre Gallicō passum capillum ostentāre liberōs-

que in conspectum prōferre coeperunt. Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa manus contentiō; simul et cursū et spatio pugnae défatigātī nōn facile recentīs atque integrōs sustinērunt.

Close and Doubtful Struggle. Gallant Exploit of Petronius.

5 49. Caesar cum iniquō locō pūgnāri hostiumque cōpiās augēri vidēret, praemētuēns suis ad T. Sextium légātum, quem minōribus castris praesidiō reliquerat, misit ut cohortis ex castris celeriter edūceret et sub înfimō colle ab dextrō latere hostium constitueret; ut, si nostrōs locō dépulsōs vidisset, quō minus liberē hostēs insequerentur terrēret. Ipse, paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne progressus ubi cōnsiderat, eventum pugnae exspectābat.

50. Cum ācerrimē comminus pūgnārētur, hostēs locō et numerō, nostri virtūte cōnﬁderent, subitō sunt Haedui visi ab latere nostrīs apertō, quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū manūs distinendae causā miserat. Hi similitūdine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perterrūerunt; ac, tametsi dextrōs umerīs extertīs animadvertēbantur, quod insigne pāctum esse cōnsuērat, tamen id ipsum sui fallendi causā militēs ab hostibus factum existimābant. Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quīque ūnā múrum ascenderant circumventi atque interfeci dē mūrō praecepitābantur. M. Petrōnius, ēiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās excidere cōnātus esset, ā multitūdine oppressus ac sibi dēspērāns, multis iam volneribus acceptīs, manipulāribus suīs qui illum secūtī erant, “Quoniam,” inquit, “mē ūnā vōbiscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vitae prōspiciam, quōs cupiditātē glōriae adductus in periculum dēdūxi. Vōs data facultāte vōbis cōnsulite.” Simul in mediōs hostis inrūpīt

B. G. VII. 52.] Uprising of Gaul under Vercingtorix. 221

duōbusque interfecit reliquōs a portā paulum submōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliāri̇ sui̇s, "Früstrā," inquit, "meae vitae subvenire" cōnāmini, quem iam sanguis virēsque déficiunt. Proinde abite dum est facultās vōsque ad legiōnem recipite." Ita pūgnāns post paulum concidit ac suis salūti fuit.

The Romans are Driven Back.


Caesar Reproves his Soldiers for too Great Eagerness, but Praises their Courage.

52. Posterō diē Caesar contiōne advocātā temeritātem cupiditātemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsi iūdicāvissent quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vidērētur, neque signō reciproandi datō cōnstitissent neque a tribūnis militum lēgātisque retinērī potuissent. Exposuit quod iniquitās loci possēt, quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsisset, cum sine duce et sine equitātū dēprehēnsis hostibus explōrātam victoriam dimisisset, nē parvum modo dētrimentum in contentiōne propter iniquitātem loci accideret. Quantō opere eōrum animi māgnitūdinem admirārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūniōnēs, nōn altitūdō montis, nōn mūrus oppidi tardāre potuis-

set, tantō opere licentiam adrograntiamque reprehendere, quod plus sê quam imperātōrem dē victoriā atque exitū rērum sentire existimārent; nec minus sē à milite modestiam et continentiam quam virtūtem atque animī māgnitudinem désiderāre.

After Some Skirmishing, Cæsar Moves towards the Hædui.

53. Hac habita contiōne et ad extrémam 4 orātiōnem confirmātis militibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permovērentur, neu, quod iniquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī 5 hostium tribu- rent; eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae ante sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōnstituit. Cum Vercingetorīx nihilō magis in aequum locum dēscen- deret, levī factō equestri proelio atque ēo secundō, in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hoc idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem 6 minuendam militumque animōs cōnfirmandōs factum existimāns, in Hæduōs mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem insecūtīs hostibus, tertīō diē ad flūmen Elaver vēnit; pontis refēcit atque exercitum trādūxit.

He is Confirmed in his Suspicion that the Hædui Mean to Revolt, but Tries to Dissuade them.

54. Ibi ā Viridomārō atque Eporēdōrine Hæduīs appellā- tus, discit cum omni equitātū Litavicum ad sollicitandōs Hæduōs profectum; opus 7 esse ipsōs antecēdere ad cōn- firmandam civitātem. Etsī multīs iam rēbus perfidiam Hæduōrum perspectam habēbat, atque hōrum discessū mātūrāri 8 défectiōnem 9 civitātis existimābat; tamen eōs retinendōs 10 nōn cēnsuit, nē aut inferre iniūriam vidērētur aut dare timōris aliquam suspiciōnem. Discēdentibus eis breviter sua in Hæduōs merita exposuit; quōs et quam

humilis¹ accēpisset, compulsōs in oppida, multātōs² agrīs, omnibus ēreptīs cōpiīs, impositō stipendiō, obsidibus sumūm cum contumēliā extortīs; et quam in fortūnam quamque in amplitūdinem dūxisset, ut nōn sōlum in pristinum³ statum redissent, sed omnium temporum dīgnitātem et grātiam ⁵ antecessisse⁴ vidērentur. Hīs datīs mandātīs eōs ab sē dimisit.

Eporedorix and Viridomarus Kill the Roman Garrison at Noviodunum, Seize and Destroy Cæsar's Stores, and Burn the Town.

55. Noviodūnum erat oppidum Haeduōrum ad ripās Ligeris opportūnō locō positum. Hūc Caesār omnīs obsidēs Galliae, frūmentum, pecūniam pūblicam, suōrum atque exercītūs impedimentōrum māgnām partem contulerat; hūc māgnūm numerum equōrum, hūiūs bellī causā in Italīā atque Hispaniā coēmptum, miserat. Eō cum Eporedorix Viridomārusque vēnissent et dē statū civitātis cōgnōvissent, Litavicum Bibracte ab Haeduīs receptum, quod est oppidum apud eōs maxīmae auctōritātīs, Convictolitavīm magistrātum māgnamque partem senātūs ad eum convēnisse, lēgātōs ad Veringetorīgem dē pāce et amicitā civiliā conciliādā pūblicē missōs; nōn praeterrūntīm ⁵ tantum commodum⁶ existimāvērunt. Itaque interfēctīs Noviodūnī custōdibus ⁷ quique eō negotiāndī causā convēnerant, pecūniam atque equōs inter sē⁸ partītī sunt; obsidēs civitātum Bibracte ad magistrātum dēdūcēndōs cūrāvērunt; oppidum, quod ā sē tenērī⁹ nōn posse iūdicābant, nē cui essēt usūi Rōmānīs, incendērunt; frūmentī quod subitō potuērunt nāvibus āvexērunt, reliquum flūmine atque incendiō corrūpērunt. Ipsī ex finitiūmis regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere,¹⁰ praesidiā custōdīāsque ad ripās Ligeris dispōnere, equītātumque omnibus locīs inicī-

endī timōris causā ostentāre coeptērunt; sī ab rē frōmentāriā Rōmānōs excludēre [aut adductōs inopiā in prōvinciam expellere] possent. Quam ad spem multum eōs adiuvābat quod Līger ex nīvibus crēverat, ut omninō vādō nōn posse trānsiri vidērētur.

Caesar Makes a Successful Crossing to the North Side of the Loire.

56. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis Caesār mātūrandum sībī cēnsuit, sī esset in perficiendis pontibus periclitandum, ut prius quam essent māiōrés eō coāctae cōpiae dīmicāret. Nam nē commūtātō cōnsiliō iter in prōvinciam converteret, ut nōn nēmō tum quidem necessāriō faciundum existimābat, cum infāmia atque indignitās rei et oppositus mōns Cevenna viārumque difficultās impediēbat; tum maximē quod abiūncēt Labiēnō atque eis legiōnibus quās ūnā miserat vehementer timēbat. Itaque admodum māgnis diurnis nocturnisque itineribus cōnfectīs, contrā omnium opinīōnem ad Līgerim vēnit; vadōque per equitēs inventō prō rei necessitātē opportūnō, ut bracchia modo atque umerī ad sustinēnda arma liberī ab aquā esse possent, dispositō equitātū qui vim flūminis refringeret, atque hostibus primō adspectū perturbātīs, incolōrum exercitum trādūxit; frūmentumque in agrīs et pecoris cōpiam nactus, replētō his rēbus exercitū iter in Senōnēs facere instituīt.

Labiēnus Marches towards Lutetia. Camulogenus Opposes hīm.

57. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus eō supplementō quod nūper ex Italiā vēnerat relictō Agēdinci, ut esset impedimentis praesidiō, cum quattuor legiōnibus Lutetiam proficiscitur. Id est oppidum Parisiorum positum in insula flūminis Sēquanae. Cāius adventū ab hostibus

cōgnitō māgnæ ex fīnitimis cīvitātībus cōpiae convēnērunt. Summa imperī trāditur Camulogenō Aulercō, qui prope cōnfecτus\textsuperscript{1} aetāte tamen propter singulārem scientiam rei mili-

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{map.png}
\caption{FIG. 99. — EXPEDITIO LABIENI.}
\end{figure}

tāris ad eum est honōrem ēvocātus.\textsuperscript{2} Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse palūdem, quae influeret in Sēquanam atque illum omnem locum māgnopere impediret, hic cōnsēdit nōstrōsque trānsitū prohibēre instituit.

\textit{Cf.} \textsuperscript{1} cōnsūmpτus. — \textsuperscript{2} sublāτus.
Labienus Falls back to Metiosedum, Which he Captures. The Enemy Follow him.

58. Labiénus primó vineás agere, crátibus atque aggere palüdem explère atque iter münire1 cönābātur. Postquam id difficilius fieri animadvertit, silentio ē castris tertiā vigiliā égressus, eōdem quō vēnerat itinere Metiosēdum pervēnit. 5 Id est oppidum Senonom in insulā Sēquanae positum, ut paulō ante dē Lutetiā dīximus. Dēprehēnsis2 nāvibus cīrciter l celeriterque conjunctis atque eō militibus impositis3 et rei novitāte perterrītis4 oppidānīs, quōrum māguna pars erat ad bellum ēvocaēa, sine contentiōne oppidō potitur. 10 Refectō5 ponte, quem superiōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant, exercitum trādūcit et secundō6 flūmine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostēs rē cōgnitā ab eis quī ā Metiosēdō profulgerant, Lutetiam incendi,7 pontisque ēius oppidi re-scindi iubent; ipsi profectī ā palūde in ripā Sēquanae ē 15 regionē Lutetiæ contrā Labiénī castra cōnsidendūt.

Labienus Learns of Cæsar’s Repulse at Gergovia and of the Spread of the Gallic Revolt.

59. Iam Cæsar ā Gergoviā discississe audiēbātur; iam dē Haeduōrum dēfectiōne et secundō Galliæ mōtu rūmōrēs adferēbantur; Gallique in conloquiīs interclūsum8 itinere et Ligerī Cæsarem, īnopiā frūmentī coāctum,9 in prōvinciām contendissē cōnfīrmābant. Bellovacī autem dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cōgnitā, qui iam ante erant per sē infidēlēs,10 manūs cōgere atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt. Tum Labiénus tantā rērum commūtātiōne longē aliud sibi capiendum cōnsilium atque anteā11 sēnserat intellegēbat; neque iam ut aliquid acquireret proelīōque hostīs lacerēret,12 sed ut incolūmum exercitum Agēdincum reducēret cōgitābat.

B. G. VII. 61. ] Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix. 227

Namque alterā ex parte Bellovaci, quae civitās in Galliā maximam habet opiniōnem virtūtis, instābant; alteram Camulogenus parātō atque instrūctō exercitū tenēbat; tum legiōnēs ā praeсидiō atque impedimentis interclūsās maximum flūmen distinēbat. Tantis subitō difficulūtibus objectis ab animi virtūte auxiliōm petendum vidēbat.

Successful Stratagem of Labienus.

60. Itaque sub vesperum cōnsiliō convocātō, cohortātus ut ea quae imperāsset diligenter industriēque administrārent, nāvis quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat singulās equitibus Rōmānis attribuit; et primā cōnfectā vigiliā IIII milia passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredi ibique sē exspectāre iubet. V cohortis quās minimē firmās ad dimicandum esse existimābat castris praeсидiō relinquit; v ēiusdem legiōnis reliquās dē mediā nocte cum omnibus impedimentis adversō flūmine māgnō tumultū proficisci imperat. Conquirit etiam lintris; hās māgnō soniōs rēmōrum incitātās in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulō silentiō egressus cum tribus legiōnibus eum locum petit quō nāvis adpelli iusserat.

The Enemy Divide their Forces, as Labienus Desired.

61. Eō cum esset ventum, explōrātorēs hostium, ut omni flūminis parte erant dispositi, inopinantēs, quod māgnā subitō erat coōrta, tempestās, ā nostris opprimuntur; exercitus equitātusque, equitibus Rōmānis administrāntibus quōs ēi negotiō praefecerat, celeriter trānsmittītur. Uno fere tempore sub lūcem hostibus nūntiātur in castrīs Rōmānōrum praeter consuētūdinem tumultuāri, et māgnum ēre agmen adversō flūmine sonitūmque rēmōrum in eādem parte exaudīrī, et paulō infrā militēs nāvibus trānsportārī. Quibus

Cf. premēbant. — opp. coniungēbat. — opp. sub lūcem. — con-
rēbus auditīs, quod existimābant tribus locis trānsīre legiōnēs, [atque omnis perturbātōs dēfectiōne Haeduōrum fugam parāre], suās quoque cōpiās in trēs partis distribuērunt. Nam praesidiō 1ē regiōne castrōrum relictō, et parvā manū 5 Metiosēdum versus missā quae tantum prōgrederētur quantum nāvēs processissent, reliquās cōpiās contrā Labiēnum dūxērunt.

Labienus, having Attacked and Routed the Gauls, Joins Cæsar.

62. Primā lūce et nostrī omnēs erant trānsportātī et hos-
tium aciēs cernēbātur.2 Labiēnus, militēs cohortātus ut 10 suae pristinae virtūtis et tot secundissimōrum proelīorum retinērent memoriam, atque ipsum Cæsarem, 3cūius ductū saepe numerō hostīs superāssent, praesentem adesse existi-
mārent, dat signum proeli. Primō concursū 4 ab dextrō cornū, ubi septima legiō cōnstīterat, hostēs pelluntur atque 15 in fugam coniciuntur 5; ab sinistrō, quem locum xii legiō tenēbat, cum prīmi ārdīnēs hostium trānsfixī pilīs concidis-
sent, tamen ācerrimē reliqui resistēbant, nec dabat suspicio-
nem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suis 20 aderat atque eōs cohortābātur. At incertō 6 etiam nunc 25 exitū victōriae, cum vii legiōnis tribūnīs esset nūntiātum quae in sinistrō cornū gererentur, post tergum hostium legiō-
nem ostendērunt 7 signaque inteluērunt. Nē eō quidem tempore quisquam 8 locō cessit, sed circumventi omnēs in-
fectīque sunt. Eandem fortūnam 9 tulit Camulogenus. At eī 30 qui in praesidiō 10 contrā castra Labiēnī erant relictī, cum proelium comissum audissent, subsidiō suis iērunt collem-
que cēpērunt, neque nostrōrum militūm victōrum impetum sustinēre potuērunt. Sic cum suis fugientibus permixtī, quōs nōn silvae montēsque tēxērunt, ab equitātū sunt inter-

Cf. 1 adversus, w. acc. — 2 perspiciēbātur. — 3 quō duce. — 4 im-
fecti. Hōc negotiō cōnfectō Labiēnus revertitur Agēdin-
cum, ubi impedimenta tōtius exercitūs relictā erant. Inde
cum omnibus cōpiis ad Caesarem pervenit.

Further Spread of the Revolt. Vercingetorix Appointed Commander-
in-chief by a General Vote. The Hāeduī Dissatisfied.

63. Défectede Haeduōrum cōgnitā bellum augėtur. Lē-
gātiōnēs in omnīs partīs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā, 5
auctōritāte, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās civitātīs nituntur.
Nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum sup-
pliciō dubitantīs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorīge Haeduī
ut ad sē veniatur rationēsque bellī gerundī commūnicet. Rē
imperātā contendunt ut ipsis summa imperi trādātur; et rē
in contrōversiam dēductā, tōtius Galliae concilium Bibracte
indicitur. Conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multīūdinis
suffrāgiōs rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorīgem
probant imperātōrem. Ab hoc conciliō Rēmī, Lingones,
Trēverī āfuērunt: illi, quod amicitiam Rōmānōrum sequē-
bantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premē-
bantur, quae fuit causa quā rē tōtō abessent bellō et neutris
auxilia mitterent. Māgnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt sē déiectōs
principātū; queruntur fortūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesarīs
in sē indulgentium requirunt; neque tamen susceptō bellō
suum cōnsilium ab reliquis sēparāre audent. Invīti sum-
mae spei adulēscēntēs, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, Vercinge-
torigī pārent.

Vercingetorix Lays Extensive Plans to Extend the Revolt and Weaken
the Romans.

64. Ipsi imperat reliquis civitātibus obsidēs; dēnique ei
rei cōnstituit diem. Hung omnīs equītēs, xv mīlia numerō, 25
celerīter convenire iubet; peditātū quem ante habuerit sē
fore contentum dicit, neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut aciē

Cf. 1 rē. — 2 opp. minuitur. — 3 consilia. — 4 opp. recūsātā. — 5 pos-
tulant. — 6 plurimi. — 7 désiderant. — 8 distinērē.
230

The Gallic War. [Caesar]
dimicatūrum¹; sed quoniam abundet² equitātū, perfacilē esse factū frūmentātionibus pābulātionibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant,³ aedificiaque incendant; quā rei familiāris iactūrā per-$5$petuum imperium libertātemque sē cōsequi⁴ videant. His cōnstitūtīs rēbus Haeduīs Segusiāvisque, qui sunt fīnitimi [ei] prōvinciae, x mīlia peditum imperat; hūc addit equītēs dccc. His praeficit frātrem Eporēdorīgis bellumque inffēri Allobrogius iubet. Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque $10$pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad finīs Volcārum Arecomicōrum dēpopulandōs⁵ mittit. Nihilō minus clandestinis nuntiis legātiōnisque Allobrogas sollicitat,⁶ quōrum mentis nōndum ab suīriōre⁷ bellō resē-disse spērābat. Hōrum principibus pecūniās, civitātī autem $15$imperium⁸ tōtius prōvinciae pollicētur.

Caesar Sends to Germany for Cavalry.

65. Ad hōs omnis cāsūs prōvisa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et vigintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnis partis oppōnēbantur. Helviī suā sponte cum fīnitimis proelīō congressi pelluntur, et C. Vale- $20$riō Donnotaurō, Caburi filīō, prīncipe civitātīs, complūri-busque aliīs interfectis, intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbris ad Rhodanum dispositis praevidīs māgnā cum cūrā et diligentia suōs finīs tuentur.⁹ Caesar, quod hostis equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat, et interclūsis $25$omnibus itineribus nūlā rē ex prōvinciā atque Italīā sublevāri¹¹ poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās civitātīs quās superiōribus annis pācāverat; equītēsque ab hīs arcessit¹² et levis armātūrae peditēs, qui inter eōs proe-liāri cōnsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equis

FIG. 100. — DEFEAT OF VERCINGETORIX AT THE VINGEANNE.

A. Cæsar's camp the day before the battle.
B. The three camps of Vercingetorix.
C. Roman column of march at the time the attack was made.
D. Gallic lines of infantry.
E. Cæsar's camp the night after the battle.
   a. Roman cavalry.
   b. German cavalry.
   c. Gallic cavalry.
ütēbantur, à tribūnīs militum reliquisque [sed et] equitibus Rōmānīs atque ēvōcātīs equōs sūmit Germānīisque distribuit.

Vercingetorix Addresses a Council of Cavalry Officers, Urging an Attack upon the Romans. They Eagerly Assent.

66. Interea, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs, equitēsque qui tōtī Galliāe erant imperātī conveniunt. Māgnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquānōs per extrēmōs Lingōnum finīs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter milia passuum x ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Vercingetorix cōnsēdit; convocātīisque ad cōnsilium praefectīs equīm vēnisse tempus victōriāe dēmōnstrat: 'Fugere in prōvinciām Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sībi ad praesentem obtinēndam libertātem satis esse; ad reliqua temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōfici; māiōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque finem bellandī factūrōs. Praīnde in agmine impeditōs adoriantur. Si peditēs suīs auxilium fērant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; si, id quod magīs futūrūm cōnfidat, relictīs impedimentīs suae salūti cōnsulant, et ūsū rērum necessāriārum et dignitāte spoliātum īrī. Nam dē equitibus hostium, quīn nēmō eōrum prōgredī modo extrā agmen audeat, nē ipsōs quīdem dēbēre dubitāre. Id quō māiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnis prō castrīs habitūrūm et terrōrī hostibus futūrūm.' Conclāmant equītēs: 'Sāntis-simō iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmāri oportēre nē tēctō recipiātūr, nē ad liberōs, nē ad parentīs, nē ad uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequitārit.'

The Attack is Made, and the Gauls are Defeated with Considerable Loss.

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandum adāctīs, posterō diē in trēs partīs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs

ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna a primō agmine iter impedire coepit. Quā rē nūntiāta Caesar suum quoque equītātum tripartitō divisum contrā hostem ire iubet. Pūgnātur ūna omnibus in partibus. Consistit agmen; impedimenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur. Si quā in parte nostri labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō signa īnferri Cae- sar aciemque cōnvertī iūbēbat; quae īrēs et hostīs ad īnsequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxili cōnfirmābat. Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī hostīs locō dépellunt: fugientis ūsque ad flūmen, ubi Ver- cingetorix cum pedestribus cōpiis cōnsēderat, persequentur complūrisque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā reliqui, nē circumvenīrentur veriti, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedes. Trēs nōbilissimī Haedui captī ad Caesarem per- ducuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, qui contrōversiam cum Convictolitavi proximīs comitiis habuerat; ēt Cavarillus, qui post dēfectionem Litavicī pedestribus cōpiis praefuerat; ēt Eporēdorix, quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Haedui cun. Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

Vercingetorix Retires to Alesia, Which Cæsar Determines to Invest.

68. Fugātō ūni equītātū Vercingetorix cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs conlocāverat, redūxit prōtīnusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubīorum, iter facere coepit; celeriterque impedimenta ex castrīs ēducī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedimentīs in proximum collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praeśidiō relictīs, secūtus hostīs quantum diēī tempus est passum, circiter III mīlibus ex novissimō agmine interfecīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterrītīisque hostībus, quod equītātū (qua maximē parte exercītūs cōnfidēbant) erant pulsi, adhortātus ad labōrem militēs Alesiam circumvāllāre īnstituit.

Description of Alesia and its Defenses.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō̂ admodum edito locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expūgnāri nōn posse vidērētur. Cūius collis rādicēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina sublūēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter milia passuum III in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquis ex omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiectō spatiō, parī altitūdinis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant, fossamque et māceriam in altitūdinem VI pedum prae- dūxerant. Ėius mūniōnis quae ab Rōmānīs instituēbātur circuitus XI milia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita VIII castellaque XXIII facta; quibus in castellis interdiū stationēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitoribus ac firmīs prae- sidiis tenēbantur.

A Cavalry Battle in the Plain. The Gauls Defeated with Great Slaughter.


minus qui intrá münitionēs erant Gallī perturbantur; veniri ad sē confessim¹ existimantēs ad arma conclamant; nōn nūlli perterriti in oppidum irumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portās claudi,² nē castra nūdentur. Multis interfectīs, com-
pluribus equis captīs, Germāni sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix Sends Away his Cavalry and Calls for Help from Without.

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam münitionēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit³ omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quīse eōrum civitātem adeat omnīsque qui per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant.⁴ Sua in illōs merita⁵ prōpōnit, obtestāturque ut suae salūtīs rationem habeant, ne sē optimē dē commūni libertāte meritum in cruciātum hostibus dēdant. Quod si indiligentiōrēs⁶ fuerint, milia homīnum dēlēcta lxxx unā sēcum interītūra dēmōnstrat. Ratione initā fru-
mentum sē exiguē diērum xxx habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerāre⁷ posse parcendō. His datīs mandātīs, quā nostrum opus intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dimittit; frūmentum omne ad sē referri iubet; capitis poenam eīs qui nōn pāruerint cōnstituit; pecus, cūiūs māgna erat cópia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītīm distribuit; frūmentum parcē et paulātīm mētīri ĭnstituit; cópiās omnīs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat⁸ in oppidum recipit. His ratiōnibus⁹ auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum administrāre parat.

Description of Ĉæsar’s Works of Circumvallation.

25 72. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis ex perfugīs et captīvis Ĉæsar haec generā münitionēs instituit: fossam pedum viginti dirēctīs¹⁰ lateribus dūxīt, ut ēīs fossae sōlum tantundem

Cf. ¹ prōtīnus. — ² opp. aperīrī. — ³ init. — ⁴ conquirant. — ⁵ officia. — ⁶ neglegentiōrēs. — ⁷ sustinēre. — ⁸ cōnstituerat. — ⁹ modīs. — ¹⁰ di-
rectē ad perpendiculum.
patēret quantum summa labra distārent. Reliquās omnīs mūnitionēs ab eā fossā pedēs cccc redūxit: [id] hōc cōn-
siliō (quoniam tantum esset necessāriō spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā militum cingerētur), nē dē
imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnitionēs multitudō hostium advo-
lāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs 1 operī dēstīnātōs conicere
possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās xv pedēs lātās, eādem altitūdine perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus
ac dēmissīs locīs aquā ex flūmine dērivātā complēvit.
Post eās aggerem ac vāllum xii pedum extrūxit: huic ā
lōricam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad
commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, qui ascēnsum hostium
tardārent 4; et turris tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs lxxx
inter sē distārent.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriāri et frūmentāri et tan-
tās mūnitionēs fieri necesse, dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiis, quae
longius 6 ā castris prŏgrediēbantur; ac nōn numquam opera
nostra Gallī temptāre 6 atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plurībus
portīs summā vi facere cōnābantur. Quā rē ad haec rūrsus
opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō militum 20
mūnitionēs défendi possent. Itaque truncīs arborum aut
admodum firmīs rāmis abscessis, atque hōrum délibrātīs 7 ac
praecūtīs cacūminibus, perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs alte
dūcēbantur. Hūc illī stipītēs dēmissī et ab īnīmō revinctī, 8
nē revelli possent, ab rāmis ēminēbant. 9 Quīnī erant ārdi-
nēs coniūncītī inter sē atque implicāti; quō qui intrāverant, 10
sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. 11 Hōs cippōs appellā-
bant. Ante hōs obliquīs ōrdinibus in quincūncem disposi-
sīs scrobēs in altitūdīnem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātīm
angustīōre ad infrīnum 12 fastīgiō. Hūc teretēs stipitēs femi-
nīs crassītūdine ab summō praecūtī et praēüsti dēmittēban-

Cf. 1 in opere occupātōs. — 2 humilībus. — 3 dēductā. — 4 impedī-
rent. — 5 opp. propius. — 6 adorīri. — 7 exūtīs. — 8 īnīxi. — 9 īxtā-
tur, ita ut nón amplius digitis III ex terrā¹ éminērent; simul cónfirmandi et stabilendi causā singuli ab ínfimō solō pedēs terrā excúcēbantur; reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās² insidiās víminiibus ac virgultis intégrēbātur. 5 Hūius generis octōni órdinēs ducī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris lilium appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreis hāmis inífixīs tōtae in terram infodiēbantur,³ mediocribusque intermissīs spātīs omnibus locīs disserēbantur, quōs stimulōs nóminābant.

10 74. His rēbus perfectīs, regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās⁴ prō locī nātūrā, xiv milia passuum complexus paris⁵ ēiusdem generis mūnītiōnēs, diversās ab his, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfecit, ut nē māgnā quidem multitūdine [si ita accidat⁶ ēius discessū], mūnītiōnum praesidīa circumfundi⁷ possent; nē autem cum periculō ex castrīs ēgredi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frumentumque habēre omnīs convectum⁸ iubet.

Levy of Troops from All Gaul for the Relief of Alesia.

75. Dum haec apud Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō princiōm indictedō nōn omnīs quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit 20 Vercingetorix, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique civitātī imperandum; nē tantā multitūdine cōnfusā nec moderāri⁹ nec discernere suōs nec frumentandi ratiōnem habere possent. Imperant Haedīus atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvis, Ambivaretis, Aulercīs, Brannovicibus, [Blanoviis,] milia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūntīs Eleutetīs, Cadúrcīs, Gabalīs, Vellāviis, qui sub imperiō Arver- 25 nōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santōnis, Rutēnīs, Carnutibus duōdēna milia; Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovicibus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs

Fig. 103.—View of Caesar's Line of Works before Alesia.

a, vallum; b, eviri; c, fossa; d, fossa cum aqua; e, cippi; f, lilia; g, stimuli; h, pinnae; i, turres; k, lorica.
et Parīsiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna Andibus, Ambiānīs, Mediomatricīs, Petrocorīs, Nervīs, Morīnīs, Nitiobrigibus; quīna mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomānīs; totidem Atrebātībus; III Vēliocassīs; [Lexoviis, et] Aulercīs Eburgovicībus III; Rauracīs et Bōīs bīna; x ünīversīs civitātībus quae Ĭceanum attingunt 5 quaeque eōrum cōnsuētūdīne Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō Coriosolites, Redones, Ambibariī, Caletes, Osismī, Venetī, Lexovīi, Venellī. Ex ēs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contuierunt, quōd sē suō nōmine atque arbi- triō cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dicerent, neque cūius- 10 quam imperiō obtemperātūrōs; rogātī tamen ā Commīō prō ēius hospitīō duo mīlia misērunt.

The Gauls under Commius Approach Alesia with High Hopes.

76. Hūius operā Commī, ut antea dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēli atque útilī superiōribus annīs erat üsus in Britannīā Caesār; prō quibus meritīs civitātem ēius immūnem esse iusserat, 15 iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī Morīnōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ünīversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit libertātīs vindicandae et prīstīnae belli laudis recoveryae et amiciae memoriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent. 5 Coāctīs equītum milibus VIII et peditum circiter ccl, haec in Haeduōrum finibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inībātur, praefectī con- stituēbantur; Commīō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Haeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōsobrīnō Vercinge- torīgis, summa imperiō trāditur. His dēlēctī ex civitātībus 25 attribuuntur quōrum cōnsiliō bellum administrārētur. Om- nēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficiiscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam quī adspectum modo tantae multitūdinis sustinēri posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipiti proelīō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pūgnārētur, foris tantae 30 cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur. 7

77. At ei qui Alesiae obsidiebantur, praeteritâ die qua auxilia suorum exspectaverant, cõnsümp toile omni frumento, insci 1 quid in Haeduîs gereretur, concilliō coacto de exitu suârum fortunârum consultabant. Ac variis 2 dictis sententiâs, quârum pars déditiônem, pars, dum virès suppeterent, eruptionem cõnsèbat, non praetereunda 4 orató Critògnâti vidētur propter eius singulârem ac nefâriam crûdêlitatem. 5

Hic summō in Arvernīs ortus 6 locō et māgnae habitus auctoritātis: "Nihil," inquit, "de eōrum sententiâ dictūrus sum qui turpissimam servitūtem déditiônis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs civium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum his mihi res est qui eruptionem probant; quōrum in consiliō omnium vestrum cōnsensū pristinae residēr 7 virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animi est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisiper inopiam 8 ferre 9 nōn posse. Qui sè ultrō morti offerant facilius reperiuntur quam qui dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiāmprobārem (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), si nūllam praeterquam vitae nostrae iactūram fieri vidērem; sed in consiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciâmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. 10 Quid, hominum milibus lxxx unō locō interfectīs, propinquīs cōnsanguineisque nostrīs animī 11 fore existimātīs, si paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlite hōs vestrō auxiliō expolīāre qui vestræ salūtis causā suum periculum neglēxerunt; nec stultitiā ac temeritāte 12 vestrā, aut animī imbēcillitāte, omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūti subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vēnerunt, dē eōrum fidē cōnstantiāque dubitātīs?

B. G. VII. 78. ] Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix. 239

Quid ergo? Römānōs in illis ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus animē causā cotidiē exercēri putātis? Si illōrum nūntiīs cōnfīrmārī nōn potestis omni adītū praeseptō, hīs útimīnī testibus adpropinquārē eōrum adventum; cūius reī timōre exterrītī diem noctemque in opere versantur.

"Quid ergo meī cōnsili est? Facere quod nostri māiōrēs nēquaquam parī bellō Cimbīrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsi ac simili inopiā subāctī, eōrum corporibus quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vitam tolerāvērunt, neque sē hostibus tràdidērunt. Cūius reī sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen libertātīs causā īnstitūi et posterīs prōdi pulcherrimum īūdicārem. Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Gallīa Cimbri, māgnāque īnlātā calamītāte, finibus quidem nostrīs aliquando excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; īūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbis reliquerunt. Römānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilīs potentiāsque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōnsīdere atque his aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longīnquis nātiō- nibus geruntur īgnōrātīs, respicite fīnimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, īūre et lēgibus commūtātīs, secūribus subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte!"
cum liberis atque uxoribus exire coēguntur. Hi cum ad mūnitionēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis in vāllō custōdiis recipī prohibēbat.

Arrival of Commius with the Army of Relief. Joy of the Besieged.

5 79. Interea Commius reliquique ducēs,1 quibus summa imperi permissa2 erat, cum omnibus cōpiis ad Alesiam perveniunt, et colle exteriōre occupatō nōn longius mille passibus a nostris mūnitionibus cōnsidunt. Posterō dīē equitātū ex castris ēductō omnem eam plānitiem, quam in longitūdi-
10 nem milia passuum III patēre dēmōnstrāvimus, complen; pedestrisque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locis superiōribus cōstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrent his auxiliis visis3; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Ita-
15 que prōductis cōpiis ante oppidum cōnsistunt, et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere4 explect, sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnīs cāsūs comparant.

A Fierce Engagement Takes Place in the Valley. The Gauls are Defeated.

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnition-
20 num dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat5 et nōverit, equitātum ex castris ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castris, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus; atque omnēs militēs intentī pūgnae próventum6 exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs7 sagittāriōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant, qui
25 suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrērent et nostrōrum equitūm impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvisō volnere-rāti proelīō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse

Cf. 1 praefectī. — 2 comissa. — 3 cōnspectīs. — 4 terrā. — 5 opp. dē-
serat. — 6 ēventum. — 7 opp. dēnsōs.
Galli cōnspicuerunt et nostrōs multitūdine premī vidērunt, ex omnibus partībus et eī qui mūnitionibus continēbantur et eī qui ad auxiliōm convēnerant clamōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōnfirmābant. Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur, neque rēctē ac turbātōr factum cēlāri 2 poterat; utrōsque 5

et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat. Cum ā meridiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pūgnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertīs tūrmiss in hostis impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt. Quibus in fugam coniectīs sagittāriī circumventi interflectōque sunt. Item ex 10 reliquis partibus nostri cēdentis ūsque ad castra insecūti sui conligendi facultātem nōn dedērunt. At eī qui Alesiā prō-

Cf. 1 crēderent. — 2 occultārī.
cesserant, maestī prope victōriā déspērātā sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

The Gauls Make a Night Attack.

81. Ŭnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō māgnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrīs mūniṭiōnēs accē-
dunt. Subītō clāmōre sublātō, quā signiﬁcātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cōgnōscere possent, crātīs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre, reliquaque quae ad oppūgnātiōnem pertinent parant administrārē. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā signum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcīt. Nostri, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūniṭiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs librīlibus, sudibusque quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebris adēmpō multa utrimque volnera accipiuntur; complūra tormentīs tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, his auxiliō ex ulterioribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

They Retire Discomfited.

82. Dum longius ā mūniṭiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multītu-
dine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteaquam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrobīs dēlāti trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī pilīs mūrā-
libus interībant. Multīs undique volneribus acceptīs, nullā mūniṭiōne perruptā, cum lūx adpeteret, verītī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumveniēntur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Vercin-
getorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent; diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī,
Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix.

The Army of Relief Makes Another Attempt.

83. Bis māgnō cum détřimentō repulsī Gallī quid agant cōnsulunt. Locōrum perītōs adhibent; ex his superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnitōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septem-trīōnibus collis, quem propter māgnitūdinem circuitūs opere circumpectī nón potuerant nostri; necessāriōque paene iniquō locō et lēniter dēclivi castra fécerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēginus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitis per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium lx mīlia ex omnī numerō déligunt, eārum civitātum quae māximam virtūtis opinioinem habēbant; quid quōque pāctō agi placeat occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; ade- undi tempus dēfiniunt cum meridiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiis Vercassivellaunum Arvernun, ūnum ex IIII ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs primā vigiliā egressus, prope cōnfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit militēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē rescere iussit. Cum iam meridiēs adpropinquāre vidē-rētur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestris mūnitōnēs accē-dere et reliquae cōpiæ prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepequrunt.

Vercingetorix Coöperates. Difficulties of the Romans.

84. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suōs cōspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur: crātīs, longuriōs, músculōs, falcīs, reliqua-que quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temptantur; quae minime visa pars firma est hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnitōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occur-rit. Multum ad terrendōs nostros valet clāmor, qui post

Cf. ¹ caede. — ² opp. imperītōs. — ³ circumvāllāre.
tergum pugnantibus exstitit, quod suum periculum in aliena vident virtute constare; omnia enim plerumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentis perturbant.

Fighting Continues with Energy on Both Sides.

85. Caesar idoneum locum nactus quid quaque ex parte geratur cognoscit; laborentibus subsidium submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit unum esse illud tempus quod maximè contendi conveniat: Galli, nisi perfrégerint munitionès, de omni salute despérant; Rómāni, si rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant. Maximè ad superiōrés munitionès labōrātur, quod Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Iniquum loci ad declivitatem fastigium mānum habet mōmentum. Alii tēla coniuncti, alii testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatigātis in vicem integri succēdent. Agger ab universalis in munitionem coniectus et ascēnsum dat Gallis, et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rómāni contegit; nec iam arma nostris nec vires suppetunt.

Cæsar Personally Encourages his Troops.

86. His rebus cognitis Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus vi subsidiiō laborentibus mittit. Imperat, si sustinēre non possit, dēductis cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnet; id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur nē labōri succumbant; omnium superiōrum dimicātiōnīum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere. Interiōres, despērātis campestribus locis prōpter māgnitudinem munitionēm, loca praerupta [ex] ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōnferunt. Multītūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantīs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōricam rescindunt.

His Activity in Various Parts of the Field.

87. Mittit primum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse,
Fig. 106. — Statue of Vercingetorix.
cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restītūtō proeliō ac repulsis hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortīs I II I ex proxīmō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumōre exteriōrēs mūni-
tiōnēs et ā tertō hostīs adorīri iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinērē poterant, coāctīs XL cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiēs dēductās fors obtulīt, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faci-
endum existimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit.

Utter Defeat of the Gauls with Great Slaughter.

88. Ėius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cōgnītō, [quō īnsignī in proeliīs ětī cōnsuērat], turmīsque equītum et cohortībus visī quās sē sequī iussērat, ut ē locīs supeīriōribus haec déclīvia et dévexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit rūrsus ex vāllo atque om-
nībus mūnitiōnībus clāmor. Nostrī omissīs pilīs gladiīs rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae adpropinquant. Hostēs tergā vertunt; fugientibus equītēs occurrunt; fit māgna caedes. Seduliūs, dux et prī-
ceps Lemovīcum, occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fugā comprehenditur; signa militāria LXXIII ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūnitiōnībus redūcunt. Fit prōtīnus hāc rē auditā ex castrīs Gallōrum fugā. Quod nisi crēbris subsidiīs ac tōtius diēi labōre militēs essent défessi, omnēs hostium cōpiāe délērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissīmum agmen cōnsequitur: māgnus numerus captūr atque interficiitur; reliquī ex fugā in civitātīs discēdunt.
Vercingetorix Surrenders.

89. Posterō die Vercingetorix conciliō convocātō id bel-

um sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum sed commūnis

libertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit fortūnae cēden-
dum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmā-
nīs satisfacere seu vivum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē his

rēbus ad Caesarem lēgāti. Iubet arma trādī, princīpes prō-
dūci. Ipse mūnitiōne prō castrīs cōnsidit; eō ducēs

prōducentur. Vercingetorix dēditur; arma prōiciuntur.

Reservātīs Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, si per eōs civitātīs recu-

perāre posset, ex reliquis captīvīs tōtī exercitūi capita singula

praedae nōmine distribuit.

Caesar's Distribution of his Forces for the Winter. A Twenty Days' Thanksgiving Decreed at Rome.

90. His rēbus cōnfectīs in Haeduōs proficiscitur; civitā-
tem recipit. Eō lēgāti ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē

factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māgnum numerum obsidum.

Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit; captīvōrum circiter xx mília

Haeduīs Arvernīsque reddīt. T. Labiēnum cum dūabus

legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficiscī iubet; huic

M. Semprōniōm Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et

L. Minucium Basīlum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmis

conlocat, nē quam ā fīnitimis Bellovaciis calamitātem accipi-
ant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in

Biturīgēs, C. Canīniōm Rebilum in Rutēnōs, cum singulis

legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicērōnem et P. Sulpiciōm

Cabillōnī et Matiscōne in Haeduīs ad Ararīm reī frūmentā-

riae causā conlocat. Ipse Bibractē hiemāre cōnstituit.

His rēbus ex Caesarīs litteris cōgnitis Rōmae diērum vigintī

supplīcātiō redditur.
Fig. 107.—The Legionary.
BOOK FIRST. — B.C. 58.

The Helvetic War. — Early in the year 58 B.C. the whole population of Helvetia (northern Switzerland), amounting to about 360,000, attempted to pass by an armed emigration through the heart of Gaul, in order to settle somewhere near the shore of the Bay of Biscay, possibly with the hope of becoming masters of the whole country. They were hemmed in by the great natural barriers of the Alps, the Lake of Geneva, and the Jura Mountains on the south and west, and pressed on the north by great hordes of Germans, who kept up a continual border war. Their fields were scant, their harvests insufficient, their people hardy and fearless. Their ambitious chief, Orgetorix, had prepared them so well for this enterprise that his flight and death—when he was charged with guilty conspiracy and put on trial for his life—caused no delay. The attempt was held in check by Cæsar, during a fortnight's parley, till sufficient earthworks had been thrown up along the Rhone to withstand their advance across the river; the advance was then made in force along the narrow pass between that river and the Jura. But the Helvetians did not succeed in getting more than fifty miles beyond the frontier when they were overtaken by Cæsar, who, by a few light skirmishes and two bloody battles, forced them back to their own territories with the loss of more than 200,000 lives. This brief campaign, lasting only from March to June, is called the Helvetic War.

Reading References on the Helvetic War.

Dodge's Cæsar, pp. 50-81.
Froude's Cæsar, pp. 214-231.
Trollope's Cæsar, pp. 35-38.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 8.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, pp. 26-36.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 3.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.

N.B. The grammars cited are those of Allen and Greenough ($), Bennett (B.), Gildersleeve (G.), Harkness (H.), and Hale and Buck (H-B.). References in parentheses are to the old editions. Cf. (confer) = compare; sc. (scilicet) = supply; ff. = and following; subjv. = subjunctive; inv. = imperative; ftn. = footnote.
Notes: Caesar.

Page 1. Line 1. Gallia: that is, Transalpine Gaul, excluding the Roman province (Provincia) in the southeast, as well as Gallia Cisalpina, now northern Italy. It occupied the territory of France, including the country to the Rhine boundary, with most of the Netherlands and Switzerland (see map, Fig. 2). — omnis (predicate), as a whole. — est divisa, is divided: the adjectival use of the participle, not the perfect passive; § 495 (291. b); B. 337. 2; G. 250. r²; H. 640. 3 (550. n²); H-B. 320. iii. — unam: sc. partem.

12 incolunt: in translation (not in reading the Latin to make out the sense) change the voice to the passive in order to preserve the emphasis in the English idiom. It is well to acquire the habit of making such changes. The natural English form would be: of which one is inhabited by the Belgians, etc., but the Latin uses the active voice. The moment you find an accusative beginning a sentence, if it seems from its meaning to be a direct object, you can at once think of it as a subject in the nominative (at the same time noticing that the Latin does not make it such). The verb can then be instantly thought of as a passive and the subject as agent. This inversion is so common in Latin for purposes of rhetoric that such a device is a very helpful one, and if properly used from the start need not obscure the Latin construction. The Latin plays upon the position of words to produce all sorts of shades of rhetorical expression, and it is never too early to observe these shades and try to render them in our own idiom. — Belgae: probably of the Cymric branch of the Celtic race, allied to the Britons and the modern Welsh; they inhabited the modern Belgium and northern France, and were considerably mixed with Germans (see Bk. ii. ch. 1). — Aquitani: of the Spanish Iberians (the modern Basques) inhabiting the districts of the southwest (see Bk. iii. ch. 20). — aliam: here alteram would be more usual as meaning the second in the list. — qui . . . appellantur: notice that in Latin any relative may suggest its own antecedent as with the indefinite relative (whoever) in English. In English we have to supply a demonstrative (those) who. So here tertiam qui = tertiam partem ei incolunt qui; see § 307. c (200. c); B. 251. 1; G. 619; H. 399. 4 (445. 6); H-B. 284. 1. — ipsorum, etc.: notice that the position of words is so significant in Latin, through its indicated emphasis, that it may allow words to be omitted which must be supplied in the thought. In this case the English idiom is the same: in their own tongue . . . in ours.

13 Celtae: probably of the Gælic branch, represented by the Irish and the Highland Scotch. — lingua: abl. of specification; § 418 (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441.

14 differunt: the language of the Aquitani was Basque; of the Gauls proper, Celtic; of the Belgians, another dialect of Celtic mixed with German.
14 inter se, from one another: the preposition inter may be used to show any reciprocal relation; § 301. f (196. f); B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. i (448. n.); H-B. 266.—Gallos: see note on incolunt, 1. 2.

15 dividit: the verb is singular, because the two rivers make one boundary; § 317. b (205. b); B. 255. 3; G. 211. R.1; H. 392. 4 (463. ii. 3); H-B. 331. 3.

16 horum: part. gen. with fortissimi; § 346. a. 2 (216. a); B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346. — propterea quod, because; lit. because of this, that, etc. The difference between this and the simple quod is only one of greater emphasis — almost as strong as and the reason is or and it is because.

17 cultu, civilization, as shown by outward signs, dress, and habits of life. — humanitate, refinement, of mind or feeling. — provinciae: the province of Gallia Narbonensis, organized about B.C. 120. Its chief cities were Massilia (Marseilles), an old Greek free city, and the capital, Narbo (Narbonne), a Roman colony. The name Provincia has come down to us in the modern Provence.

18 mercatores: these were traders or peddlers, mostly from the seaport of Massilia; they travelled with pack-horses, mules, and wagons. A very common article of traffic, as with our Indian traders, was intoxicating drinks, — wines from the southern coast, which, especially, as Caesar says, “tend to debauch the character.” These people, it is said, would give the traders a boy for a jar of wine. — commeant: this verb means, especially, to go back and forth in the way of traffic. The main line of trade lay across the country, by the river Liger (Loire). — ea: object of important.

19 effeminandos: § 506 (300); B. 339. 2; G. 427; H. 628 (544); H-B. 612. iii. — proximi: notice how the three superlatives, longissime, minime, and proximi are arranged. After the emphatic idea of cultu, etc., is completed, the superlatives begin each its own phrase.

20 Germanis: dat. with an adjective of nearness; § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. 1); H-B. 362. iii. — trans Rhenum: the Rhine was, in general, the boundary between the Gauls and the Germans, and has so remained till modern times. — continenter (adverb from the participle of contineo, hold together), incessantly; strictly, without any interruption. The pupil should begin at once to notice the way in which words develop into groups expressing the same idea in the forms of the various parts of speech. See p. 449.

21 qua de causa, and for this reason: § 308. f (180. f); B. 251. 6; G. 610; H. 510 (453); H-B. 284. 8; referring back to proximi, etc., and further explained by quod . . . contendunt. — Helvetii: here, it will be noticed, reckoned as Gauls. — quoque: i.e. just as the Belgians.
Notes: Caesar.

1 is reliquos, the rest of: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 291. r.2; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. N.1-2); H-B. 346. c; notice the emphasis of position; the others as opposed to the Helvetii. — virtute, not virtue, but courage; for construction, see note on lingua, l. 3. — praecedunt, excel; lit. go ahead of.

13 proelis: abl. of means; finibus: abl. of separation. — cum prohibent, while they keep them off (pro-habeo).

14 ipsi (emphatic), themselves, the Helvetians; eos and eorum refer to the Germans.

21 eorum una pars, one division of them (the Gauls or Celts), the people being identified with the country. — quam . . . dictum est, which, it has been (already) said, the Gauls hold. Notice that in direct discourse it would be Galli obtinent: the subject nom. is changed to acc. and the indic. to the infin. after the verb of saying, dictum est; § 561. a (272. r.); B. 330; G. 527; H. 613. 2 (535. 1); H-B. 534. 1, 590. 1. Here quam is the object and Gallos the subject of obtinere, while the clause is the subject of dictum est; § 560, 561, 566. b (329, 330. a. 2); B. 330; G. 528; H. 615 (538); H-B. 238, 590. 1. a. — obtinere (ob-teneo), not obtain, but occupy; strictly, hold against all claimants. Ob in composition almost always has the sense of opposing or coming in the way of something. This is one of the many words which have entirely changed their meaning in their descent from the Latin. Always be on your guard against rendering Latin words by the English one corresponding. Obtineo does not mean obtain, nor occupo, occupy. The corresponding word is often suggestive as a guide to the meaning, but must not be used without careful examination.

23 ab Sequanis, on the side of, etc., regarded from the point of view of the Province; a very common use of ab; § 429. b (260. b); G. 390. 2. N.6; H. 490 (434. 1); H-B. 406. 2.

24 vergit, etc., slopes to the north; the highlands (Cévennes) are along the southern boundary, and the rivers in that quarter flow in their main course northerly. — septentriones (septem triones, “the seven plough-oxen”): i.e. the constellations of the Great and Little Bears. The word is used both in the singular, as below, and in the plural, as here.

25 Galliae: i.e. Celtic Gaul, the country just described, not Gallia omnis.

26 spectant: i.e. considered from the Province, it lies in that direction.

28 ad Hispaniam, next to Spain, i.e. the Bay of Biscay: § 428. d (259. f); H. 420. 1 (433. 1).
29 spectat: cf. spectant above. — inter occasum, etc., northwest, i.e. from the Province.

211 Chap. 2. nobilissimus, of highest birth. Popular revolutions had, among the Gauls as among the Greeks and Romans, mostly dispossessed the old chiefs, or kings; and they had established an annual magistrate called Vergobret (ch. 16). But the heads of the ruling families would naturally be ambitious to recover what they could of the old class power, and Orgetorix is represented as aspiring to create a monarchy in Gaul.

212 M. = Marco. Always read and translate these names without abbreviation. — Messala, etc.: this was B.C. 61, three years before Caesar's first campaign in Gaul. This construction of consulis was the usual way of denoting the year; not so formal in English as while Messala and Piso were consuls, but merely in the consuls of; abl. abs., § 419. a (255. a); B. 227. 1; G. 409, 410; H. 489 and i (431 and 2); H-B. 421. i.

213 cupiditate: abl. of means; § 409 (248. c); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423. — coniurationem, a league sworn to fidelity by oath (iuro). — nobilitatis: from the account given in ch. 4, we see how immense was the class power still held by the nobles, and why they would naturally join in such a combination.

213 civitati persuasit: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. i (385. ii); H-B. 362. ftn. 8 and i; the direct object of persuasit is the clause ut . . . exirent; § 563 (331); B. 295. i; G. 546; H. 564. i (498); H-B. 502. 3. a; translate the latter by the infinitive according to the English idiom. Votes were easily “persuaded” by such means as Orgetorix possessed. For the sequence of tenses in exirent, see § 484 (286. r.); B. 267; G. 510; H. 545. ii. i (493. i); H-B. 476; and for the plur., see § 280. a (182. a); B. 254. 4; G. 211. r. 1; H. 389 (636. iv. 4); H-B. 325.

215 perfacile: predicate with esse, while its subject is the infin. clause with potiri; § 289. d (189. d); G. 422. 3; H. 394. 4 (438. 3); cf. H-B. 325. b; showing that it was quite easy, since they exceeded all men in valor, to win the empire of all Gaul. — esse: indir. disc., depending on some word implied in persuasit; § 580. a (336. 2. n. 2); B. 314. 2; G. 546. r. 1, 649. r. 2; H. 642. 1 (523. i. n.); cf. H-B. 534. i. a. Notice that the Latin has the power of putting various dependent clauses after a single verb. Here the idea of persuading takes the thing that was to be done in an ut-clause. The facts of which they were persuaded take the indir. disc. Careful attention to this usage will make many difficult passages easy. It is not the verb used, but the meaning, that decides the construction.— cum praestarent: subjv. after cum meaning since; § 549 (326); B. 286. 2; G. 586; H. 598 (517); H-B. 526.

216 imperio: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.
2 17 hoc facilius, all the easier: originally degree of difference, as in all ablatives with comparative; but hardly different in sense from the abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 424. a.—id: object of persuasit; § 369 (227.f); B. 176. 2. a; G. 345; H. 426. 6 (384. 2); H-B. 364. 4: we should say, persuaded them of it. Usually with persuadere the dat. and acc. are both used only when the latter is a pronoun.—loci natura, by the nature of the country.

2 18 una ex parte, on one side: cf. ab Sequanis above, so undique, on (lit. from) all sides; hinc, on this side, etc. The effect on the senses is supposed to come from the direction referred to.—latissimo, very broad.

2 19 qui takes its gender not from flumine, but from Rheno; § 306 (199); B. 250. 3; G. 614. 3. b; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326.

2 23 his rebus, etc.: lit. from these things it was coming about that they roamed about less widely and could less easily make war, etc. But this is obviously not an English mode of thought, nor a form which any English-speaking person would ever naturally use. So here, as always, you must see from this clumsy expression what is meant and then express it in the natural vernacular, something like, from all this they were getting less free to wander and having less opportunity to make war, etc. Several other ways of expressing this may be imagined. One of the greatest advantages of classical study is to set the mind free from forms, and bring into prominence the possibility of saying the same thing in fundamentally different ways.—fiebat: the imperfect expresses the continued effect of the causes; § 470 (277); B. 260. 1; G. 231; H. 534 (468, 469); H-B. 468. 2; the subject of fiebat is the clause ut ... possent; § 569 (332. a); B. 297. 2, cf. 284. 1; G. 553. 3, 4; H. 571. 1 (501. i); H-B. 521. 3. a.

2 24 qua ex parte: here in which respect hardly differs from from which cause.—hominem (a sort of apposition)—being (as they were) men eager for war.

3 1 bellandi: § 349. a (218. a); B. 338. 1. b; G. 374. 5; H. 626, 451. 1 (542. 1, 399. i. 1); H-B. 612. 1.—adficiebantur = afficiebantur: for the assimilation of consonants, see § 16 (11); B. 8. 4; G. 9; H. 374. 2 (344. 5); H-B. 51. 2. In this edition the unchanged form of the preposition is usually preferred.—pro, in proportion to; cf. our force of for.

3 2 multitudine: their numbers, including some small dependent populations, were 368,000 (see ch. 29).

3 3 angustos finis, too narrow limits. So in English such words often suggest a negative idea; cf. a “scant pattern.”

3 4 milia passuum, miles (1000 paces), the regular way of stating this measure, milia being acc. of extent of space, and passuum part. gen. The passus was the stretch from heel to heel, i.e. from where one heel is raised.
to where it is set down again, and is reckoned at five Roman feet. A Roman mile (*mille passuum*) was about 400 feet less than ours; it measures the distance which a soldier would march in a thousand double paces. — *CCXL = ducenta quadraginta.* Always give the Latin words for numerals in reading the text.

35 **patebant**: throughout the latter part of this chapter notice the use of the imperfect of *description* or *general statement*, compared with the perfect of *simple narrative* in *persuasit* above and *constituerunt*, etc., below. This distinction is very marked in Latin, and must always be noticed, though not always translated. Our progressive imperfect is much more limited in its use than the Latin imperfect. But the latter always describes a situation and never advances the narrative of occurrences.

37 **Chap. 3. quae . . . pertinèrent**: dependent clause in indir. disc.; § 592. 3 (341. a); B. 323; G. 628; H. 649. i (528. i); H-B. 535. i and a. The mood shows that its clause expresses not the writer's statement, but that of the speaker or actor or some other person concerned. Always bear in mind that Caesar uses the subjunctive to express something different from the indicative, whether you can find the technical rule for it or not. — *comparare . . . confirmare*: these infinitives correspond exactly with our idiom *to prepare*, etc., but the same meaning is often expressed by a subjunctive clause with *ut*; § 457 (271. a); B. 328. 1; G. 423; H. 607. 1 (533. i. 1); H-B. 586. e.

38 **inuentorum, beasts of burden**: properly, *yoke-animals* (kindred with *iungo, join*, and *iugum, yoke*); *carorum*, a Celtic word, two-wheeled carts. See Fig. 55. p. 94. — *quam maximum, as great as possible*: § 291. c, 321 (93. b, 207); B. 240. 3, 177. 3; G. 303; H. 159. 2 (170. 2); H-B. 241. 4.

39 **coëmere . . . facere . . . confirmare**: notice that the Latin more easily dispenses with connectives than we do.

311 **conficiendas, completing**: *con* in composition may mean *together*; or, as here, may be simply intensive (cf. *do a thing up*). This word is shown to be a gerundive by having a noun with which it agrees. Cf. *proficiscendum*, 37, where there is no noun; § 503 (296); B. 339. 2; G. 427; H. 623 (544. 1); H-B. 613. 1.

313 **lege**: probably a resolution passed in a public assembly.

312 **in tertium annum confirmavit, fix for the third year.**

314 **sibi . . . suscepit, took on himself**: for construction, see § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376. Observe the force of *sub*, as if he put his shoulders *under* the load.
3 15 civitatis, clans, such as the Hædui, Sequani, etc., each constituting a commonwealth (civitas),—about 60 in all. Their territory had no local name, but was known only by that of the clan, which was sovereign and wholly independent, except for voluntary alliances (see ch. 30). The name Gallia itself—as was said of Italy a few years ago—was only "a geographical expression," implying no united political sovereignty.—persuadet, prevails on: suadet would be simply urges.

3 16 filio, Sequano: appositives with Castico.

3 17 obtinerat, had held: see note on obtinere, 21. The pluperfect implies that he had held it formerly, but had been ousted by some popular movement.

3 18 amicus: an honorary title given by the Roman Senate to friendly powers; § 283, 284, 393. a (185, 239. 1. n.2); B. 168. 2. b; G. 206; H. 393. 8 (362. 2. 2); H-B. 319. ii, 392. b. — ut ... occuparet, to lay hands on: this clause is the object of persuadet; § 563 (331); B. 295. i; G. 546; H. 565 (498. ii); H-B. 502. 3. a; for the sequence of tenses, see § 485. e (287. e); B. 268. 3; G. 511. r.1; H. 546 (495. ii); H-B. 491. 2; in English it would be expressed by the infin.—regnum: here, not hereditary authority, but personal rule, —what the Greeks called tyranny.

3 19 quod: the relative.—ante: i.e. before the popular movement.—Dumnorigi (dat. after persuadet): Dumnorix, a younger brother, restless, ambitious, and strongly attached to the old aristocracy of the clan; therefore a bitter enemy of the Roman supremacy. He afterwards headed a desertion of Cæsar's cavalry just before the second invasion of Britain, but was pursued and killed (Bk. v. ch. 6). It is implied that in the popular movement Dumnorix had come into prominence. It must be borne in mind that the personal rule of a chief (regnum) was an entirely different thing from the prominence (principatum) which one man or another might have in the national councils, as the latter had no constitutional or official power.

3 20 Diviciaci: this Haeduan chief was of the order of Druids (see pp. 165–168); he had been in Rome where he made the acquaintance of Cicero and other eminent Romans. He was thoroughly impressed with the power and superiority of the Romans, and was a faithful friend and ally of Cæsar. The party of Druids, represented by Diviciacus and Liscus (ch. 16), was in a manner the popular party, strong especially in the large towns; it was opposed to the old clan feeling kept up for ambitious purposes by military or tribal chiefs (principes) such as Orgetorix and Dumnorix. The former, or popular party, was headed by the Hædui; the latter, or aristocratic, by the Sequani and Arverni. The Druids were a religious or priestly order, jealous of the aristocracy (equites) of the tribe or clan, which latter
represented what may be called the patriotic or "native-Celtic" party (see Bk. vi. chs. 12-17). A knowledge of this division helps to clear up many of the events of Cæsar's campaigns. In fact, Gaul was conquered by the strategy underlying the maxim "divide et impera." — qui: i.e. Dumnorix. The regular rule is that the relative should refer to the last person named. But this in all languages is often overborne by the prominence of some preceding person. — principatum, highest rank, as distinct from political power (see above).

3 21 plebi acceptus, a favorite with the people (acceptable to the people). — ut idem conaretur: i.e. put down the constitutional authority, and establish a rule of military chiefs. The expression here is a striking example of the tendency of the Latin to say things by verbs which we say by nouns; Lat. attempt the same thing, Eng. make the same attempt.

3 22 perfacile factu: § 510. N. 2 (303. R.); B. 340. 2; G. 436. N. 1; H. 635 (547); H-B. 619. 1; in predicate agreement with conata perficere, which is subject of esse, depending on probat. — illis probat, undertakes to show them, i.e. Casticus and Dumnorix: conative present; § 467 (276. b); B. 259. 2; G. 227. N. 2; H. 530 (467. 6); H-B. 484. — propterea quod: see note on 1 6.

3 24 ipse, etc., i.e. and so they could count on him for a powerful ally. — non esse dubium quin, there was no doubt (he said) that: here esse is infin. of indir. disc.; for the construction of quin, see § 558. a (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. b. For purposes of analysis we may consider the quin clause a subject of esse, and dubium as a predicate adjective in the neuter to agree with the subject.

3 25 Galliae: part. gen. with plurimum; § 346. a. 2 (216. a. 2); B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.

3 26 se suis: begin as soon as possible to master the use of the reflexive in Latin, to which we have nothing that exactly corresponds in English. Our forms with self are emphatic and not ordinarily reflexive. The forms of se and suis refer (without emphasis) to the subject of their clauses, and in indir. disc. to the speaker. They take the place of an I or mine of the direct. Where no ambiguity would arise in English translate them by he and his. In case of ambiguity some device must be used to avoid it. Here there is an emphasis on se, but it comes from position. — regna: translate by the singular. To a Roman each man's power would be a separate regnum, hence the plural here. — conciliaturum: sc. esse, which is often omitted with the fut. infin.

4 1 oratione, plea, or argument (abl. of means). — fidem et iusiurandum: i.e. assurance confirmed by oath; hendiadys; § 640 (385); B. 374. 4 G. 698; H. 751. 3. N. 1 (636. iii. 2); H-B. 631. 5.
Notes: Caesar.

42 regno occupato: abl. abs., expressing condition; § 419. 4, 521. a (255. 4, 310. a); B. 227. 2. b; G. 409, 593. 2; H. 489. 1, 638. 2 (431. 2, 549. 2); H-B. 421. 6, 578. 6; in case they should get in their hands the royal power = si occupaverimus in the direct. — per tres... populos: i.e. Helvetii, Hædui, and Sequani; a league between these, they hope, will secure their power over all Gaul. — firmissimos, most stable.

43 Galliae: governed by potiri; § 410. a (249. a); B. 212. 2; G. 407. d; H. 458. 3 (410. v 3); H-B. 353.—posse: equivalent to a fut. infin.; § 584. b; B. 270. 3; G. 248. r.; H. 618. 1 (537. N.1); H-B. 472. d.

44 Chap. 4. ea res, this (i.e. the conspiracy). The word res is constantly used in Latin where we use some more specific word in English, as action, fact, event, estate, etc., according to the passage. The conduct of Orgetorix was treated as criminal because, though the Helvetians were prepared to emigrate in a body and subdue the rest of Gaul, they would not give to Orgetorix the power thus acquired.—moribus suis, according to their custom: abl. of spec.; § 418. a and N. (253. N.); B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 475. 3 (416); H-B. 441, cf. 414 and a.

45 ex vinculis, out of chains, i.e. (standing) in chains; a Latin idiom; cf. ex ego, on horseback.—causam dicere: a technical expression for being brought to trial.—damnatum (sc. eum, object of sequi), if condemned = si damnatus esset. The Latin may almost always omit a pronoun of reference, if there is a participle or adjective to show what its form would be if expressed. In this sentence the subject of oportebat is the clause damnatum...sequi; the subject of sequi is poenam; and ut...cremaretur is in apposition with poenam, defining the punishment: § 562. 1, 571. c (329. 2, 332. f); B. 294, cf. 297. 3; G. 557; H. 571. 4 (501. iii); H-B. 502. 3. a. N. Translate, he was doomed, if condemned, to be burned by fire (lit. it must needs be that the penalty should overtake him, condemned, of being burned with fire). For the abl. in i, see § 76. b. 1 (57. b. 1); B. 38; G. 57. 2; H. 102. 4 (62. iv); H-B. 88. 2. c.

47 die constituta, on the day appointed: § 423 (256); B. 230; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439. For the gender of die, see § 97 (30. a, 73); B. 53; G. 64; H. 135 (143); H-B. 101.—causae dictionis, for the trial (it would be more usual to say dicendae); dictionis depends on die, and causae is the objective gen. after dictionis.

48 familiam, clansmen: ordinarily this word means slaves; but it is more probable that it here means all who bore his name or regarded him as their chief. — ad (adv.)...milia decem (in apposition with familiam), to (the number of) ten thousand.
I. 3-5.]

The Helvetian War. 259

49. clientis, *retainers*: volunteer or adopted followers.—obaeatos, *debtors*: the only class of slaves that seems to have been known in Gaul; see Bk. vi. ch. 13.

4 10. eodem: an adverb.—per eos, *by their means*: § 405. b (246. b); G. 401; H. 468. 3 (415. i. i. N.1); H-B. 380. d.—ne . . . diceret: a purpose clause.

4 12. cum . . . conaretur, *when the state attempted*. The force of the subjv. here cannot easily be made apparent in translation, and may be disregarded as too subtle for this stage of the pupil's advancement. It is perfectly manifest, however, and can be learned later; § 546 (323); B. 288. 1. b; G. 585; H. 600, ii. 1 (521. ii. 2); H-B. 524.

4 15. quin . . . consciverit (conscisco), *that he decreed death to himself (his own death)*, i.e. committed suicide. The construction of the clause is analogous to that with non dubito, etc.; § 558 (319. d); B. 284. 31; G. 555. 2; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. b. Observe that ipse, *self*, agrees in Latin rather with the subject; not, as in English, with the object.

4 16. Chap. 5. nihilo minus (often written in one word, as in English), *nevertheless*.—constituerant, *had resolved*: observe the pluperfect, as following not a real but a historical present.

4 17. ut . . . exeat, in apposition with id: as we should say, "namely, to go forth." Clauses thus used in apposition with a noun or pronoun take the form required by the verb on which the appositional word depends. Here facere would take a result clause with ut, and so this clause has that form.—ubi . . . arbitrati sunt, *when they judged*: observe the regular use of the perfect indic. with *ubi, postquam*, etc., and cf. cum . . . conaretur above; § 543 (324); B. 287. 1; G. 561; H. 602 (518. N.1); H-B. 557.


4 19. vicos, *villages*, i.e. groups of houses about a single spot. The villages and houses were burned; partly to cut off hope of return, partly to prevent their being occupied by the Germans.—ad: cf. l. 8 above.—reliqua, etc.: i.e. isolated farmhouses not collected in villages.

4 21. portaturi erant, *intended to carry*: § 194. a (129); B. 115; G. 247; H. 236 (233); H-B. 162.—domum: following the verbal noun reditionis; § 427. 2 (258. a); B. 182. 1. b; G. 337; H. 419. 1 (380. 2, 1); H-B. 450. b.

4 23. molita cibaria, *meal*. Food for 368,000 people (cf. 26 11) for three months required five or six thousand wagons and about twenty-five thousand draught animals. This would make a line of march of over thirty miles.—domo: § 427. 1 (258. a); B. 229. 1. b; G. 390. 2; H. 462. 4 (412. ii. 1); H-B. 451. a.
Notes: Cæsar.

5 1 Rauracis, etc.: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385, ii); H-B. 362 and 1: German tribes from the banks of the Rhine.

5 2 uti: the older form for ut, common in Cæsar. — eodem usi consilio, adopting the same plan: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407. N. 8; H. 477 (421. 1); H-B. 429. — una cume is, along with them. The use of eis avoids ambiguity, though secum would be more regular, referring to the subject of the main clause; cf. note on se, 3 26. — oppidis . . . exustis, having burned, etc.: § 493. 2 (113. c. N.); B. 356. 2. b; G. 410. r. 1; H. 640. 4 (550. N. 4); H-B. 602. 1.

5 3 Boios (from whom the name Bohemia is derived): a Celtic tribe, whom the great German advance had cut off from their kinspeople towards the west, and who were now wandering homeless, some of them within the limits of Gaul.

5 4 Noricum, etc.: now eastern Bavaria and upper Austria. — oppugnarant = oppugnaverant: § 181. a (128. a); B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163.

5 5 receptos . . . adsciscunt: in English, in a sentence like this, we should use a separate verb instead of the participle; § 496. N. 2 (292. r.); B. 337. 2; G. 664. r. 1; H. 639 (549. 5); H-B. 604. 1. Translate, they receive the Boii into their own number (ad se), and vote them in as their allies. They do not merely unite with them, but incorporate them into their own body as a homeless people.

5 6 Chap. 6. erant omnino, there were in all, i.e. only. — itineribus: observe the form of this relative sentence, common in Cæsar, which gives the antecedent noun in both clauses. It is usually omitted in one or the other; in English, almost always in the relative clause; in Latin, quite as often in the other; § 307 (200); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399. 5 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4.

5 7 possent: subjv. in a relative clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 1 (503. 1); cf. H-B. 521. 1; i.e. not merely by which they could, but of the sort by which they could. In such clauses, which describe something by its qualities, the subjv. is regular in Latin. — Sequanos: i.e. the region now called Franche-Comté, north of the Rhone.

5 8 inter . . . Rhodanum: the pass now guarded by the Fort l’Ecluse, about nineteen Roman (seventeen and a half English) miles below Geneva (see note on 7 13). The Rhone at this part was the boundary of the Roman province. The choice was either to cross the river and go through the country held by the Romans, or to proceed along its northern bank through the friendly Sequani. — vix qua, etc., where carts could scarcely be hauled in single file: § 137. a (95. a); B. 81. 4. a; G. 97; H. 164. 1 (174. 2, 1); H-B. 133. See Fig. 55, p. 94.
5 9 ducerentur: the same "characteristic subjv." as in possent. The
distinction is one that we rarely express in English; but a little study will
make it appear in most cases. — *autem, then again.*

6 1 possent: § 537 (319); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 570 (500. ii); H-B. 521. 2.
6 2 multo facilius (cf. nihilo minus, 4 16), *much easier* in itself; but it
required them to crush the Roman legion at Geneva, and force their way
through about fifty miles of territory occupied by the Roman arms. —
propterea quod: see note on 1 6.

6 3 nuper pacati erant: a rebellion "of despair" (B.C. 61) had been
subdued by C. Pomptinus.

6 4 locis: loc. abl.; § 429. 2 (258. f); B. 228. 1. b; G. 385. N.1; H. 485. 1
(425. ii. 2); H-B. 436. — *vado: by ford* (wading, vadendo). The bed of
the Rhone must have changed somewhat since Cæsar's
time. There is now but one ford between Geneva and
the Pas-de-l'Ecluse.

6 8 sese persuasuros [esse]: notice that in the fut.
infin., used in indir. disc., *esse* is usually omitted (cf. con-
ciliatum, 3 26; in dir. disc. we should have persuade-
bimus), *they thought they should persuade*; its object is
Allobrogibus (cf. Rauracis, etc., 5 1). — *bono animo,
well disposed*; § 415 (251); B. 224. 1; G. 400; H. 473. 2
(419. ii); H-B. 443. Five years before, their envoys in Rome had intrigued
with Catiline's agents, whom they at length betrayed (see Cicero, Cat.
iii. ch. 9).

6 9 viderentur: § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 650; H. 643 (524); H-B.
535. 2.

6 10 eos: again the demonstrative to avoid ambiguity; see note on eis,
5 2. — *paterentur*: the subjv. with *ut* is the regular form of object clause
after all verbs of commanding, inducing, and the like; § 563 (331); B. 295. 1;
G. 546; H. 564. 1 (498, ii); H-B. 502. 3. a.

6 11 diem . . . die: cf. itinera . . itineribus, 5 6 and note.

6 12 convenient: the subjv. is used because *diem dicunt* has the force
of a command. The indic. would mean "on which they *do* assemble"; this
means "on which they *should.*" Technically, the clause is a purpose clause;
§ 529 (317); B. 282. 2; G. 544. ii; H. 590 (497. i); H-B. 502. 2. — *a. d. v.*
Kal. Apr. (ante diem quinquum Kalendas Aprilis): nominally March 28;
§ 631, 424. 8 (376, 259. e); B. 371 and 6, 372; G. App.; H. 754, 755 (642-
644); H-B. 664, 667. But the calendar was in a state of great confusion
at this time, and till Cæsar's reform twelve years later. — *L. Pisone,* etc.: 
notice again the regular Roman method of giving dates; see note on
Messala, 2 12. Piso was Cæsar's father-in-law.
614 Chap. 7. Caesar: the tendency is so strong in Latin to put the most emphatic word first that it is so placed even when the first clause is a dependent one, as here. We should say: Caesar, when it was reported, etc., hastened; the Latin says: to Caesar, when it was reported, etc., [he] (which in such cases is unnecessary, having already been expressed in a different form) hastened. He was at this time at Rome, having laid down his consulship, preparing to set out for his province. Every consul was entitled to the governorship of a province for one year after his term of office, and, by a special law, Caesar's government (consisting of the three provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum) had been conferred for a term of five years. The news of the emigration hastened his movements.—nuntiatum esset: the same idiomatic use of the subj. with cum as in 419. The relation here, however, is more apparent. The clause gives not the time merely, but the circumstances, “upon this being,” etc.—id in apposition with eos . . . conari (the real subject of nuntiatum esset), that they were attempting.

615 maturat: travelling, his biographers say, one hundred miles in a day, and reaching the Rhone in a week, according to Plutarch.—ab urbe: this word, unless some other place is indicated, always means Rome, the city. Caesar was near, but not in the city, not being permitted to enter it while holding the military authority (imperium) of proconsul. Hence he says ab, not ex.—proficisci: the so-called complementary infin., used like our own with verbs which require another action to complete their sense.

616 quam maximis potest itineribus: § 291. c (93. b); B. 240. 3; G. 303; H. 159. 2 (170. 2); H-B. 241. 4; potest is usual with Caesar in this phrase, which is elliptical. In full it would be tam magnis quam maximis, as great as the greatest, i.e. the greatest possible.—ulteriorem: i.e. beyond the Alps. The northern part of modern Italy was still called Gallia Cisalpina, and was a part of Caesar's province.

617 ad, near to, as far as.—provinciae: dat.; § 369 (227. f); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. i); H-B. 364. 4.—imperat: i.e. Transalpine Gaul. Here impero is used in what seems to have been its original meaning, make requisition upon; see Vocab.

618 erat omnino: cf. erant omnino, 5 6 and note.

619 legio: the tenth legion, which afterwards became so famous. With reference to the Roman legions, see chapter on military affairs, i. 1.

620 rescindi: notice that iubeo and veto, unlike other verbs of commanding and forbidding, take the acc. and the infin.

621 certiores facti sunt, were informed (made more certain): a technical expression for official communication or certain information.
6 23 qui dicerent, who were (instructed) to say: the same construction as qua die conveniant above, l. 111, see note. Notice the difference between obtinebant, who did, etc., and dicerent, who should, etc. Treat your subjunctives according to the sense, and use the rules only to formulate the usages: § 531 (317); B. 282. 2; G. 544; H. 590 (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

6 24 sibi ... liceat: observe carefully the construction of the indir. disc.; § 584, 585 (336. A. B.); B. 317, 318; G. 650; H. 642–653 (523–531); H-B. 534. 1. 2; in dir. disc. it would be: Nobis est in animo sineullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod alius iter habemus nullum; rogamus, ut tua voluntate id nobis facere liceat. Careful attention to this construction in the beginning will be amply repaid later. — sibi: dat. of possession; § 373 (231); B. 192; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374; the subject of esse is the clause iter ... facere, while the whole passage, sibi ... liceat, is the object of dicerent. Render, that they had (it was to them) in mind to march, etc.

6 26 rogare: of this verb the subject is se, understood (often omitted by Caesar, contrary to the rule), and the object is the object clause ut ... liceat; § 563 (331); B. 295. i; G. 546 and n.1; H. 565 (498. i); H-B. 530. 2. — voluntate: abl. in accordance with which; § 418. a (253. n.); cf. B. 220. 3; G. 397; cf. H. 475. 3 (416); cf. H-B. 414. a.

7 1 L. Cassius ... occisum [esse]: object of memoria tenebat, as a phrase of knowing; § 459 (272); B. 330; G. 527. 2; H. 613 (535. i. 1); H-B. 589. This defeat happened B.C. 107, in the terrible invasion of the Cimbri or Teutons, to whom the Helvetians were joined as allies. "The army of Cassius was one of six swept away by these barbarians."

7 2 sub iugum, under the yoke (hence the word subjugate). The iugum was made by sticking two spears in the ground and laying another across them above. To pass under this was equivalent to laying down arms by a modern army.

7 3 concedendum [esse]: impersonal depending on putabat, thought that no concession should be made (lit. that it must not be yielded). — homines: subject of temperaturos [esse], depending on existimabat.

7 4 inimico animo: abl. of quality; cf. bono animo, 6 8. — data faculitate: abl. abs., expressing a condition; § 496, 521. a (292, 310. a); B. 227. 2. b; G. 593. 2; H. 575. 9 (507. 3. n.7); H-B. 421. 6; cf. 4 2. — faciundi: gerundive; § 504 (297, 298); B. 339. 1; G. 428; H. 626 (544. 1); H-B. 612. 1.

7 5 iniuria: not "injury" in our sense, but wrong, outrage.
76 dum ... conveniunt: notice again the purpose expressed in this clause, until the men should, etc. Cf. qua die conveniunt, 611, and quis dicercnt, 623; § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); cf. H-B. 507. 5.

79 revertentur: subjv. for inv.; § 588 (339); B. 316; G. 652; H. 642 (523. iii); H-B. 538. In dir. disc.: diem (= time) ad deliberandum sumam; si quid velit, ad. Id. Apr. revertimini. Note the changes made, and the reasons for them.

710 Chap. 8. ea legione, with that legion (abl. of instr.). In this sentence observe how all the qualifying clauses come first and the direct objects, murum, fossam, come next before the leading verb perducit; § 596 and a (343); B. 348, 349; G. 674; H. 664 (560); cf. H-B. 623; while each relative belongs to the verb which comes next after it unless another relative intervenes,—a very convenient rule in analyzing a long and difficult sentence.

713 milia: acc. of extent of space; cf. 34; § 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387.—decem novem, nineteen: following the windings of the river (see note on 58).—murum: this rampart, or earthwork, was on the south side of the river, leaving the passage undisputed along the northern bank.

The banks of the Rhone in this part are generally rugged and steep, with sharp ravines; there are only five short reaches—a little over three miles in all—requiring defences. The current is in general quite rapid. Some remains of Cæsar's works can still be traced, according to the French engineers who surveyed the ground under the orders of Napoleon III. According to Cæsar's statement the work was continuous (this is the meaning of perducit). This undoubtedly means that, after the five accessible points were strengthened by artificial defences, the entire left bank of the Rhone, from Geneva to Pas-de-l'Ecluse (17½ English miles), formed a continuous barrier against the Helvetians. The construction of any one of the fortifications may be described as follows: Along the crest of the ridge facing the river the slope was cut so as to be vertical, or nearly so, and then a trench was hollowed. The earth dug out was partly thrown up to increase the height of the wall, and quite likely in part thrown down the hill. At all events, it seems probable that the measure of 16 feet is the distance from the bottom of the ditch to the top of the wall. Thus the work formed really little more than a trench with scarp higher than the counterscarp. Then the crest was fortified with a breastwork of palisades, behind which the soldiers were protected while hurling their missiles at the enemy. This entire series of works, with the force at Cæsar's command, could not have occupied more than two or three days. See Map, p. 5.
7 14 pedum: § 345. b (215. b); B. 203. 2; G. 365; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355.

7 15 castella (lit. little fortifications), redoubts. See treatise on military affairs, v. In them were stationed guards (praesidia). The redoubts were sufficiently numerous so that the guard from one or another could quickly reach any point in the lines that might be threatened.—quo facilius ... posset, that he may the more easily: the usual construction where a comparative is to be used; without the comparative it would be ut ... posset; § 531. a (317. b); B. 282. 1. a; G. 545. 2; H. 568. 7 (497. ii. 2; H-B. 502. 2 and b.

7 16 se invito (abl. abs.), against his will: se is used because this is a part of what Caesar had in his mind; § 300. 2 (196. a. 2); B. 244. ii. a; G. 521; H. 504 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2.—conarentur ... posset: note the sequence of tenses after the historical presents disponit and communit.

7 17 ubi ... venit: notice the difference between this clause and those above noted with cum and the subjv. This one expresses a real time and not circumstance like the others. You cannot render it by “upon the coming” or any similar phrase.

7 18 negat se ... posse, says he cannot, etc. His words would be: More et exemplo populi Romani non possum iter ulli per provinciam dare; si vim facere conabimini, prohibebo.—more et exemplo, according to the custom and precedents: always constituting the rule of conduct with the conservative Romans.

7 19 si ... contentur: future condition in indir. disc.; see the direct as given in note to l. 18.

7 20 prohibiturum [esse]: sc. se subject and eos, object.—deiecti, cast down: de in composition generally has the meaning down.

7 22 non numquam, sometimes: § 326 and a (150 and a); B. 347. 2; G. 449 and r.4; H. 656. 1 (553. 1); H-B. 298. 2.

7 23 si ... possent: practically an indir. quest. depending on conati, trying if (whether) they could break through; § 576. a (334. f); B. 300. 3; G. 601, 460. 1. (b); H. 649. ii. 3 (529. ii. 1. N.1); H-B. 582. 2 and a.

7 24 conatu: abl. of separation, following destiterunt; § 400 (243); B. 214; G. 390. 2; H. 462 (414); H-B. 408. 2.

8 1 Chap. 9. una: emphatic.—via, only the way.—qua: abl. of the way by which; § 429. a (258. g); B. 218. 9; G. 389; H. 476 (420. i. 3); H-B. 426.—Sequanis invitis (abl. abs. expressing a condition), in cast the, etc.

8 2 sua sponte, by their own influence; a rare meaning of this phrase, which is generally of their own accord.

8 3 possent: cf. note on nuntiatum esset, 6 14.
8 4 eo deprecatore (abl. abs. denoting means), by his means as advocate. — impetrarent, they might obtain (it): a purpose clause; § 531 (317); B 282; G. 545; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2.

8 5 gratia, personal influence. — largitione, lavish gifts and hospital ities: like those of old chiefs of the clan. These words are ablatives of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 444.

8 7 duxerat: this word is used only of the man who marries a wife, i.e. he leads her to his own house.

8 8 novis rebus: revolution, change in government, dat.; § 368. 3 (227. c. 3); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346, r. 2; H. 426. 1 (385. 1); H-B. 362. ii.

8 9 habere obstrictas, to keep close bound: § 497. b (292. c); B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. 1. n.); H-B. 605. 5.

8 10 impetrat has for object ut . . . patiantur, and perficit has uti . . . dent,—clauses of result; § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a.

8 11 obsides: these were persons of prominence given by one state to another as security for fidelity. If the compact were broken, the hostages, usually children of prominent persons, would be held responsible and punished.

8 12 ne . . . prohibeant; ut transeant: object clauses of purpose, depending on the idea of agreement implied in obsides . . . dent. — itinere: abl. of separation; cf. conatu, 7 24.

8 14 Chap. 10. renuntiatur, word is brought back: i.e. by messengers sent to ascertain, as the prefix re implies; the subject is the clause Helvetiis esse, etc.; see note on 6 24.

8 15 Santonum: a people north of the Garonne, on the Bay of Biscay. This is so far from the borders of the province as to show that Caesar was only searching for a pretext. But the conquest of Gaul was already determined upon, and the warlike Helvetii were too dangerous a people to be allowed to add their strength to that of the present inhabitants.

8 16 Tolosatium: the people of Tolosa, the modern Toulouse.

8 17 Id refers to the Helvetii marching into the territory of the Santones. — fieret: the subj. of indir. disc. after intellegebat.

8 18 futurum [esse] ut . . . haberet, etc., it would be to the great peril of the province that it should have, etc.: § 561. n.1 (329. n.); B. 294; G. 506; H. 571 (540); H-B. 238.—ut . . . haberet: a substantive clause of result used as the subject of futurum [esse]: § 537, 569 (319, 332. a); B. 284. 1, 297. 2; G. 553. 4. r. 8; H. 571. 1 (501. 1. i); H-B. 521. 3. a. Caesar's thought would be: "Id si fiet, magno . . . futurum est ut populus Romanus . . . habeat."

8 19 locis (loc. abl.) patentibus, in an open country: the southwest part of Gaul is a broad river valley, giving easy access to the province.
I. 9.10.] The Helvetian War. 267

8 20 finitimos: predicate, have as neighbors, etc.
8 21 munitioni . . . praeficit, he put in command of the fortification.—Labienum: this was Cæsar's best officer, a prominent and influential politician of strongly democratic sympathies. He served Cæsar faithfully through the Gallic wars, but when the Civil War broke out he joined what he conceived to be the party of the republic, went over to Pompey, and was killed at Munda, B.C. 45.

8 22 legatum, aide, lieutenant: no English word exactly translates this word.—magnis itineribus: cf. quam maximis potest itineribus, 6 16. It is the usual phrase for forced marches of an army. The ordinary day's march of the Romans was about 15 miles; a magnum iter was from 20 to 25 miles.—Italiam: probably only into his province of Cisalpine Gaul, but this was already regarded as a part of Italy.

9 1 Aquileiam: an important Roman colony at the head of the Adriatic. It continued to be the chief port of trade for this region till outgrown by Venice.—qua proximum iter: i.e. by way of Turin and Susa, by Mt. Genèvre. Ocelum has been variously identified with Briançon and probably Grenoble.

9 5 compluribus . . . pulsis: the order is interlocked, his agreeing with pulsis; § 597. h (344. h); B. 350. 11. d.

9 7 Vocontiorum: this people extended from the Durance to the Isère.

9 8 Allobrogum: these extended as far south as the Isère, and had possessions north of the Rhone in the sharp angle at St. Didier.

9 9 Segusiavos: these were west of the Rhone in the region of Lyons and opposite Vienne. They probably extended across the Saône above Lyons, so that Cæsar only crossed the Rhone above its junction with the Saône and did not cross the Saône also. He evidently had his camp in the heights above Lyons in the angle of the two rivers. His army amounted to six legions of nearly 25,000 men and an uncertain number of Gallic cavalry. He had doubtless been joined by Labienus with his legion from.
Geneva, though that fact is not mentioned. Cæsar evidently went beyond his province without the order of the Senate, hence his explanatory tone.

9 11 Chap. ii. *iam, by this time.*—*angustias*: i.e. the Pas-de-l’Ecluse before described; see Figs. 5, 6. The entire train of the Helvetii has been reckoned at 8500 four-horse wagons, extending some fifty miles (cf. note on 4 23). The passage must have been extremely slow. They probably followed in the line of the modern railroad as far as Culoz, then to Amberieu and across the plateau des Dombes to the Saône between Lyons and Macon, a distance of nearly a hundred miles. It is calculated that Cæsar must have been absent two months in Italy, and the march of the Helvetians probably took about the same time. This would make the time of these events about the latter part of June.

9 12 Haeduorum: it does not appear that these occupied the left bank of the Saône. But predatory excursions may have been made across the river, and in ch. 12 the Helvetians were engaged in crossing.

9 13 *cum . . . possent, not being able, etc.*

9 15 *rogatum*: supine; § 509 (302); B. 340; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618.—*ita se, etc.*: in English supply *saying* or some such word. In Latin, after the idea of speech or thought is suggested, as here by *legatos* and *rogatum*, no further expression of saying is necessary. In dir. disc. this would be, "Ita [nos] . . . *meritum sumus, ut paene in conspectu exercitus vestri . . . liberi nostri . . . non debuerint"; i.e. our services have been such, etc., that we did not deserve to have this happen (as it has). Probably the account is somewhat exaggerated.

9 16 *meritos*: "Alone among the Gauls," says Tacitus, "the Hædui claim the name of brotherhood with the Roman people" (Ann. xi. 25). So, also, Cicero calls them *fratres nostri*.

9 17 *[eorum]*: words thus inclosed in brackets are of doubtful authen-
ticity.

9 18 *debuerint*: if this were stated not as a result but independently, the form would be perf. indic., implying that the thing had happened con-
trary to what ought to be. According to the Latin idiom, the same tense is retained in such cases, contrary to the sequence of tenses; see § 485. c. n.² (287. c. N.); B. 268. 6; G. 513; H. 550 (495. vi); H-B. 478. The English idiom is *that our lands, etc.*, *ought not to have been*, etc., putting the past idea into the infin.; § 486. a (288. a); B. 270. 2; H. 618. 2 (537. 1); H-B. 582. 3 a. ft.².—*Haedu Ambarri, the Hædui near the Arar* (or Saône), occupying the angle between that river and the Rhone. They were evi-
dently closely akin to the Hædui and were their allies.

9 19 *necessarii*, bound by *necessitudo*, or community of interests of any kind.—*consanguinei, akin by blood.*
9 20 depopulatis agris . . . prohibere: i.e. their lands were already wasted, and it was with difficulty that they could keep off, etc.; see § 496. N.\(^1\) (292. r.); B. 337. 2; G. 664. r.\(^1\); H. 639 (549. 5); H-B. 421. 4; depopulatis is pass., though from a dep. verb; see § 190. b (135. b); B. 112. b; G. 167. n.\(^2\); H. 222. 2 (231. 2); H-B. 291. d.

9 21 Allobroges: from Culzo the Rhone flows almost south and then makes a very sharp turn to the northwest. It was probably in this angle that the Allobroges overlapped the river.

9 23 sibi: § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374.—solium is a noun.—nihil esse reliqui: part. gen., a common usage with neut. adjectives; § 346. a. i (216. a. i); B. 201. 2; G. 369; H. 440. 5. N. (397. i); H-B. 346; i.e. they had nothing left, etc.; the land was completely stripped.

9 24 non exspectandum [esse]: impers., as this construction is always passive. Translate by the act., He must not, etc.; see § 374 (232); B. 189. i; G. 355. 251. i; H. 302. 7, 431 (301. 2, 388); H-B. 373. i.

9 25 sociorum: the Helvetians would be sure to levy upon the allies of the Romans wherever they found them.

9 26 Santonos: cf. B 15. —pervenirent: § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5. The subjv. is used because of the idea, they should come, technically called purpose.

10 1 CHAP. 12. flumen, etc., the Arar (Saône) is a river which flows through, etc.; not between, which would be expressed by dividit. The Saône joins the Rhone about seventy-five miles southwest of Lake Geneva.

10 2 lenitate, sluggish current, abl. of description.

10 3 in . . . fluid: indir. quest., subject of iudicari possit: see § 574. N. (334. n.); B. 300; G. 467; H. 649. ii (529. i); H-B. 537.

10 4 ratibus, rafts of logs; lintribus, canoes of hollowed logs, joined to make a kind of bridge.—transibant: notice the imperf.; they were in the act of crossing.

10 5 partis: object of duxisse; flumen, governed by trans in composition; § 395 (239. b); B. 179. i; G. 331. r.\(^1\); H. 413 (376); H-B. 386.

10 7 citra: i.e. on the east side.—Ararim: for the acc. in im, see § 74. d, 75. a. i (55. d, 56. a. i); B. 38. i; G. 57. i; H. 102. 2 (62. iii. 1); H-B. 88. i. It is to be noticed that Gallic names were felt by the Romans as Greek, and were treated accordingly.—reliquam = rectam: in fact, this adjective is, from its meaning, a kind of participle.—de tertia vigilia: the night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four equal watches, the third beginning at midnight. This movement took place soon after (de) the watch began.
10 10 eos impeditos, etc.: the emphasis gives a force like "while these were hampered and not expecting, he engaged them," etc. In Latin the two sentences are made into one; such telescoping of two coördinate ideas is almost regular in Latin.

10 11 concidit: see Vocab. — mandarunt = mandaverunt: § 181. a (128. a); B. 116. 1; G. 131; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163.

10 12 pagus: this "district" (Tigurinus) was about the modern Zurich. The inhabitants of the pagus probably composed a clan, and formed a division of the force.

10 15 L. Cassium: see 7 1, 2.

10 17 deorum: this reference to a special providence is noticeable in so stern a realist as Cæsar, and was possibly for political effect. Yet he often speaks of fortuna as powerful in human affairs (cf. Bk. vi. ch. 42), and mentions divine omens which accompanied his victory over Pompey (Bell. Civ. iii. 105). A disbeliever in the superstitions of his day, he yet seems to acknowledge the presence of a controlling power. — quae pars . . . intulerat . . . ea . . . persolvit, render that part which, etc.: see § 307. b. N. (200. b. n.); cf. B. 251. 4; G. 620; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6.

10 19 princeps poenas persolvit, was the first to pay the penalty: § 290 (191); B. 239; H. 497. 3 (442. N.); H-B. 243; referring to the complete overthrow of the rest later. Punishment was regarded among the ancients, not as suffering to be inflicted, but as of the nature of a fine or penalty to be paid; hence sumere, capere, to inflict, and dare or solvere, to suffer.

In 1862 numerous remains buried in two trenches were discovered near this spot, possibly of those slain in this battle.

11 1 inuiarias, wrongs, not simply damage, as the word came to mean afterwards. From Cæsar's point of view, an offensive war against Rome is necessarily wrong.

11 2 soceri: L. Calpurnius Piso, father of Cæsar's wife, Calpurnia (Shakespeare's Calpurnia), and consul of the present year (see end of ch. 6). — legatum: notice how carefully titles are given, a matter of military and social etiquette; cf. consulem, 10 15.

11 4 Chap. 13. reliquas: the emphasis on this word displaces the connective ut, which would naturally stand first in its clause.

11 5 consequi, overtake (hence the frequent meaning acquire). — pontem . . . faciendum curat, has a bridge made: § 500. 4 (294. d); B. 337. 7. b. 2; G. 430; H. 622 (544. 2. n.2); H-B. 612. iii. — pontem: see chapter on military affairs, vi.

11 7 cum . . . intellegentur: § 546 (323. 325); B. 288. 1. b; G. 585; H. 600. ii. 1 (521. ii. 2); H-B. 525; cf. notes on 4 12, 6 14, 7 17. Here cum may be translated when, but the clause gives the state of mind of the
Helvetii as the main feature of the situation, and really expresses no time at all, but circumstance only, hence the subjunctive.—id: object of fecisse.

11 8 diebus XX, in the course of twenty days: § 423 (256); B. 231; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439.—ut...transirent: this clause is in app. with id, but, as it is through that app. the object of fecisse, it takes the result construction just as if it depended immediately on the verb of effecting; cf: note on 4 17; and see § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a. N.

11 9 legatos: a participle of lego (depute), used as a noun; hence, diplomatically envoy or ambassador, and in military affairs lieutenant.

11 10 Divico: now an old man, since the battle in which he was commander took place forty-nine years before. It was, of course, a piece of arrogance to send him.

11 12 si pacem, etc.: Direct,—

Si pacem p. R. cum Helvetiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvetii, ubi eos tu, Caesar, constitueris atque esse volueris (or Caesar constituerit...voluerit); sin bello...perseverabit, reminiscere et veteris incommodi p. R. et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus es, cum ei qui flumen transierant suis auxilium ferre non possent, noli ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtutis tribuere, aut nos despicere; nos ita a patribus maioribusque nostris didicimus ut magis virtute contenderemus (contendamus) quam dolo aut insidiis niteremur (nitamur). Qua re noli committere ut is locus ubi constitimus ex calamitate...nomen capiat aut memoriam prodat.

This discourse, as well as Cæsar’s answer, is confused by a partial identification of Cæsar and the Roman people. Hence, many of the forms might be either third person as referring to the Roman people, or second or first as addressed to Cæsar, or spoken by him.

The indirect discourse is found in almost all languages, and each one has its own methods of change from the direct. In English it is regularly introduced by that. This word, however, is often omitted, in which case only the persons and the tenses are changed to fit the new relations. Dependent clauses keep their connectives, but change, like others, their persons and tenses. In long passages, if that is omitted, parenthetical phrases are frequently introduced to keep the connection of the thought, like “he said,” “he asked,” “he urged,” “he begged.” The passage here may be translated: “If the Roman people would make peace, etc., [that] the Helvetti would go...and remain where Cæsar should settle them and desire them to be; but if they (the Roman people) should persist in pursuing them, etc., let him remember [he said] (or he begged him to remember), etc. As to the fact that (because) he had attacked, etc., he should
not ascribe it, etc., or despise them (the Helvetians). [That] they had [he said] been taught rather to contend, etc. Let him therefore not allow that place...to be," etc. So in 12 s, num...posse, "could they, he asked."

11 13 in eam partem...ubi, to whatever part, i.e. of Gaul. They were not, however, to be turned back from their migration.

11 15 bello: note the emphatic position as opposed to emphatic pacem, l. 12. — reminisceretur, subjv. for inv. of the dir.: he should remember, or let him remember.

11 16 incommodi, disaster (lit. inconvenience), a euphemism: cf. "the late unpleasantness" for our Civil War. For the government of the gen., see § 350. c (219); B. 206. 2; G. 376; H. 454 (406. ii); H-B. 350.

11 17 quod: conj., as to the fact that; § 572. a (333. a); B. 299. 2; G. 525. 2; H. 588. 3. n. (516. ii. 2, n.); H-B. 552. 2. — pagum: the Tigurini.

11 18 suis, to their people: § 302. d (190. a); B. 236. f; G. 204. n.1; H. 494. 1 (441. 1); H-B. 250. 2. a.

11 19 ne tribueret, he should not ascribe it: cf. reminisceretur, l. 15.

11 21 contenderent, niterentur: subjv. of result.—dolo, craft; insidiis, ambuscade. For these ablatives, see § 431 (254. b); B. 218. 3; G. 401. n.6; H. 476. 3 (425. ii. 1, n.); H-B. 438. 1.

11 22 ne committeret ut, etc.: § 568. n.1 (332. e); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 566. 1 (498. ii. n.2).—ubi constitissent, where they had taken their stand.

12 1 Chap. 14. eo sibi, etc.: Direct,—

Eo mihi minus dubitationis datur, quod eas res quas legati Helvetii commemoraverunt (or vos commemorastis) memoria teneo, atque eo gravius fero, quo minus merito populi Romani acciderunt; qui si...sibi conscius fuisset, non fuit difficile cave re; sed eo deceptus est, quo neque commissum a se intellegebat qua re timeret, neque sine causa timendum putabat. Quod si...oblivisci velit (velim), num etiam recentium inuir iarum, quod me invito iter...temptastis, quod Haeduos,... vexastis, memoriam deponere potest (possunt)? Quod vestra victoria...gloriamini, quodque tam diu vos impune inui rias tulisse admiramini, eodem pertinet. Consuerten enim di immortales quo gravius homines...do leant, quos pro scelere eorum ulisci volunt...his...impunitatem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsides a vobis mihi dabuntur, uti ea quae pollicemini [vos] facturos intellegam, et si Haeduis de inui ris quas...intulistis...satisfacietis [ego], vobiscum pacem faciam.

12 1 eo (cf. note on quo minus, l. 3) minus...dari, he had all the less hesitation.—dubitationis: § 346. a. 2 (216. a. 2); B. 201. 2; G. 369; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.
123 eo gravius... quo minus, he was the more incensed... in that
... not, etc.: § 414. a (106. c, 250. R.); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); cf.
H-B. 424 and a.
124 qui si... fuisset, now if they (the Roman people) had been.
125 non fuisse (for fut of dir. disc.): translate as if futurum fuisse,
it would not have been; and see § 437. a (264. b, 308 d. N.); B. 271. 1. b,
322. b; G. 597. 3 (a); H. 525. 2, 583 (476. 5, 511. 1. N.8); H-B. 582. 3. a.
N.2—eo deceptum [esse], they had been deceived by this.

126 quare timeret = propter quod, with quicquam for its understood
antecedent. The clause stands as subject of commissum [esse], which in
turn depends on intellegaret: because they (the Roman people) did not know
they had done anything to cause them to fear.
127 quod si... vellet, but if they (or he) should consent to forget, etc.: §
397. a (240. b); B. 185. 2; G. 333. 1, 610. R.1; H. 510. 9 (453. 6); H-B.
388. a.—contumeliae: for construction, cf. incommodi, 11. 16.
128 num... posse, could they (or he), he asked, etc.: § 586 (338); B.
315. 2; G. 651. R.1; H. 642. 2 (523. ii. 2); H-B. 591. a. The infin. is used
because the question is not a real one expecting an answer, but a rhetorical
one asked for effect, and implying its own answer. Such questions are
treated in indir. disc. as declarative sentences. — iniuriarum depends on
memoriam below.
12 9 eo invito, against his will; we should expect se, referring to the subject of posse, but Cæsar's mind wavers between himself and the Roman people, so that the pronoun does not exactly refer to the subject.

12 10 quod . . . vexassent is a clause of fact, properly indic.: § 572 (333); B. 286; G. 525; H. 588 (516); H-B. 555; it is subjv. by indir. disc.

12 11 quod: cf. note on quod, 11 17. — suæ: i.e. the Helvetians; so se tulisse, that they had committed. — quod . . . admirarentur: the two quod clauses are used as the subject of pertinere, as for their boasting, etc., and as for their wondering, etc., it tended in the same direction; i.e. it all belonged together in the divine purpose of exalting them expressly to make the fall more marked. "Divico had not said anything in the way of direct boasting. This eloquent passage was perhaps an answer to his manner, or to the fact that he was the same Divico who had slain Lucius Cassius."

12 13 consuesse: present in force; § 205. N.² (143. c. N.); B. 262. a; G. 175. 5; H. 299. 2 (297. i. 2); H-B. 487.

12 14 quo: cf. note on 7 15.

12 15 quos . . . his, to grant an interval of prosperity and longer impunity to those whom they wish to punish for their guilt; the relative clause, as usual, preceding: § 308. d (201. c); G. 620; H. 683. 2. N. (572. ii. N.); H-B. 284. 5. Observe the change to primary tenses, when the language of Cæsar expresses a general truth.

12 18 cum, though: § 549 (326); B. 309; G. 587; H. 598 (515. iii); H-B. 526. — sibi, to him, Cæsar.

12 19 facturos [esse]: sc. eos. — Haeduis: dat. after satisfaciant supplied from the next clause, pay damages.

12 20 ipsis (the Hædui): dat. after intulerint.

12 22 Write Divico's reply in dir. disc.

12 24 testem: another allusion to the victory over Cassius.

13 2 Chap. 15. equitatum. Who made up the cavalry? See chapter on military affairs, i. 2.

13 4 coactum habebat, lit. had collected, more strictly held (had in hand) after being collected: § 497. b (292. c); B. 337. 7; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. 1. N.); H-B. 605. 5. — videant: subjv. of purpose.

13 5 faciant: subjv. of indir. quest., quas being interrog. — cupidius, too eagerly: § 291. a (93. a); B. 240. 1; G. 297. 2; H. 498 (444. 1); H-B. 241. 2. — novissimum agmen, the rear; agmen is the army in line of march (ago), and its newest part is that which comes along last. See chapter on military affairs, vi.

13 6 alieno loco, on unfavorable ground; so suo would be favorable (cf. "one's own ground"). For construction, see § 429. 1 (258. f. 1); B. 228. 1. b; G. 385. N.¹; H. 485. 1 (425. ii. 2); H-B. 436.
13 a equitibus: abl. of means.
13 10 novissimo agmine (loc. abl.), at their rear. — proelio: abl. of manner or means.
13 12 satis habebat, held it sufficient. — hostem ... prohibere: in a kind of pred. agreement with satis, as object of habebat. — rapinis: § 400 (243); B. 214. 2; G. 390. 2; H. 462 (414. 1); H-B. 408. 2.
13 13 ita ... uti, in such a way that (correlative). — dies: cf. with diebus, 11 8, and note the difference between the acc. and the abl. of time.
13 15 quinis aut senis: distributives, implying that this was the constant or average daily distance between the two armies. They apparently marched along the Saône, in the direction of Châlon. Their exact route from the Saône towards Autun is uncertain. The country here is very irregular and broken; so that it was impossible for Caesar to get any advantage by a rapid march or by an attack on the Helvetic rear. He consequently followed them, watching his chance. — milibus: § 406 (247); B. 217; G. 296; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416. d.
13 17 Chap. 16. Haeduos frumentum, demanded corn of the Haedu.: § 396 (239 c); B. 178. 1. a; G. 339; H. 411 (374); H-B. 393.
13 18 essent polliciti: subjv. because of the implied indir. disc., which (he said) they had promised. — flagitare: histor. infin.; § 463 (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610 (536. 1); H-B. 595. Notice that this construction, like the imperfect tense, only describes a situation, and never advances the narrative. The word expresses an earnest and repeated demand accompanied with reproaches. — frigora, the cold seasons, or spells of cold; not the cold in general. The climate of Gaul in Caesar's day was much colder than that of France now. The change has come from clearing away the forests and draining the marshes, which then covered much of the country.
13 20 frumenta: the plur. is regularly used of standing grain. The crops of grain were not ripe because it was too early in the season (about the last of June); the green fodder (pabuli) was scarce because Caesar was following in the path of the Helveticans, whose thousands of cattle had almost swept the country bare. — ne ... quidem, not even: § 322. f. (151. e); B. 347. 1; G. 448. 2; H. 569. iii. 2.
13 22 frumento: abl. after uti. — flumine: § 429. a (258. g); B. 218. 9; but G. 389; H. 476 (420. 1. 3); H-B. 426. — navibus: § 409 (248. c. 1); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423. — propterea ... quod: see 1 6.
13 23 ab Arari: i.e. towards the valley of the Loire, westerly, but by what road is unknown.
13 25 conferri, etc. [frumentum]: a climax. They said it was being gathered, it was on the way, it was already at hand.
14 1 quo die: note the repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause, but do not translate it; see § 307. a (200. a); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4.

14 2 metiri, serve; see chapter on military affairs, IV. f.

14 4 Diviciaco et Lisco: abl. in apposition with principibus.—summo magistratui praerat, held the chief office, of which the Celtic title was guergbreth, “executor of judgment,” represented in Latin by vergobretus.

14 6 in suos, over his people.

14 7 posset: sc. frumentum. For the subjv., see § 593 (342); B. 324; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.

14 8 propinquis, with the enemy so near: not attribute, but predicate; an abl. abs.

15 1 sublevetur: cf. essent polliciti, 13 18, and note; also sit destinatus just below; § 592. 3 (341. a); B. 323; G. 508. 3; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 2. a.

15 4 Chap. 17. quod: sc. id, object of proponit.

15 5 esse non nullus, etc.: Direct,—

Sunt non nulli quorum auctoritas ... valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hi ... multitudinem deterrent ne frumentum conferant quod debent: praestat, si iam principatum ... obtinere non possunt, Gallorum ... imperia ... perferre; neque dubitant quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, ... libertatem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem vestra (or Romanorum) consilia quaeque in castris gerantur (geruntur) hostibus enuntiatur; hi a me coerceri non possunt. Quin etiam, quod necessario ... coactus Caesari (tibi) enuntiavi, intellego ... quanto id cum periculo fecerim, et ob eam causam quam diu potui taci.

15 6 privatim plus possint, have more power in private station: see note on 3 20.

15 7 improba oratione, reckless talk.

15 8 ne ... conferant, from bringing: § 558. b (331. c. 2); B. 295. 3; G. 548; H. 596. 2 (505. ii); H-B. 502. 3. b.

15 11 neque dubitare quin: § 537. a (319. a); B. 284. 3; G. 555. 2; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. b.—superaverint: perf. subjv.—una: an adv.

15 12 Haeduis: dat.; § 558 (229); B. 188. 2. d; G. 347; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371.—sint erepturi: the first periphrastic conjugation. It almost equals eripiant, but emphasizes the future intention of the Romans.

15 14 a se: i.e. by Liscus, as chief magistrate.—quod ... enuntiarit: cf. 11 17, 12 11, and notes.

15 15 coactus, on compulsion (lit. being forced).
The Helvetian War.

15 16 quanto . . . fecerit: cf. quas . . . faciant, 13 5 and note. — id: i.e. quod . . . enuntiarit.

15 19 Chap. 18. pluribus praesentibus, in the presence of many; observe that the abl. abs. will rarely bear a literal translation, but its force must be brought out in various ways.

15 20 iactari, bandied about (frequentative of iacio).

15 21 Liscum retinet, [but] keeps Liscus. The omission of the conj. (asynedeton) is very common in Caesar’s rapid narrative. — ex solo, from him in private.

15 22 secreto—(from secerno), each by himself.

15 23 esse vera (sc. haec), that the facts are these. — ipsum esse Dumnorigem, etc.: Direct,—

Ipse est Dumnorix . . . cupidus rerum novarum. Compluris annos portoria . . . redempta habet, . . . quod illo licente contra liceri audet nemo. His rebus et suam rem . . . auxit et facultatis . . . comparavit; magnum numerum equitatus . . . alit et circum se habet, neque solum domi sed etiam apud . . . civitatis largiter potest; atque . . . matrem . . . conlocavit, ipse . . . uxorrem habet, sororem . . . conlocavit. Favet et cupit Helvetis . . . odit . . . Caesarem . . . quod . . . frater . . . est restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem . . . venit; imperio populi Romani . . . de ea quam habet gratia, desperat.

15 24 summa audacia, [a man] of the utmost boldness. The general word is rarely, as here, omitted after a proper name with an abl. of quality.

15 25 rerum novarum: the regular expression for a change of government, revolution, or coup d’etat. Such overturnings seem to have been frequent in Gaul. — portoria, customs dues or tolls, levied at the frontier; collected, apparently, as by the Romans, through publicani, who bid for the contract at public auction and made what they could above the contract price. The Hædui controlled at least a part of the Saône, which was a water-way into the centre of Gaul. It was customary among the ancients to levy tolls or blackmail on goods passing through their territories.

16 1 redempta: agreeing with vectigalia, and taken with habere, had bought in (cf. 8 9, 13 4).

16 2 illo licente, when he bid: see note on 15 19.

16 4 ad largiendum, for bribery, to buy political support: § 506 (300); B. 338. 3; G. 432; H. 628 (541. iii. N.²); H-B. 612. iii.

16 7 causa, for the sake: as always when thus following a gen. — potestiae, power, as an attribute of the person; potestas is power to do anything; facultas, opportunity; imperium, military authority.

16 8 Biturigibus: near the modern Bourges, west of the Hædui.
Notes: Caesar.

16 9 uxorem: the daughter of Orgetorix; see 3 22. — ex matre, on the mother’s side (a half-sister).

16 10 nuptum: supine; § 509 (302); B. 340. 1; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618; see Vocab. under conlocare.

16 11 Helvetii: dat.; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. 1); H-B. 362. ii.

16 12 suo nomine, on his own account: a mercantile phrase applying to business debts, etc.

16 14 si quid accidat: a mild phrase, in case of any disaster; future less vivid protasis with venire as apodosis; § 589 (337); B. 319. B; G. 658; H. 646 (527. ii); cf. H-B. 580.

16 15 obtainendi: gerund or gerundive? See 3 11 and note.

16 16 imperio (abl. of time and cause), under the rule.

16 18 quod . . . factum, in regard to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish fought the other day. The idea expressed in English by whereas, as to the fact that, and the like is regularly expressed in Latin by a quod-clause with the indic., almost independent of the rest of the sentence; cf. 11 17, 12 11, 15 14, and notes.

16 19 initium fugae: it is implied that this action was treacherous.

16 21 auxilio Caesari: § 382. 1 (233. a); B. 191. 2. b; G. 356; H. 433 (390. ii); H-B. 360 and b.

16 24 Chap. 19. res, facts; see note on 4 4. — accederent: § 546 (325); B. 288. 1. b; G. 585; H. 600. ii. 1 (521. ii. 2); H-B. 525. This word is used as a kind of pass. of addo. — quod . . . traduxisset, the fact that (as he learned) he had led, etc. The verbs in these quod-clauses are in the subjv. on the principle of implied or informal indir. disc.; cf. 13 18, 15 1, and notes.

16 25 inter eos: i.e. the Helvetii and Sequani. — dandos: cf. pontem faciendum curat, 11 5 and note.

16 26 iniusu suo, etc., without his authority or that of the state. For form, see § 94. c (71. b); B. 57. 1; G. 70. A; H. 143. 1 (134); H-B. 106. 1; here suo is equivalent to a genitive.


16 28 causae: gen. depending on satiis, which is used as a noun. — in eum . . . animadverteret, should proceed against or punish him (see Vocab.): a clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283. 1; G. 631. 1; H. 591 (503); cf. H-B. 521. 1.

17 3 quod . . . cognoverat, that he well knew, etc. (the present inceptive, cognosco, having the meaning to learn). This clause, in apposition with unum (only one thing), might in English be introduced by some such word as namely.
17 4 studium, attachment, as a partisan.
17 5 voluntatem, good will, as a friend. Note the absence of connectives in vivid narration.
17 6 eius: i.e. of Dumnorix.—supplicio, punishment or execution. This word is derived from the adj. supplex, down-bent, signifying on the bended knee; i.e. either as a suppliant for mercy, or, as here, to receive the blow of the executioner.
17 7 prius quam conaretur, before he should attempt: § 556. b (327); B. 292. i. a; G. 577; H. 605. ii (520. ii); H-B. 507. 4. a.
17 10 cui, etc.: an easier construction would be cuius fidei omnes res credebat.—summam . . . fidem, full confidence.
17 11 eo: i.e. Diviciacus.—commonefacit, reminds or notifies (see Vocab.).
17 12 ipso: i.e. Diviciacus.
17 13 apud se, in his (Cæsar's) presence.
17 14 ut . . . statuat: cf. note on 6 10.—offensione animi, displeasure (of Diviciacus); ipse, which follows, refers to Cæsar: the gist of the request is in sine eius offensione. Cæsar hopes, in what steps he takes or orders to be taken against Dumnorix, not to incur the resentment of his brother.
17 17 Chap. 20. complexus: i.e. he embraces Cæsar's knees or falls at his feet.
17 18 ne quid gravius (a common euphemistic phrase), no severe measures. Notice that gravius is an adj., modifying quid (anything), a subst.—scire se, etc.: Direct,—
Scio haec esse vera, nec quisquam ex eo plus quam ego doloris capit, prop-terea quod, cum ego gratia plurimum [possem] . . . ille minimum . . . posset, per me crevit; quibus opibus . . . paene ad perniciem meam utitur. Ego tamen et amore . . . commoveor. Quod si quid ei a te acciderit, cum ego hunc locum . . . apud te teneam (teneo), nemo existimabit non mea voluntate factum; qua ex re . . . totius Galliae animi a me avertentur.
17 19 plus doloris: except as an adv., this comparative is mostly used, as here, with the part. gen.
17 20 ipse, se, suam, sese: all refer to Diviciacus; ille to Dumnorix, which is also the subject of crevisset and uteretur.
17 22 opibus ac nervis, sinecus of power, after uteretur: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.
17 23 gratiam, as well as perniciem, takes suam.
17 24 amore fraterno, love to his brother: § 348. a (217. a); B. 353. 5. b; H. 439. 3 (395. n.2); H-B. 354. d.
17 25 si quid accidisset (a euphemism; cf. incommodi, 11 16 and note): pluperf. representing fut. perf. indic. (acciderit) of the direct by sequence
of tenses; a future condition; § 516. f (307. f); B. 319. B; G. 656, 657; H. 644. 2 (525. 2); H-B. 580. b and n.—ei: i.e. Dumnonrix.

18 1 futurum [esse] uti . . . averterentur, the hearts of all the Gauls would be turned from him: periphrastic fut. infin.; § 569. a (147. c. 3, 288. f); B. 115, 270. 3; G. 248; H. 619. 2 (537. 3); H-B. 472. c. Cf. 8 18.

18 4 rogat [ut] . . . faciat: § 565. a (331. f. R.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R. 3; H. 565. 4 (499. 2).

18 5 tanti, of so great account: § 417 (252. a); B. 203. 3; G. 380. 1; H. 448. 4 (405); H-B. 356. 1.

18 6 eius . . . precibus, in deference to his wish and prayers.—condonet (subjv. of result): this word means to give up a right to some one; here the just resentment of Cæsar was given up to Diviciacus.

18 8 reprehendat: why subjv.? cf. 15 16. Note the same construction in the next clause.

18 10 praeterita, things bygone, the past.

18 11 custodes: i.e. spies.

18 15 Chap. 21. qualis esset, etc.: indir. quest. after cognoscerent.—natura, character.—qualis . . . ascensus: i.e. what kind of an ascent there was at various points of its circuit.—qui cognoscerent: § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. 1); H-B. 502. 2; the antecedent of qui is eos, quosdam, or some such word, to be supplied as object of misit, he sent men to ascertain. Such a relative may in Latin always imply its own antecedent, as in English the relatives whoever and what; cf. qui . . . appellantur, 1 2 and note.

18 16 facilem: sc. ascensum.—de tertia vigilia: cf. 10 7 and note.

18 17 pro praetore, with powers of praetor. The praetor, like the consul, held the imperium or power to command; a legatus, not possessing this in his own right, might be temporarily invested with it by his commander. Labienus, and perhaps others of Cæsar’s lieutenants, had the imperium in their own right, by special grant.

18 18 ducibus: a kind of predicate apposition, as guides; § 284 (185. a); B. 168; G. 325; H-B. 319. 1.—qui . . . cognoverant: i.e. who had been of the reconnoitering party.

18 19 consili: a predicate gen. after quid sit; § 343. b (214. c); B. 198. 3; G. 366; H. 447 (402); H-B. 340. Such genitives are not rare in Cæsar, but are probably more or less colloquial.—sit: cf. reprehendat, 1 8, above.

18 20 de quarta vigilia: about 2 a.m., the sun at this season rising here about four o’clock.

18 22 rei: § 349. a (218. a); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1 (399. i 2); H-B. 354.
18 23 Sullae, Crassi: Sulla, the dictator, had conducted the war against Mithridates about thirty years before (B.C. 88–84), and Crassus that against Spartacus some years later (B.C. 71).—in: sc. exercitu.

19 1 Chap. 22. teneretur: subj. after cum, describing the situation; cf. 4 12, 6 14, 7 17, and notes.

19 2 ipse: Caesar.

19 3 passibus: abl. of degree of difference after abesse; § 425. b (257. b); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); cf. H-B. 424; not after longius; § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. r.4; H. 471. 4* (417. i. n.2); cf. H-B. 416. d.

19 4 aut Labieni: after adventus and coordinate with ipsius.—equo admissō, at full speed (with reins thrown loose).

19 6 armīs: the shields and helmets of the Gauls were distinctly different from those of the Romans; see Fig. 11, Fig. 28, Fig. 87, etc.

19 7 insignibus: i.e. devices on shields and helmets,—stags' horns, eagles' plumes, etc.; see Fig. 11. The inference from this report would be that Labienus and his force had been cut to pieces, and Cæsar must expect an attack at once. This accounts for his next movement, which was to fall back and wait in line of battle, while Labienus was vainly expecting him.

19 8 ut, as.

19 9 ne...committeret...essent: subject of erat praecptum; § 566 (331. b); B. 295. 1.

19 10 ut...fieret, in order that the attack might be made on all sides at once: a purpose clause.

19 11 monte occupato, etc., having seized the height, continued to look out for our men. Observe how the imperfects exspectabat and abstinebat describe the situation; see note on 3 5.

19 12 multo die: abl. of time, late in the day.—denique, not till: see Vocab.

20 2 quod non vidisset, what he had not seen; sc. id, object of renuntiasse.—pro viso, as if seen; viso is used here as a noun.—quo, sc. eodem, at the same interval as usual, i.e. five or six miles; see 13 15.

20 3 milia: acc. of extent; § 425. b (257. b); B. 223; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387.

20 5 Chap. 23. diei: § 359. b (214. g); B. 201. 3. a; G. 360; H. 446. 5 (398. 5); H-B. 380. c; making postridie more formal and precise.—omnino, in all (i.e. only).

20 6* cum, within which, a common Latin idiom.—metiri: cf. 14 2 and note.—Bibracte, the modern Mont Beuvray, a considerable hill, about ten miles west of Autun (Augustodunum). The place afterwards became a Roman colony, and contains numerous Roman remains.
20 8 milibus: cf. 19 3 and note.—rei frumentariae (dat.), the supply of corn.

20 9 prospiciendum: impers.; sc. esse.—itaque: words in italics are conjectural readings.—avertit: towards the north, as the Helvetii were travelling westward to reach the Loire.

20 10 fugitivos, runaways, i.e. fugitive slaves.

20 11 decurionis: see chapter on military affairs, I. 2.

20 12 existimarent: the subjv. is here used idiomatically because Cæsar was not sure of the real reason; § 540 (321); B. 286. 1; G. 541; H. 588. ii (516. ii); H-B. 535. 2. a.

20 13 eo magis, all the more: cf. note on 2 17.—superioribus, etc.: concessive, i.e. though they had gained an advantageous position, still they did not attack the Helvetii.

20 14 commisisissent: see note on existimarent above, l. 12.—eo quod, etc., for this reason, because they felt sure that they (the Romans) could be cut off from their supplies; eo is abl. of cause, not different in sense from eo (magis) above, though its origin is different.—re: abl. of separation.

20 15 itinere converso: i.e. instead of continuing on their way, by which they might have reached the coast, their vain confidence led them to return and give Cæsar the chance that he had been waiting for.

20 18 Chap. 24. id: governed by animum advertit treated as an active compound verb. The tense of the verb is perfect, as usual after postquam; cf. note on arbitrati sunt, 4 17.

20 19 sustineret: subjv. of purpose; § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

20 20 ipse: Cæsar himself as opposed to the cavalry, which he had sent elsewhere.—medio: see Vocab. and cf. § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 291. R. 2; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. N. 1); H-B. 244.—triplicem aciem: see chapter on military affairs, VII.

20 21 legionum: gen. of material; § 344 (214. ε); B. 197; H-B. 349. The four veteran legions stood side by side, each in three lines; see plan, Fig. 16.

20 22 summò: cf. note on medio, l. 20.—proxime: these new legions last raised (cf. 8 23) were not as yet sufficiently steady to bear the brunt of a battle, and so they were set to guard the camp.

20 23 auxilia: see chapter on military affairs, I. 3.—[ac totum, etc.]: this clause may well be read in this connection, though many editors omit it; cf. note on eorum, 9 17. The force of ac is and thus; see Vocab.

20 24 sarcinas: see chapter on military affairs, I. 6 and IV. ε, and Fig. 14. In a regular battle these were left behind in camp. So here, they were deposited in one spot, which was to be the site of the camp when made
(muniri, 21 2) by the less trustworthy troops. Nothing is said of the baggage train (impedimenta), but it probably was sent on towards Bibracte.

21 eum: i.e. the spot chosen (locum, 20 24).—his: i.e. the soldiers last mentioned.—superiore: i.e. those who were at the top of the hill.—constiterant, were stationed; cf. § 476 (279. c); B. 262. a; G. 241. 3. r.; H. 538. 4 (471. 3); H-B. 487.

21 cum omnibus suis carris, etc.: i.e. not sending a force of fighting men, but following with their whole train. It seems to have been the habit of these peoples to go to battle with their families and their carts for encouragement as well as for defence.

21 confertissima acie...phalange facta: see introductory chapter on Gaul and the Gauls.

21 reecto, etc.: the ancient cavalry were no match for any considerable number of foot-soldiers, and hence were not depended upon for the main engagement. They opened the fight, but were expected to flee as soon as the foot advanced.

22 Chap. 25. suo [equo remoto], etc.: i.e. his own and those of the officers and staff. This was often done before an engagement (cf. Sall. Cat. 59). Caesar is reported to have said to his men, "I will mount again when the enemy run."—omnium: notice that the poss. gen. and the poss. adj. have the same sense, and so may be coördinated; cf. 19 4 and note.

22 pilis: see chapter on military affairs, IV. d and Fig. 15.

22 Gallis...impedimento: dat. of service and of person affected; § 382. 1. N. 1 (233. a); B. 191. 2. b; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360 and b.

22 pluribus, several.

22 inflexisset: subjv. with cum causal; cf. prae-starent, 2 15. —sinistra impedita, since the left hand was hampered, which carried the shield.

22 multi ut, so that in the case of many, multi being placed first for emphasis.

22 mons: see battle plan, Fig. 16.—eo: an adv.—mille: acc. of distance.

22 capto monte, etc.: i.e. after the Helvetii had gained the mountain and the Romans were going up to attack them.

22 agmen claudebant, brought up their rear. The Boii or Tulingi, with about 15,000 men, had been in front of the Helvetian line of march,
Notes: Cæsar.

and were consequently in the rear when they faced round to attack Cæsar. They now struck at his exposed right flank (latere aperto) as they came on the field from the road (hence ex itinere).

22 15 novissimis praesidio: cf. Gallis ... impedimento, l. 6.
22 16 circumvenire: sc. coeperunt.
22 18 conversa signa ... intulerunt, faced about (lit. bore their reversed ensigns upon the enemy), and charged in two divisions. The divisions stood not back to back, but at an angle, facing outward,—the two front lines facing forward, while the third met the flank attack of the new-comers (venientis), i.e. the Boii and Tulingi. The phrase conversa signa refers only to the movement of the third line, while intulerunt denotes the action of the entire army. The exact position of this battle is uncertain. It is usually placed at a point between Chides and Luzy, near the river Alêne, and about ten miles south of Mont Beuvray.

23 1 Chap. 26. ancipiti: i.e. facing in both directions.—pugnatum est: impers. expressions should not be translated literally; here, a contest went on, the fighting continued, or something of the kind.
23 3 alteri: the Helvetians; alteri: the Boii, etc.
23 4 nam: in reference to the previous sentence; i.e. they did not flee, but retired in good order, for, etc.
23 5 proelio: abl. of time.—ab hora septima: i.e. from a little past 1 P.M.; sunset was about eight, so that each of the twelve daylight hours was about an hour and a quarter of our time. In the Roman reckoning an hour was one-twelfth of the time, whether long or short, between sunrise and sunset, and varied from about forty-five minutes to an hour and a quarter.—pugnatum sit: cf. note on l. 1. For mood, cf. sint, 12 18.
24 1 aversum hostem, a fleeing enemy.—ad multam noctem, till late in the night.
24 2 pro vallo, as a barricade.
24 3 e loco superiore, from vantage-ground, i.e. the height of the carts, etc.
24 4 coniciebant, subiciebant, hurled (from above), thrust (from below). For the form of these words, see § 6. d (11. b. 2); B. 9. 3; H. 58. 6 (36. 4); H-B. 30. 1. — carros redasque: the former a two-wheeled cart, the latter a four-wheeled wagon. See Fig. 55.
24 5 mataras ac tragulas: these were peculiar forms of pike or lance used by the western nations of Europe, not yet certainly identified.
24 6 impedimentis castris quo: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.
24 7 potiti sunt: notice the use of tenses in the above passage. The narrative proceeds as far as pugnatum est (histor. perfect), then, as if
answering a question why the fight continued thus, Caesar gives a description of the situation with pluperfect and imperfects. "The Gauls had made a rampart of their carts and from this they kept discharging missiles and using other means of defence." Then the narrative is resumed in the clause with potiti sunt: cf. note on 3 5.—captus est: observe that the agreement is with the nearer subject; § 317. c (205. d); B. 255. 2; G. 285. 1; H. 392 (463. 1); H-B. 329. 2.

24 10 Lingonum: i.e. the southern part of Champagne, towards the north; see map of Gaul, Fig. 2. The chief town of that region, now Langres, is about ninety miles from Mont Beuvray. It is very likely, however, that they reached the Lingones farther west. Napoleon III puts the end of their flight at Tonnerre, sixty miles west of Langres.

24 11 propter, etc.: gives the reason of morati.—cum... potuissent: here the description of the situation (see notes on 6 14, 7 17, 11 7) is so clearly the cause of the main action that we may translate cum since and refer the subjv. to cum causal (cf. cum praetarent, 2 15; cum inflexisset, 22 8).

24 13 Lingonas: Greek form of the acc. common in these names of tribes; § 81, 82 (63. f, 64); B. 47. 3; G. 66. 4; H. 109. 5 (68); cf. H-B. 95.

24 14 qui si iuvisseret, for if they should, etc.; the direct would be si iuveritis.—se, etc. = se (Lingonas) eodem loco habiturum (esse) quo Helvetios (haberet).

24 20 Chap. 27. eos: i.e. Helvetios.

24 21 essent: subjv. of integral part or attraction; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.—iusisset: i.e. Caesar; this change of subject, though unusual in Latin, is justified by the mention of eum in l. 18.

24 22 qui... perfugissent: i.e. fugitive slaves. Caesar in his demand would say qui perfugerunt, but the subjv. is used in the indir. form; § 592. 2 (341. c); B. 323; G. 663. 2; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1. a.

24 24 conqueruntur, conferuntur: to express the pass. it is often better in English to use the act. form, while they were hunting these up, etc.; the present tense is regular with dum; § 556 (276. e); B. 293. 1; G. 229. r.; H. 533. 4 (467. 4); H-B. 559.

24 25 Verbigenus: from the parts between Berne and Lucerne.

24 26 perterriti: agreeing with the persons referred to in milia.—ne armis, etc.: i.e. either in sheer desperation or in the hope of escape. Note that after verbs of fearing ne is translated by that or lest.

25 2 occultari, be hid from Caesar; ignorari, unknown to anybody.

25 3 existimarent: the supposed reason of the Helvetii, hence the subjv.; § 540 (321); B. 286. 1; G. 541; H. 588. ii (516. ii); H-B. 535. 2. a; cf. 20 18 and note.

25 4 contenderunt ad, made (rapidly) for.
Notes: Caesar.

255 Chap. 28. quod: accustom yourself to the common use of the relative, where our idiom expects a demonstrative or personal. — quorum: the antecedent is his (dat.) following imperavit, the dir. object of which is uti... reducterent.

256 sibi: dat. of reference; § 378 (235. b); B. 188. i. n.; G. 352; H. 425. 4 (384. 4. n.8); H-B. 370. — purgati: perfect participle used as an adj.; § 495 (291. b); B. 337. 2; G. 250. r.2; H. 640. 3 (550. n.2); H-B. 320. iii.

257 reductos... habuit: i.e. he massacred them all.

258 in deditio nemac accept: by this act they became formally the subjects of the Republic, and were entitled to its protection, as well as required to obey its requisitions and pay tribute.

2511 reverti, turn back (from a march or journey; redire, go back, from a place of rest). — frugibus: grain and other field produce.

2512 tolerarent: best regarded as a purpose clause like, “nothing [for] to eat,” — § 531. 2 (317),— but referred by many grammarians to the “characteristic” use of the relative; B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 1 (503. i); H-B. 517. 2 and a. The two constructions, having grown up side by side in Latin, were very often confounded.

2513 ipsos: the Helvetians and their allies as opposed to the others who were to provide food.

2514 ea ratione, with this view.

2518 Allobrogibus: these were within the Province, but the Latin often adds an explanatory word by means of que. The Helvetii were thus in the Roman manner stationed as a kind of colony on the frontier towards Germany. The wisdom of the Romans in the defence of their Empire is not less remarkable than their prowess in war.

2519 petentibus Haeduïs, to the Haedui, at their request: dat. after concessit, of which the object is ut Boîos conlocarent. The Haeduï were anxious for this accession to their strength because they were oppressed by the Sequani (cf. 27 21 ff.). It will be remembered that the Boii were emigrating when they joined the Helvetians and had no proper home to return to. The Haeduï gave them land between the Elaver and the Liger rivers, and they appear later in several parts of Gaul. Their prowess in war made them valuable allies.

261 parem... atque ipsi erant, equal with themselves: § 324. c (156. a. 4); B. 341. 1. c; G. 643; H. 508. 5 (451. 5); H-B. 307. 2. a.

263 Chap. 29. tabulae, tablets, of the shape of a folding slate, with wax spread inside, written on with a pointed instrument called stilus. See Fig. 27. — litteris Graecis: not in the Greek language, but in Greek letters. These were probably learned from colonists at Marseilles, as the
Gauls had no alphabet of their own. The Druids made use of Greek letters (Bk. vi. ch. 14), but the Gauls in general seem to have been ignorant of them (Bk. v. ch. 48). Specimens of Gallic names on coins appear in the names DUBNOREX, DIVICIACOS, VERCINGETORIXS. See Fig. 29, Fig. 82.

265 ratio, an account: followed by the indir. quest. qui ... exisset.

266 possent: not the subjv. of indir. quest., but of characteristic; § 535. a (320. a); B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 1 (503. i); H-B. 521. 1. a.

2610 ad milia XCII, about 92,000. — summa, the sum; fuerunt agreeing with the plur. predicate. Deducting the Boii, who were adopted by the Hædui, this reckoning would show an actual loss, in slain or captives (to be sold as slaves), in this short campaign, of nearly 250,000, including probably about 150,000 women and children or other non-combatants. The carnage seems extraordinary even under the conditions of ancient warfare. But, as in all battles, many more must have escaped than the record showed.

Campaign against Ariovistus. — The latter half of this Book is taken up with the expulsion of a military settlement of Germans, which had been made a few years before under Ariovistus, a chief of the Suevi.

The occasion of this new campaign was the following: The Hædui, jealous of the Sequani, who lived a little to the north, had laid excessive tolls on their trade, which consisted chiefly in the export of salted meats for the southern market. This led to a war, in which the Sequani had invited the aid of the Germans under Ariovistus, about three years before the campaign of Cæsar. The Germans, once in Gaul, had exacted a large share of territory and proved to be grasping and oppressive masters. Meanwhile the Helvetian war began to threaten. The Roman Senate, to make safe, passed the decrees before mentioned, promising favor and friendship to the Hædui (ch. 11); and at the same time sent messengers to Ariovistus, saluting him as king and friend (ch. 35), recognizing his claims on Gaul, and, it was said, inviting him to Rome. This was the year before, in Cæsar’s consulship. Now, however, that the fear of the Helvetians was passed, Cæsar found himself obliged to take sides in the old quarrel.

Reading References on the Campaign against Ariovistus.

Abbott’s Cæsar, pp. 86–93.
Dodge’s Cæsar, pp. 82–99.
Fowler’s Julius Cæsar, chap. 9.
Froude’s Cæsar, pp. 231–238.
Holmes’s Cæsar’s Conquest of Gaul, pp. 36–46.
Napoleon’s Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 4.
Plutarch’s Lives, Cæsar.
Trollope’s Cæsar, pp. 38–44.
26 15 Chap. 30. gratulatum: § 509 (302); B. 340. 1; G. 435; H. 633 (546); H-B. 618.

26 16 intellegere, etc.: Direct,—

Intellègimus nos, tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniurìis populi Romani ab his poenas bello repetisti (repetieris), tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse; propterea quod ea consilio florentissimis rebus domos suas Helvetii reliquerunt, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque domicilio ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum ... iudicassent, reliquasque civitatis stipendiarias haberent.

26 17 populi Romani, against, etc. (obj. gen. after iniurìis).—ab his repetisset, had inflicted on them; see Vocab., and cf. 10 14-18.

26 19 eo consilio, with this design: explained by the purpose clause uti ... haberent; § 531. 1. n.1 (317. a); G. 546. n.2; H. 564. iii (499. 3); H-B. 502. 2. a.—florentissimis rebus: i.e. with no plea of necessity. Translate by a concessive clause.

26 21 domicilio, for habitation: dat. of service.

26 25 concilium totius Galliae: of course Cæsar had no authority either to allow or to prohibit a congress of independent Gaul. But, considering his power and ambition, the Gaes thought it best to secure his countenance (voluntate, not auctoritate) beforehand. They also had business that specially concerned him.

27 2 iure iurando ... sanxerunt, ordained under oath [of secrecy]; the object is ne quis, etc.

27 3 enuntiaret: subjv. with ne, after sanxerunt, used as a verb of commanding; § 563. d (331. d'); B. 295. 4; G. 546. 2; H. 565 (498. 1); H-B. 502. 3. a; cf. also 6 10 and note. — nisi quibus, etc., except (to those) to whom some commission should be assigned (pluperf. for fut. perf. in dir. disc.). For omission of the antecedent of quibus, cf. note on qui ... appellantur, 1 2.

27 5 Chap. 31. eo concilio dimisso, when this assembly had been (held and) dissolved: i.e. after providing for the business now to be described. — idem (eidem): nom. plur.

27 7 secreto, apart.—in occulto, in a secret place. These words are probably genuine.

27 8 Cæsari ad pedes, at Cæsar’s feet. Cæsari is dat. of reference; § 377 (235. a); B. 188. 1; G. 350. 1; H. 425. 4. n. (384. 4. n.2); H-B. 368.

27 9 non minus, etc.: sc. dixerunt: Direct,—

Non minus id contendimus et laboramus, ne ea quae dixerimus enuntiaretur, quam uti ea quae volumus impetremus; propterea quod, si enuntiatum erit, summum in cruciatum nos venturos videmus.
id: in app. with ne... enuntiarentur.

Galliae totius factiones sunt duae; harum alterius principatum tenent Haedui, alterius Arverni. Hi cum... multos annos contendentes, factum est uti... Germani... arcesserentur. Horum primo... milia... transierunt; posteaquam agros... homines... adamarunt, traducunt sunt plures; nunc sunt in Gallia ad cxx milium numerum (more probably ad... milia numero). Cum his Haedui... armis contendunt; magnam calamitatatem pulsi acceperunt, omnem nobilitatem... amiserunt. Quibus proelios... facti, qui... plurimum ante... potuerunt, coacti sunt... obsides dare, etc. Unus ego sum ex omni civitate... qui adduci non potuerim ut iuarem aut liberos meos obsides darem. Ob eam rem... profugi et Romam ad senatum veni... quod solus neque iure iurando neque obsidibus tenebar.

Sed peius victoribus Sequanis accidit, quod Ariovistus... consedit tertiamque partem agri... qui est optimus... occupavit, et nunc... deedere iubet, propterea quod... milia hominum xxiii... venerunt, quibus locus ac sedes parentur (possibly pararentur)... Pauci annis... omnes... pellentur atque omnes Germani Renum transibunt; neque enim conferendus est Gallicus cum Germanorum agro, neque haec consuetudo victus cum illa comparanda.

Ariovistus... ut semel... copias... vicit, quod proelium factum est ad Magetobrigam, superbe... imperat, obsides... poscit, et... exempla cruciatusque edit, si qua res non ad nutum... eius facta est. Homo est barbarus, iracundus, temerarius; non possunt eius imperia diutius sustineri.

Nisi quid in Caesare... erit auxilli, omnibus... idem est faciendum quod Helvetii secerunt, ut domo emigrant, aliud domicilium... petant fortunamque, quaeacumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si enuniatasa Ariovisto sint, non dubito quin de omnibus... qui apud eum sint (sunt)... supplicium sumat. Caesar... deterrere potest ne maior multitudo... traducatur Galliamque... potest defendere.

Galliae totius: not to be taken literally, but referring to the eastern part of Celtic Gaul.

factiones duas: see note on 3 20.—alterius: notice that this word may mean the one as well as the other. It depends on which one you look at first.—principatum, the head.

Arvernos: these inhabited the mountainous country southwest of the Hædui, the modern Auvergne. They had been conquered in B.C. 121, but not reduced to a province. Before their conquest they had been one of the most powerful tribes. Apparently in the earlier wars the Hædui had befriended the Roman people from antagonism to these rivals.
27 16 contenderent: translate as if pluperf.; § 471. b (277. b); B. 260. 4: G. 234; H. 535 (469. 2); H-B. 485. — factum esse uti, it came to pass that, etc.

27 17 Sequanis: these were the rivals of the Hædui on the north. — mercede: § 416 (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478 (422); H-B. 427. i.

27 19 copias (= opes), resources. — feri ac barbari: as to the condition of the Germans, see Introduction.

27 20 adamassent (=adamavissent): § 181. a (128. a); B. 116. i; G. 131; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163. — traductos pluris = pluris (Germanos) traductos (esse).

27 22 clientis: the subject states of the Ambarri, Segusiavi, etc.

27 23 omnem . . . equitatum: of course an exaggeration; Diviciacus was himself a noble, probably a senator; while his brother Dumnorix was a commander of the Hæduan cavalry.

27 25 qui . . . potuissent, coactos esse, (they) who had once, etc., were compelled.

28 4 quo minus: following a verb of refusing; § 558. b (317. b. N.1); B. 295. 3; G. 547; H. 568. 8 (497. ii. 2); H-B. 502. 3. b; see also note on 7 15.

28 5 dicione: i.e. to do the bidding of the Sequani.

28 6 potuerit: the same in dir. disc.; § 535. b (320. b); B. 283. 2; G. 631. i; H. 591. 5 (503. ii. 1); H-B. 521. i. a and ftn. The tense has been retained, as is usual in result clauses; see note on 9 18.

28 8 Romam . . . venisse: see note on 3 20. His application was not successful. See Bk. vi. ch. 12. — postulatum: cf. gratulatum, 26 15.

28 11 peius . . . accidisse, a worse fate had fallen. Observe that a misfortune is usually said accidere, as if it fell on one, while a good thing is said evenire. — victoribus: here used as an adj., as often.

28 12 Ariovistus: supposed to be the German word Heerfürst, “prince of the host.”

28 13 tertiam partem: i.e. upper Alsace, a part of the German conquest of 1870. This was the same proportion of conquered land taken by the German invaders (Burgundians) in this very territory in the fifth century of the Christian era. Such “annexation” seems to have been the ancient common law of conquest (Liv. ii. 41).

28 14 optimus: this district (Franche-Comté) is one of the most beautiful in France. — nunc . . . iuberet: the same thing was afterwards done by the Burgundians. — altera, a second.

28 17 quibus . . . parentur = to be provided with a place for habitation (subjv. of purpose). — futurum esse uti (periphrastic fut.; cf. note on 18 i). the result would be that.
28 19 neque enim introduces an explanation admitting no doubt: for you see, for you know, for of course.

28 20 Gallicum: sc. agrum.— hanc = nostram: § 297. a (102. a); B. 87; G. 305; H. 505 (450); H-B. 271. ii. a. N.; said with some feeling of superiority or contempt. The Gauls looked upon the Germans as savages.

28 22 ut... vicerit: for mood and tense, see dir. disc.; cf. tense of potuerit, I. 6, above.

28 23 Magetobrigam: somewhere a little northwest of Vesontio (Be-sançon).

28 25 exempla cruciatusque: a so-called hendiadys. The Latin likes to dwell on an idea by giving its parts separately; edere exempla means to use every known form of (something) on the victims; cruciatus edere would mean to employ tortures. The whole combines the two ideas.

28 27 barbarum, etc., rude, passionate, and hasty.

29 1 nisi, etc., unless they find some aid.

29 2 idem: in apposition with ut... experiantur; cf. 4 17, 11 8.

29 3 ut domo emigrent: i.e. to forsake their home.

29 5 haec: notice the emphasis, as if he said: "Why! if this very colloquy should be reported," etc.— dubitare: sc. se, i.e. Diviciacom.— quin... sumat: § 558. a (332. g. r.); B. 284. 3; G. 555. 2; H. 594. ii (501. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 2. b; cf. note on poenas persolvit, 10 19.

29 7 auctoritate: i.e. his reputation and the fear it inspires.

29 9 Rhenum: acc. after trans in traducatur; § 395. N.² (239. 2. b; N.²; B. 179. 3; G. 331. r.¹; H. 406 (372); H-B. 386. a.

29 13 CHAP. 32. unos, alone: § 134. a (94. a); cf. B. 66; G. 95. r.¹; H. 175. n.¹. This whole scene is illustrative of the Gallic character.

29 15 quae esset: indir. quest. after miratus; cf. 13 5, 15 16, 18 15.

29 16 respondere: histor. infin.; cf. flagitare, 13 18 and note.

29 19 hoc: we may translate, in this respect, but for the real construction compare hoc facilius, 2 17.— hoc esse, etc.: Direct,—

Hoc est... gravior fortuna Sequanorum... quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri... audiant: absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adsit, horrent, propter quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas datur, Sequanis vero, qui... Ariovistum receperunt, quorum oppida... in potestate eius sunt, omnes cruciatus sunt perferendi.

29 20 ne... quidem: notice the position of these words before and after the emphatic word or phrase.

29 21 absentis (predicate), even when absent.

29 22 crudelitatem: object of horrent; § 274. b. (177. c); B. 175. 2. b; G. 330. r.; H. 405. i (371. iii. N.¹); H-B. 391. 1.— adesset: § 524 (312); B. 307. i. 2; G. 602; H. 584 (513. ii); H-B. 504. 3 and a.
29 23 tamen, after all, whatever they might have to suffer. — facultas: on the force of this word, cf. note on potentiae, 16 7.

29 24 Sequanis: dat. of apparent agent with perferendi; § 374 (232); B. 189. 1; G. 355; H. 431 (388); H-B. 373. 1; the Sequani must endure (changing the voice).

30 2 Chap. 33. sibi curae: dat. of service; § 382. 1 and n.1 (233. a); B. 191. 2. a; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360 and b; cf. 22 6, 22 15.

30 3 et ... et: construe after adductum, induced by both ... and. — beneficio ... auctoritate: the first refers to services which would inspire gratitude, the second to the prestige which would inspire fear in Ariovistus.

30 5 secundum, in accordance with (lit. following).

30 7 putaret: subjv. after qua re, which may be considered equal to propter quas = ut propter eas. — quod, because, or that. — Haedusos, subject of teneri below.

30 8 appellatos (pred.), who had been often called.

30 11 quod: relative; the antecedent is the preceding clause Haeduos ... Sequanos.

30 14 periculorum: pred., agreeing with Germanos consuecere, etc., he saw it was dangerous to the Roman people for the Germans, little by little, to get in the way of crossing the Rhine, etc.

30 15 sibi: : : temperaturos ... quin ... exirent, would refrain (check themselves) from going forth. — sibi: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346. 2; H. 426. 4 (385. i); H-B. 362.

30 16 ut, as; fecissent being subjv. as dependent on exirent; § 593 (342); B. 324; G. 663. 1; H. 652. 1 (529. ii. n.1. i); H-B. 539. — Cimbri Teutonique: these German tribes had been crushed by Marius (b.c. 102, 101), after having been for several years a terror upon the Italian frontier.

30 17 exirent: § 558 (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); H-B. 502. 3. b.

30 18 [praesertim, etc.]: this clause makes good sense and may be translated.

30 19 Rhodanus = only the Rhone. — rebus: dat. following occurrence [sibi]; § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376; possibilities which he thought must be met at once. In this clause two things are to be noticed: first, that the Latin regularly puts an antecedent which is in apposition with something preceding in the relative clause, e.g. "which kind," not "a kind which"; and, second, that a verb which governs the dat. cannot be used in the pass. with a personal subject. In both these respects the form must be altered in translating to suit the English idiom.
30 21 *ferendus*, etc.: in Latin the negative has an attraction for the main verb. We should say, "seemed unendurable," connecting the negative with the adjective idea.

30 23 Chap. 34. ut . . . *mitteret*: a purpose clause, subject of placuit.

30 24 *medium utriusque*, between the two.

30 25 *conloquio* (dat.), for a conference.—*velle*, etc., depends on the idea of saying in *postularent*. Give the direct words of Cæsar.

30 27 si quid, etc.: Direct,—

Si quid *mihi* a Caesare opus esset, *ego* ad eum *venisset*; si quid ille *me vult*, illum ad *me* venire *opertet*. [The first condition is contrary to fact; § 589. b (337. b); B. 321. b; G. 597. r.¹; H. 647 (527. iii); H-B. 581 and b. 1; cf. 12 4: the second is a simple present condition: § 589. a. 1 (337. a. 1); B. 319. b; G. 595. r.¹; H. 646 (527. i); cf. H-B. 536.] Praeterea ego neque . . . in eas partis . . . venire *audeo* quas Caesar *possidet*, neque exercitum . . . in unum locum contrahere *possit*. *Mihi* autem mirum *videtur* quid in *mea* Gallia, quam bello *vici* (*vicerim*), aut Caesar aut omniño populo Romano negoti *sit*.

30 27 *opus*: § 411. b (243. e. r.); B. 218. 2. a; G. 406; H. 477. iii. n. (414. iv. n.⁴); H-B. 430. 2. a.—*ipsi*: dat. of poss.; § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374. Observe in this sentence that the reflexives *ipse* and *se* refer to Ariovistus; § 298. e (195. k); B. 249. 3; G. 521. n.³; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); H-B. 263. 1; and that the demonstratives *is* and *ille* refer to Cæsar; cf. also note on 3 26.

31 1 quid . . . *se velit*, wants anything of him (lit. wants him for anything): a colloquial construction; § 390. d (238. b); B. 176. 2; G. 333. r.²; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); H-B. 397. 1.

31 5 *mirum* . . . quid . . . *esset*: a sort of indir. quest.; *it seemed strange to him*, i.e. he wondered, *what business*, etc.—*in sua Gallia*, *in* his (part of) Gaul. Notice the emphasis of *sua*.

31 7 *negoti*: part. gen. with *quid*; § 346. a. 3 (216. a. 3); B. 201. 2; G. 369; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.

31 9 Chap. 35. *quoniam*, etc.: Direct,—

Quoniam tanto *mea* populique Romani beneficio adfectus, cum in consulatu *meo* rex . . . appellatus *sit*, hanc *mihi* . . . gratiam *revert*, ut in conloquium venire . . . *gravetur* neque de communi re dicendum sibi . . . *petet*, haec *sunt* quae ab eo *postulo*: primum, ne quam multitudinem . . . in Galliam traducat; deinde obsides quos *habet* ab Haeduis *reddat*, Sequanisque *permittat* ut quos illi *habent* (*habeant*) voluntate eius reddere . . . *liceat*; neve Haedusos . . . *laccassat*, neve his . . . bellum *inferat*. Si id ita *secerit*, *mihi* . . . *perpetua gratia* . . . cum *eo erit*; si non *impetrabo*, *ego*, — quoniam
... senatus censuit uti quicumque Galliam provinciam obtineret ... Haeduos ... defenderet, — (ego) Haeduorum iniurias non neglegam.

31 9 tanto ... adfectus: see introductory note to this campaign, p. 287.

31 10 beneficio is explained by cum ... esset, and gratiam referret by ut ... putaret; the first sibi refers to Caesar and the second to Ariovistus. In this sentence the causal clause is quoniam ... putaret, and the leading verb is esse: Since, though so greatly favored by the Romans, he made such an (ill) return (hanc gratiam referret) as to grudge coming to a conference when invited, and did not consider that he ought to speak or hear about their common business, (therefore) these were the demands he made (the things he required) of him, etc. Observe that in Latin the significant word, the verb (postularet), becomes in English the noun (demands).

31 15 ne quam, not any.

31 18 eius: Ariovistus; illis: the Sequani.

31 21 si non impetraret: i.e. this pledge or assurance.

31 22 M. Messala, etc.: cf. note on 2 12. This was in B.C. 61.

31 24 obtineret, should hold (as governor), not obtain. Avoid the kindred word in translation. Words are liable to change their meanings in 2000 years. See note on obtinere, 2 1. For construction, cf. note on 6 10. — quod, so far as. — commodo (abl. of specification) rei publicae, to the advantage of the state.

31 25 defenderet: see the reasons in the note on the campaign against Ariovistus, p. 287. — se: a repetition of sese above on account of the long parenthesis.

31 27 Chap. 36. ius esse, etc.: Direct,—

Ius est belli ut qui vicerunt eis quos vicerunt quem ad modum velint imperent; item populus Romanus victis non ad alterius praescriptum ... imperare consuevit. Si ego populo Romano non praescribo quem ad modum suo iure utatur, non oportet me ... in meo iure impediri. Haedu mihi, quo-niam belli fortunam temptaverunt et ... superati sunt, stipendiarii sunt facti. Magnam Caesar iniuriam facit qui suo adventu vectigalia mihi deteriora faciat. Haeduis (ego) obsides non reddam, neque his ... bellum inferam, si in eo manebunt quod convenit stipendiumque ... pendent; si id non fecerint, longe eis fraternum nomen populi Romani aberit. Quod mihi Caesar denuntiat se Haeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, nemo mecum sine sua pernicie contendit. Cum volet, congradiatur; intellege quid invicti Germani ... qui inter anos xiv tectum non subierunt (subierint), virtute possint.

32 1 eis: governed by imperarent. The verbs are in the past by sequence of tenses: § 482, 485 (285, 287. d); B. 267; G. 518; H. 548 (495. iv); H-B. 476, 482. 1.
32 2 victis: governed by imperare. — alterius, any one else's.
32 5 suo: i.e. the Roman people. — uteretur: subjv. in an indir. quest.
32 6 suo: i.e. Ariovistus. — sibi ... stipendiarios, tributary to him.
32 8 qui faceret, in making: subjv. also in dir. disc.; § 535.  c (320.  e);
B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 598 (517); H-B. 523.
32 10 non ... neque, (on the one hand) he would not restore, etc., but
(on the other) he would not wrongfully, etc.
32 11 iniuria, abl. of manner, § 412. b (248. 5.); B. 220. 2; G. 399. N.1;
H. 473. 3 (419. iii. N.2); H-B. 445. 1.
32 13 longe ... afuturum, the name of brothers would be a great way
off from them, i.e. too far to help them.
32 14 quod, etc.: the whole clause is construed as an adv. acc.: as to
Cæsar's threat, etc.; cf. note on 16 18, and § 572. a (333. a); B. 299. 2;
G. 525. 2; H. 588. iii. N. (516. ii. 2. N.); H-B. 552. 2.
32 15 secum, sua: observe that these refer, one to Ariovistus, the
other to his antagonist; § 300 (196. a); B. 244; G. 520; H. 504. 2 (449. 6);
H-B. 262.
32 16 cum vellet, congrederetur, he might come on when he would.
32 17 inter refers to something coming between two extremes. Hence,
when applied to time, it means the entire interval between the beginning
and the end of a given period, and may be rendered during.
32 19 Chap. 37. edem tempore, etc.: in Latin the two actions are
made coördinate, but in English we should be more likely to make one
subordinate, at the same time that, etc.
32 20 Treveris: from the region of Treves in the valley of the Moselle.
— questum: supine (after veniebant, supplied from the one preceding); see
26 15, 28 8, and notes.
32 21 qui ... essent: § 592. 3 (341. d); B. 323; G. 650; H. 643 (524);
H-B. 535. 1. a. The following passage is a good example of what is called
informal indir. disc. The formal indir. disc. introduced by a verb of saying
has the main clause in the infinit., and dependent clauses in the subjv.
But often the verb of saying and the thing said are expressed together in
some one word or phrase, as here questum. In such cases the depend-
ent clauses have the subjv. just as in formal indir. disc.; cf. 13 17, 15 2,
16 24 for similar examples.
32 22 ne ... quidem: cf. note on 29 20.
32 24 pagos (see note on 10 12): these divisions were those known as
hundreds, meaning not only the people but the district they occupied. —
Suevorum: this is a general name, embracing a number of tribes that lived
in the interior of Germany. Their habits and customs are described in the
opening chapters of Book iv.
32 27 maturandum sibi (sc. esse) : impers.; § 208. d (146. d); B. 138. iv; G. 208. 2; H. 518. 1 (465. 1); H-B. 600. 3. a; cf. exspectandum, 9 24 and note.

32 29 minus facile, not very easily: i.e. it would be impossible; but this is avoided as a word of ill omen.—resisti: impers.; § 372 (230); B. 187. ii. b; G. 217; H. 426. 3 (384. 5); H-B. 364. 2; cf. note on rebus, 30 19.

33 1 magnis itineribus: see chapter on military affairs, vi.

33 2 contendit: the place from which Caesar started is uncertain. After the destruction of the Helvetic force he appears in the country of the Lingones, sixty to eighty miles north of Bibracte. In that vicinity he held a council of the Gallic chiefs (ch. 30), but whether he remained there is not stated. He probably came towards the north in the direction of Langres.

33 3 Chap. 38. tridui: gen. of measure.—viam: § 390 (238); B. 176. 4. a; G. 333. 2; H. 409. 2 (371. ii. n.); H-B. 396. 1.

33 4 occupandum: gerundive agreeing with Vesontionem.—Vesontionem: the modern Besançon, about ninety miles E.N.E. of the former battle ground. There are many Roman remains here.

33 5 quod relates to Vesontionem, but agrees in gender with oppidum: § 306 (199); B. 250. 3; G. 614. 3. b; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326. 1.

33 6 finibus: the country which he had taken from the Sequani (Upper Alsace).—processisse, had advanced. The bracketed words are probably authentic, and at any rate may be translated.—ne, following praecavendum: § 558. b (331. e. 2); B. 295. 3; G. 548; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 3. b.

33 10 ducendum: cf. occupandum above, and note.

33 11 Dubis: the modern Doubs. This name is said to mean “black river.” —ut, as it were.

33 12 spatum: object of continet.

33 13 pedum: pred. gen. after est; for construction with amplius, see § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. r.4; H. 471. 4 (417. N.3); H-B. 416. d. —sexcentorum: the real distance is about 1600 feet, but in other respects the present site exactly corresponds to Caesar's words. See view, Fig. 18.

—qua, where.

33 14 altitudine: abl. of quality or description.—radices: object, and ripae, subject of contingent.

33 15 hunc [montem], etc., this an encompassing wall makes into a fortress.

33 17 oppido: the town must be regarded as having occupied the lower ground towards the bend in the river.
33 20 Chap. 39. moratur: cf. 24 24 and note.—percontatione, questions.—nostrorum: i.e. the soldiers who inquired in regard to the enemy.

33 21 vocibus, talk.—Gallorum: these, it would seem, volunteered reports. The whole indicates a great deal of talk on the subject, and to this Cæsar attributes the panic.—mercatorum: see note on 18.—magnitudine: cf. altitudine, l. 14. Roman writers frequently speak of the huge size of the barbarians of the north as compared with themselves.

33 24 congressos, having met them.

33 27 hic: i.e. timor.

34 1 reliquis: i.e. aids or attachés (contubernales, comites), who attended the governor or commander of a province for the sake of military practice. These were often appointed from mere personal or political motives, and were of small use in the service, as it proved here. See chapter on military affairs, I. 7.

34 2 quorum . . . inlata, these on various pretexts: § 315. c (203. c); B. 253. 2; G. 319; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 279. 3.

34 3 quem . . . dicet, which, they said: § 592. 3. N. (341. d. r.); B. 323; G. 626. r.; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 2. a. N. 8. See also note on qui . . . essent, 32 21. The verb is singular in Latin on account of alius.

34 6 voltum fingere, put on a brave face (voltum refers to the expression of the face).

34 7 tabernaculis: see Fig. 128.

34 9 totis castris: § 429. 2 (258. f. 2); B. 228. 1. b; G. 388; H. 485. 1 (425. ii. 2); H-B. 436. a.—testamenta observabantur: indicating utter despair.

34 11 in castris, in service.

34 15 rem frumentarium . . . timere, feared (for) the supply of corn, lest it might not be conveniently brought in: § 564 (331. f.); B. 296. 2; G. 550; H. 567 (498. iii); H-B. 502. 4. Observe the force of ut after vereri.

34 17 nuntiabant: what did they say in dir. disc.? — cum . . . iussisset, for cum iussisset (fut. perf.) of dir. disc.—castra moveri, to break camp; the regular expression.

34 19 signa laturos: i.e. advance. This is the technical term, as the standards were planted in the ground during a halt.

34 20 Chap. 40. omnium ordinum, of all ranks. Was this usual? See chapter on military affairs, I. 7.

34 22 quam . . . ducerentur: indir. quest.; cf. 10 3.

34 23 sibi quaerendum, etc., that they had a right to inquire (lit. it ought to be inquired) or consider (lit. it ought to be thought).

34 24 putarent: see note on 32 21.—Ariovistum, etc.: Direct,—
Ariovistus me consule ... populi Romani amicitiam adpetiit; cur hunc ... quisquam ab officio discessurum indicet? Mihi quidem persuadetur, cognitis meis postulatis ... eum neque meam neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si fure ... impulsus bellum intulerit, quid tandem vereamin? aut cur de vestra virtute aut de mea diligentia desperis? Factum (est) eius hostis pericum ...; factum (est) etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina quam a nobis acceperant sublevabant. Ex quo iudicari potest quantum habeat in se boni constantia, propterea quod, quos ... inermis sine causa timuistis (timueritis), hos postea armatos superavit.

Denique hi sunt idem Germani quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi, non solum in suis sed etiam in illorum finibus, plerumque superavit; qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non potuerunt. Si quos adversum proelium ... commovet, hi, si quaerent (quaerant), reperire posunt ... Ariovistum ... dispersos subito adortum, magis ratione ... quam virtute vicisse. Cui rationi contra homines barbaros ... locus fuit, hac ne ipse quidem sperat nostros exercitus capi posse.

Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem ... conterunt, faciunt adroganter, cum ... de officio imperatoris desperare ... videantur (videntur). Haec mihi sunt curae; frumentum Sequani, ... subministrant, iamque sunt ... frumenta matura; de itinere (vos) ipsi ... indicabitis.

Quod non fore dicto audientes ... dicimini (more probably dicuntur milites), nihil (ego) ea re commoveor; scio enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, ... avaritiam esse convictam; mea innocentia perpetua vita, felicitas ... bello est perspecta.

Itaque (ego) quod ... conlaturus fui repraesentabo, et ... castra movebo, ut ... intellegere possim utrum apud vos pudor ... an timor plus valeat. Quod si praeterea nemo sequetur, tamen (ego) cum sola decima legione ibo, de qua non dubito, mihiqve ea praetoria cohors erit.

This speech, one of the most remarkable, if not of the most famous, of antiquity, stamps Cæsar as a consummate orator as well as an able general. His whole fortunes may be said to have depended on this campaign, at the outset of which he is confronted with a mutiny. By this skilfully contrived address, in which he glosses over the difficulties of the undertaking, which he must have known well, he contrives to inspire in his soldiers the Roman spirit, which was invincible whenever it was really roused. Caesar’s marvellous conquest of Gaul depended quite as much on the devotion of his soldiers as on his unequalled ability as a general.

34 25 cur quisquam indicaret, why should any one think? For the form of question, see § 586 (338); B. 315. 3; G. 651. R.²; H. 642. 3 (523. ii. n.); cf. H-B. 513. 1 (dir., indicet, dubit. subjv.). For the use of
Campaign against Ariovistus. 299

quisquam, implying a negative, see § 311 (105. h); B. 252. 4; G. 317; H. 513 (457); H-B. 276. 7.

34 26 sibi persuaderi: see note on 30 19; the subject of persuaderi is eum . . . repudiaturum.

35 1 quod . . . si intulisset, but if he should, etc.
35 2 quid tandem, etc., what, pray, should they be afraid of?
35 3 sua, their own; ipsius, his; ipse, used in this way to avoid the repetition of sua, is an indirect reflexive; § 300. b (196. a. 2. N.); B. 249. 3; G. 660. 5; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); H-B. 263. 2.

35 4 periculum (root in experior), a trial. — Cimbris, etc.: this was in B.C. 102 and 101, a little more than forty years before, and was the worst danger that had threatened the Romans since the destruction of the city by the Gauls three centuries before. See Roman histories. — cum . . . videbatur: although this clause was a part of Caesar's speech to his officers, yet the indic. is used to emphasize to the reader the reality of the fact it asserts; § 583. a (336. d); B. 314. 3; H. 652. 1 (529. N. 1, 2); H-B. 535. 1. d.

35 6 meritus: sc. esse.

35 7 servili tumultu (abl. of time): the insurrection of the slaves and gladiators under Spartacus, B.C. 73-71. These consisted, in part, at any rate, of Germans captured by Marius. A war at home, i.e. in Italy or on its borders, was called tumultus. — quos (referring to servos implied in servili) . . . sublevarent (change to pass. in translation, so as to keep the emphasis), who yet were considerably helped by the training and discipline which they had got from us. — aliquid: adv. acc.

35 9 quantum . . . boni, etc., how much advantage firmness has: § 289. a (189. a); B. 237. 2. a; G. 204. N. 2; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 249. 1; for the tense of haberet, see § 485. d (287. d); H. 549 (495. v); H-B. 482. 1.

35 10 quos . . . hos: notice the antecedent following the relative. — inermis: i.e. the slaves of Spartacus's force.

35 12 hos esse: the Germans with Ariovistus. — quibuscum . . . congressi, etc. (changing the relative clause), whom the Helvetii had often met and beaten not only on their own ground, but even, etc.

35 14 qui: i.e. the Helvetii. — tamen: i.e. though they were strong enough to beat the Germans, after all, etc.

35 15 potuerint: § 485. c. N. 1 (287. c. R.); B. 268. 6; G. 513; H. 550 (495. vi and ftn. 3); cf. H-B. 491; cf. also 9 18 and 28 6. — adversum proelium: see 27 21 ff. — si quos . . . commoveret, if any were alarmed by (lit., if the disastrous battle disturbed any).

35 17 Ariovistum: subject of vicisse.

35 18 neque . . . fecisset, and had given them no chance at him.
36 2 adortum agrees with Ariovistum and governs desperantis, with which a pronoun (cos) must be supplied in English. This may always be omitted in Latin if any word appears to show its case.

36 3 cui rationi ... hac = hac rationi cui: the noun being attracted to the relative clause; by this stratagem, for which there had been room against unskilled barbarians, not even Ariovistus himself hoped that our armies could be taken in; § 307. b (200. b); B. 251. 4. a; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6; cf. note on 30 19.

36 6 qui ... conferrent, (those) who laid their own cowardice to the pretended difficulty about provisions, etc.

36 8 desperare, etc., to be discouraged about the commander's doing his duty. Such words as officium have a wider range of meaning in Latin than similar words in English, as duty, a duty, sense of duty, discharge of duty.—praescribere: sc. officium; i.e. that they were dictating to him what his duty was.

36 9 sibi ... curae: cf. 22 6, 22 15.

36 10 subministrare, were (now) furnishing.—esse, were beginning to be.—frumenta, crops; note the plur. and cf. with meaning of the sing.

36 12 quod ... dicantur, as to its being said that they would not, etc.;

36 13 nihil, no way.—re: see note on 4 4.—quibuscumque: dat. after audiens dicto; i.e. no one has ever had a mutinous army who has not either been unsuccessful through his own fault, so that his men had no confidence in his ability, or else has been convicted of avarice by some overt act, so that they had no confidence in his integrity.

36 16 suam, his own: emphatic by position; equivalent to in his case.

36 17 innocentiam: the technical word, meaning freedom from the charge of plunder and extortion. In fact, Cæsar's fault lay just the other way,—a lavish and reckless generosity at the expense of subjects or allies. In this sentence, in opposite (chiastic) order, innocentiam is opposed to avaritiam, and felicitatem to male re gesta; a peculiarly Latin turn.

36 18 quod ... fuisset, what he had intended to defer.—repraesentaturum, he would do at once. This is a legal term, meaning to do a thing before the time.


36 22 decima legione: this was the legion which had been stationed in the province of Gallia Transalpina (cf. 6 19); it was distinguished for discipline and courage.

36 23 praetoriam cohortem, body-guard, made up of the bravest men.

36 28 Chap. 41. innata est: agreeing with the last noun; cf. captus est, 24 7.
optimum iudicium fecisset, had expressed the very highest opinion
(a technical phrase).

cum tribunis . . . egerunt, etc., urged upon the tribunes . . . to
apologize.

primorum: see chapter on military affairs, i. 7.

summa belli, the policy of the campaign. — suum . . . sed impe-

ratoris: predicates after esse; § 343. b (214. c); B. 198. 3; G. 366; H. 447
(402); H-B. 340.

satisfactione, apology; cf. satisfacerent, above.

ei, in him; after the phrase fidem habere = fidere, which takes the
dat. or abl.

ut . . . duceret (result): depends upon itinere exquisito; duc-

ret refers to itinere. The sense is, such (a route) that it led, etc., a road
which led. Cæsar might have said quod duceret but for the quod in the
previous line. The valley of the Doubs above Besançon is very narrow
and the mountains are precipitous; but, turning first to the north by the
railroad coming from Vesoul and then up the valley of the Oignon River,
the country becomes tolerably open to Villersexel and to Belfort, which
lies in the gap between the Vosges and the Jura. This pass is interest-
ing as having been for ages one of the great avenues from Germany into
Gaul. See view, Fig. 20 and map, Fig. 22. — milium [passuum] limits
circuitu, by a circuit of more than fifty miles. This must be reckoned as
the distance to be traversed before coming to the main road again at about
Belfort.

septimo die, etc.: at this time Cæsar must have been somewhere
near Mühlenhausen (Mulhouse), about seventy-five miles from Besançon (see
maps, Figs. 3, 22); at any rate, at some point beyond Belfort on the route
from Besançon to Strasbourg (120 miles), having passed beyond the gap
into the valley of the Rhine. Ariovistus was then some twenty-four miles
farther on.

a nostris: i.e. forces.

Chap. 42. quod: a relative; antecedent is id. — per se, so far
as he was concerned (a common expression with licet).

accessisset: the subject is Cæsar.

non respuit, etc.: notice the emphasis. Cæsar did not reject the
offer (as one might have supposed he would do).

iam . . . reverti, that he was beginning to return. — arbitrabatur:
the imperfect indicating the beginning of an action.

petenti [Caesari], when he asked it. — ultro: opposed to petenti.

fore uti . . . desisteret: periphrastic future (cf. 18 1, 28 17) fol-
lowing spem; that he would cease from his stubbornness.
37 23 conloquio: dat. of purpose; § 382. 2 (233. b); B. 191; G. 356. n.1; H. 433 (390. ii); H-B. 361.

37 26 vereri: sc. verb of saying from postulavit. Note the force of ne after vereri and cf. ut, 34 16.

37 27 veniret: for veniat (hortatory) of dir. disc. — alia ratione, on any other terms.

37 28 interposita causa (abl. abs.), by putting in an excuse.

37 29 Gallorum equitatu i: he had no other; see chapter on military affairs, i. 2. They numbered about 4000, about the same as a legion.

38 1 commodissimum: pred. adj. after esse, whose subject is the infin. clause eo... imponere.

38 2 Gallis equitibus, dat. following detractis: § 381 (229); B. 188. 2. d; G. 345. r.1; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371. — eo (= in eos), upon them.

38 4 si quid, etc., if there should be need of any active measures; quid is adv. acc.; § 390. c. d and n.2 (240. a); B. 176. 3; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378); cf. H-B. 387. iii.

38 5 facto: § 243. e. n.; B. 218. 2. c; G. 406; H. 477. iii (414. N.8); H-B. 430. 2. b. — quod cum fieret, while this was going on. On the use of the rel., see note on 58 9.

38 7 pollicitum: see 36 23.

38 8 ad equum rescribere, he enrolled them among the knights. The word equites means not only the cavalry service in war but a special privileged class in Roman society.

38 9 CHAP. 43. tumulus terrenus, a smooth (i.e. not rocky) hill.

38 10 spatio: abl. of degree of difference.

38 12 equis, on horseback, abl. of means. — passibus ducentis (abl. of distance, or degree of difference) = 320 yards.

38 15 se: plural. — denos, ten on each side.

38 18 appellatus esset: see note on 32 21. — amicus: sc. appellatus esset. — munera: according to Livy (xxx. 15), the gifts sent to Masinissa, king of Numidia, were "a golden crown and bowl, a curule chair, an ivory staff, an embroidered toga, and a tunic with palm-leaf figures," such as were worn in triumphal processions.

38 19 quam rem, a tribute which; see note on 30 19.

38 20 docebat, showed him. — illum: emphatic as opposed to other beneficiaries implied in the preceding.

38 21 aditum: i.e. right to approach the Senate.

38 22 ea praemia consecutum, had attained these prizes, as if he had eagerly sought them (cf. introductory note to campaign against Ariovistus, p. 287).
38 24 ipsis (instead of sibi, which might refer to Caesar alone): the Romans.—intercederent, existed between, indir. quest.

38 27 adpetissent: § 592. 1 (341. b); B. 323; G. 633; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 535. i. a. In the dir. this might be either perf. indic. or the same as here. If only priority of time is meant, it would be indic.; if there is any internal relation between the main clause and the time clause, it would require the subj. In this case the latter seems more probable.

38 28 populii, etc.: Direct,—

Populi Romani haec est consuetudo ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed gratia ... auctiores velit esse; quod vero ad amicitiam populii Romani aducerunt, id eis eripi quis pati possit?

38 29 sui nihil, nothing of their own (dignity, etc.); sui is used substantively, and is a part. gen.

39 1 quod ... adtulissent, what they had brought to the alliance; i.e. the independence and dignity which they had possessed.

39 2 posset: § 587 (338. a); B. 300. 2; G. 651. r.2; H. 642. 3 (523. ii. 1. N.); cf. H-B. 503.—postulavit eadem, he made the same demands.

39 3 ne, etc.: these clauses are in apposition with eadem, and are indirectly quoted from imperative forms of the dir. disc.

39 8 Chap. 44. transisse, etc.: Direct,—

Transii Rhenum (ego) non mea sponte, sed rogatus et arcessitus a Gallis; non sine magna spe ... domum ... reliqui; sedis habeo in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum volunatate datos; stipendium capio iure bellii quod victores victis imponere consuerunt. Non ego Gallus, sed Galli mihi bellum intulerunt; omnes Galliae civitates ad me oppugnandum venerunt ac contra me castra habuerunt; eae omnes copiae a me uno proelio pulsae ac superatae sunt. Si iterum experiri volunt, (ego) iterum paratus sum decorere; si pace uti volunt, iniquum est de stipendio recusare quod sua voluntate ad hoc tempus peperenter.

Amicitiam populii Romani mihi ornamento et praeidio, non detrimento esse oportet, idque ... hac spe petii. Si per populum Romanum stipendium remittetur et dediticii subtrahentur, non minus libenter ... recusabo populii Romani amicitiam quam adpetii.

Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traduco, id mei muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causa facio: eius rei testimonium est quod nisi rogatus non veni, et quod bellum non intuli, sed defendi. Ego prius in Galliam veni quam populus Romanus. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitus populi Romani ... provinciae finibus egressus (est). Quid tibi vis? Cur in meas possessiones venis? Provincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra. Ut mihi concedi non oportet, si in vestros finis impetum faciam, sic item vos estis iniqui quod in me iure me interpellitis.
Quod fratres a senatu Haeduos appellatos dicis, non (ego) tam barbarus
... sum ... ut non sciám neque bello Allobrogum proximo Haeduos Roma-
nis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos, in his contentionibus quas Haedui mecum
... habuerunt (habuerint), auxilio populi Romani usos esse.

Debeo suspicari simulata te amicitia quem exercitum in Gallia habes mei
opprimendi causa habere. Tu nisi decedes atque exercitum deduces ...
ego te non pro amico, sed pro hoste habebo. Quod si te interfeceró, multis
(ego) nobilibus ... gratum ... faciam; id (ego) ab ipsis ... compertum
habeo quorum omnium gratiam ... tua morte redimere possum. Quod
si discesseris et ... possessionem Galliae mihi tradideris, magno ego te
praemio remunerabo, et quaecumque bella geris voles sine ullo tuo labore
... conficiam.

39 9 rogatum et arcessitum: participles expressing cause.

39 10 sine magna spe magnisque praemís = sine magna spe magno-
rum praemiorum; hendiadys, cf. 28 25 and note.

39 11 obsides: object of habere. Translate the participles concessas
and datos by relative clauses.

39 14 sibi, on him, referring to the main subject, Ariovistus.—ad se
oppugnandum: gerundive expressing purpose; cf. 33 4, 33 10.

39 21 oportere: impers.; its subject is amicitiam ... esse.—id, not
eam, because it refers to the idea, ut amicus populi Romani esset.—si
remittatur: fut. cond.; § 516, 589 (307, 337); B. 268. 7; G. 656; H. 573. 1,
646 (507. i, 527. i); H-B. 536, 579. a; the pres. for imperf., contrary to
regular sequence, for greater vividness.

39 22 per, through the action of.

39 23 subtrahantur, are got away (by underhand means).

39 25 quod ... traducat, as for his bringing over; made subjv. by
indir. disc.

39 26 impugnandae: observe the gerundive.

40 4 provinciam: emphatic; i.e. he had a right to govern it as the
Romans did their provinces.—hanc Galliam, this part of Gaul.

40 5 ut ... sic, as ... so.—ipsi: i.e. Ariovistus (used as an indirect
reflexive); see note on 35 3.

40 8 quod, in that.

40 9 imperitum rerum: i.e. unsophisticated; for construction, cf. 18 22.

40 10 bello proximo: i.e. b.c. 62.

40 14 debere se suspicari, etc., he had ground to suspect that Cæsar,
in keeping an army in Gaul, kept it under the pretense of friendship, [but
really] for the purpose of crushing him (Ariovistus).

40 15 sui opprimendi causa: gerund; § 504. c (298. a); cf. B. 339. 5;
cf. G. 428. R.; H. 626. 3 (542. i. n.1); cf. H-B. 614.
40 18 nobilibus ... gratum: Cæsar was the recognized head of the party opposed to the Senate and nobility. Many of the aristocracy would have been glad of any safe way to be rid of him.

40 20 compertum habere has almost the force of comperisse; § 497. b (292. c); B. 337. 7; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. i. n.); H-B. 605. 5.

The three relatives qui (l. 16), quod (l. 17), and quod (l. 21) illustrate the principle that the relative, serving to connect with the previous proposition, may represent various conjunctions: if then he should not withdraw (qui = is igitur); and if he should kill him (quod, adv. acc.); but if he should withdraw (quod = sed, etc.).

40 25 Chap. 45. in eam sententiam qua re, to this effect (to show) why.

40 26 negotio: abl. of separation.—posset: indir. quest.; cf. 18 15, 29 15, 38 23. — neque suam, etc.: Direct, —

Neque mea neque populi Romani consuetudo patitur uti optime meritos socios deseram, neque ego judico Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Romani. Bello superati sunt Arverni et Ruteni ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus populus Romanus ignovit neque in provinciam redegit neque stipendium imposuit. Quod si antiquissimum quoque tempus spectari oportet, populi Romani iustissimum est in Gallia imperium; si iudicium senatus observari oportet, libera debet esse Gallia, quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluerit.

40 28 neque se iudicare, and he did not consider; notice the emphasis.

41 1 bello superatos: B.C. 121, when the Allobroges also were subdued, and the Province probably organized; notice the emphasis. These peoples had been conquered, a fact which gave special rights to the Romans.

41 3 ignovisset: but, in fact, their country lay beyond the naturally strong frontier of the Cévennes, and so could not then be conveniently occupied by the Romans.

41 4 antiquissimum quoque: § 313. b (93. c); cf. B. 252. 5. c; G. 318. 2; H. 515. 2 (458. i); H-B. 278. 2. b; Cæsar, referring to the statement of Ariovistus in 39 28, claims priority of conquest for the Romans.

41 7 suis, its own, referring through quam to Galliam.

41 8 voluiisset: the subject is senatus understood.

41 9 Chap. 46. geruntur: for tense after dum, cf. 24 24, 33 19.

41 10 tumulum: governed by proprius, which sometimes has the force of a prep.; § 432. a (261. a); B. 141. 3; G. 416. 22; H. 420. 5 (437. 1); H-B. 380. b.

41 14 periculo legionis, danger to the legion; notice that in Latin the gen. is the regular form of one noun dependent on another, whatever prep. we may use to express the relation.
41 is committendum non putabat, ut dici posset, he thought that no ground should be given for saying. The subject of committendum is the ut-clause: § 568. N.1 (332. e); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1).

41 per fidem, through (misplaced) trust.

41 elatum est, it was reported. Observe the regular mood and tense after posteaquam; cf. 417 and note.

41 omni Gallia: abl. of separation with interdixisset; § 400 (243); B. 214; G. 390; H. 462 (413); H-B. 408. 3.

41 ut, how, with indir. quest.

42 2 Chap. 47. coeptae: this verb is regularly pass. when used, as here, with a pass. infin. (agi).

42 uti constitueret: following velle; § 563. b (331. b); B. 296. 1; G. 546; H. 565 (498. i); H-B. 587. a.

42 suis: refers to Cæsar; se (l. 5) to Ariovistus.

42 eo magis: cf. hoc facilius, 217 and note. — retineri quin, be kept from: § 558 (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 554; H. 595. 2 (504. 4); H-B. 502. 3. b.

42 legatum [e suis] = one of his own (officers) as an envoy.

42 [e suis]: this may either be translated or omitted. The meaning is essentially the same. — magno . . . missurum, it would be at great risk that, etc. This meaning is given by the emphatic position of magno, etc. The Latin often puts into one sentence ideas which we are inclined to express (for emphasis) in two.

42 humanitatem: not humanity (cf. note on obtinere, 21); the word refers to his education.

42 Flacco: governor of Gaul B.C. 83. It was customary for slaves or aliens to become clients of the person from whom they received freedom or citizenship and to take his gentile name: § 108 (80. a); G. p. 493; H. 354 (649); H-B. 678. 1. Thus, here Procilius takes the name (C. Valesius) of his patron Flaccus, retaining his own as cognomen. — civitate donatus erat: § 364 (225. d); B. 187. i. a; G. 348; H. 426. 6 (384. ii. 2); H-B. 365. b.

42 qua multa . . . utebatur, which Ariovistus spoke freely.

42 in eo, in him.

42 peccandi causa, ground of offence: i.e. the Germans had no reason to commit any outrage on him, as they might on a Roman.

42 hospitio: the relation of hospes, existing between two persons of different cities or nations, made a sacred bond far closer than that of simple hospitality; see Vocab.

42 quos: cf. note on 25 5. — conspexisset: note the subjv. and cf. 4. 12, 6. 14, 7. 17, and notes.
42 20 venirent: indir. disc. for venitis.—conantis, etc.: this proceeding was evidently for effect upon the army which was in attendance. Ariovistus cried out aloud and did not allow the messengers to be heard.

42 22 Chap. 48. a Caesaris castris: this camp is placed by Napoleon III at the southern foot of the Vosges Mountains near Cernay (Sennheim), a few miles northwest of Mühlhausen, and thirty miles beyond Belfort (Fig. 20), the fortress which now defends this pass on the frontier between France and Germany. The march of Ariovistus placed him nearer the passage, so as to cut off Cæsar's supplies.

42 25 Whether this camp was between Cæsar and the Vosges Mountains or merely beyond him in the open is uncertain.

![Diagram](image-url)

**Fig. 118.—Wall and Ditch.**

abcd, fossa fastigata; ab, scarp; cd, counterscarp; mn = 6 ft.; mp = 3/4 ad; bc = 3/4 ad; rs, fascines to strengthen the earthwork; xy, valli; kl, steps.

42 26 supportaretur: § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539; and cf. 14 7, 24 21.

42 28 instructam habuit: cf. 40 20 and note.


43 3 castris: the place where may omit the prep. when the idea of means is prominent; § 429 (258. f); B. 228. 1; G. 389; H. 485. 2. (425. ii. 1. 1); cf. H-B. 446. 1.

43 4 hoc: pointing to the description which follows.—se exercuerant, were trained: § 476 (279. e); B. 262. A; G. 241. 3. R.; H. 299. 2 (297, i. 2); H-B. 487.

44 1 singuli [equites] singulos [pedites]: i.e. one apiece.

44 5 si quo ... prodeundum, if there was occasion for advancing to any place.

44 7 cursum adaequarent: Tacitus (Ger. 6) says: "They fight in combination [infantry and cavalry], and the foot soldiers, picked out of
the entire body of young men and placed in front of the line, are able to keep up with the cavalry in speed.” This method of fighting, peculiar to the Germans, seemed so advantageous to Cæsar that he employed it himself on occasion, notably at the battle of Pharsalia.

44 10 Chap. 49. consederant: cf. exercuerant, above.
44 11 acie triplici: see chapter on military affairs, VII.
44 13 castra munire: the spade and pickaxe were as familiar to the Roman soldier as the sword or javelin. See chapter on military affairs, v, also Figs. 23, 54, 69, 118, 119. In this case Cæsar had one larger camp about two miles east of the Germans, and a smaller one rather more than half a mile to the south of them.

45 8 Chap. 50. instituto suo, according to his previous practice: § 418. a (253. N.); B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 475. 3 (416); H-B. 414.
45 11 tum: note the emphasis.
45 13 quae . . . oppugnaret: a purpose clause; cf. l. 3 above.
45 19 matres familiae: according to Tacitus (Ger. 8), it was not matrons only, but women of a class, or most of them, to whom this prophetic power was ascribed.

45 20 sortibus: lots of leaves or twigs marked with certain signs and drawn by chance.—vaticinationibus: perhaps omens interpreted from the noise of waters, river eddies, etc., or possibly the mere prophetic impressions analogous to “second sight.”—declararent: § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 557; H. 571. 2 (501. i. 2); H-B. 521. 3. a.—utrum . . . necne: § 335 (211); B. 162. 4; G. 458; H. 380 (353); H-B. 234. a.
45 21 non esse fas, it was not fated.
45 22 novam lunam: a common superstition among semicivilized peoples (cf. Tacitus, Ger. 11); so the Spartans refused to advance to Marathon before the full moon.
45 25 Chap. 51. alarios: the auxiliaries as distinguished from the legionary (Roman) troops. They were usually stationed on the wings of the line of battle; hence their name, from ala, a wing.
45 26 pro: note the force of the prep. here as distinguished from its meaning in 46 1; cf. also 3 1.
46 2 ad speciem, to make a show, as if the two legions were still there, while in fact they had joined the other force at the greater camp.—acie: of the legionaries alone. The six legions in battle array (triplici acie) presented a front of more than a mile in length.
46 3 necessario: the necessity seems to have come from the fact that the tactics of the Germans demanded more room than a crowded stronghold could give. Rarely in ancient warfare was a fortified camp
assailed. The usual way was to form two battle lines between the fortified camps.

46 5 intervallis: § 412 (248); B. 220. 1; G. 399; H. 473. 3 (419. iii); H-B. 445.

46 8 eo, thereon, i.e. the carts and wagons; cf. note on eo, 38 2.

46 9 proficiscientis, (the men) as they advanced (object of implorabunt).

46 11 Chap. 52. See chapter on military affairs, VII, for description of a battle.—singulos legatos, etc.: i.e. a legatus in command of each legion. This was the beginning of a very important reform in the military organization. Caesar felt so keenly the evil of the command being divided among six tribunes that he detailed one of his legati nominally to assist the tribunes. After this time we find the legatus as the regular commander of a legion, with the six tribunes under him. On this occasion, having only five legati, he also appointed his quartermaster (quaestor) to that one of the six legions which was intended to be under his own special command.

46 13 eam partem: that, of course, would be the enemy's left.

46 14 ita acriter . . . ut, so fiercely that.

46 17 coniciendi: observe the gerund with a dir. object (pila). Give the corresponding gerundive construction.

46 20 in phalanga, upon the phalanx. This was a compact body of men with shields close locked in front and above, lapping over one another like shingles on a roof. See Fig. 68, the Roman testudo.

46 21 revellerent, etc.: i.e. they leaped upon the roof of shields, pulled them up, and so thrust their swords down from above (desuper).

46 24 P. Crassus: son of Marcus Crassus the triumvir. He next appears at the head of an important expedition against the Aquitanians, pp. 88–92.

46 25 adulescens: like our junior, to distinguish him from his father.—expeditior, more free.

46 26 tertiam aciem: the line of reserves, kept for just such emergencies.

47 1 Chap. 53. restitutum est: contrasted with laborantibus, above.

47 2 prius . . . quam . . . pervenerunt: see note on 38 27.

48 1 Rhenum: the nearest point on this river was a little below Bâle, somewhat more than five miles distant from the supposed place of the engagement. But the Germans may have fled down the valley of the Ill, reaching the Rhine near Rheinau, some fifty miles from the battlefield.

48 2 tranare contenderunt, by great effort swam across.

48 5 reliquos omnis: said to be 80,000.
48 6 duae uxorés: only chiefs among the Germans, says Tacitus (Ger. 18), had more than one wife; and this was for the sake of honor and alliances.

48 7 Sueva: for character and customs of the Suevi, see Bk. iv. chs. 1–3.

48 8 duxerat: cf. note on 8 7. Observe that duxerat in the line above has a different meaning.

48 10 Procillus: see 42 10.

48 11 trinis catenis, three (sets of) manacles.

48 16 eius calamitate, by any harm to him; eius is obj. gen., and refers to Procillus.

48 17 quicquaxm: adv. acc.; § 390. d and N. 2 (240. a); B. 176. 3; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H–B. 396. 2.

48 18 se praesente, in his presence.— ter: it was the regular usage of the Germans to consult the lot thrice (Tacitus, Ger. 10). This has come down to the present day in sundry games, etc.—consultum: impera., sc. esse.

48 19 necarefurus: indir. quest.; the dir. was a dubit. subjv., necetur. The site of this battle is still very uncertain. The account of Caesar's march would seem to point to some place from thirty to fifty miles beyond Belfort, and accordingly it has been located by some near Cernay and by others near Gemar, twenty miles farther down the valley. Perhaps it may have been even nearer the gap than Cernay. The plan in the text, that of Col. Stoffel, must be taken, therefore, only as a supposable arrangement. The country is nearly the same in all that region, and a few miles can make no difference. The great point is that for the first time a Roman army ventured beyond one of the natural bounds of Gaul into the valley of the Rhine and defeated a German horde on its own ground, as it were. The campaign against
Ariovistus settled the question of sovereignty over Gaul for several centuries to come. The Germans did not gain possession of it until after the fall of the western Roman empire.

48 24 Chap. 54. Ubii: these lived near the modern Cologne, and were deadly enemies of the Suevi, and therefore generally in alliance with the Romans (Bk. iv. ch. 3).—Rhenum: governed by proximi; § 432. a (261. a); B. 141. 3; G. 359. n.1; H. 420. 5 (391. ii. 2); H-B. 380. b and cf. propius tumulum, 41 10.

48 26 maturius, earlier; the decisive battle with Ariovistus was fought somewhere about the 10th of September.

48 28 in citeriorem Galliam: south of the Alps.

48 29 conventus: the proconsular courts held for the administration of justice. A further reason for going was to be nearer Rome and to watch political movements there.

Book Second. — b.c. 57.

The Belgian Confederacy.—The people of northern Gaul, including Flanders and the Netherlands, were far remote from any country hitherto occupied by the Roman arms. They lived amid forests and swamps hard to penetrate; they claimed kindred with the German tribes rather than with the more fickle and effeminate Celts; and they had a fierce and resolute spirit of independence, like that which their descendants, the Dutch, exhibited long after in the same regions against the armies of Spain. The Belgian tribes, and particularly the Nervii, appear to have offered to Caesar a more formidable and desperate resistance than any he met elsewhere until the great rising of b.c. 52. When their spirit was once broken, the conquest of the whole country was simply a question of time.

Reading References on the Campaign against the Belgian Confederacy.

Dodge's Cæsar, chaps. 7, 8.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 10.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 14.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 3.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 5.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 3.

49 1 Chap. i. cum esset, etc., while Cæsar was: subjv. with cum temporal; § 546 (325); B. 288. 1. B; G. 585; H. 600. ii (521. ii. 2); H-B. 524.
Notes: Cæsar.

For discussion of the principle, see notes on 6 14, 7 17, 11 7. The verb comes in this emphatic place on account of the close connection of these words with the preceding book; something like *and being thus in*, etc. See translation of this chapter in "Directions for Reading," p. lvii. — citeriore Gallia: northern Italy. — *ita uti* (= *ut*), *as*: correlative; the demonstrative word *so* is often omitted in English: § 323. g (107); G. 110. 3; H. 305; cf. H-B. 144. — *demonstravimus, dixeramus*: the perfect here implies an act done before the time of writing (see end of Bk. i); the pluperf., what took place before the time of *demonstravimus*.

49 2 adferebantur, certior fiebat: imperf. of repeated action; § 470 (277); B. 260. 2; G. 231; H. 534. 3 (469. ii); H-B. 484. Translate *kept coming in*; he was informed from time to time.

49 3 litteris, by despatches: abl. of means; § 409 (248. c); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476 (420); H-B. 423. — Belgas . . . coniurare . . . dare, that the Belgians, etc.: indir. disc., acc. and infin. following the verbal phrase certior fiebat; § 459 (272); B. 331. i; G. 527; H. 613 (535); H-B. 589; direct. — Belgae coniurant. Cæsar had not yet advanced farther north than the country of the Lingones, so that the Belgæ were as yet unattacked. — *quam* agrees with *partem*, though the proper antecedent is Belgas: § 306 (199); B. 250. 3; G. 614. r. 3; H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326. 1.

49 4 esse: indir. disc. (with subj. acc. *quam*), after *dixeramus*. — *dixeramus* is in the indic. because, though a relative clause, it is parenthetical merely, and not a part of the report of Labienus: § 583 (336. b); B. 314. 3; G. 628. r. a; H. 643. 3 (524. 2. 1); H-B. 535. 1. d.

49 5 coniurare: from the point of view of the Romans, any war against Rome is a "conspiracy"; a nation enslaved by Rome is "pacified." — obsides: see note on 8 11. — *inter se, to one another*: § 301. f (196. f); B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. i (448. n.); H-B. 266. — *coniurandi*: gerund; § 504 (298); B. 338. 1. a; G. 428; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 612. i.

49 6 has esse causas, that the reasons were as follows: the report of Labienus continued, indir. disc. — *quod vererentur, sollicitarentur*: subjv. because subord. clauses in indir. disc.; § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 541; H. 643 (524); H-B. 535. 2. The two clauses introduced by *primum* and *deinde* contain the two reasons for the conspiracy, and so the gist of the sentence. The rest, which makes the whole seem complicated, defines the classes of disaffected Gauls who, though conquered, hoped still to recover their liberty by means of their more warlike neighbors. These classes are two (partim . . . partim), but to these are added in Cæsar's words, but in a different construction (*ab non nullis*), some who had personal reasons for wishing to expel the Romans. — *ne . . . adduceretur*: subst. clause, object of *vererentur*; § 564 (331. f); B. 296. 2; G. 550; H. 567 (498).
The Belgian Confederacy.

iii); H-B. 502. 4. — omni pacata Gallia: translate the abl. abs. freely, often by an active construction, having subdued, etc., or by a temporal, conditional, or such other clause as will best bring out the thought.

49 7 Gallia: i.e. Celtic Gaul, within which the previous campaigns had been conducted; § 521. a (310. a); B. 305. i; G. 667; H. 638. 2 (549. 2); H-B. 578. 6. — exercitus noster: i.e. to subdue them in their turn.— ab non nullis Gallis: § 405 (246); B. 216; G. 401; H. 468 (415. i); H-B. 406. 1.

49 8 partim qui, etc.: not part of Labienus's report, but explanatory remarks added by Cæsar; hence the indic. — ut . . . ita: correlative; § 323. g (107); G. 110. 3; H. (305); H-B. 144, 563. — Germanos ... versari: object of noluerant; § 457, 563. b (271. a, 330. 3); B. 295. N., 331. iv; G. 532; H. 614 (535. ii); H-B. 587 and a.

49 9 exercitum hiemare, etc., they took it hard (moleste ferebant) that an army of the Roman people was wintering and getting a foothold (inveterascere, lit. grow old) in Gaul. The infinitives, with their subj. acc. exercitum, are in indir. disc. after moleste ferebant: § 572. b (333. b); B. 331. v; G. 650; H. 642. ii (523. n.); H-B. 594.

49 11 mobilitate: abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475 (416); H-B. 444. — novis imperiis studebant = were eager for a change of government (lit. new ruling powers): dat.; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426 (385); H-B. 362. Notice that novis is emphatic.

49 12 ab non nullis, by some also (sc. sollicitabantur); these were petty chiefs of clans.— quod (causal) . . . occupabantur, because royal power was (constantly) usurped. Notice the indic.; Cæsar explains the statement of Labienus (quod . . . sollicitarentur) by facts from his own knowledge; § 540 (321); B. 286. i; G. 540; H. 588 (516); H-B. 555. A clause with the subjv. (occuparentur) would indicate that the reason assigned formed part of the letter of Labienus.— potentioribus: used substantively; the more powerful.

49 13 ad . . . facultatis, the means to take men into their pay.— conducendos: gerundive in an expression of purpose; § 506 (300); B. 338. 3, 339; G. 432; H. 622 (544. N. 9); H-B. 612. iii.


49 15 imperio nostro: strictly a loc. abl., implying time, place, or condition, under our dominion.— consequi, complementary infin.: § 456 and N. (271 and N.); B. 328. 1; G. 423; H. 607. 2 (533. i. 2); H-B. 586 and a.

50 1 Chap. 2. nuntiiis: abl. of cause; cf. mobilitate, 49 11. — duas legiones . . . misit: these were numbered XIII and XIV, making with the others (VII—XII) eight in all, amounting (with auxiliaries) to perhaps 60,000 men.
50 2 inita aestate: abl. abs., expressing time when; § 419 (255); B. 227. 2. a; G. 665; H. 489. 1 (431. 1); H-B. 421. 1; aestas is the period from the spring equinox to that of autumn.

50 3 qui deduceret (the antecedent is Q. Pedium): relative clause of purpose; § 531 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

— Pedium: Pedius was Caesar's nephew, son of his sister Julia. — legatum: see note on 8 22.

50 4 cum primum, etc.: i.e. when grass and young grain began to be abundant, so that the cavalry and baggage animals could subsist. — inciperet: cf. note on esset, 49 1. — ad exercitum: i.e. to Vesontio, in the country of the Sequani. See Map, Fig. 26.

50 5 Senonibus: these were north of the Hœaudit, on the upper course of the Seine; their name is preserved in Sens. — reliquis Gallis, the rest of the Gauls: § 293 (193); cf. B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. n.1); H-B. 346. c.

50 6 Belgis: dat. with finitimi; § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362. — uti . . . cognoscant, to find out. This is a subst. clause of purpose in apposition with negotium; § 503 (331); B. 295. 1; G. 546; H. 564. iii (499. iii); H-B. 502. 3. a. — gerantur: subjv. as depending on cognoscant; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 629; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.

50 7 seque . . . faciant, and inform him (Caesar); se is here used as the indirect reflexive; § 300. 2 (196. a. 2); B. 244. ii. a; G. 521; H. 504 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2. — constanter, consistently (with one another); their accounts all agreed.

50 8 manus (acc. plur., subject of cogi): small bands or companies.

50 9 tum vero: see Vocab. and observe the emphatic position. — dubitandum non [esse], he must no longer hesitate; the infin. of the second periphrastic conjugation, here used in indir. disc. after existimavit; § 158. d. n. (113. d. n.); B. 115; G. 251; H. 531 (466. n.); H-B. 162; dubitandum is impers.; § 208. d (146. d); B. 337. 7. b; G. 208. 2; H. 192. 1 (195. ii. 1); H-B. 600. 3. a. — quin can follow only a negative expression, as here non existimavit, etc. — quin . . . proficiciscetur, to set out (lit. but that he should, etc.): relative clause of result depending on dubitandum [esse]; § 558. a (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 596. 1 (505. i. 1); cf. H-B. 502. 3. b. In the sense of hesitate, dubito regularly takes the infin. and not quin, but exceptions occur, as here.


50 11 diebus: abl. of time within which; § 423 (256); B. 231; G. 393; H. 486 (429); H-B. 439. — finis: i.e. north of the Matrona (Marne), crossing somewhere between Bois le Duc and Châlons (sur Marne). The march
from Besançon would be about one hundred and forty miles, or ten miles a day. He would so be about thirty-five or forty miles southeast of Durocortorum (Rheims), the capital of the Remi.

50 12 Chap. 3. eo: adv. — omnium opinione, than any one expected (following the comparative celerius): § 406. a (247. b); B. 217. 4; G. 398. n.1; H. 471. 7 (417. i. N.5); H-B. 416. c.

50 13 Remi: these were friendly to the Romans, who by their victory over Ariovistus (see Bk. i) had made them the second power in Gaul; cf. Bk. vi. ch. 12.— proximi Galliae, nearest to Gaul; for the dat., see § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 444 (391. i); H-B. 346. e.— ex Belgis, of the Belge, for part. gen. Belgarum; see § 346. e (216. c); B. 201. i. a; G. 372. r.2; H. 434. 2 (397. 3. N.8); H-B. 362; translate with proximi.

50 14 legatos, as ambassadors, predicate apposition.

50 15 qui dicerent: a relative clause of purpose; § 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 595. ii (497. i); H-B. 502. 2.

The rest of the chapter consists of the speech of the ambassadors, as reported by Caesar in indir. disc. Notice that the principal clauses are in the infinit. with subj. acc., and all dependent clauses in the subjv.: § 580 ff. (336 ff.); B. 313 ff.; G. 650; H. 642-644 (522-524); H-B. 534. i, ii. In dir. disc. this speech would read as follows:

Nos nostraque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittimus; neque [nos] cum reliquis Belgis consensimus neque contra populum Romanum coniuravimus, paratique sumus et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvar; reliqui omnes Belgae in armis sunt, Germanique, qui cis Rhenum incolunt, sese cum his coniunxerunt, tantutque est eorum omnium furor ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque nostros, qui eodem iure et isdem legibus utuntur (utuntur), unum imperium unumque magistratum nobiscum habent (habeant), detterre potuerimus quin cum his consentirent (consentiant).

50 16 se in fidem perpetrere, put themselves under the protection (good faith), etc.; more commonly with dat.— se suaque omnia, themselves and all their (possessions) (“their all”): object of permittere. The subj. acc. is regularly expressed in the indir. disc.; but here it is omitted to prevent the awkward repetition se (subject) se (object). In the next clause se is expressed.

50 16 neque, and (had) not: § 328. a (156. a); B. 341. i. d; G. 480; H. 657. i (554. i. 2); H-B. 307. 3.— cum Belgis: accompaniment; § 413 (248. a): B. 222; G. 392; H. 473. 1 (419. i); H-B. 419. 1.

50 18 paratos (participial adj.), ready.— dare, facere, etc.: infinitives following paratos; § 460. b (273. b); B. 326. N.; G. 423; H. 608. 4 (533. 3) H-B. 586. f.
50 19 oppidis recipere, receive [the Romans] into their strongholds; oppidis is abl. of place without in: § 429 (258. f); B. 228. i, cf. 218. 7; G. 389; H. 485. 2 (425. ii. 1); H-B. 436, cf. 446. 1. — frumento: abl. of means; cf. litteris, 49. 3. — ceterisque rebus, everything else (necessary); see Vocab. — recipere, iuvare: sc. eos (i.e. the Romans) as object.

50 20 cis: i.e. the west or Gallic side.

50 21 sese . . . coniuinxisse, had united; it often happens that a verb used as active in Latin and requiring a reflexive object may be best translated in English by an intransitive. The reverse of this must not be forgotten in writing Latin. — tantum . . . ut: correlatives; § 537. 2. N.² (319. r.). B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 500. ii. N.¹; H-B. 521. 2. a.

50 22 furorem, madness (blind and unreasoning passion). — ut . . . potuerint: result clause; § 537 (319); B. 284. 1; G. 552; H. 570 (500. ii); H-B. 521. 2; for tense, see § 485. c. N.¹ (287. c. r.); B. 268. 7; G. 513; H. 550 (495. vi); cf. H-B. 491; cf. also note on 28 6. — ne . . . quidem: § 322. f (151. e); B. 347. 1; G. 445; H. 656. 2 (553. 2, 569. iii. 2); cf. H-B. 302. 1. — Sues- siones (obj. of deterrere): they occupied territory west of the Remi, about the modern Soissons.

50 23 iure et legibus: rights and laws; for case, see § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429. — isdem: for eisdem.

50 24 unum imperium, etc.: i.e. their close confederacy did not prevent the Suessiones from leaguing with the other party. — cum ipsis: i.e. the Remi; in the indir. disc. se is regularly used to refer to the speaker, but the oblique cases of ipsam are occasionally used instead. Here ipsa is used apparently for emphasis: § 298. e (195. k); B. 249. 3; G. 311. 2; H. 509. 5 (452. 5); H-B. 263.

50 25 quin . . . consentirent, from leaguing with: relative clause of result depending on deterrere; § 558 (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); cf. H-B. 502. 3. b. (Notice that deterrere is negativated by ne . . . quidem above, which make the whole clause negative, though they are attached only to the emphatic word.)

50 26 Chap. 4. ab his: i.e. of the envoys; § 396. a (239. c. N.¹); B. p. 126, top; G. 339. r.¹; H. 411. 4 (374. N.²); H-B. 393. c. — quae . . . essent: indir. quest.; § 574 (334); B. 300. 1; G. 460; H. 649. ii (529); H-B. 537. b.

50 27 quid . . . possent, what strength they had in war; quid is cognate acc. with adv. force; § 390. c and d. N.² (240. a); B. 176. 3; G. 334; H. 409. 1, 416. 2 (371. ii (2), 378. 2); cf. H-B. 387. iii. — sic, as follows. — perierbat: for force of the tense, cf. adferebantur, 49. 2 and note. Observe that the rest of the chapter is in indir. disc., except the words Remi dicebant, 51. a. — plerosque, etc.: Direct, —
Plerique Belgae sunt orti ab Germanis, Rhenumque... traducti propter loci fertilitatem ibi consederunt, Gallosque qui ea loca incoelant expulerunt, solique sunt qui patrum nostrorum memoria, ... Teutonos Cimbrosque intra suos finis ingredi prohibuerint; qua ex re fit uti... magnam sibi auctoritatem... sumant. De numero eorum omnia (nos) habemus explorata... propterea quod propinquitatibus... coniuncti, quantum quisque multituidinem... ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognovimus. Plurimum inter eos Bellovaci... valent; hi possunt conficere armata milia centum, polliciti ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulant. Suessiones nostri sunt finitimi; finis latissimos feracissimosque agros possident. Apud eos fuit rex nostra etiam memoria Diviciacus, totius Galliae potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rex Galba; ad hunc... summa totius belli... desetur; oppida habent numero XII, pollicentur milia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervii, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habentur, longissimeque absunt; quindecim milia Atrebates, (likewise) Ambiani, Morini, etc... Condruos, Eburones, etc... qui... Germani appellantur, arbitramur (conficere posse or polliceri) ad xl milia.

50 27 plerisque, most of: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.2); H-B. 244; see the end of the chapter, and compare, regarding the Nervii, Tacitus (Ger. 28). The Belgians were, no doubt, chiefly of Celtic blood; but possibly they considered the Germans a more proud and heroic ancestry.

51 1 ab Germanis: abl. of source; § 403. a. N.1 (244. a. r.); B. 215. 2; G. 395; H. 469. 1 (415. ii. n.); H-B. 413. b.—Rhenum: acc. governed by trans in traductos; § 395 (239. 2. b); B. 179. 1; G. 331; H. 413 (376. N.); H-B. 386. a.

51 2 traductos: participle agreeing with Belgas.—propter fertilitatem: construe with consedisse.

51 4 qui... prohibuerint: rel. clause of characteristic with solos; § 535. b (320. b); B. 283. 2; G. 631. 2; H. 591. 5 (503. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 1. a and ft.1. Note the retention of the perfect tense contrary to tense sequence, and cf. ut... potuerint, 50 22 and note. —memoria: cf. diebus, 50 11.—Teutonos, etc.: cf. 35 5.

51 5 ingredi: the subj. might have been used; § 457 (271. a); B. 295. 1; G. 532. r.1; H. 596. 2 (505. ii. 1, 2); H-B. 587 and a.—qua ex re, in consequence of which (fact); abl. of cause; § 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408. N.7; H. 475. 4 (416. 1); H-B. 444. b.

51 6 fieri uti, it was coming to be the case that: the subject of fieri is the clause uti... sumerent; § 569 (332. a); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1 (501. i. 1); cf. H-B. 521. 3. a.—memoria: abl. of cause.—sibi: § 376 (235); B. 188. 1. n.); G. 352; H. 425. 2 (384. ii. 1, 2); H-B. 366.
517 de numero, etc.: the rest of the chapter depends on Remi diceant.

518 se habere explorata, had found out all about (de), etc.: habere explorata differs but little in sense from explorasse; § 497. b (292. c); B. 337. 6; G. 238; H. 431. 3 (388. i. n.); H-B. 605. 5 and a; in construction explorata agrees with omnia, which is obj. of habere. See note on compertum habere, 40 20.

519 propinquitatibus, ties of blood.—ad finitimitibus, alliances by marriage.

5110 quantum quisque . . . pollicitus sit: indir. quest., object of cognoverint; cf. 50 26.

5111 cognoverint: the primary tense is used in violation of the sequence of tenses. The statement is made more vivid by putting it in the same tense that was used by the speakers. They said cognovimus, we know (lit. have found out). The perfect is very often retained in indir. discourse.

5112 virtute, etc.: abl. of specification.

5113 armata milia centum — armatorum hominum milia centum. As here expressed, milia is the noun with which the adj. armata agrees; § 134. d (94. e); B. 80. 5; G. 293; H. 168 (178); H-B. 131. 3.

5114 electa, choice troops, picked men.

5115 sibi: dat. of reference; cf. sibi, 1. 6, above; it refers to the Bellovaci. — suos, their own (i.e. of the Remi); notice that the reflexive regularly refers to the speaker. See note on cum ipsis, 50 24.

5116 possidere: sc. eos, i.e. the Suessiones.—fuisse . . . esse: notice the difference of time; fuisse (in the dir. disc. fut) refers to time past, esse (dir. est) to time present, with respect to the verb of saying (dicebant, l. 8). — regem: showing that royal power had not yet been overthrown among the Belgians.

5118 cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also.

5119 Britanniae: the first mention of Britain by a Roman author.—obtinuerit, had held; in the dir. obtinuit, held. For tense, cf. note on cognoverint, l. 11, above.

5120 summam: subject of deferri.

5121 voluntate: abl. of manner; § 412. b and N. (248. R.); B. 220. 2; G. 399; H. 474. 1 (419. iii. n.²); H-B. 445. 1. — habere: the subject must be supplied from Suessiones, above.—numero: abl. of specif.; cf. 51 12.

5122 Nervios, etc. (see Map, Fig. 26): the names of several of these tribes are found in the modern towns, as: Atrebates, Arras; Ambiani, Amiens; Caleti, Calais; Viromandui, Vermandois; Condusi, Condros.

52 1 feri: pred. after habeantur, are regarded.

52 5 Condrusos, etc.: subjects of polliceri or conficeri posse understood. — qui . . . appellantur: the indic. shows that this is an explanatory note
added by Cæsar, and not a part of the indir. disc., while qui . . . habeantur above, on the other hand, is a remark made by the Remi, as is shown by the subjunctive.

52 6 Germani: this name seems to belong especially to the four last named (Condrusi, Eburones, etc.).—arbitrari: in dir., arbitramur; in translation we may say they thought, parenthetically, as in the English usage in indir. disc.

52 7 Chap. 5. cohortatus, prosecutus: for the tense of these participles, cf. § 491 (290. b); B. 336. 5; G. 282. N.; H. 640. 1 (550. N.1); H-B. 601. 1.

52 8 obsides (pred. appos.), as hostages: if the chiefs should break their faith, these boys would probably be sold as slaves; cf. also note on 8 11. —quae omnia, and all this. Latin very frequently connects clauses by a relative where our idiom prefers a conj. with a demonstrative: § 308. f (201. e); B. 251. 6; G. 610. r.1; H. 510 (453); H-B. 284. 8.

52 11 quanto opere . . . intersit, how greatly it concerns both the republic and their common safety. For the genitives, see § 355 (222); B. 211. 1; G. 381; H. 449. 1 (406. iii); H-B. 345.

52 12 intersit: indir. quest.; cf. 50 26, 51 10.—manus (acc. plur.) . . . distineri: infin. clause, subject of intersit. —ne confligendum sit, lest they should have to contend: clause of purpose depending on distineri; § 530 (317); B. 282. 1; G. 545. 3; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2.—confligendum sit is an impers. 2d periphrastic; § 193, 208. c (129, 146. d); B. 115, 138; G. 208, 251. 2; H. 237, 302. 7 (234, 301. 2); H-B. 162, 600. 3. a.

52 13 id fieri posse, etc., this, he said, could be done, etc. Notice that no new word of saying is necessary in Latin, but in English one is usually inserted parenthetically.

52 14 suas copias: the emphatic position opposes the forces of the Hædui to the Roman army.—Bellovcorum: these lay farthest west and most remote from Cæsar's field of operations; so that the manoeuvre indicated would divide the enemy (cf. 56 21-25).—introduxerint . . . coeperint: fut. condition; in the dir. disc. these would be fut. perf.; § 516. c (307. c); B. 303; G. 596. 1; H. 574 (508); H-B. 579. a, 577. a.

52 15 eorum: i.e. Bellovcorum.—datis: words in the text thus printed in italics are conjectural readings not found in the MSS.

52 16 dimittit: the effect of his mission appears in 56 23, and he has returned to Cæsar in 59 2.—postquam . . . vidit, as soon as he saw: § 543 (324); B. 287; G. 561; H. 508 (518); H-B. 557.

52 17 neque: -que connects vidit and cognovit; ne- with iam = no longer.—[vidit]: see note on [eorum], 9 17.

52 18 ab eis: construed with cognovit.
Notes: Cæsar.

52 19 Axonam (apposition), the Aisne; here flowing nearly due west, and joining the Seine below Paris, through the Oise.—in extremis . . . finibus, in the remotest part of the territory of the Remi: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. 2, notes 1 and 2); H-B. 244; the phrase is used in a general sense merely, for Bibra, a town of the Remi, lay eight miles farther off.

52 20 exercitum is dir. object of traducere; flumen (l. 19) is secondary object, depending on trans (tra-duco = trans-duco); § 395 (239. 2. b); B. 179. 1; G. 331. r.1; H. 413 (376); H-B. 386. — castra: the site of this camp has been made out at Berry au Bac (Fig. 31), a little village about twelve miles north by west of Rheims and about twenty-five miles east of Soissons. Traces of Cæsar's works at this place were discovered in 1862, on a low hill called Mauchamp (see Map, Fig. 32).

52 21 quae res, this movement (or manoeuvre), i.e. his having crossed the river and then pitched his camp where he did. Cæsar's camp was protected in the rear by the Axona, and in front by a small marshy stream. — ripis: cf. frumento, 50 19.

52 22 post eum quae erant, the rear of his army (lit. [those things] which were behind him). — tuta: pred. acc.; § 393. N. (239. a. N.1); B. 177. 2; G. 340; H. 410. 3 (373. 1. N.2); H-B. 392. a; the dir. object is ea, the omitted antecedent of quae. — commeatus: subject of possent.

52 23 ut . . . possent: subst. clause of result, object of efficiebat; § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 3 (501. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a; cf. this with the pure result clause, 50 22, and with the subject clause of result, 51 6.

52 24 efficiebat: the subject is still quae res; observe the imperfect tenses describing the situation, and cf. note on 3 5.

52 25 in altera parte, on the other side, i.e. on the left bank of the Aisne, towards the Remi. Cæsar had crossed the stream and encamped on the side towards the Suessiones.

52 27 pedum xii: gen. of measure, with vallo; § 345. b (215. b); B. 203. 2; G. 365. r.2; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355. When pronouncing the Latin, always give the Latin words for numerals. — duodevigiini pedum: i.e. a moat eighteen feet in width. See chapter on military affairs, v, and Fig. 118.

53 1 Chap. 6. nomine: cf. the ablative of the 51 12. — Bibra: this town has been variously identified as Vieux Laon, about the proper distance to the northwest, and Beaujoux to the west, more probably the latter.

53 2 milia passuum octo, eight miles: acc. of extent of space; § 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387. 1; passuum is part. gen.; § 346 (216); B. 201; G. 367; H. 440. 5 (397); H-B. 346; cf. note
on 3 4. — *ex itinere, on the march*, i.e. turning aside from their course to attack the town. — *magnō impetu*: abl. of manner; cf. *voluntate*, 51 21.

53 3 aegrē sustentatum est (impers.), *it was with difficulty that they held out.* In English we are often inclined to put into two clauses what the Latin crowds into one. — Gallorum ... *haec, the attack (mode of attacking) of the Gauls, being the same as (atque) that of the Belgians, is this* (the following).

53 5 circumiecta multitūdine (abl. abs.) ... moenibus, *a host of men being thrown round all the walls*: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429. 2 (386. 2); H-B. 376. Here the English absolute construction is admissible, though usually to be avoided.

53 6 iaci: complement. infin.; cf. *consequi*, 49 15 and note. — *coepit sunt*: the pass. is used with the pass. infin. — *defensoribus*: abl. of separation; § 401 (243. a); B. 214; G. 405; H. 462 (414. i); H-B. 408. 3.

53 7 testudine facta, *making a testudo*. See chapter on military affairs, vii (last part), and Fig. 68.

53 8 quod, *this*, i.e. the movements just described. — *tum, in the present instance.* — *multitudo*, subject of *conicerent*: § 317. d (2) (205. c. 1); B. 254. 4. a; G. 211. Exc. (a); H. 389. 1 (461. 1); H-B. 331. 1. — *cum ... conicerent*: *cum* describing the situation, but almost causal; see note on 49 1.

53 9 consistendi: gen. of gerund with *potestas*: § 504 (298); B. 338. 1. a; G. 428; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 612. i.

53 10 nulli: dat. of poss.; § 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430 (387); H-B. 374: nobody could keep a foothold on the wall (lit. power of standing on the wall was to nobody). — *cum ... fecisset*: again describing the situation. — *oppugnandi*: gerund; cf. *coniurandi*, 49 5.

53 11 summa nobilitate et gratia, [a man] of the highest, etc.; abl. of quality; § 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. 2 (419. ii); H-B. 443. — *inter suos, among his* [fellow-citizens]. — *oppido*: dat. with *praeeerat*; § 370 (228); B. 187. 3; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

53 12 unus ex ipsis, *one of those*: after numerals ex with the ablative is preferred to the part. gen. — *legati, as ambassadors*: pred. appos.

53 13 nisi ... *posse*: indir. disc. depending on the idea of *reporting* contained in *nuntium mittit*. Trans. unless reinforcements, he said, etc. — *sibi*: i.e. Iccius; the dat. is used instead of *ad se* with subsidium submittatur, because the idea of help (*for him*) is more prominent than that of motion (*towards him*). In the dir. disc. the message of Iccius was:

Nisi subsidium *mihi submittetur, (ego) diutius sustinere non possum.*

54 1 Chap. 7. eo, *thither, to that place*, i.e. Bibrax. — *isdem ducibus usus, employing the same men* [as] *guides*: for the ablative, cf. *jure*, 50 22. Observe that *ducibus* is pred. appos.; cf. *legati*, 53 12.
54 2 Numidas et Cretas: both these (especially the Cretans) were famous bowmen. See Fig. 105.

54 3 Baleares (adj.): the inhabitants of the Balearic Islands, east of Spain, were famous slingers. See Fig. 30. These nations served as auxiliaries in the Roman armies. — subsidio oppidanis: dat. of service with dat. of person affected; § 382. 1 and N.1 (233. a); R. 191. 2. b; G. 356; H. 433 (390); H-B. 360. b.

54 4 et...et: see Vocab. — studium...accessit, eagerness for a vigorous defence was inspired in the Remi. — propugnandi: obj. gen. of the gerund; cf. coniurandi, 49 5.

54 5 hostibus, from the enemy: dat.; § 376 (235); B. 188. 1; G. 352; H. 425. 4 (384. 4. N.3); H-B. 366. — potiundi oppidi: gerundive; § 503. N.2 (296. R.); B. 339. 4; G. 427. N.5; H. 623. 1 (544. 2. N.5); H-B. 613. N.

54 6 morati... depopulati... vicis...incensis: observe the change of construction. The Latin can use a perf. part. with active meaning only (as here) of deponent verbs. The corresponding construction with other verbs is the abl. abs. with the perf. pass. part.; as here, vicis incensis, which is to be translated accordingly. See last note on 49 6.

54 7 quo, to which (or the like).

54 8 omnibus copiis: cf. 50 16, and for the omission of cum, see § 413. a (248. a. N.); B. 222. 1; G. 392. R.1; H. 474. 2 (419. iii. 1); H-B. 420.

54 9 a milibus passuum minus duobus, less than two miles off: a is used adverbially; § 433 (261. d); B. 144. 1; G. 335. N.; H. 417. 3 (379. 2. N.); cf. H-B. 303. c: milibus is abl. of degree of difference: § 414 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479 (423); H-B. 424: minus does not affect the construction: § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R.4; H. 471. 4 (417. 1. N.2); H-B. 416. d': amplius (l. 10) is acc. of extent of space: § 425 (257); B. 181. 1; G. 335; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387: and milibus (l. 10), abl. after the comparative: § 406 (247); B. 217. 1; G. 398; H. 471 (417); H-B. 416. We have here both of the two constructions allowable with these neuter comparatives; see reference under minus.

54 13 Chap. 8. eximiam opinionem virtutis, their high reputation for valor: obj. gen.; § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. — proelio supersedere, to defer the engagement: for the abl., cf. defensoribus, 53 6, and see § 401 (243. a); B. 214. 1; G. 390; H. 462 (414. i); H-B. 408. 3.

54 14 quid...posset...quid...auderent, indir. questions. — virtute: abl. of specif. But the whole is best rendered, tested the prowess of the enemy, and the daring of our own soldiers. Notice that the form of thought is entirely different in Latin and in English.
54 15 *periclitabatur*: note the tense—and cf. *adferebantur*, 49 2 and note.

54 16 *loco... idoneo*: abl. abs. expressing cause.—*ad... instruendum*: gerundive expression of purpose; cf. 49 13.

54 18 *tantum, etc.*, *spread over as much (tantum) ground as (quantum)*, etc.—*adversus, right in front.*

54 19 *in latitudinem, in breadth*, i.e. from the camp towards the confluence of the Aisne with a little stream, the Miette, which here makes a swamp.—*loci*: part. gen. with *quantum*, but more conveniently translated with the correlative *tantum*, with which it has to be supplied to complete the sense.

54 20 *lateris deiectus* (acc. plur.), *lateral slopes* (lit. *slopes of the side*).

54 21 *in fronte, etc.*, *falling with an easy slope in front* (i.e. to the west), *sank gently to the plain* (see battle plan, Fig. 32).

54 22 *transversam*: i.e. at right angles to his line of battle.

54 23 *passuum quadringentorum*: gen. of measure; cf. *pedum*, 52 27. — *extremas, the ends of*: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; H. 497. 4 (440. N.2); H-B. 244.

54 24 *tormenta*: see chapter on military affairs, I. 5, and Figs. 61, 75, and 95.

54 25 *instruxisset*: subjv. by attraction for fut. perf. ind.; § 593, 547 (342, 325. c); B. 324. 1, 289; G. 662 at end, 580; H. 652, 600 (529. ii, 521. i); H-B. 539, cf. 524. d.—*tantum*: adv. acc.; cf. *quid*, 50 27.—*poterant*: this clause is parenthetical, and hence is not (like *instruxisset*) attracted into the subjv.

54 26 *ab lateribus, on the flanks*: § 429, b (260. b); H. (434. i); H-B. 406. 2; modifying *circumvenire.* — *suos*: i.e. Caesar's, referring back to the subject of *conlocavit.*

55 1 *si quo* (adv.): sc. *ducit*, but translate freely *if they were needed anywhere.* — *esset*: protasis of a fut. condition (*si... erit*); here in the imperf. subjv. because depending on the final clause *ut... possent*; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.—*subsidio*: dat. of purpose or end; cf. note on 54 3.

55 2 *sex*: see note on 50 1.—*suas*: notice the emphatic position, *their forces too.*

55 3 *copias... eductas instruxerunt*, *had led out and drawn up*, etc.: the Latin is fond of using a participle for what is practically a coordinate clause, instead of an additional finite verb.

55 4 *Chap. 9. nostrum*: poss. pron.; poss. gen. could not be used; § 302. a (197. a); B. 243; G. 362. R.1; H. 440. i. N.2 (396. ii. N.); H-B. 339. a.
55 5 hanc: i.e. paludem. — si . . . transirent, (to see) if our men would cross: § 576. a (334. f); B. 300. 3; G. 460; H. 649. 3 (529. ii. 1. N.1); cf. H-B. 582. 2.

55 6 si . . . fieret, in case they should begin the passage (lit. a beginning of crossing should be made by them): fut. condition (si . . . fiet); here in the subjv. because part of the final clause ut . . . adgrederentur; cf. note on esset, l. 1.

55 7 adgrederentur: purpose, depending on parati, etc.

55 8 contendebatur: impers.; cf. note on 231.

55 9 nostris: § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362.

55 11 ad flumen, etc.: evidently somewhat lower down, so that they were concealed by the hills beyond the marsh.

56 1 eo consilio ut, etc.: the final clauses are in apposition with consilio; § 531. i. N.1 (317. a); G. 545. 1; H. 564. iii (499. 3); H-B. 502. 2. a.

56 2 castellum, the redoubt beyond the river, held by Sabinus (5225).
— cui: cf. oppido, 5311.

56 3 pontem: the bridge held at one end by a garrison, at the other by the redoubt (5225). By destroying this, the Belgae would cut off Caesar's supplies and hinder his retreat; cf. 5221-24.— si possent (l. 1), si minus potuissent: fut. conditions; possent represents the fut., potuis- sent the fut. perf. indic.; for change of mood and tense cf. note on 551.
— minus, not.

56 4 popularentur, prohiberent: in same construction as expugnarent.
— magni nobis usui: cf. note on subsidio oppidani, 543. — ad bellum gerendum (gerundive), for carrying on the war; cf. 4913.

56 5 commeatu: abl. of separation; cf. defensoribus, 536.

56 6 Chap. io. ab Titurio: abl. of voluntary agent.

56 7 levis armaturae (gen. of description), of light equipment = light-armed (see chapter on military affairs, i. 3, and Figs. 104, 115). — Numidas, etc.: these light-armed troops were trained runners, and so could arrive at the ford in time to stop the passage of the Belgians.

56 8 traducit: with two accusatives; cf. 5220 and note.— pugnatum est: cf. contendebatur, 558.

56 11 conantis: with reliquos.

56 12 equitatu: considered here as means or instrument; therefore, no prep.— circumventos interfecerunt: cf. note on eductas, 553.

56 13 ubi . . . intellexerunt: the regular mood and tense with ubi; cf. 534. — de, with regard to.

56 14 neque, and . . . not.
56 15 pugnandi causa: gerund construction, expressing purpose; § 404.
c, 533. b (245. c, 318. b); B. 338. 1. c; G. 373; H. 626 (542. i); H-B. 444.
a; 612. i.

56 16 ipsos: i.e. the enemy. The superiority of the Roman commissar-riot was a most important factor in winning their victories. The enemy
could not carry on a long campaign with a large army for lack of provisions,
and when they were compelled to disband, the Romans destroyed them
piecemeal at their leisure.

56 17 constituerunt here has two objects: (1) optimum esse, etc. (indir.
disc.), (2) [ut] convenirent (subst. clause of purpose); § 580. a (332. h);
B. 295. 1 and n.; G. 546. r.1; H. 565. 5 (498. i. n.); H-B. 589. a; cf. note
on 2 15. The subject of esse is the infin. clause quemque reverteri: § 452
(330); B. 330; G. 422; H. 615 (538); H-B. 585. Thus the confederacy
dissolves into a mere defensive alliance, and all the members are cut to
pieces in detail.— domum: § 427. 2 (258. b); B. 182. 1. b; G. 337; H. 419.
1 (380. 2. 1); H-B. 450. b.

56 18 quorum: the antecedent is eos.

56 19 introduxissent stands for the fut. perf., and is attracted into the
pluperf. subjv. by being made part of the purpose clause; cf. potuiissent,
56 3.— convenirent: sc. ut; § 565. a (331. f. r.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. r.2;
H. 565. 2 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. a. ftn.2.

56 20 suis, alienis, domesticis: notice the emphatic position of the
adjectives.

56 23 quod ... cognoverant: indic. because Caesar gives the reason
on his own authority; cf. 49 12 and note. The clause is in apposition
with haec ratio.— Diviciacum ... adpropinquare: see 52 14.— finibus:
dat. after adpropinquare.

56 24 his persuaderi, etc., these could not be persuaded, etc. (lit. it could
not be persuaded to these). Verbs that take the dat. in the act. are used
impers. in the pass. and retain the dat.— ut, etc.: subst. clause of purpose,
depending for its construction on persuaderi, but (in the impers. construc-
tion) used as subject of poterat.

56 25 neque ... ferrent, and so fail to carry (lit. and not carry).— suis:
§ 363 (225. b); B. 193; H-B. 365. ftn. par. 2.

56 26 Chap. ii. strepitu, tumultu, ordine, imperio: abl. of manner;
cf. impetu, 53 2.

57 1 cum, where, describing the situation, but approaching in sense a
causal clause: § 549. n.2 (326. n.2); B. 288. b; G. 586; H. 598 (517); H-B.
525.

57 2 fecerunt: notice the emphatic position; cf. the English, "the
result was."— ut ... videretur: subst. clause of result, object of fecerunt;
§ 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 3 (301. ii. 1); H-B. 521. 3. a.—
fugae: § 384 (234. a); B. 192. 1; G. 359; H. 434. 2 (391. i); H-B. 362.

57 3 per: the agent, when considered as instrument or means, is
generally expressed by per with the acc.; § 405. b (246. b); G. 401; H. 468. 3
(415. i. N.1); H-B. 380. d.—speculatores, spies: they obtained information
by mingling in disguise with the enemy; while the scouts, exploratores, were
squads of cavalry who ranged the country in the vicinity of the army.

57 4 veritus, fearing; cf. note on 52 7.—discederent: indir. quest.;
cf. 51 10, 52 11, 55 5.

57 5 castris, in camp: § 429. f (258. f); B. 218. 7; G. 389; H. 485. 2
(425. ii. 1); cf. H-B. 446. 1.

57 6 re: i.e. the fact that the enemy were really retreating.—ab
exploratoribus: abl. of agent; cf. above, per speculatores.—qui moraretur:
rel. clause of purpose; cf. 50 15.

57 7 his: dat. with praefect; cf. construction of oppido, 53 11.

57 10 milia: cf. 53 2.

57 11 cum: causal; cf. 57 1 and note.—ab extremo agmine, in the
rear.

57 12 quos: relates to the implied subject of consisterent.—ventum
erat: § 208. d (146. d); B. 256. 3; G. 208. 2; H. 302. 6 (301. i); H-B.
290. a. 1.

57 13 priores: sc. and in English. This refers to the van of the
retreating enemy.—quod ... viderentur, because they seemed (i.e. they
thought themselves). This word and continerunt are subjunctives as
being part of the subjv. clause cum ... ponerent. For similar cases of
attraction, see 55 1, 55 6, 56 1, 56 19.

57 15 exaudito clamore, perturbatis ordinibus (abl. abs., the first defin-
ing the time of the second), breaking ranks on hearing the outcry (of those
engaged in the rear).

57 16 sibi: § 376 (235); B. 188. i. N.; G. 345; H. 425. 4 (384. 4); H-B.
365.—ponerent: same construction as consisterent and sustinerent.

57 17 tantam ... spatium, killed as great a number of them as the time
(before night) allowed (lit. as the day was long); notice the correlatives
tantam ... quantum; § 152 (106); G. 642. 1; H. 189 (191); H-B. 144;
cf. 54 18-20.

57 20 Chap. 12. postridie eius dies, next day (lit. on the day after that
day): for the gen., see § 359. b (223. c); B. 201. 3. a; H. 446. 5 (398. 5);
H-B. 380. c.—priusquam ... reciperent, before the enemy could recover
themselves: § 551. b (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. b.

57 21 in finis ... duxit: i.e. following his plan of subduing the tribes
one after the other.

57 23 Noviodunum (now Soissons): about twenty miles west of Bibra. Celtic dunum = English town; hence Noviodunum = Newton or Newburg. Soissons is derived from Sassetones. — ex itinere: i.e. as soon as he arrived, by filling up the ditch and scaling the walls, without waiting to throw up works or form regular lines of approach; cf. 53 2.

57 24 esse: sc. oppidum for subject.

57 25 paucis defendentibus (abl. abs. denoting concession), though there were few defenders. — oppugnare means to attack; expugnare, to take (by storm). Unable to take the town by storm, Caesar was obliged to begin a regular siege. See chapter on military affairs, viii, and Figs. 43, 92, 93, 118, 120.

57 26 quaeque, etc.: i.e. wood, earth, stones, etc.; the antecedent of quae, if expressed, would be ea.

57 27 ad oppugnandum: § 506, 385. a (300, 234. b); B. 338. 3, 192. 2. N.; G. 432, 359. r. 8; H. 628, 435. 1 (542. iii, 391. ii); H-B. 612. iii, 364. 6.

58 2 magnitudine: i.e. by the extent of these offensive operations. — quae, which (i.e. the like of which).

58 3 ante: adv.

58 5 petentibus Remis, at the request of the Remi. — ut conservarentur: subst. clause of result, obj. of impetrant; § 568 (332); B. 297. 1; G. 553. 1; H. 571. 1 (501); H-B. 521. 3. a.

58 6 Chap. 13. obsidibus acceptis primis, after he had received as hostages the chief men, etc.

58 7 Galbae: see 51 19-21.

58 9 Bellovacos: their territory lay thirty or forty miles due north of Paris, about Beauvais. — qui cum, and when they. A relative is often used to begin a new sentence where the English idiom would lead us to expect a demonstrative with a connective (here hi autem). The relative serves to bind the new sentence more closely to the preceding. — se suaque omnia: cf. 50 15 and note.

58 10 Bratuspantium: probably Breteuil, at the head of the Somme valley. Notice that Bratuspantium is in apposition with oppidum, not in the gen. according to the English usage.

58 11 circiter, etc., [only] about five miles. — milia passuum: cf. 53 2, 57 10.

58 12 maiores natu: § 131. c (91. c); B. 226. 1; G. 87. 9; H-B. 122; natu is abl. of specification.

58 13 voce significare, show by the tones of their voice (of course they could not talk Latin). — in eius fidem . . . venire: i.e. surrendered at
discretion; cf. the clause se in fidem permittere, 50 15. Notice that the reflexive sese refers to the speakers, and represents the first person of the dir. disc.; eius refers to Caesar, the person spoken to.

58 14 neque, and [that they would] not.

58 16 pueri mulieresque, women and children. — ex muro: English says on the wall, from another point of view.

58 17 ab Romanis: § 396. a (239. c. N.1); B. 178. 1. a; G. 339. N.2; H. 411. 4 (374. N.4); H-B. 393. c.

59 1 CHAP. 14. pro his, in behalf of these, i.e. the Bellovaci.

59 2 eum: i.e. Caesar.

59 3 Bellovacos, etc.: the rest of this chapter is in indir. disc., depending on facit verba. Direct,—

Bellovaci omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Haeduae fuerunt; impulsi ab sui principibus, qui dicebant Haeduos a Caesare in servitutem redactos omnis indignitatis . . . perferre, et ab Haeduis defeecerunt et populo Romano bellum intulerunt. Qui eius consili principes fuerant, quod intellegebant quantum calamitatem civitatis intulissent, in Britanniam profugerunt. Petunt non solum Bellovaci sed etiam pro his Haedui ut tua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utar is. Quod si feceris, Haedorum auctoritatem apud omnis Belgas amplificabis, quorum auxilii atque opibus, si qua bella inciderunt, sustentare consuerunt.

59 3 omni tempore, always. — in fide atque amicitia: i.e. they had been subject-allies of the Hædui.

59 4 impulsos (notice the emphatic position: not of their own accord, but induced by their chiefs): agreeing with the subject (eos) of defecisse and intulisse, which is to be supplied from Bellovac os.

59 5 dicerent: this word introduces another clause in the indir. disc., the statement of the chiefs, which is thus reported at second-hand by Caesar as a part of the speech of Diviciacus. The subject is Haeduos; the verb, perferre. — omnis, all (kinds of).

59 7 qui, (those) who. — eius consili, in this design: § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. Notice that the gen. expresses nearly all the relations of one noun to another, and may be translated by in, to, and many other forms of speech in English.

59 8 quantum . . . intulissent: cf. 50 26 and notc.

59 9 civitati: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376. — Britanniam: the support and sympathy which the Gauls received from Britain was Caesar's excuse for his subsequent expedition there. — profugisse: the subject is the implied antecedent of qui.

59 10 sua clementia, his (characteristic or well-known) clemency: for the case, cf. 50 23, 54 1.
59 11 in eos: but for the interposition of Haeduos, this would be in se; § 300. b (196. 2); B. 244. ii; G. 520, 521; H. 504 (449. 1); H-B. 262. 2, here, as often, the last word or thought governs the construction. — utatur: subst. clause of purpose, after petere; § 563. d (331. d); B. 295. 4; G. 546; H. 564. iii (499. 3); H-B. 530. 2. ftm.¹; cf. also 6 10 and note. Observe that from this point the present and perfect tenses of the subjv. are used; cf. cognoverint, 51 11 and note. — quod si fecerit: fut. condition (more vivid); fecerit is perf. subjv. for the fut. perf. indic. of the dir. disc. The apodosis is amplificaturum: § 516. a (307. a); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574. 2 (508. 2); H-B. 579. a; on the use of quod, see note on qui cum, 58 9.

59 13 quorum: the antecedent is Belgas. — si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint: general condition; see dir. disc. above. For the tenses used in general conditions, see § 518. b (309. c); G. 594. N.; H. 578. 1 (508. 5); cf. H-B. 579, 577. a.

59 14 consuerint: present in force; § 205. b. N,² (143. c. N.); B. 262. A; G. 175. 5, 236. R.; H. 299. 2 (297. i. 2); H-B. 487.

59 15 Chap. 15. honoris Diviciaci . . . causa, out of respect for Diviciacus (lit. for the sake of honor). — Diviciaci: obj. gen.; § 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2 (396. iii); H-B. 354. — causa: abl. of cause; § 404. c (245. c); B. 198. 1; G. 373, 408; H. 475. 2 (416. ftm.²); H-B. 444. d, 339. d; used almost like a preposition with the gen., and always following its noun, as here honoris.

59 16 recepturum [esse]: the fut. act. infin. commonly omits esse, as here. — quod erat: the indic. implies that this was the real reason, not merely one given by Cæsar at the time (which would require quod esset); cf. 49 12.


59 20 Ambianorum: about Amiens, near the coast of the Channel.

59 21 eorum finis: notice the emphatic position. Their territories reach to the Nervii. — natura: i.e. what sort of people they were, like quales essent.

59 22 reperiebat: cf. note on 49 2. — nullum aditum, etc.: Direct, — Nullus aditus est ad eos mercatoribus; nihil patiuntur vini . . . inferri, quod his rebus relanguescere animos . . . existimant; sunt homines feri magnaeque virtutis; increpant etque incusant reliquos Belgas, qui se populo Romano dediderint patriamque virtutem proiecerint; confirmant sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam conditionem pacis accepturos.

59 23 mercatoribus (dat. of poss.; cf. nulli, 53 10), traders have. — pati (subj. eos understood): the subj. acc. of the infin. in indir. disc. should regularly be expressed, but occasionally it is omitted when the sense is clear. Cæsar is very free in this respect, because his work is
only brief notes of his campaigns (commentarii). — nihil . . . vini: § 346. a. 1 (216. a. 1); B. 201. 1; G. 369; H. 440. 5 (397. 1); H-B. 346.

59 25 relanguescere: an inceptive verb (ending, -sco); § 263. 1 (167. a); B. 155. 1; G. 133. v; H. 277 (280); H-B. 212. 2. — esse, that they are.

59 26 magnae virtutis: § 345 (215); B. 203. 1; G. 365; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 355. Note that the descriptive gen. has exactly the force of an adj., so that it is even connected with feros by a coordinate conj.: § 223. a (154. a); B. 341; G. 474; H. 657 (554); H-B. 395. i.

59 27 Belgas: object. — qui . . . dedidissent . . . proieissent, who [they said] had surrendered, etc.: § 592. 3 (341. d); B. 323; G. 628; H. 649. 1 (528. 1); H-B. 535. 1. a; cf. also note on 32 21.

60 1 patriam: an adjective.

60 2 missuros . . . accepturos: on the omission of esse, cf. note on 59 16. The subject of the infinitives is sese, which refers back to the omitted subject (eos) of confirmare.

60 3 Chap. 16. cum . . . fecisset: for similar cum-clauses, cf. 49 1, 53 8, 53 10. — eorum: i.e. of the Nervii. — triduum: § 423 (256); B. 181; G. 336; H. 417 (379); H-B. 387.

60 4 Sabim flumen, etc.: Direct, — Sabis flumen a castris . . . milia passuum x abest; trans id flumen omnes Nervii consederunt adventumque Romanòrum exspectant una cum Atrebatibus . . . (nam his . . . persuaserunt uti eandem bellii fortunam experiren- tur); exspectantur etiam ab eis Aduatucorum copiae atque sunt in itinere; mulieres quique . . . inutiles videbantur in eum locum coniecerunt, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

60 4 Sabim: the Sambre, which flows northeasterly into the Meuse (Mosa); § 75. a. 1 (56. a. 1); B. 37; G. 57. r.1; H. 102. 2 (62. ii. 2. (1)); H-B. 88. 1. The Nervii occupied the basin of this river and of the upper Scheldt. — non amplius milia, etc.: milia is acc. of extent, and is not affected in construction by amplius; cf. a similar construction, 54 9, and see § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. r.4; H. 471. 4 (417. i. n.2); H-B. 416. d.

60 7 Atrebatibus, etc.: small tribes to the south and west; modern Arras, Vermandois. — his: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385. ii); H-B. 362. i.

60 8 experientur: subst. clause of purpose; cf. 59 10.

60 9 exspectari: note throughout this indir. disc. the variation between pres. and perf. infin., according as the dir. disc. has the pres. or perf. indic.

60 10 quique, and (those) who (not to be confounded with the plur. of quisque with the same form); qui, as so often, implies its own antecedent eos, the obj. of coniecisse.
The Belgian Confederacy.

60 11 quo = in quem.
60 12 esset: already in dir. disc. a rel. clause of characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283. 1; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 1 (503. i); cf. H.-B. 521. 1; cf. 51 4. The emphasis is shown in "to which on account of the marshes an army could not get access."
60 14 Chap. 17. locum ... idoneum: see chapter on military affairs, v.—deligant: cf. construction of dicerent, 50 15.—ex ... Belgis: for part. gen. following complures, cf. 50 13, 53 12.
60 15 dediticiis: i.e. the three states just subdued.
60 16 una, along (with him).
60 17 eorum dierum, during those days: see note on consili, 59 7.
60 19 inter singulas legiones, between each two legions.—impedimentorum magnum numerum, a great number of baggage-animals (i.e. a very long baggage-train). See chapter on military affairs, 1. 6.
60 20 neque, and that ... not (or no); notice that in Latin the connective has a strong attraction for the negative where our idiom separates them.—negoti: part. gen.; cf. nihil vini, 59 23.
60 21 cum ... venisset ... abessent: subjv. because subordinate clauses in the indir. disc.; the verbs refer to future time, and represent respectively the fut. perf. and the fut. indic. of the dir. disc.
60 22 hanc: i.e. the first legion.—sarcinis: see chapter on military affairs, iv. e, and Fig. 14.—adoriri: subject of esse (l. 20), quicquam being in the predicate.—qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis (abl. abs. = protasis of a future condition), if this should be routed, etc.
60 23 futurum [esse]: apodosis of the condition.—ut ... non aude-runt: subst. clause of result, subject of futurum [esse]; § 569 (332. a); B. 297. 2; G. 553. 3; H. 571. 1 (501. i); H.-B. 521. 3. a; the whole is little more than a roundabout way of expressing the fut. infin.; § 569. a (147. c. 3); B. 270. 3; G. 248. 2; H. 619. 2 (537. 3); H.-B. 472. c.—contra consistere, to withstand their attack.
60 24 adiuvarat: the subject is the subst. clause quod Nervii ... effecerant, the advice of those who reported the matter was reënforced by the fact that the Nervii, etc. Notice the emphatic position of adiuvarat, which may be expressed in English by using the pass. as above.
60 25 antiquitus: adv.; the use of the hedges described below was an immemorial custom, and they are still, it is said, common in this region. Traces of such about 400 years old still exist in England.—cum: causal.
60 26 nihil (adv. acc.) possent, had no strength.—neque enim, and in fact ... not.—ad hoc tempus: opp. to antiquitus.—rei: cf. construction of imperiis, 49 11.
60 97 quicquid (cf. nihil above) possunt, etc., all the strength they have is in infantry.—quo facilius . . . impedirent, in order to check the more

**Fig. 120. — General View of Siege Operations.**

*ABCD*, hostile wall; *ss*, testudines aggestitiae, protecting those levelling the ground; *hh*, agger; *xx, x'x'*, etc., plutei, protecting those working on the agger; *efg*, line of plutei, manned with archers and slingers; *tt*, turres, also manned with archers and slingers and provided with tormenta; *ro*, covered way of vineae, giving approach to archers and slingers; *lg*, covered way of vineae approaching the point of beginning the agger; *f'g'*, position of plutei, covering the beginning of the agger; *nn*, covered gallery through the agger; *nnn*, etc., steps and platforms of the several stories.
The Belgian Confederacy.

easily; quo is the regular conj. introducing a purpose clause which contains a comparative; § 531. a. (317. b); B. 282. 1. a; G. 545. 2; H. 568 (497. ii); H-B. 502. 2. b.

61 1 praedandi causa: cf. 56 15. — venissent: attracted from the fut. perf.; § 593 (342); B. 324. 1; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 539.

61 3 in latitudinem, etc.: i.e. when the tree was bent over, shoots sprang from its sides so as to make a thick mass of small branches. Among these were planted briars and thorns. These hedges were of course for the defence of individual farms to hinder cavalry from raiding across country.

61 4 ut . . . praeb erent: object clause of result, depending on effecerant; cf. 57 2. — instar muri: § 359. b (214. g); B. 198. 2; G. 373; H. 446. 4 (398. 4); H-B. 339. a.

61 5 quo (adv.): i.e. into which.

61 6 posset: result clause.

61 7 sibi: dat. of agent with omittendum [esse].

61 8 Chap. 18. loci . . . quem locum: § 307. a (200. a); B. 251. 3; G. 615; H. 399 (445. 8); H-B. 284. 4. — castris: the dat. of purpose of concrete nouns is used in prose in a few military expressions; § 382. 2 (233. 6); B. 191. 1; G. 356; H. 425. 3 (384. ii. 1. 3); H-B. 361.

61 9 aequaliter declivis, with even downward slope.

61 10 quod agrees in gender with flumen. — vergebat: imperf. of description; cf. note on 3 5. — ab: i.e. on the other side.

61 11 pari acclivitate: abl. of quality; cf. 53 11, 59 17. Notice the opposition to declivis, above. — adversus . . . contrarius, facing this, and on the other side (of the stream).

61 12 passus: cf. 53 2, 57 10. — apertus: i.e. cleared of woods. — infimus, at the foot: § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 290. r.2; H. 497. 4 (440. 2. n.2); H-B. 244; opposed to ab sup riores parte, along the upper portion: § 429. b (260. b); G. 390. 1; H. 434. 1; H-B. 406. 2.

62 1 ut non: observe that a negative result is expressed by ut non, while a negative purpose is expressed by ne.

62 3 secundum: preposition.

62 4 pedum trium: gen. of measure, here in the predicate; cf. 54 23.

62 6 Chap. 19. copiis: cf. 50 16, 54 8. — ratio ordoque: as these two words convey but a single thought, the verb is singular. — aliter . . . ac, etc. (see Vocab.), was different from what the Belgae had reported (lit. had itself otherwise [than] as, etc.): § 324. c (156. a); B. 341. 1. c; G. 643; H. 516. 3 (459. 2); H-B. 307. 2. a.

62 7 ad Nervios: § 363 (225. b); B. 358. 2. a; G. 340. r.2; H. 429. 3 (386. 3).
62 8 consuetudine sua, in accordance with his custom.
62 9 ducebat: for the order of march, see chapter on military affairs, vi. — conlocarat, had put in place [of greatest safety]; this verb (conloco) is often confounded by beginners with conligo, collect.
62 10 proxime conscriptae, latest levied. These were legions xiii and xiv, mentioned in 50 1, 2, which were not yet sufficiently trained to bear the brunt of the fight.
62 11 praesidio impedimentis: cf. 54 3, 55 1, 56 4.
62 13 cum, etc.: this clause describes the situation, and is shown to be temporal by interim, which follows (cf. 53 8, 53 10, 60 3). This movement is important because it allowed time for the main body to arrive and begin the camp, contrary to the expectation of the Nervii.
62 14 recipercnt ... facerent, kept retiring, etc. (strengthened by identidem).
62 15 quem ad finem: the antecedent attracted into the relative clause, according to the Latin idiom. Translate as if it were ad finem ad quem, which, however, the Romans would rarely say.
62 16 cedentis agrees with eos, the understood object of insequi. Notice that the Romans can always omit a pronoun if its case is determined by some word in agreement.
62 17 opere dimenso, having staked out the works. See chapter on military affairs, v.
62 18 ubi ... visa sunt: cf. 53 4, 56 13. Notice that this is purely temporal. Caesar might have used cum with the subjv., but in that case it would describe the situation. A comparison of this with 62 13 shows the difference clearly.
62 20 quod tempus, the moment which. Notice the difference of the Latin and the English idiom; tempus is in apposition with the clause ubi ... visa sunt. The attraction of the antecedent into the relative clause is regular when it is in apposition with something preceding (cf. 30 19, 38 19, and notes). — committendi proeli: depending on tempus. Notice that the gen. is the regular form to connect one noun with another, though we use various prepositions. — ut (just as) ... confirmaverant: i.e. the movement was not a confused sally on 'the individual impulse of savages, but an organized attack with the united and settled determination to resist the invaders. He may have said this only to enhance the glory of his victory, but he more than once pays tribute to the prowess of the enemy, and he probably does so here.
62 24 ut, so that (result).
62 25 [et iam in manibus nostris]: i.e. within reach of our weapons. This makes sense, and may be so translated.
62 adv. colle, etc., pushed straight up the hill. The way by which is put in the abl. without a preposition. — eos: after ad. — occupati, still at work on the fortifications (in opere); occupatus is regularly used as an adj.

63 1 Chap. 20. Caesari: dat. of agent; cf. sibi, 61 7. Notice the emphatic position of omnia. Caesar had to do everything at one time. — vexillum: the large banner hoisted at headquarters to announce an engagement impending. See Fig. 121, and chapter on military affairs, II.

63 2 proponendum [erat]: second periphrastic, like agenda erant above; so also dandum, etc.

63 3 tuba: the signal to take their places in the ranks. See Fig. 37. — ab opere, etc.: those who were already detailed must have needed further orders before going into battle.

63 4 qui relates to the understood subject (ei) of arcessendi [erant]. — aggeris, materials for a mound, an unusual meaning. — arcessendi: soldiers who were out of hearing of the customary signals would need a messenger.

63 5 cohortandi: pass., as always, though from a deponent verb; § 190. d (135. d); B. 112. b; G. 251; H. p. 114, ftn. at end; H-B. 291. — signum dandum: the last signal for immediate action; cf. 64 5. This list includes all the functions of the commander, ordinarily extended over a considerable time. In this emergency Caesar says these needed to be done at once, and this was impossible (cf. impediebat). But the difficulty was partially remedied by the good sense and discipline of the soldiers who did what was proper without orders.

63 7 difficultatibus . . . subsidio: cf. 54 3, 62 11.

63 9 quid . . . oporteret: indir. quest., object of praescribere; cf. 50 26.

63 10 quam connects similar constructions: § 323. a (208. a); H-B. 305. 1.

63 11 quod: i.e. the second of the two things mentioned. — singulos, etc., had forbidden the several lieutenants to leave the work and their several legions.

63 12 nisi munitis castris: abl. abs.; see note on 49 6. The meaning here is not until after, etc.

63 13 nihil: adv. acc.; § 390. d. N. 2 (240. a); B. 176. 3. a; G. 333. 1; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 387. iii; it is stronger than non; nihil iam — no longer.

63 14 quae videbantur, what seemed best.
63 16 Chap. 21. necessariis: i.e. such as were (absolutely) necessary; observe emphasis.—ad cohortandos milites. gerundive of purpose; cf. 49 13, 54 16.

63 17 quam in partem = in eam partem in quam; cf. note on quem ad finem, 62 15.

64 1 decimam: Cæsar's favorite legion; cf. 36 24. — non longiore . . . quam uti, with no more words than that they should, etc.

64 2 retinerent, perturbarentur, sustinerent: object clauses of purpose with ut, etc., expressing indirectly the commands given in his address.

64 4 quam quo . . . posset: rel. clause of characteristic; § 535 (320. c); B. 283. 2. a; G. 298; H. 591. 6 (503. ii. 3); cf. H-B. 521. 1 and 2. c.

64 7 pugnantibus: sc. eis, and see note on cedentis, 62 16. — hostium depends on animus.

64 8 paratus (adj.) ad dimicandum, ready for battle.

64 9 ad insignia accommodanda, for fitting on the decorations (of the helmets, etc.). Some of these indicated the rank of the wearer. Perhaps, too, the different legions were distinguished by the insignia of the helmets. At all events, these were considered important and were always put on before an engagement. See chapter on military affairs, vii.

64 10 scutis: abl. of separation; cf. 53 6, 56 5. On the march helmets were slung upon the breast, shields covered with leather, and ornaments kept in some unexposed place. See Fig. 14. — defuerit, failed, i.e. there was not time enough to, etc.; for tense, cf. 50 25, 51 5. — quam in partem, to whatever place.

64 11 ab opere: i.e. from his position in the work of fortifying. — quaeque, etc., and whatever standards he saw first (prima, adj. with signa), he fell in (lit. took his stand) there. The Roman soldier was so well drilled that, to whatever part of the legion he found his way, he knew perfectly the duties belonging to it.

64 12 haec (signa): antecedent to quae, but implying also the antecedent (in hac parte) of quam above, for which it is really substituted. — in quaerendis suis [signis]: gerundive. The standards distinguished the different cohorts, and hence they here refer to the place of each soldier in the ranks, as we might speak of a company or platoon. See chapter on military affairs, ii; also Figs. 70, 114.

64 14 Chap. 22. ut . . . quam ut: as . . . than as. The military science of the ancients was adapted to level, open ground, in which the troops could be drawn up and kept in regular lines.

64 16 cum: causal; cf. 57 1. — aliae alia in parte, some in one position, some in another: § 315. c (203. c); B. 253. 2; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 265. For position of the various legions, see battle plan, Fig. 35.
The Belgian Confederacy.

64 17 saepibus . . . interiectis: cf. note on 60 25.
64 18 ante: i.e. in ch. 17. — impediretur: connected with resisterent by —que in l. 17.
64 19 neque: here begins the main clause, the verb of which is poterant.
64 20 provideri: complem. infin. with poterat supplied from poterant. The subject of this poterat is the indir. quest. quid . . . opus esset. — ab uno (emphatic), by only one man.
64 21 fortunae: emphatic, set off against rerum. The circumstances were diversified; the fortune that attended them consequently had various results.
64 22 eventus (nom. plur.): subject of sequebantur.
64 23 Chap. 23. ut, as, i.e. in the position in which they were. The clause is nearly equivalent to an English participle, having taken up their position: cf. § 493. d. 2 (290. d.); B. 356. 2. c; H-B. 602. 1. Observe that in the sense of as, ut is not followed by the subjv. — sinistra: here Labienus was in command.
64 24 acie: gen.; § 98. N. (74. a); B. 52. 3; G. 63. N.1; H. 134. 2 (120); H-B. 100. 2. — pilis emissis: see chapter on military affairs, vii, and Fig. 15, p. 22. — examinatos: agrees with Atrebatas (object of compulerunt).
64 26 ex loco superiore: i.e. from the higher ground up which the Atrebates had rushed after crossing the river.
65 1 impeditam, embarrassed (in their attempt to cross). — ipsi: referring to milites, 64 23.
65 2 progressi: i.e. continuing the charge up the wooded hill on the other side of the river. See description of the ground, ch. 18.
65 3 rursus resistentis (acc.), when they again made a stand.
65 6 ex loco superiore: i.e. starting from, etc. — in ripis modifies proeliabantur (were continuing the fight).
65 7 totis: emphatic position (cf. English “exposed entirely almost”).
65 8 nudatis, being exposed, i.e. by the absence of the other legions, which were pursuing the enemy. The only ones left near the camp were vii and xii, in dextro cornu.
65 9 constitisset: causal, showing why the enemy charged in that quarter; but it is often impossible to say when the description of a situation passes over into cause. — magnio intervallo, confertissimo agmine: best regarded as ablatives of manner, though we must remember that the Romans did not trouble themselves about our classifications. The ablative was the proper form for all these ideas; and so they used it for all without distinction, as we should use in, at, or by.
duce: abl. abs.; translate under the leadership of.

aperto latere: i.e. the right, not protected by shields; for omission of prep., see § 429 (258. f); B. 228. i. b.; G. 338; H. 485. 2 (425. ii); H-B. 436. — legiones: the twelfth and the seventh. — castrorum: not part., but poss. gen. (i.e. the height on which the camp stood).

Chap. 24. levis armaturae: descriptive gen.; note how it is naturally translated in English by a descriptive adj., light-armed. See chapter on military affairs, i. 3, and Figs. 104, 115.

una: adverb.

pulsos [esse]: infin. of indir. disc., with subj. acc. quos. — adversis hostibus, etc., met the enemy face to face: § 370 (228); B. 187 iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

57 occurrebant . . . ferebantur: these descriptive imperf. belong to the side action; the main narrative, which is interrupted by them, is resumed in the perfects contenderunt, etc., at the end of the chapter. See note on 3 5.

ab decumana porta: i.e. the rear gate; see chapter on military affairs, v, and Fig. 119. The camp was partly on a slope, and the rear commanded a wide view of the surrounding country.

cum respexissent, on looking back. Notice that this descriptive cum-construction has a great variety of translations, but all indicate an inner connection; cf. cum . . . vidissent, l. 26, below.

praecipites: adj., agreeing with calones, but with the force of an adv., pell-mell, in utter confusion; § 290 (191); B. 239; G. 325. 6; H. 497 (443); H-B. 245.

qui, etc.: this refers to the baggage-train which was coming up with legions XIII and XIV as a rear guard; see 62 9-11.

oriebatur: observe the sing. number, and cf. 62 5 and note. — alii aliam: § 315. c (203. c); B. 253. 2; G. 323; H. 516. 1 (459. 1); H-B. 265. — perterriti, frantic with fear, panic-stricken (thoroughly frightened). Observe the force of per- (see Vocab.).

quorum (poss.) virtutis (obj.) opinio, whose reputation for valor: § 348. b (217. b); B. 200; G. 363. r.2; H. 446. 2 (398. 2); H-B. 354.

a civitate: abl. of agent, the state being thought of as a body of citizens.

compleri (was filling) . . . premi . . . teneri . . . fugere: indir. disc. with vidissent. The present tenses indicate what they saw going on before their eyes (dir. complentur . . . premuntur . . . tenentur . . . fugiunt). The beginner should notice that difference of idiom requires a change of tense in translation.

domum: cf. 56 17 and note.
66 3 pulsos superatosque [esse]: indir. disc.; the subject is Romanos.
— castris: § 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477 (421. i); H-B. 429.
66 4 hostis: acc., subject of potitos [esse].
66 5 Chap. 25. Caesar: subject of processit, 67 9. In this characteristic example of Latin style notice that the main verb of the sentence is not expressed until the attendant circumstances have been introduced in the form of modifying phrases, dependent clauses, etc. Thus the sense and construction are suspended. Such a sentence is called a Period: § 600, 601 (346); B. 351. 5; G. 684, 685. 2; H. 685 (573); H-B. 629, 630. An English writer would have used several short, independent sentences, each describing a single act or circumstance; and a really good translation should have that form, thus: —

Caesar, after addressing the tenth legion, passed to the right wing. Here he saw his men were hard pressed. The standards were all huddled together and the soldiers of the twelfth, massed in a solid body, were in each other's way. All the centurions of the fourth cohort had fallen, the standard-bearer was killed, and the standard lost. In the other cohorts almost all the centurions were either killed or wounded. Among these the first centurion, P. Sextius Baculus, one of the bravest of soldiers, was disabled by many severe wounds so that he could no longer stand on his feet. The rest were showing no spirit, and some in the rear had abandoned the fight and were drawing back to get out of range of the missiles. The enemy meanwhile continued to come up in front from below without cessation, and to press them hard also on both flanks. The situation was desperate. Seeing this, and realizing that there were no reserves that could be sent in, Caesar snatched a shield from a man in the rear rank — it happened that he had come there without a shield himself — and advanced to the front.
66 6 ubi: construe with vidit, I. 8. — in unum locum: i.e. the soldiers were so crowded together that they could not keep their alignment, and the standards were bunched in a confused mass in the crowd.
66 7 sibi ... impedimento, hindered one another in fighting (lit. were for a hindrance themselves to themselves); cf. 56 4, 62 11.
66 8 quartae cohortis: this stood on the left of the front line and so bore the brunt of the attack. See chapter on military affairs, VI and VII. — omnibus centurionibus occisis: notice that seven different events are expressed in this sentence by ablatives absolute. See note on omni pacata Gallia, 49 6.
66 9 signo: i.e. the standard of the cohort.
67 1 in his, among these. — primipilo: see chapter on military affairs, I. 7. — Baculo: this was one of Caesar's best centurions. His further exploits are mentioned in Bk. iii. ch. 5 and Bk. vi. ch. 38.
Notes: Caesar.

67 3 iam ... non, no longer. — tardiores, rather slack (discouraged):
§ 291. a (93. a); B. 240. 1; G. 297; H. 498 (444. 1); H-B. 241. 2.

67 4 ab novissimis, in the rear: so below, l. 8. — deserto proelio,
withdrawing from the fight (abl. abs.).

67 5 neque: correl. to et = both ... not ... and.

67 7 vidit: repeated from 66 8 on account of the length of the sen-
tence. — neque ullum subsidium: the rear guard, legions xiii and xiv, had
not yet arrived.

67 8 posset: rel. clause of characteristic; cf. 51 4, 64 5. — militi: dat.
after detracto; cf. construction of hostibus, 54 5 and note.

67 11 signa ... laxare, to charge and [thus] open out the ranks, i.e.
as they advanced, the space between the ranks would be increased, and
so more room obtained for the use of the sword. — quo ... possent:
cf. 60 27.


67 14 etiam ... rebus, even in his own extreme peril.

67 16 Chap. 26. constiterat (from consisto): not had stood, but had
taken up a position, and so stood; cf. consuerint, 59 14; § 476 (279. e);
B. 262. A; G. 241. r.; H. 538. 4 (471. 3); H-B. 487.

67 18 ut ... coniungerent ... inferrent: subst. clause, secondary obj. of
monuit; cf. 6 10, 59 10, and notes. — conversa, etc., should face about and
charge the enemy in opposite directions (lit. bear turned standards against).
The two united thus formed a kind of hollow square. It is not necessary
to suppose that the soldiers stood immediately back to back, though this
is probable, inasmuch as the attack was on both flanks and in front.

67 19 alii: dat. after a verbal phrase of helping; § 367 (227); B. 187.
ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. i); H-B. 365. ftn. 1. 2d par.

67 20 ne ... circumvenirentur: cf. ne ... adduceretur, 49 6. — aversi,
in the rear (lit. while their backs were turned). — ab hoste: collectively,
in which sense the plur. is more common.

67 22 legionum duarum: i.e. xiii and xiv; see plan, Fig. 35.

67 24 colle: i.e. the site of the Roman camp. — Labienus: he, with
legions ix and x, had been pursuing the Atrebates; see first lines of ch. 23.

67 26 gererentur: indir. quest.

67 27 qui: i.e. the soldiers of the tenth legion.

67 28 esset: indir. quest.

68 1 nihil ... fecerunt, left nothing undone in the way of speed (i.e.
hastened as fast as they could).

68 2 reliqui: a pred. gen. Various genitives of this sort are used
with facere: § 343. b (214. c); B. 198. 3; G. 369. r. 2; H. 447 (403); H-B.
340. a.

68.4 Chap. 27. etiam qui, even such as. — procubuissent, subjv. of characteristic; cf. 67.8. — scitis: abl. with innixi; § 431 (254. b); B. 218. 3; G. 401. 6; H. 476. 3 (425. i. 1. n.); H-B. 438. 2. a.

68.6 inermes armatis, etc., (though) unarmed, threw themselves upon the armed (enemy). — occurrerent: result, like redintegrarent.

68.7 delerent, praeferrent: purpose clauses, but in slightly different relations, dependent on pugnunt. The use of quo as a conj. to introduce a purpose clause when the clause contains no comparative is rare. It is used regularly in 60 27, 67 11. Here we should expect ut.

68.8 at: marks with emphasis the change of the narrative from the Romans to the enemy.

68.9 tantam virtutem praestiterunt: on this clause depend the following subjunctives of result, — insisterent, pugnarent, conicerent, remitterent.

68.10 primi, foremost. — iacentibus (sc. eis, dat. after insisterent), stood upon them as they lay fallen (lit. them lying).

68.12 qui superessent: characteristic clause. — ut ex tumulo, as if from a mound.

68.13 ut... debere, so that we may consider (lit. it must be judged) that not without good hope of success (nequiquam) did men, etc.; ut... debere is a result clause dependent on the whole of the preceding sentence. The subject of debere is the infin. clause homines ausos esse.

68.16 quae: the antecedents are the preceding infin. clauses describing the acts of the enemy; translate deeds which. — facilia: pred. adj.; § 285. 2, 282. 6 (186); B. 233. 2; G. 211; H. 382. 2 (438. 2); H-B. 320. iii.

The battle with the Nervii and their allies was the most desperate of the Gallic War. Their surprise of the Romans was complete, their courage such as to evoke Cæsar’s wonder and admiration. Had the Romans come up in the order of march expected, — a legion at a time with intervening baggage, — they could hardly have escaped defeat or even annihilation. As it was, only the steadiness and discipline of the troops and the inspiration of Cæsar’s presence and example at a critical moment saved the day.

68.18 Chap. 28. prope ad internencionem: the Nervii were not by any means exterminated. Three years later they revolted again (Bk. v. ch. 38), and two years after that they sent a force of 5000 men to Alesia to relieve Vercingetorix (Bk. vii. ch. 75).

68.20 aestuaria: the country lying to the north, the modern Zealand, is low and marshy, cut up with bays and tide-water inlets.

68.21 dixeramus: for tense, cf. note on the same word, 49.4. — cum: causal; cf. 57.1. — impeditum [esse], etc., there was no obstacle in the way of (lit. nothing hindered to) the conquerors.
68 24 in ... calamitate: gerundive construction.
68 26 qui ... possent: this would naturally be a characteristic subjv. in the dir.; cf. 26 10. — quos: see note on 58 9.
68 27 usus [esse]: § 582 (330. b); B. 332. b; G. 528. 1; H. 611. N. 4 (534. 1. N. 1); cf. H-B. 590. 2. — misericordia (abl.), mercy: it has been observed that Cæsar's dealings with the Gauls were comparatively merciful for a Roman dealing with barbarians, but his cruelty seems to us atrocius.

69 2 ut ... prohiberent: subst. clause of purpose, obj. of imperavit; cf. this construction with that of uti iussit just before.

69 4 Chap. 29. supra: see 60 9. — cum ... venirent, while on the way. — omnibus copiis: cf. 50 16, 54 8.

69 7 sua omnia: cf. 50 15 and note. — oppidum: often identified with the citadel of Namur, at the confluence of the Meuse and Sambre (see Fig. 41). For a striking description of the locality, see Motley's "Dutch Republic," iii. 224. Others place it more probably at Falhize, opposite Huy, on the Meuse below Namur, though neither place quite agrees with Cæsar's description.

69 8 quod cum: cf. qui cum, 58 9 and note.

70 1 pedum: cf. 52 27.

70 3 conlocabant: notice the change of tense from the pluperf.

70 4 ex Cimbris Teutonisque: abl. of source; cf. 51 1; see note on 7 1.

70 6 impedimentis refers to cattle as well as portable baggage; hence the two verbs, agere and portare. Cf. ferre et agere, to plunder.

70 7 custodiam, a guard, whose duty it was to keep an eye on the booty, etc.; praesidium, a garrison, who were to hold the place. The words are in apposition with milia.

70 8 sex milia: this Teutonic military colony was probably merely adopted into the Celtic tribe of the Aduatuci, thus giving rise to the story that the whole tribe were of Teutonic descent. — una (adv.), with it, i.e. the impedimenta — hi: i.e. the six thousand. — eorum: i.e. the Cimbri and Teutons.

70 9 obitum, destruction: the Teutons were totally defeated by Gaius Marius at Aquæ Sextiae (Aix-les-Bains), B.C. 102; the Cimbri, by Marius and Catulus, the next year, at Vercellæ. — alias: adv.

70 10 inferrent: the regular word for offensive war. — inlatum [sibi bellum] defenderent, defended themselves when attacked. — consensu eorum omnium, by mutual agreement, i.e. between themselves and all their neighbors.

70 11 sibi domicilio: cf. 54 3. — hunc locum: the land between the Meuse and the Scheldt.
70 12 Chap. 30. adventu: abl. of time.
70 13 faciebant: notice the tense, and cf. 49 2 and note.— parvulis: for the formation of the word, see § 243 (164. a); B. 153; G. 189. 6; H. 340 (332); H-B. 207. 1.
70 14 pedum XII: i.e. in height.— XV milium: three miles (sc. pedum, from the same line of the text; not passuum, which is the usual word to be supplied).
70 15 oppido: for the omission of in, cf. castris, 57 5 and note. For the siege operations, see chapter on military affairs, VIII, and Figs. 43, 92, 93, 120.
70 17 viderunt: note the regular mood and tense in the temporal clause with ubi; cf. 62 18 and note.— inrirdere: histor. infin.; see note on 13 18.
70 18 quod ... institueretur: because (as they said), etc.: subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.; § 540, 592. 3 (321, 341. d); B. 286. 1, 323; G. 663. 1; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 555. a.— ab tanto spatio, so far off (lit. away by so great a space): abl. of degree of difference, ab having an adv. force.— quibusnam, etc.: the enclitic nam gives a sarcastic emphasis to this jeering question of the barbarians, by what hands, pray, or what strength?
71 2 conlocare: indir. disc.; we should have expected the fut. infin., conlocaturos [esse]. Apparently the Gauls thought the Romans meant to lift the tower and set it up on the wall (in muro); and such an idea, of course, seemed very amusing. But when the tower began to roll forward they saw their error.
71 3 Chap. 31. moveri, that it was actually moving: for the omission of the subj. acc. turrim, see § 581. N.1 (336. a. N.); B. 314. 5; G. 527. 4; H. 642 (p. 296, ftn.2); H-B. 592.
71 5 locuti, speaking: cf. 52 7.
71 6 existimare (sc. se, and cf. 59 23 and note), that they thought: depending on locuti.
71 8 possent: a rel. clause expressing cause; § 535. e (320. e); B. 283. 3. a; G. 633; H. 592 (517); H-B. 523.— se (obj.) ... permittere, that they surrendered themselves, etc.: depending on dixerunt.
71 9 unum, only one thing; notice the emphatic position of the word.— pro sua, etc., in accordance with his usual, etc.; cf. 68 27.
71 10 quam ... audirent, which they were [all the time] hearing of: repeated action.
71 11 statuisset: for the fut. perf. (statueris) of the dir. disc.; § 516. e (307. e); B. 264. a; G. 595; H. 540. 2 (473. 2); cf. H-B. 536, 470. ftn.1— ne ... despoliaret: subst. clause of purpose, in app. with unum, but really depending on deprecari for its form; see note on 4 17.
71 12 inimicos: cf. 70 10.

71 13 virtuti: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 2 (385. ii); H-B. 362. — traditis armis (= si arma tradita essent): abl. abs., equivalent to a protasis; § 521. a (310. a); B. 227. 2. b; G. 593. 2; H. 489. 2 (431. 2); H-B. 578. 6. In the dir. disc. a vivid fut. condition, si arma tradita erunt, non poterimus.

71 14 sibi praestare, that it was better for them: impers.; the subject is the following infin. clause. — si . . . deducerentur (fut. condition), if they should be reduced to such an extremity.

71 15 quamvis: from quivis.

71 16 consuessent: for the form, see § 181. a (128. a); B. 116. 1; G. 131. 1; H. 238 (235); H-B. 163. 1. Give the speech of the ambassadors of the Aduatuci in dir. disc., and also Caesar’s reply, ch. 32.

71 17 CHAP. 32. consuetudine . . . merito: cf. note on 65 9. This is a good example of the free use of the ablative case in Latin. If consuetudine were alone we should call it manner, “that in accordance,” etc.; if merito were alone we should call it cause. Caesar in using them both did not think of either category; to him they were both ablatives and needed no classification. We may call them cause if we like.

71 19 aries: a long beam with an iron head (like a ram’s), suspended from a framework, and swung with great force against a wall, crumbling the strongest masonry (see Fig. 126). — attigisset . . . dedidissent stand for attigerit . . . dedideritis (fut. perf.) of the dir.: § 551. c (327. a); B. 291. 1; G. 574; H. 605 (520); H-B. 507. 4. b.

71 20 nisi armis traditis: cf. nisi munitis castris, 63 12.

71 21 facturum: i.e. in case they came to terms. — ne quam, lest any: § 310. a (105. d); B. 91. 5; G. 315; H. 512. 1 (455. 1); H-B. 142.

71 22 re nuntiata ad suos: the idea of motion causes the use of ad; the dat. would refer simply to the utterance of the message, not to its being carried.

71 23 imperarentur: the subjv. shows that this subordinate clause is a part of the indir. disc.: § 580 (336. 2); B. 314. 1; G. 650; H. 643 (524); H-B. 534. 2. — facere: sc. se as subj. acc., which is very often omitted by Caesar; cf. 59 23. We should expect facturos [esse]. The pres. infin. standing for facimus of the dir. is somewhat colloquial; § 468 (276. c); G. 228; H. 533. 2 (467. 5); cf. H-B. 571. — dixerunt: i.e. the ambassadors on their return.

71 25 ut prope . . . aadaequarent: i.e. the arms filled the ditch and the deep space between the wall and the end of the agger almost to the top. See Figs. 43, 118.

72 2 eo die: the day is thought of as fixing the time, not as marking its duration, hence the abl.; § 423 (256); B. 230; G. 393; H. 486 (429);
H-B. 439.—pace . . . usi: i.e. they enjoyed the cessation of war and were peaceable, opposed to their later conduct.

72 3 Chap. 33. ex oppido exire: for the repetition of ex, see § 402 (243. δ); B. 214. 2; G. 390; H. 462. 1 (413. N.8); H-B. 408. 1.

72 4 ne quam: see note on 71 21.

72 5 ante in to consilio, in accordance with a plan previously agreed upon.

72 6 quod crediderant: a reason stated on the writer's own authority, hence the indic.; cf. 49 12, 56 23.—praesidia: i.e. those stationed in the castella.

72 8 ex cortice: abl. of material; § 403 (244); B. 224; G. 396; H. 470 (415. iii); H-B. 406. 4.

72 9 viminibus intextis: in the same construction as cortice.

72 10 pellibus: abl.; § 364 (225. d); B. 187. i. a; G. 348; H. 426. 6 (384. ii. 2); H-B. 376. δ.

72 11 qua, where; an abl. or instrumental form, used adverbially.

72 13 celeriter: note the emphatic position. Cæsar had ordered them to give the signal, in case of any disturbance, and to do it instantly.—ignibus: this signal was given by stretching out a great flaming torch from the side of a watch-tower.

72 14 eo, to that place.—concursum . . . pugnatum: impers. use of pass.; § 208. d (146. d); B. 256. 3; G. 208. 2; H. 302. 6 (301. 1); H-B. 290. a. 1; see note on 23 1.

72 15 ita . . . ut, they fought as fiercely as brave men ought to fight.—in extrema spe, for their last chance (lit. in the last hope).

72 16 iniquo loco: § 429. 1 (258. f); B. 228. 1. b; G. 385. N.1; H. 485. 2 (425. 2); H-B. 436.—qui . . . iacerent: subjv. of characteristic; cf. 51 4, 68 12, 68 26.

72 17 in una virtute, in valor alone.—cum . . . consisteret, at a time when, etc.; see note on 62 18.

72 18 ad, about.

72 19 postridie eius diei: cf. 20 5 and note.

72 21 sectionem . . . universam: i.e. the whole people, as slaves, with all their possessions.

72 22 capitum: cf. 26 7.—milium: pred. gen., after esse understood.

72 25 Chap. 34. Venetos, etc.: the name of the Veneti survives in the modern Vannes; that of the Redones, in Rennes.

72 26 maritimae civitates: inhabiting the modern Brittany and Normandy; they are spoken of at length in Bk. iii. chs. 7–16.

73 4 Chap. 35. perlata: notice the force of per; the news travelled from tribe to tribe.
Notes: Cæsar.

73 5 incoherent: subjv. of integral part; § 593 (342); B. 324. i; G. 663. i
H. 652. i (529. ii. n.¹ 1); H-B. 539.
73 6 se... daturas: fem. because they were representatives sent by
the tribes and spoke for them.
73 7 in Italiam: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul. Cæsar's province extended to
the Rubicon.—Illyricum: this province formed part of Cæsar's govern-
ment, but he went there only during the winter season; see 78 9 and 117 14.
73 9 Carnutes: their country lay between the Seine and the Loire,
comprising the modern Orléans, formerly their capital; their name is pre-
served in the modern Chartres.—Andes (whence Anjou): near the lower
Loire.—Turonos: preserved in Tours. These camps made a cordon from
Orléans through Angiers and Tours and probably Vannes along the Loire
to the sea-coast.—quaque civitates: translate as if et civitates quae.
73 19 supplicatio, a public thanksgiving: ten days was the longest
time that had ever been granted before, except to Pompey, who was honored
with twelve for his victory over Mithridates. But Cæsar's party was now
all-powerful at Rome.—quod: for id quod; § 307. d. n. (200. e. n.); B. 247.
i. b; G. 614. r.²; H. 399. 6 (445. 7); H-B. 325. a. n.²

Book Third.—b.c. 56.

Alpine Campaign.—The higher valleys of the Alps were inhabited by tribes
who got a scanty living by working in mines, and often waylaid and plundered expedi-
tions on the march. The two legions sent by Cæsar under Q. Pedius (Bk. ii. ch. 2)
had been attacked by these predatory people while passing into the valley of the
Rhone above Lake Geneva; hence this expedition, sent in the fall of 57, which was
intended to strike terror into the mountain tribes.

Reading References on Cæsar's Third Campaign.

Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 9.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 11.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 16.
Holmes's Cæsar's Conquest of Gaul, chap. 4.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 6.
Trollope's Cæsar, chap. 4.

74 1 cum in Italiam proficisceretur Cæsar: cf. this with the begin-
nning of the second book, cum esset Cæsar in, etc. There the verb is made
emphatic because the place where he was has been already named, and his
being absent is the most important idea. Here he is going to speak about
a road to Italy across the Alps. Hence his destination becomes important
and so takes the first place. If this were the first book, it would begin
with Caesar, the principal personage in the narrative. If his going away
were the main thing, it would begin with proficisceretur. But as it is,
the route across, and so his destination, is here the main thing. Hence
instantly the Latin order corresponds to the thought, and we have the
form here presented.—proficisceretur: the familiar use of the subjv. with
cum in descriptive clauses; cf. 11 7, 62 13.—Galbam: this officer was
one of the assassins of Caesar, his old general. The emperor Galba was
his great-grandson.

74 3 qui a finibus, etc.: Geneva seems to have been at the northeast
corner of the Allobroges’ territory. Between that point and the entrance
to the Rhone must have been the country of the Nantuates. On the other
side of the Rhone were the Seduni and Veragri. See maps, Figs. 6, 46.

74 5 iter per Alpis: the pass of the Great St. Bernard, which reaches
the Rhone valley at Martigny (the ancient Octodurus) at the great bend
of the river. This was the shortest route across the Alps at this period.
Hannibal is said to have crossed by the Little St. Bernard, and the pass by
Mont Genèvre was also in use.—magnus cum periculo, but only with great
danger, referring probably rather to the savage tribes than to the dangers
of the way.

74 6 magnis portoriiis, heavy transit-duties: portoriiis and periculo are
ablative of manner; for meaning, see note on 15 25.—mercatores: see
note on 1 8.

74 7 arbitrararetur: informal indir. disc. The form of the original would
be arbitrarius with an inv. in the conclusion, which is absorbed in permissit
and the following uti-clause; see note on 32 21.

74 8 hiemandi causa: cf. 39 26, 56 15.

74 9 secundis . . . factis, etc.: see notes on 15 19, 49 6 (last note).

74 15 hic, eius: both refer to vicus.—flumine, the Dranse.

74 17 concessit, etc.: he seems to have deprived the natives of one-
half of their village to accommodate his troops, and to have left the rest
to them.

75 3 Chap. 2. concesserat: indic. because not part of the indir. disc.;
cf. qui . . . appellantur, 52 5 and note.

75 4 montis: not the higher ranges, but the lower heights directly
upon the valley.

75 5 id, this, in apposition with ut . . . caperent; cf. note on 4 17.

75 8 neque eam plenissimam, etc., and that not entirely full. The
twelfth legion had suffered severely in the battle on the Sambre (Bk. ii.
ch. 25), and was probably already below the normal strength before the
detachments were sent off.—

75 9 commeatus . . . causa: gerundive of purpose; cf. gerund, 74 8.

75 10 despiciebant, existimabant, etc.: notice the imperfects describ-
ing the situation; see note on 3 5.

75 11 cum ipsi . . . decurrerent, when they should charge down from
the hills upon the valley. The imperf. subjv. of indir. disc. with cum is
here equivalent to the fct. indic. of dir. disc.

75 13 accedebat quod, and besides (lit. it was added that). The subject
of accedebat is the clause quod . . . dolebat; cf. 60 25.

76 2 Romanos . . . adiungere: indir. disc. after persuasum habebant
—they had persuaded themselves (lit. they had it persuaded to themselves).
With persuasum habebant cf. coactum habebat, 13 4, compertum habere,
40 90, habere explorata, 51 8, and notes.

76 6 Chap. 3. hibernorum: see chapter on military affairs, v. In
the present case, Galba saved labor by appropriating a part of the Gallic
buildings without much ceremony; but he proceeded to lay out the usual
fortifications (munitiones).

76 7 perfectae: referring both to opus and munitiones, but agreeing
with the nearer; cf. 24 7.

76 10 consilio: i.e. of tribunes, cavalry officers, and first centurions.

76 11 quo in consilio: cf. 25 5, 58 9, and notes.

76 14 subsidio veniri, that any one should come to their aid: veniri is
impers., sc. posset implied in possent; subsidio is dat. of service or end
for which.

76 15 non nullae . . . sententiae, several opinions (or votes) given by the
officers in council.

76 18 maiori . . . placuit, it was determined by the majority.—hoc . . .
defendere, to reserve this course for the extremity, and meanwhile, etc.

76 21 Chap. 4. rebus . . . administrandis: dat. of the gerundive, ex-
pressing purpose; an unusual construction, the acc. with ad or in or the
gen. with causa being much more common. Why is constituissent in
the subjv.?

76 23 decurrere, conicere, propugnare, mittere, occurrere, ferre, supe-
rari: histor. infinitives, describing the scene and implying incessant action;
cf. 13 18, 70 17, and notes.

76 24 gaesa: Gallic javelins of unknown form. — integris viribus (abl.
abs.), as long as their strength was unimpaired.

76 27 eo: adv.—occurrere, ran to meet the danger.

76 29 alii, while others.—quarum rerum, things of which; cf. 30 19,
38 19, 62 90. and notes. The gen. is partitive with nihil.
III. 2–7.]  

Campaign against the Veneti. 349

77 1 non modo . . . sed ne . . . quidem, not only not, but not even, etc.; we should expect another negative after modo, but the Latin regularly omits it where both parts have the same predicate. Note the emphasis on saucio.

77 3 sui recipiendi: cf. 40 15 and note.

77 5 Chap. 5. cum . . . pugnaretur, when the fight had been (and was still) going on: § 471. b (277. b); B. 260. 4; G. 234; H. 535 (469. ii. 2); H-B. 485.

77 7 languidioribus nostris: abl. abs., expressing cause.

77 9 Baculus: see 67 1 and note.

77 13 unam: note the emphasis, only one.

77 14 experimentur: note that the histor. pres. docent has the effect of a secondary tense on the dependent verb.

77 15 intermitterent: a command in indir. disc., following certiores facit in the sense of instructs.

77 16 tela . . . exciperent: i.e. the Romans were to gather up the spent weapons to use them against the enemy, as their weapons were almost exhausted (l. 6).

77 19 Chap. 6. quod = id quod: cf. 73 12.

77 20 cognoscendi facultatem, opportunity of finding out.—sui conligendi, of collecting their wits: observe that sui is plural in meaning; cf. sui recipiendi, l. 3, above, and note.

77 23 circumventos interficiunt, they surround and kill.—ex milibus: for part. gen. after parte.

77 27 armis: abl. of separation.

77 28 exutis: agreeing with coipis; § 364 (225. d); B. 187. i. a; G. 348; H. 462 (414. 1); H-B. 408. 3. ftn.2; in their flight they threw their arms away. Of course the Romans did not catch them and strip off their arms.

77 29 fortunam temptare: cf. English “to tempt Providence.”—alio consilio . . . alis rebus viderat, remembered that he had come with one design, and saw that he had met a different state of things.

Naval Campaign against the Veneti.—The Veneti inhabited the peninsula of Aremorica called Bretagne, Brittany, or Little Britain, since the emigration from Great Britain to escape the Saxon invasion. It has always been the home of the hardiest, most independent, and most strongly characterized of all the Gallic populations. Its scenery is wild and secluded, the character of its coast being clearly given in Cæsar’s narrative. Its language remains Celtic to this day. No one of Cæsar’s campaigns shows more strikingly his boldness and fertility of resource than this.

78 8 Chap. 7. Germanis: i.e. under Ariovistus. It will be noticed that the geographical order, and not the order of events, is followed in
Notes: Caesar.

this summary. Of the Alpine tribes the Seduni are mentioned as the most important. The passage in brackets makes sense, and may be translated.

78 10 Illyricum: part of Caesar's province.
78 12 Crassus: see 46 24–27, 72 24 ff.; for force of adulescens, see note on 46 25.
78 13 mare: following proximus with the construction of prope; § 432. a
(261. a); B. 141. 3; G. 359. N.1; H. 435. 2 (391. 2); H-B. 380. b.
78 14 praefectos: officers of cavalry and auxiliaries.
78 15 compluris goes with civitatis.
78 19 Chap. 8. huius civitatis: i.e. the Veneti, on the southern coast of Brittany, the modern Morbihan.
78 20 orae: part. gen.—regionum: added to describe and limit orae.
78 21 Britanniam: at this time an important Celtic country, having close commercial and social relations with the mainland. Doubtless a large part of the shipping trade was in the hands of the Veneti and their allies, whose commerce extended from Ireland to Spain.—consuere, are accustomed: § 476 (279. e); B. 262. A; G. 236. R.; H. 299. 2 (297. 1. 2); H-B. 487. Cf. 59 14.
78 23 in magno . . . aperti: i.e. on a sea exposed to great and violent storms.
78 24 omnis . . . habent vectigalisa: i.e. levy tolls upon them all; vectigalisa is in pred. app. with omnis.
78 28 subita . . . consilia: this national characteristic of the Gauls is often alluded to by Caesar and other Roman historians.
79 5 quam acceperint: § 592 (341); B. 323; G. 628; H. 643 (524);
H-B. 535. 1. a.
79 6 quam perferre, than to endure, following the comparative contained in malint.
79 9 remittat: subjv. expressing a command in indir. disc., depending on the message implied in legationem mittunt. The dir. disc. would be si vis, etc., remittat.
79 11 Chap. 9. aberat longius, was too far off, i.e. to take command at once in person.—navis longas, galleys. See chapter on military affairs, ix, and Figs. 48, 51. The Gallic ships, it seems, used sails alone, without oars; see 84 25–28.
79 12 Ligeri: the Loire, on the banks of which Crassus was wintering—institui, to be organized, i.e. in gangs for the several galleys.
80 1 cum primum: the first moment when (lit. when first). Caesar had spent the winter as usual in Cisalpine Gaul. He reached his army perhaps in April or early in May.
80 3 [certiores facti]: omit in translation.
351

80 4 admisissent: indir. quest. — legatos . . . coniectos (the specific act): in app. with facinus, but the construction is determined by intellegabant; see note on 4 17; legatos: they were hardly such in the sense of international law. They were only Cæsar’s legati or lieutenants.

80 5 quod nomen: cf. quarum rerum, 76 29 and note.

80 6 hoc: abl. of degree of difference, approaching the idea of cause.

80 9 pedestria itinera, etc., approaches by land.

80 10 concisa, impeditam: with esse. They depend upon sciebant.

80 11 inscientiam: i.e. the Romans’ lack of acquaintance. — neque . . . confidebant, and they trusted that our armies could not, etc. Notice that connective and negative have an attraction for each other, though we separate them.

80 13 ut . . . acciderent, etc., granting that, etc.: ut here introduces a concessive clause. This is the only instance in the “Gallic War.” Note that when so used the subjv. mood follows; § 440 (266. c); B. 278; G. 608; H. 586. ii (515. iii); H-B. 532. 2. b.

81 1 posse and the following infinitives depend upon perspiciebant, l. 5.

81 3 gesturi essent: subjv. of indir. disc. Observe the first periphrastic conj. referring to future time.

81 4 longe aliam . . . atque, very different . . . from; cf. aliter ac,

82 6. — concluso: i.e. like the Mediterranean, where there is no tide, and which is quiet as compared with the Atlantic.

81 9 socios: pred. apposition; cf. vectigalis, 78 25. — Osismos, etc.: the coast tribes as far as Flanders. The name Lexoviæ remains in Lisieux; Namnetes in Nantes; Diablintes in Jablins.

81 14 Chap. 10. inuria retentorum equitum, the wrong done by detaining the knights: § 497 (292. a); B. 337. 5; G. 664. R²; H. 636. 4 (549. 5. N²); H-B. 608. 2.— rebellio, renewal of hostilities (not rebellion).

81 16 ne . . . arbitrarentur: a new rising was threatened by the Belgians, while the maritime tribes, it is said, were already fearful of a Roman attempt upon Britain. (Observe that this purpose clause is under the same construction as the nominatives inuria, defectio, etc., which express other reasons for Cæsar’s action, and are all in apposition with multa.)

81 17 idem: subj. of licere.

81 19 excitari: the pres. infin. here corresponds to the pres. of a general truth; while odisse answers to oderunt taken as a pres., all men naturally hate.

81 20 priusquam . . . conspirarent: see note on 38 27.

81 24 Chap. 11. flumini: dat. with proximi, but cf. 78 13.

81 25 adeat: after mandat, a command; cf. 6 10 and note; § 565. a (331. f. R); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R²; H. 565. 4 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. a.
81 26 auxilio: dat. of service or end for which. — arcessiti [esse] dicebantur, were reported to have been invited.

82 2 Crassum: cf. 78 12 and note.

82 3 Aquitaniam: in southwest Gaul; see 2 7-10. These peoples were of different race and language from the other Gauls, and took little interest in their affairs, not even joining in the great revolt described in Book vii.

82 6 Venellos, etc.: in Normandy.

82 7 distinendam: cf. pontem faciendum curat, 11 5 and note.— Brutum: afterwards one of the conspirators against Cæsar, with the more celebrated Marcus Brutus.

82 8 Pictonibus, Santonis: on the coast south of the Loire (Poitou and Saintonge).

82 12 Chap. 12. eius modi ... ut, of such sort that.

82 13 lingulis: some of these narrow tongues of land run out to sea several miles.

82 14 cum ... incitavisset: i.e. at high tide.— [bis]: apparently an error of the MSS. Some editors read xxiv instead of xii; others refer it to the general ignorance or carelessness of ancient writers.

82 15 quod ... adfectarentur: subjv. as an integral part of the result clause.

82 16 minuente, at the ebb: intransitive.

82 17 utraque re, in either case.

82 18 superati, agreeing with the subject of coeperant.

82 19 his (aggere ac molibus) ... adaequatis, when these were brought level with the walls.

General von Göl er explains the Roman works as follows: "A dike was extended along each side of the isthmus in the direction of the town. While these were building, of course with each rise of the tide the space within would be overflowed. When the dikes were nearly completed, the Romans waited until the ebb had carried off the water, and then rapidly pushed their works to completion before the next turn of the tide. Thus the sea was shut out and the isthmus left dry. Meanwhile the dikes themselves, being raised to the height of the walls, each served the purpose of an agger for approach to the town."

82 23 haec ... faciebant, this they continued to do: repeated action.

82 24 partem: duration of time.

82 25 summa: with difficultas; note the emphasis. — vasto mari, etc.: in each of these points the ocean is contrasted with the sheltered and tideless waters of the Mediterranean. The words are abl. abs., which in expressions of time is closely related to the locative; see § 419 (255) ftn.; cf. H-B. 421. 4.
82 28 Chap. 13. namque; introduces the reason for the fewer troubles of the Veneti, "(but the Veneti had less trouble) for." — ipsorum, their own.
82 29 aliquanto: abl. of degree of difference.
83 1 navium: depending on carinae understood. — quo ... possent: cf. 7 15, 60 27.
83 2 atque item puppes, and the sterns too: accommodatae (being adapted) standing as an additional predicate.
83 4 quamvis: from quivis.
83 5 transtra, etc., the cross benches (for the rowers) of timbers a foot thick, fastened with iron bolts the thickness of a [man's] thumb.
83 7 pelles: the Romans used sails made of flax, the Veneti of skins untanned (pelles) or tanned (aluteae).
83 11 tanta onera navium, ships of so great weight. — non satis commode, not very well.
83 12 nostrae classi: dat. of possession, but translate, the encounter of our fleet with, etc.
83 13 praeestaret, had the advantage (i.e. our fleet).
83 14 reliqua: here a neut. plur. substantive, everything else.
83 15 eis: dat. with nocere; § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385. i); H-B. 362.
83 16 rostro: see Figs. 48, 51.
84 2 copulis: the Romans were not very skilful in naval tactics, and they always aimed, by means of grappling hooks and boarding bridges, to get aboard the enemy's ship and reduce the conflict as soon as possible to a hand-to-hand combat, in which they excelled. — accedebat ut, there was this additional advantage that, followed by the result clauses, ferrent, consisterent, and tимерент; cf. 41 15, 51 6.
84 3 se vento dedissent, ran before the wind. The phrase is a nautical one; hence ventus is repeated to give the complete expression.
84 4 consisterent, rode at anchor.
84 5 ab aestu relictae: trans. if or when, etc.; § 496 (292); B. 337. 2. a, b; G. 664 ff.; H. 638. 2 (549. 2); H-B. 604. 3. — nihil: cf. 63 13 and note.
84 8 Chap. 14. neque: see note on 80 11.
84 9 eis noceri posse, they could be harmed. Observe that the expression is impers., and cf. 56 24 and note.
84 10 quae ubi: cf. note on qui cum, 58 9.
84 11 paratissimae, fully equipped; ornatissimae, thoroughly furnished. The battle was probably fought in the bay of Quiberon, off the heights of St. Gildas, on which Caesar was encamped. The fleet of Crassus issued from the Loire and took a northwesterly course. Meanwhile the fleet of
the Venetii came out of the Auray estuary, and passing through the
Morbihan entrance to the bay, encountered the Romans directly opposite
Caesar's camp. See Fig. 49.

84 13 neque satis Bruto ... constabat, and Brutus could not make out.
agerent and insisterent refer to Brutus and his officers.

84 14 tribunis militum, etc.: in the ancient modes of fighting, the fleet
was only a part of the army, and was commanded by the military officers,
as here.

84 16 noceri, etc.: cf. similar phrase above, l. 9.

84 17 excitatis, raised. The abl. abs. has a concessive force, as is
shown by the following tamen.

84 18 ex barbaris navibus, on the enemy's ships; for force of ex, cf.
una ex parte, ex itinere, etc.

84 20 magno usui, of great service (cf. auxilio, 81 26), in fact turning
threatened disaster to victory; but Caesar will not use words that hint at
possible defeat.

84 22 muralium falcium, wall-hooks, long poles with sickle-shaped
hooks attached, like those used by hook-and-ladder companies for pulling
down walls (see Fig. 126). The gen. limits formae understood, which
would be dat., after absimili.—cum = whenever, as often as, and the sen-
tence following is a general condition, the verbs comprehensi adductique
erant being in the protasis, and praerumpabantur in the apodosis express-
ing repeated action, which is regularly expressed in Latin by the indic.; cf.
59 13 and note.

84 24 praerumpabantur, etc., they [the halyards] were torn away by
driving the ship forward with the oars.

84 26 Gallicis navibus: dat. of reference used for poss. gen.

85 1 paulo fortius factum: one of Caesar's mild expressions for an act
of remarkable daring.

85 4 Chap. 15. cum, etc.: another general condition; see note on
84 22.—singulas, etc.: i.e. two or three ships surround each one of the
enemy's.

85 6 contendebant, expressing repeated action; cf. with contenderunt
below, which describes a single act; cf. 75 10.—quod postquam: cf.
quae ubi, 84 10 and note.

85 8 cum ... reperiretur: a causal clause: cf. 2 15, 57 1.

85 9 conversis ... navibus: i.e. steered so as to run before the wind.

The prevailing winds at present towards the end of summer in this
quarter are from the east or northeast,—the precise winds needed for the
two fleets to have met as indicated above. Further, when these winds
have blown during the morning, it usually falls calm at noon. This is
just what happened on the day of the battle. The calm was probably just after midday.

85 14 pervenerint, *came to land*; for the tense, cf. 28 6, 50 22, the perf. subjv. being used, as usual, to express past time in a result clause, without regard to sequence of tense.

85 15 hora III (quarta): about 10 A.M.

86 2 Ch. 16. cum ... tum, while ... at the same time.

86 4 convenerant, coegerant: i.e. for this war. — quod ubique, *all that there were anywhere*, followed by the part. gen. navium.

86 5 quo, whither: i.e. any refuge.

86 8 eo gravius ... quo, *the more severely*, etc., in order that. — vindicandum [esse] (impers.), *punishment should be inflicted*.

86 10 sub corona vendidit, *sold [as slaves] at public auction*; lit. under the wreath, since the captives were crowned like animals to be sacrificed, as indeed they had been in earlier times. Thus the only naval power in Gallia that could be formidable to the Romans was totally destroyed, and neither the Veneti nor their allies gave the proconsul any more trouble.

86 13 Ch. 17. Venellorum: along the Channel coast of Normandy.

86 14 his: cf. classi, 84 13.

86 16 magnas copias: most likely meaning here irregular troops as opposed to exercitum. — his paucis diebus: i.e. about the same time.

86 17 Eburovices: this branch of the Aulerci lived on the south side of the lower Seine.

86 18 nolebant: i.e. the Senate. — clauserunt: i.e. against the Romans.

86 20 perditorum, *desperate*: there might well be many such, as it was now the third year of constant war in Gaul.

86 23 loco, castris: locative ablatives without a prep.; cf. 13 6, 57 5 and note.

86 24 cum: concessive.

87 1 eo absente: i.e. Cæsar. A legatus regularly had no imperium, or independent command, but served under that of his superior.

87 3 dimicandum [esse]: impers., with legato as dat. of apparent agent.

87 8 Ch. 18. pro perfuga, *in the character of a deserter*.

87 10 neque longius ab esse quin: an idiomatic shorthand expression amounting to *that not later than the following night* Sabinus would, etc.

87 14 iri: depending on oportere.

87 15 superiorum dierum, *on the previous days*: see note on belli, below.

87 17 spes ... belli: subj. gen. denoting the source; notice that the regular way to express the relation between two substantive ideas is by the genitive. One idea is conceived as belonging to the other in some sense. See note, 62 20.
fere...credunt, most men are glad to believe, etc.
non prius...quam, not...until: cf. 81 20.
ut...victoria (abl. abs.), as if victory were already assured.
samentis, cuttings, young growth trimmed off from trees.—vir
gultis, brushwood.

mille: an indecl. adj. in agreement with passus.
quam...spati, as little time as possible, subj. of daretur.
que, and (consequently), as often with -que.
Note the emphasis on primum and statim.
quos: the antecedent is eorum.

Southern Gaul.—The campaign in Aquitania was made merely for strategic reasons, was not provoked by any attack or threat of war, and appears to have been quite unnecessary (see note on 82 3) as well as difficult and dangerous. The Aquitani had no strong military league or combination, but consisted of small, isolated clans, and were besides of more industrious habits than the Gauls, being good miners and engineers. As a mere narrative, however, this is an interesting episode of the war.

P. Crassus, etc.: cf. 82 2-5.
ante dictum est: i.e. in 2 7-10. Omit bracketed words in lines 18-20.
tertia pars: these statements show extreme ignorance, as would be natural (cf. the account of Britain, Bk. v. chs. 12-14).
Praecoinus, Manlius: these defeats were twenty-two years before (B.C. 78), when the Aquitani united with Sertorius, the leader of the Marian party, who held Spain for six years against Rome. (See Plutarch's "Life of Sertorius."

Tolosa et Narbone: Tolosa was an old Gallic town; Narbo, a Roman colony established by the policy of Gaius Gracchus, B.C. 118. It became the capital of the Roman province, to which it gave its name, Narbonensis.

his regionibus: dat. after finitimae, which agrees with civitates. Omit [ex].
nominatim evocatis: i.e. veterans who had served their term, but were willing to reënlist. See chapter on military affairs, iv. a.—Sotiatium: south of the Garonne, southeast of the modern Bordeaux; the name remains in the modern Sôs.

superioribus victoriis: i.e. those just related; § 431. a (254. b. 2); B. 218. 3; G. 401. N. 6; H. 476. 3 (425. ii. 1. N.); H-B. 424.
III. 18-23.

Campaign in Aquitania.

89 7 sine imperatore . . . adulescentulo duce: an imperator is the chief commander of an army, holding the imperium, or power of military command conferred on him by regular formalities; dux is a general designation for any person holding a command, and might be given to a subordinate officer, like Crassus, who acted as an agent and under the imperium of his superiors.

89 9 perspici: the subject is the indir. quest. quid . . . possent.

89 12 vineas turrisque egit: see chapter on military affairs, viii, and Figs. 33, 43, 92, 93, 120.

89 13 cuniculis, mines (lit. rabbits), so called from their likeness to rabbits' burrows. The mine was intended to run under the Roman agger. The roof was carefully propped up with wooden posts, and these being set on fire, when they were burned through, the entire mass of Roman works would fall into the pit.

89 15 aeriae secturaeque: this seems to mean copper mines and quarries (not entirely underground); but the meaning of the words is not perfectly clear. — diligentia: the Romans doubtless met the attack with countermines.

89 18 faciunt, they do (it).

89 21 Chap. 22. soldurios, paid retainers (hence soldiers), a Gallic word. It is related that these soldurii were dressed in royal garments like their chief.

89 22 condicio: the same condition of service was found among the Germans (Bk. vi. ch. 23), and was the foundation of feudal vassalage. — commodis: abl. with fruantur.

89 23 quorum amicitiae, to whose friendship. — si quid . . . accidat: a euphemism, cf. 16 14.

89 24 sibi mortem, etc.: cf. 4 15.

89 26 qui . . . recusaret: rel. clause of characteristic; cf. 5 6, 51 4.

89 27 cum his (repeated from cum devotis; cf. repetition of vidit, 67 7), with these (I say).

90 4 Chap. 23. Vocatium, etc.: these were farther west.

90 7 quibus, within which.

90 8 quoqueversus, in every direction (quoque, the adverb of place formed from the distributive quisque; versus, the adverb of direction usually connected with prepositions, as ad-versus). It is often written quoquoversum.

90 10 citerioris: i.e. from the standpoint of Rome; now northern Spain. — Hispaniae: these Iberian populations were allied to the Aquitani (Bk. i. ch. 1). Spain had been subject to Rome for more than 150 years, but was always rather mutinous, and had made several attempts at
independence, especially under Sertorius, who defied Rome for ten years, B.C. 82–72; see note on 88 21. It was also the last stronghold of Pompey's party in the Civil War, till finally subdued at Munda, B.C. 45. — finitimae: pred. adj. agreeing with quae.

90 15 consuetudine populi Romani: a custom which they had learned in the service with Sertorius.

90 16 loca capere, etc.: i.e. to practise Roman tactics.

90 18 suas ... augeri, etc.: these infin. clauses are in app. with quod. — diduci, be stationed in various places, to keep track of the enemy and prevent being surrounded.

90 22 decertaret: subjv. of result with quin after cunctandum [esse]; § 558 (319. d); B. 283. 4; G. 555; H. 595. 2 (504); cf. H-B. 502. 3. b; cf. 29 5, 50 9, 50 25.

90 25 Chap. 24. duplici: i.e. two cohorts in depth. His numbers were too few to allow the usual formation of three (triplex acies).

90 26 in medium aciem: i.e. where they would be kept steady by his legionaries. Their ordinary position was on the wings.

90 27 exspectabat, waited (to see) what, etc.

91 1 obsessis viis ... potiri, to block the roads, cut off supplies, and win the victory without a wound.

91 3 sese recipere: i.e. to withdraw from Aquitania.

91 4 infirmiores animo, dispirited: § 253; B. 226; G. 397; H. 480 (424); H-B. 441.—adoriri cogitabant, had in mind to attack; sc. eos for obj., and see note on 62 16.

91 5 productis copiis: concessive (= although, etc.).

91 6 sua, their.

91 7 opinione timoris, the notion (they had given) of their own cowardice.

91 9 oportere: depending on some word of saying implied in voces. — iaretur: cf. note on decertaret, 90 22. Translate freely, that they should go to the camp without further delay.

91 10 ad hostium castra: this is the only instance in the Commentaries of an attack by Romans on a fortified Gallic camp. The fight usually took place on a level stretch between the hostile camps. The Romans always chose their battle-ground with great care.

91 11 Chap. 25. telis connectis (abl. abs.), by hurling weapons.

91 13 quibus: abl. with confidebat; § 431 (254. b); B. 219. 1. a; G. 401. 6; H. 476. 3 (425. i. 1. n.); H-B. 437.

91 14 lapidibus ... comportandis: gerundive expression of means. — aggerem: i.e. Crassus was building a mound of turf to equal the height of the enemy's rampart, as in the siege of a city.
III. 23–29.]  

Campaign in Aquitania.

91 15 opinionem pugnantium: i.e. they made an impression as if actually engaged.

92 2 ex loco, etc.: i.e. as they stood on the rampart of the camp.

92 4 ab decumana porta: i.e. in the rear, where this gate was situated (see Fig. 119). The Gauls appear here to have adopted the Roman mode of constructing camps, probably under the instruction of the Sertorian officers.


92 13 prius . . . quam: this is often used with the indic. to show that one actual fact precedes another, just as succession is denoted by postquam. Here the subjv. subordinates the temporal clause to the main idea, like the subjv. with cum; cf. also 57 20 and note.

92 14 videri: sc. possent from the following posset.—rei: part. gen.

92 18 per, over.

92 20 apertissimis campis (see note on 62 27): i.e. the broad, treeless plains which abound in this part of the country.

92 21 quae: acc. plur.; the antecedent is milium.—Cantabris: a very hardy people of the western Pyrenees.

92 26 Chap. 27. Tarbelli, etc.: some of the names will be recognized in the modern Tarbes, Bigorre, Garonne.


93 2 Chap. 28. omni Gallia pacata, while all the rest of Gaul was subdued.—Morini, etc.: on the islands and low coast lands of Flanders and further north.

93 3 qui . . . essent: cf. 89 26 and note.—neque: cf. 80 11.

93 4 arbitratus, thinking: the perf. part. of dep. verbs often has a present force.

93 5 alia . . . ac: cf. 62 6.

93 8 continentis, continuous: i.e. far-stretching.

93 15 longius, too far (farther than was safe).—locis: loc. abl., as usual without a prep.

93 17 Chap. 29. deinceps: i.e. in the days next following.

93 18 inermibus . . . militibus: abl. abs.

93 20 conversam, fronting, i.e. with the boughs turned towards the enemy.—pro vallo, as a palisade.

93 23 tenerentur, etc.: i.e. were just being seized.

93 24 eius modi . . . uti . . . intermitteretur, such that the work was constantly interrupted.

93 26 sub pellibus: the tents were of leather.

93 28 Aulercis, etc.: along the Seine, near Evreux and Lisieux.
Book Fourth.—B.C. 55.

Campaign against the Germans.—The year B.C. 55 appears to have been marked by a general movement in the migration of the German tribes. An advance, consisting of two tribes, the Usipetes and Tencteri, crowded forward by the more powerful Suevi, crossed the lower Rhine into northern Gaul. Caesar assumed the defence of the country he had just conquered, drove them back across the Rhine, followed them up by an expedition into their own territories, and fully established the supremacy of the Roman arms. Another brief campaign in Germany two years later confirmed this success, and the Rhine became the military frontier, recognized for many centuries, between the Roman Empire and the barbarian world.

Reading References on the Campaign against the Germans.

Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 10.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 12.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 16.
Holmes's Cæsar’s Conquest of Gaul, chap. 5.
Napoleon’s Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 7.
Plutarch's Lives, Cæsar.
Tacitus’s Germania.
Trollope’s Cæsar, chap. 5.

94 1 ea quae, etc.: mark the emphasis as shown by the order and compare the opening of Bk. iii and note. — Pompeio, Crasso: i.e. the year B.C. 55. Observe that the usual way of fixing a year is by naming the consuls for that year. The coalition between Cæsar, Pompey, and Crassus, sometimes called the First Triumvirate, had been formed five years before. In carrying out the scheme, Cæsar held the government of Gaul, while the others took into their own hands the whole control of affairs at home (see Introduction, “Life of Cæsar”).

94 2 Usipetes, Tencteri: beyond the Rhine, a little below Cologne.
94 4 quo: adv. = in quod.
94 5 quod . . . prohibebantur: Cæsar states this reason as his own, therefore the indic. — Suevis: this people (the modern Swabians) occupied the greater part of central Germany, and was made up of several tribes.
94 6 premebantur, prohibebantur: the imperfects here express that which was still going on, they were being hard pressed, etc.
94 8 centum pagos (see 10 19): there is probably some confusion here with the ancient German institution of the Hundred, a division of the population giving its name to a district of territory. Each hundred seems
to have sent 1000 men (singula milia) to the army. The term early lost its numerical value, and became a mere local designation.

94 9 bellandi causa: gerund, expressing purpose with causa. Observe that causa in this use always follows its case; cf. above causa transeundi, with a totally different meaning.

94 11 hi . . . illi, the latter . . . the former.—anno post, the following year: § 424. f (259. d); B. 337. 1; G. 403. n.4; H. 488. 1 (430); cf. H-B. 424.

94 12 ratio, theory (theoretical knowledge); usus, practice (knowledge derived from experience).

94 13 sed: i.e. they attended to agriculture systematically, but, etc.—privati . . . agri: i.e. the land was held in tribal communities.

94 14 longius anno: i.e. the community had no fixed possessions, but was transferred yearly from one tract to another, its place being taken by another community. As is shown in Bk. vi. ch. 22, the community was composed of persons kindred by birth. The annual shifting of occupancy would prevent at once forming local attachments, building up large properties, and too rapidly exhausting the soil.

94 15 frumento (abl. of means), etc.: they were still in a half-nomadic state, though with some little advance in agriculture (cf. Bk. vi. ch. 22, and Tacitus, Ger. 27).—maximam partem: adv. acc.; it is worth while to learn the few words that commonly occur in this construction; § 390. c, 397. a (240. a, b); B. 185. 1; G. 334. r.2; H. 416. 2 (378. 2); cf. H-B. 388.


95 1 quod . . . faciunt: this clause is a parenthesis; because, having been trained from childhood to no service or discipline, they do nothing whatever against their will,—a lively contrast of barbarous manners with the severity of Roman family and civil discipline.

95 3 alit: the subject is quae res.—homines [eos] efficit, makes [them] men, etc.

95 4 eam: correl. with ut, introducing a clause of result.—locis (abl. abs., concessive) frigidissimis, even in their extreme climate.

95 5 vestitus: part. gen. with quicquam.—haberent, have; lava-rentur, bathe: imperf. by-sequence of tenses following adduxerunt; § 485. a (287. a); B. 268. i; G. 511. r.3; H. 546 (495. i); H-B. 481.

95 8 Chap. 2. eo ut . . . habeant, so (on this account) that they may have (some one) to whom, etc.

95 9 quam quo . . . desiderent, than that they want, etc. For the use of quo expressing cause with the implied negative, see § 592. n. (341. r.); B. 323; G. 541. n.2; H. 588. ii. 2 (516. 2); H-B. 535. 2. b.

95 11 impenso pretio, at high cost.—importatis non utuntur, do not import for use (lit. do not use imported).
Notes: Caesar.

95 13 deformia, ill-shaped.— summi laboris, (capable) of great labor (gen. of quality).
95 20 quamvis pauci, however few.— vinum: cf. the description of the Nervii, 59 29-26. They drank a kind of beer, however, and mead made of honey.
95 23 Chap. 3. publice, as a community.
95 26 una ... Suevis, extending from (the territory of) the Suevi in one direction.— sexcenta: probably exaggerated.— agri, their lands.
95 27 Ubii: along the Rhine, opposite Cologne.
96 1 pauio ... humaniores, somewhat more civilized than the others, although they are of the same race (Germans).
96 4 cum: concessive, as shown by the following tamen.
96 5 gravitatem, importance, referring to the warlike character and extensive resources of the people; while amplitudinem refers to their great numbers.
96 7 vectigalis: sc. eos referring to the Ubii.— humiliores (pred.): in translating sc. so as to be.
96 9 Chap. 4. in eadem causa, in the same situation.
96 12 quas regiones: North Brabant, with the north bank of the Rhine.
96 13 ad utramque ripam, along both banks.
96 14 multitudinis: see 102 10.
96 16 cis Rhenum: i.e. the west side.
96 18 vi contendere, to force a passage.
96 22 confecto: with itinere.
96 23 oppresserunt: not oppressed; see note on obtinere, 2 1.
97 2 priusquam ... fieret: § 551. b (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. ii (520. ii); H-B. 507. 4. b; see also note on 38 27.
97 5 partem: acc. of time.— eorum copiis, on their supplies (cattle and grain).
97 6 Chap. 5. infirmitatem, weakness of purpose = sickness.
97 8 nihil ... committendum, no confidence should be placed in them. Observe that committendum [esse] is impers. and nihil adv. acc.
97 9 est ... consuetudinis, it is [a point] of Gallic custom: § 343. c (214. d); B. 198. 3; G. 366. r.1; H. 439 (401); H-B. 340.— uti ... cogant, etc.: we have here a number of clauses of result in app. with hoc.
97 14 rebus atque auditionibus, facts and hearsays.
97 15 quorum eos ... paenitere: § 354. b (221. b); B. 209. 1; G. 377; H. 457 (409. iii); H-B. 352.— in vestigio, on the spot: cf. 95 16.
97 16 serviant, are slaves to.— plerique: i.e. the travellers and traders.
97 17 eorum: i.e. the questioners.
Campaign against the Germans.

97 18 Chap. 6. graviori bello, too serious a war (i.e. unmanageable): § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376.

97 19 maturius, earlier, i.e. in the season. — ad exercitum: the army was now in Normandy; see 93 28.

97 20 facta: sc. esse; so with missas below.

97 21 missas legationes, etc.: these infin. clauses explain ea.

97 22 uti . . . discerent: i.e. further into Gaul. The Belgæ, it will be remembered, claimed kindred with the Germans, and were no doubt ready to assist them against the Romans.

97 23 postulassent: for fut. perf. of dir. disc.; § 478, 519, 585 (281, 316, 336, b); B. 264, 312. 2, 318; G. 244, 516; H. 644. 2 (525. 2); H-B. 468. 6, 536, 470. ftn.1 — fore parata, should be made ready (used for the fut. infin. pass.). It depends on some word of saying, like promiserunt, implied in invitatos. Instead of fore parata, we might expect fore ut pararentur.

97 24 Eburonum, etc.: German tribes.

97 27 permulsis, calmed from their terror (lit. soothed by stroking, like a nervous horse).

98 1 Chap. 7. equitibus delectis: each of the allied states furnished its quota of cavalry.

98 2 a quibus: refers to locis.

98 5 priores, first, or, as aggressors (cf. the language of Ariovistus, Bk. i. ch. 36). — neque recusare, they do not decline, followed by quin and subjv.; cf. 50 25.

98 7 [haec]: may be translated. — quicumque: the antecedent is eis (dat.) implied with resistere.

98 8 neque deprecari, and ask no quarter (lit. and not beg off). — haec tamen dicere, this however they did say; supply se for subj. of dicere and following infinitives. For similar instances, see 59 23, 71 6, 71 23.

98 10 eis: i.e. to the Romans. — attribuant, subjv. in indir. disc. for inv. of the direct.

98 11 eos: sc. agros.

98 12 concedere, yield, as inferior.

98 13 reliquum . . . neminem: the position gives a force like, besides these there was no one else on earth, etc.

98 15 Chap. 8. quae visum est, what (it) seemed proper (to answer). He probably answered somewhat as in Bk. i. chs. 14 and 43.

98 20 Ubiorum: see ch. 3.

98 21 quorum sint, etc., whose envoys (he informs them) are now with him to (lit. and) complain, etc.

98 25 Chap. 9. post diem tertium (= tertio die), i.e. the next day but one. The first and last days are usually counted in the Roman reckoning
Notes: Cæsar.

98 26 propius se: cf. 41 10.—id: i.e. the two days' delay (expressed by ne . . . moveret).
99 1 trans: i.e. westwardly.
99 2 exspectari: change the voice and translate as active, they were waiting for.
99 4 Chap. 10. Vosego, the Vosges: in fact, the Meuse flows from the plateau of Langres.
99 5 parte . . . recepta: the Rhine branches in these low, marshy regions; one branch (Vacalus, the modern Waal) unites with the Meuse near Bois le Duc (see note, ch. 15).
99 6 Omit the words in brackets.
99 9 Nantuatium: cf. Bk. iii. ch. 1, where they are placed upon the Rhone, just above Lake Geneva; this was perhaps a branch or kindred tribe. The list of names here is incomplete.
99 12 multis . . . effectis: translate actively, making many, etc.
99 13 feris . . . nationibus: see the introduction to Motley's "Dutch Republic."
99 15 capitibus, mouths (more commonly, sources).
99 17 Chap. ii. ut erat constitutum, as had been arranged (i.e. the return of the envoys). Either this is a careless expression, or Cæsar's consent is omitted in ch. 9. It is there stated merely that they said they would return.
99 19 eos equites (antecedent to qui), the cavalry who, etc.
99 20 antecessissent: attracted into the subjv. by the ut-clause; cf. 73 5.—praemitteret: used without an object; translate send word.
99 21 sibi: i.e. the Germans.—potestatem: see note on 16 7.
99 22 quorum si, and if their: cf. note on qui cum, 58 9.
99 23 condicione . . . usuros, would accept the terms: see ch. 8.
99 25 dare: sc. petebant uti from l. 19.—eoedem illo pertinentere, tended the same way (see ch. 9), i.e. to gain time till the German cavalry should arrive (eoedem and illo are adverbs).
99 28 aquationis causa: a small stream (probably the Niers) lay between him and the German encampment.
100 3 accessisset: § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5.
100 5 Chap. 12. amplius DCCC, more than eight hundred: § 407. c (247. c); B. 217. 3; G. 296. R.4; H. 471. 4 (417. i. N.2); H-B. 416. d. Tacitus in his "Germania" (chap. 32) says that this tribe was distinguished for cavalry.
100 9 indutiis: dat. of the end for which.
100 10 resistentibus: sc. nostris.
100 11 subfossis, etc.: after stabbing our horses underneath and dismounting several of our men; observe again, as in 99 12, that an abl. abs. with a pass. part. is often best translated actively.

100 14 venissent: cf. 97 2.

100 17 genere: abl. of source; § 403. a (244. e); B. 215; G. 395; H. 469. 2 (415. ii); H-B. 413. — regnum obtinuerat, had held supreme power.

100 20 quoad: cf. this use and construction with that in l. 2.

100 25 Chap. 13. neque iam, no longer: knowing how little his own cavalry (of Gauls) were to be trusted, and that the arrival of the main body of the Germans would put them at once to flight, Cæsar resolved to attack at the first opportunity, right or wrong.

100 26 ab eis qui, from men who, etc., followed by the subjv. of characteristic.

101 1 exspectare: subject of esse; note the emphasis of position.

101 2 pementiae: pred. gen.

101 3 quantum ... auctoritatis, etc., how great prestige the enemy had gained by one battle.

101 5 quibus: i.e. the enemy (dat., indir. obj. of dandum [esse]); on the relative serving as a connective, see note, 40 20.

101 7 quaestore: see Bk. i. ch. 52. — ne quem, etc.: cf. 71 21.

101 8 res, in app. with quod ... venerunt.

101 9 eadem perfidia: their perfidy Cæsar takes for granted, as the best apology for his own; but the presence of the chiefs and old men looks more as if they came, as they said, to offer amends for the attack of the day before.

101 11 simul ... simul, partly ... partly. — purgandi sui: cf. 77 3, and see § 504. c (298. a); B. 339. 5; G. 428. r.1; H. 626. 3 (542. 1. N.1); H-B. 614.

101 12 contra atque, contrary to what; see Vocab. Observe the subjunctives of implied indir. disc. in this passage.

101 13 si quid ... de indutiis, whatever (lit. if anything) they could in the way of truce.

101 14 fallendo: i.e. by another trick. — quos, illos: both refer to the same subject. — quos oblatus [esse] gavisus, delighted that they were put in his power (gavisus, from gaudéo). By detaining their chief men, he would at once perplex and disable them.

101 17 subsequi, to follow in the rear; they usually went in advance (cf. 99 20), but now he could not trust them in the intended attack.

101 18 Chap. 14. acie triplici: i.e. a march in line of battle; see chapter on military affairs, vi and vii.

101 19 quid ageretur, what was going on.
101 20 posseit: cf. 97 2, 100 14.
101 21 et ... et, both ... and.
101 23 ne ... an ... an: § 335 (211); B. 162. 4; G. 458; H. 38c (353); H-B. 234; the three infinitives all belong to praestaret, whether it was better.
101 24 quorum timor cum: note the emphatic order.
101 29 reliqua multitudo: the presence of women and children shows that it was a migration for settlement, not a mere inroad for plunder.
102 1 ad quos consectandos (freq. of sequor), to hunt them down. Referring to this massacre of helpless fugitives, Plutarch, in his “Life of Cæsar,” writes that when the Senate was voting public thanksgiving and processions on account of the victory, Cato proposed that Cæsar should be given up to the barbarians to expiate that breach of faith, in order that the divine vengeance might fall upon its author rather than upon Rome. Cato was Cæsar’s bitter political and personal enemy, but still Cæsar’s cruelty and perfidy in this transaction can be justified only on the ground of absolute necessity. To secure the Roman power, he must destroy these Germans in order to establish the Rhine as the Gallic frontier and deter others from crossing.
102 3 Chap. 15. Germani: i.e. those who were fighting.—clamore: i.e. of those who were being massacred.
102 4 signis: figures of animals carried on poles; see Figs. 11, 70, 127.
102 6 reliqua fuga, further flight.
This action is usually placed at the junction of the Rhine and the Meuse. There are many reasons against this, but no other location seems possible without doing violence to the text, and for this no sufficient case is made out.
102 9 ex ... timore, (relieved) from the apprehension of so great a war.
102 12 discedendi potestatem, permission to depart. This was a practical acquittal of the charge of treachery.
102 13 veriti: regularly pres. act. in force, fearing.
102 17 Chap. 16. illa, the following.
102 19 suis: note the emphasis on this word.
102 20 cum intellegere: here nearly equivalent to a participle.
102 21 accessit quod, and besides: see Vocab.
102 22 quam ... transisse, which, as I mentioned above, had crossed: see 98 27 ff. (the conj. that of indir. disc. cannot be used in English to introduce a rel. clause). Observe that Cæsar the writer uses the first person (commemoravi); Cæsar the actor is always in the third.
102 25 Sugambrorum: living just north of the Ubi.
Campaign against the Germans.

102 27 intulissent: cf. antecessissent, 99 20.—dederent: observe the omission of "ut; § 565. a (331. f. R.); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R.²; H. 565. 4 (499. 2); H-B. 502. 3. a. ftn.².

102 28 finire: see introductory note to Bk. iv.

103 1 aequum: pred. adj. agreeing with the infin. clause Germanos...transire.

103 2 sui...imperi: pred. gen. of possession after esse, under his power.

103 7 occupationibus rei publicae, by the demands of state affairs.

103 8 transportaret: same construction as ferret.

103 9 futurum [esse]: sc. verb of saying from orabant, l. 5; so, too, for the following sentence.

103 17 Chap. 17. dignitatis: cf. 103 2.

103 19 latitudinem, etc.: Cæsar’s passage of the Rhine was most probably at Bonn, where the high and rocky banks begin; or at Neuwied, 20 or 25 miles further south, where there is a break in the chain of hills, though here, it is said, the bottom is rock, and not fit for driving piles. The width of the river at either place is about 1400 feet, and its depth is very variable. It is now crossed in these parts by bridges.

103 21 rationem, plan. The brief description which Cæsar gives of his rough-and-ready but very serviceable engineering may be made clearer by giving its different points as follows (see Fig. 59):—

1. A pair of unhewn logs, a foot and a half thick (tigna bina sesquipedalia), braced two feet apart and sharpened at the end, are set up by derricks and driven with pile drivers (fistucis) into the bottom, sloping a little with the stream.

2. A similar pair is driven in opposite, 40 feet below, sloping a little in the other direction against the stream; the upper ends of the two pairs would thus be some 25 or 30 feet apart, the width of the roadway. It is possible, as Rüstow thinks, that the 40 feet refer to the top and not to the bottom of the piles.

3. A beam of square timber, two feet thick (trabs bipedalis), and about 30 feet long, is made fast at the ends by ties (fibulis) between the logs of each pair,—which are thus kept at a proper distance apart, while they are strongly braced against the current.

4. A suitable number (probably about 60) of these trestles, or timber-arches, having been built and connected by cross-ties,—this part of the structure must be taken for granted,—planks are then laid lengthwise of the bridge (directa materia), resting on the heavy floor-timbers; and upon these, again, saplings and twigs (longurii, crates) are spread, to prevent the jar and wear of the carts and hoofs of the pack-animals on the flooring.
5. Piles (sublicae) are then driven in below, resting obliquely against the logs, to which they serve as shores or buttresses (pro ariete), and other heavier piles a little way above, to break the force of floating logs or boats sent down to destroy the bridge.

103 22 tigna, probably unhewn logs.—bina, two and two, i.e. in pairs.
103 24 pedum duorum: i.e. between the timbers of each pair.—cum ... defixerat, etc.: cum here equals whenever or as often as and the clause is equivalent to the protasis of a general condition; hence the use of the pluperf. indic.; cf. 84 22 and note.
103 26 sublicae modo, like a pile.
103 27 ut ... procumberent, so as to lean forward in the direction of the current.

103 29 ab inferiore parte, downstream.—contra ... conversa, slanting against, agrees with duo [tigna].
103 30 haec utraque ... distinebantur, these two sets (or pairs) were held apart by two-foot timbers laid on above, equal [in thickness] to the interval left by the fastening of the piles (quantum ... distabat), with a pair of ties at each end. For number of utraque, see Vocab.
104 2 quibus [tignis] ... revinctis, after these were held apart and secured in opposite directions: i.e. the horizontal beams held the piles (tigna) apart, which, sloping in opposite directions, had been secured by the clamps.
104 4 rerum, structure: see note on 4 4.—quo maius ... hoc artius: the greater ... the more closely, abl. of degree of difference. The only doubtful part of the description is in fibulis, of which the exact meaning is somewhat uncertain. They are thought by some to be cross-ties (as in Fig. 8o). But, as the word means properly a kind of clasp exactly like a modern safety-pin, it seems better to suppose they were clamps joining the two piles with perhaps an iron bolt put through, answering to the pin of the fibula.
104 5 haec ... contexebantur, these (the framework of timber) were covered with boards placed lengthwise.
104 7 sublicae ... agebantur, piles also were driven on the lower side in a slanting direction, so as to prop the bridge against the current.
104 8 pro ariete, as a buttress.
104 10 aliae item: other piles a little way above, to serve as a breakwater. There is nothing in the text to show whether these were attached to the bridge or not.—spatio: abl. of degree of difference.
104 11 deiciendi operis, to throw down the work: pred. gen. expressing tendency or purpose; § 504. a. N.1 (298. r.); B. 339. 6; G. 428. r.2; H. 626. 5 (544. N.3); H-B. 616, last example.
First Invasion of Britain.

104 19 neu . . . nicerent, and that they [trunci, etc.] might not harm the bridge.

104 14 Chap. 18. diebus X quibus, within ten days from the time when.
— coepita erat: pass. because used with the pass. infin.; cf. 53 6; see also l. 20 below.

104 15 traducitur: the histor. pres., resumed from 102 21.
104 16 Sugambrorum: these were a little to the northeast of the bridge.
104 21 hortantibus eis, etc.: i.e. the few who had escaped the massacre of ch. 15, and had taken refuge across the Rhine.
104 23 in solitudinem: notice that the Latin construction is that following verbs of motion, on account of the meaning of abdiderat; we say hid in, etc.

104 27 Chap. 19. pollicitus: this word implies a main clause in the infin., se daturum, on which the conditional clause would depend. This clause does not appear, but the dependent clause remains in the subjv. according to the rule.
104 28 premerentur: a good example of the subjv. in implied indir. disc.; see note on 32 21.

105 1 per exploratores: cf. note on 57 3.
105 3 uti . . . conveniarent: object clauses of purpose, following the verbal phrase nuntios . . . dimississe, which involves an idea of sending orders or advice. The rest of the sentence contains only statements and is therefore in the indir. disc. construction.

105 5 hunc, etc., this had been selected about the middle, etc.: medium is used as a pred. agreeing with hunc in preference to an adverbial phrase in medio; § 293 (193); B. 241. 1; G. 352. R.8; H. 497. 4 (440. N.2); H-B. 244.
105 7 decertare: not merely fight, but fight the decisive battle or decide the issue. This force of de is very common.
105 10 ut . . . liberaret, etc.: these clauses are in app. with rebus, and their form as result clauses is determined by confectis; see note on 4 17. In English some change of construction is often necessary in such cases. Here, having accomplished, etc. (namely), inspired, . . . chastised, . . . relieved.
105 13 arbitratus: cf. 52 7 and note.

First Invasion of Britain.—What is called the First Invasion of Britain, though it marks an interesting date in history, gave fresh stimulus to Roman curiosity and ambition, and had a significant moral effect, was in itself an affair of small account. It was, in fact, only meant for a reconnoissance, or, perhaps, to open the way to further schemes. Towards the end of summer, Caesar sailed across to the cliffs of Dover, coasted a few miles towards the west, and established a camp
on the British coast. His cavalry, meanwhile, had been weatherbound in their transports, and then, after crossing, were driven back by rough winds, so that they did not even come to land. After holding an uneasy and perilous position for about three weeks, he returned to Gaul without accomplishing anything beyond a barren display of daring. This expedition was, in fact, only intended for a "demonstration." Yet, as the beginning of the national history of England, the event assumes great interest and importance, so that it has given rise to volumes of comment and discussion both in France and England.

Reading References on the First Invasion of Britain.
Abbott's Julius Cæsar, pp. 97-106.
Dodge's Cæsar, chap. 11.
Fowler's Julius Cæsar, chap. 12.
Froude's Cæsar, chap. 16.
Napoleon's Cæsar, Vol. II. chap. 7.
Scarth's Roman Britain, chap. 2.
Tacitus's Agricola.

105 15 Chap. 20. exigua . . . reliqua: abl. abs.; translate by a temporal clause.
105 16 ad septentriones, towards the north (see Vocab.): cf. 1 1 ff.
105 18 omnibus bellis: abl. of time.—hostibus: dat. after submini-strata.
105 19 si . . . tamen, even if time should fail, still, etc.
105 20 fore: the subject is practically the clause si . . . cognovisset, he thought it would be of great advantage if, etc. In all languages the proper subject is often absorbed in some different form of expression; here it is properly "that fact," "that result," implied in the conditional clause. The idiom is the same in English except that we supply "it."
105 21 adisset, etc.: the pluperf. represents the fut. perf. adierit of dir. disc. Observe in this sentence that while Cæsar's action is given in the perf. (contendit), his reasons are in the imperf. (intellegebat, arbitrabatur); cf. note on 3 5. The conditional clauses si deficeret, si adisset, etc., are strictly fut. conditions carried into the past by the indir. disc.
105 22 quae omnia, all of which: § 346. e (216. e); B. 201. i. b; G. 370. r.²; H. 442. 2 (397. 2. N.); H-B. 346. c. For the order, cf. 94 17, 30 19 and note.
105 23 Gallis . . . incognita: probably they were not so uninformed as they seemed; cf. the relations of Commius, 106 13-17, and of the Veneti, 78 19.—neque enim: neg. of etenim, to be rendered with quisquam, for no one; § 324. k (156. d); cf. B. 341. 2. d; G. 498. n.³; cf. H-B. 311. 6. a and b
105 24 illo: adv.; see Vocab.— neque . . . quicquam, and nothing: observe that, as usual, the negative combines with the connective.— eis; dat. after notum; § 375 (232. a); B. 189. 2; G. 354; H. 431. 2 (388. 1); H-B. 373. 2.

105 25 Gallias: i.e. Celtic and Belgic Gaul.

105 26 vocatis . . . mercatoribus, etc., he called the traders, but could not, etc.

105 27 quanta . . . portus: these indir. questions follow reperi re poterat. Notice that the imperf. poterat is used rather than potuit, referring to his repeated questions to the different traders.


106 1 Chap. 21. faceret: the subjv. here indicates a purpose or calculation in Cæsar’s mind. The perf. ind. would refer only to priority of time; § 551 (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. 2 (520. i. 2); cf. H-B. 507. 4. a; see also 38. 27 and note. The English idiom expresses this by some such phrase as “before making the attempt.”

106 2 idoneum: this remark seems to have reference to his actual want of success, as appears later.— Volusenum: one of Cæsar’s tribunes; see 77. 11.— navi longa: see chapter on military affairs, ix, and Figs. 48, 51.

106 5 Morinos, occupying the nearest point to Britain (Boulogne, Calais, Ostend, etc.): in clear weather the British coast is in sight from these shores.

106 7 quam . . . classem: § 307. b (200. b); B. 251. 4; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6.— Veneticum bellum: see Bk. iii. chs. 7-16.

106 9 insulae: Britain was supposed to be an island, but the fact was not established, so far as we know, until more than a century later, when the Romans sailed around it.

106 10 qui polliceantur: a purpose clause, but in English best expressed by the pres. part.

106 11 dare: complem. infin., instead of se daturos [esse], a use not uncommon in Cæsar, and apparently somewhat colloquial; § 580. c. N. (330. f. n.); cf. B. 328. 1; G. 531. N. 4; H. 618. 1 (537. N.); H-B. 593. a.— imperio: § 367 (227); B. 187. ii. a; G. 346; H. 426. 1 (385); H-B. 362.

106 14 Atrebatibus (see Bk. ii. chs. 4, 16, 23): the same people, it is said, had occupied Berkshire in England, whence the supposed influence of Commius.— ibi: i.e. among the Atrebates; § 321. a (207. a); G. 611. r. 1; H. 308. 2 (304. iii. 2).

106 16 fidelem, etc.: perhaps Cæsar says this in view of the fact that Commius afterwards turned against him; see Bk. vii. ch. 76.
106 17 magni: gen. of indefinite value; § 417 (252. a); B. 203. 3; G. 380; H. 448 (404); H-B. 356. 1. — huic: indir. obj. of imperat; the order he gave is the whole clause down to nuntiet.

106 18 fidem sequuntur, i.e. accept the protection of.

106 19 se: i.e. Cæsar, the main subject, as usual in indir. disc.

106 20 quantum (sc. tantum) ... auderet, so far as opportunity could be given to one who did not venture, etc.

106 22 auderet: subjv. of characteristic.

106 23 perspexisset: for tense, see § 485. e (287. c); B. 268. 3; G. 511. r.1; H. 546 (495. ii); H-B. 491 and 2; the sequence of tenses does not depend upon the form of statement, but on the time as conceived in the writer’s mind.

106 26 Chap. 22. superioris temporis, of the season before (see Bk. iii. ch. 28).

106 27 homines barbari, being (as they were) barbarians. — consuetudinis: § 349. a (218. a); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1 (399. i. 2); H-B. 354.

106 28 fecissent: the statement of the ambassadors, hence subjv. on the principle of implied indir. disc.

106 29 pollicerentur: the same construction as excusarent, above.

107 1 arbitratus: translate as present, as often with the perf. part. of dep. verbs.

107 2 belli gerendi: obj. gen.; connect with facultatem.

107 3 has ... anteponendas, that occupation about these little matters should take precedence of [the invasion of] Britain. For the number of occupationes, see § 100. c (75. c); B. 55. 4. c; G. 204. n.5; H. 138. 2 (130. 2); H-B. 240. 5. b.

107 4 iudicabat: note this and the preceding descriptive imperfects; cf. note on 3 5.

107 6 navibus: see chapter on military affairs, ix. — coactis, gathered from various quarters; [contractis] (which may well be translated), brought together into port. This must have been either at Boulogne or a few miles farther north, at Wissant. The port has never been satisfactorily determined, but it must have been between Boulogne and Calais, about twenty miles apart in a straight line, which is near enough to give a definite idea of the place (see map, Fig. 56). This whole coast has suffered enormous alterations since Cæsar’s time, and everything is much changed.

107 7 duas legiones: the seventh and tenth.

107 8 quod ... habebat, what galleys he had besides.

107 10 ex eo loco, etc.: this would be at Ambleteuse or at Calais, according to the location of the main port. — tenebantur quo minus, were detained from, the usual construction after verbs of hindering: § 558. b
First Invasion of Britain.

(317. b. N.1, 319. c); B. 295. 3; G. 549; H. 568. 8 (499. 3. N.2); H-B. 502. 3. b.

107 12 equitibus: of these there were 450.

107 18 Chap. 23. tertia . . . vigilia, at midnight. The date was very near August 26, when high water would be about half past seven P.M.; the ships, therefore, could go out at about half-tide. — solvit, cast off the ships: a technical phrase used like our weighed anchor. — equites: these were to embark at Ambleteuse, as stated above.

107 20 paulo tardius: they sailed after a delay of three days (ch. 28).

107 21 hora . . . quarta: this would be about ten A.M., an hour after high tide. The distance across is about thirty miles, and the landing was near Dover, where he lay at anchor till half past three.

107 24 montibus anguste, etc.: i.e. the cliffs came close to the shore.

107 26 dum . . . convenient, until the other ships should come up: § 553 (328); B. 293. iii. 2; G. 572; H. 603. ii. 2 (519. ii. 2); H-B. 507. 5. When is dum followed by the indic.? cf. 24 24, 33 20, 41 9.

107 29 Voluseno: cf. 106 2 and 19.

108 1 ut . . . postularent, as military science and especially seamanship require: rel. clause following monuit [ut] . . . administrarentur, enjoined that everything should be done promptly. Ut is omitted after monuit, as is often the case after verbs of directing or urging. The rel. clause has the subjv. because an integral part of the command.

108 2 ut quae . . . haberent, since they have, etc.: the imperf. is used by sequence of tenses; § 535. e (320. e); B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592. 1 (517. 3. 1); H-B. 523 and b.

108 4 his dimissis, when they were sent to their posts (observe the distributive effect of di-). — aestum . . . secundum: the tide in this place would not turn east and north until about half past six.

108 6 progressus: towards the north.

108 7 aperto . . . litore: thought to be somewhere near Deal and Walmer Castle.

108 9 Chap. 24. essedariis: the essedum was a two-wheeled war chariot; see Figs. 123, 124. — quo . . . genere: i.e. including both cavalry and chariots, as described below, 114 5 ff.

108 10 consuerunt: to be translated by what tense? cf. 59 14 and note. — egredi: infin. for the more usual ne or quominus with the subjv.; cf. 107 10 and note.

108 12 alto: here a noun; see Vocab.

108 13 militibus (dat. after desiliendum), the men had to leap down.

108 14 oppressis (taken with militibus), weighted as they were. Notice in this passage the free use of participles and phrases to modify the main
idea, first the abl. of place, then the abl. abs., then a participle agreeing directly with militibus.

108 16 cum...conicerent, while they (the Britons), etc.: a good example of cum and the subjv. describing the situation; cf. 11 7, 62 13.

108 18 insuefactos, trained to it, i.e. to charge to the water’s edge.

108 20 generis: gen.; cf. 106 27.

108 21 pedestribus, on land, where the main strength lay in infantry.

108 22 Chap. 25. navis: subject of removeri; § 563. a (330. b. 2); B. 331. ii, 587. b; G. 423. N.6; H. 613. 2 (535. ii); H-B. 587. b.

108 23 inusitator, quite strange.

108 25 latus apertum: i.e. the right, unprotected by their shields.—inde: connect with propelli ac submoveri.

108 26 tormentis: see chapter on military affairs, I. 5, and Figs. 61, 75, 95.—ac: notice that this word always adds something with emphasis.

108 27 quae res, a manoeuvre which: cf. 94 17 and see note on 30 19.

109 2 qui...ferebat, the one who carried: the antecedent of qui is the understood subject of inquit.—X legiones: again the splendid tenth distinguishes itself; cf. 36 24, 67 26.

109 3 obtestatus, appealing to. Such prayers almost always preceded any formal address among the Romans, like “God save the Commonwealth of Massachussetts.” The words would be Quod vobis feliciter eveniat, desilite, etc.—legioni, imperatori: dat. of reference.

109 4 nisi voltis: a present simple condition; § 515 and a (306 and a); B. 302 and 4; G. 595; H. 574, 580 (508 and 4); H-B. 579, 582. 1.

109 5 ego certe...praestitetero, I at any rate shall have done, etc.: § 478. N. (281. r.); B. 264. a; G. 244; H. 540 (473); cf. H-B. 494.

109 8 inter se, one another: § 301. f (196. f.); B. 245. 1; G. 221; H. 502. 1 (448. N.); H-B. 266. —universi, in a body.

109 9 ex proximis navibus, from the nearest ships. Omit [primis].

109 10 adpropinquaverunt: the subject is the soldiers, implied.

109 11 Chap. 26. ab utrisque, on both sides: cf. utraque, 103 30.

109 13 poterant...submittebat: notice the numerous imperfects in this description, implying repeated or continuous action.—alius alia ex navi, men from different ships: § 315. c (203. c); B. 253. 2; G. 319; H. 516. 1
(459. i); H-B. 265. — quibuscumque signis: dat. after occurrerat; the antecedent noun and pronoun (eis signis), if expressed, would be dat. after adgregatam.

109 15 ubi ... conspexerant ... adoriebantur, etc.: a general condition, whenever they saw, etc.; cf. 84 22, 103 24, and notes.

109 16 singularis, scattered soldiers.

109 17 adoriebantur, would attack: to express the repeated action. So, too, circumsistebant and coniciebant.

110 1 ab latere aperto: see 108 25.— in universos, upon the whole body. This word means not merely all, but all at once, or all together, and the like; cf. universi, 109 8.

110 3 speculatoria navigia: swift, light boats for reconnaissance. — quos ... conspexerat ... submittebat: another general condition, precisely like the one noted above (109 15), quos equalling whomsoever, or if any.

110 5 simul [atque], as soon as.— suis omnibus consecutis, and all their comrades had joined them.

110 7 longius, very far.— quod equites, etc.: they were wind-bound at the upper harbor, 107 9–12.

110 9 fortunam: this is not a mere casual remark, but an expression of his belief in "his star," always an important factor in the greatness of a commander; cf. 36 14 and note on 10 17.

110 12 Chap. 27. quae imperasset, what he should require (in dir. disc. quae imperaveris).

110 13 quem ... praemissum [esse]: cf. 106 13–19.

110 15 hunc, etc.: it is not unlikely that his imprisonment was a mere pretence.— oratoris modo, in the character of envoy (or spokesman).

110 19 ut ignosceretur, that their act might be pardoned: ignosco may take a dir. obj. of the thing, with an indir. obj. of the person; § 369 (227. f): B. 187. i. a; H-B. 364. 4; hence the word here may be either personal or impersonal.

110 20 cum ultero, etc.: cf. 106 10.

110 21 bellum ... intulissent: these barbarous people might well be pardoned for mistaking Caesar's expedition for an invasion.— ignoscere: for the omission of the subject, cf. note on 59 23.

110 23 aecessitam, after they had been fetched.

110 24 remigrare, to move back, i.e. from the strongholds to their farms.

110 27 Chap. 28. post diem quartum quam, three days after (according to English reckoning): § 424. f (259. d); B. 357. 1; G. 403. N. 1; H. 488. 1 (430); H-B. 550. e.

110 28 naves, etc.: see 107 9.
111 3 Britanniae: § 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429 (386); H-B. 376, cf. 362. — tempestas: from the northeast.

111 4 aliae . . . aliae, some . . . others.


111 7 cum . . . complementur, since they began to fill: the imperf. shows that the action was not completed.

111 8 adversa nocte, in spite of the darkness.

111 10 Chap. 29. eadem nocte: this was probably the night of August 30; the moon was then full at 3 A.M.

111 11 aestus maximos, very high tides. The ocean tides, rising here between twenty and thirty feet, were a strange phenomenon to those who had known only the tideless waters of the Mediterranean. One is at a loss to understand why the Romans had not learned more about the tides in the war with the Veneti.

111 13 navis: obj. of compleverat. — [quibus, etc.]: an unnecessary explanation, and may be omitted.

111 15 adflictabat (intensive), dashed about.

111 16 facultas, etc.: i.e. chance to manage their own ships or help their companions.

112 1 funibus . . . amissis, etc., from the loss of, etc.

112 2 id quod: § 307. d (200. e); B. 247. 1. b; G. 614. r.²; H. 399. 6 (445. 7); H-B. 325. a. N.².

112 4 quibus — ut eis: result.

112 5 quod . . . constabat, because it was understood: the subject is oportere, of which the subject is hiemari, that it was best to winter in Gaul.

112 7 provisum: see note on 56 16.


112 12 hoc: abl. of cause, originally degree of difference; see note on 2 17.

112 13 optimum: in pred. agreement with frumentum . . . producere.

112 14 factu: cf. 3 23. — duxerunt: see Vocab. — frumento commeatuque, corn and other supplies.

112 15 rem, the campaign. — his . . . intercluis, if these should be overcome, etc.: abl. abs. expressing condition.

112 18 rursus: not a second time, which would be iterum, but back again from negotiations to hostilities.

112 19 deducere: i.e. from their farms; cf. 110 24.

112 20 Chap. 31. at Caesar: emphatic transition to Caesar from what the soldiers feared and the Britons planned; cf. 68 8.
IV. 28-32.]  

First Invasion of Britain. 377

112 21 ex eventu navium, from what had befallen the ships.—ex eo quod, from the fact that.

112 22 suscipabatur, began to suspect.

112 24 quae . . . naves, earum, etc., the timber and the bronze of those ships which, etc.: § 307. b (200. b); B. 251. 4; G. 616; H. 399. 5 (445. 9); H-B. 284. 6.

112 25 aere: the Romans used the word aes both for copper and bronze. These metals were more common than iron in the Roman ships, as they do not rust. They were employed to sheathe the rostrum, or beak, and to make the spikes that held the timbers together.

112 26 quae . . . usui: the antecedent of quae is ea, the understood subject of comportari; see note on qui . . . appellantur, 1. 2.

112 29 reliquis . . . effecit, he managed so that they could sail (navigari, impers.) tolerably with the rest.

113 1 Chap. 32. geruntur: § 556 (276. e); B. 293. 1; G. 229. R.; H. 533. 4 (467. iii. 4); H-B. 559. Notice that this present is regular with dum when there is no contrast of time. Cf. the use of dum, 107 26.—frumentatum: supine; cf. 26 15.

113 3 pars hominum, some of the people.

113 4 remaneret: indicating peaceable intentions on the part of the enemy.—ventitaret, returned from time to time: freq. or iter.; § 263. 2 (167. b); B. 155. 2; G. 191. 1; H. 364 (336); H-B. 212. 1.

113 5 statione: such outposts or pickets were always on duty to guard the camp, usually a cohort at each gate.

113 6 quam . . . ferret, than usual.

113 7 id quod erat, what was the fact.

113 8 aliquid . . . consili (part. gen.), that some new design was on foot; infin. clause in app. with id.

113 11 armari, to arm: in verbs thus used reflexively, English prefers the active and Latin the passive form.—paulo longius, some little distance.

113 12 premi . . . sustinere, were getting hard pushed, and hardly held their ground.

113 13 conferta legione (abl. abs.), the legion was closely crowded together, while weapons were hurled, etc. Observe the tendency of Latin to convey a description, as here, by a participial phrase.

113 15 una, only one.—suspicati, supposing: cf. 107 1 and note.

114 2 dispersos, occupatos: agreeing with nostros understood from the preceding line.
Notes: Cæsar.

114 3 incertis ordinibus (abl. abs.), because the ranks were unsteady.
114 5 Chap. 33. ex essedis: these chariots held six men (essedarii) each besides the driver (auriga), and were drawn by two horses.
114 6 terrore equorum: obj. gen., the terror that the horses arouse.
114 8 cum se... insinuaverunt, when they have worked their way between: the protasis of a general condition, ex essedis... proeliantur, being the apodosis; cf. 103 24. The perf. indic. with cum is here used as a protasis because a repeated action is spoken of.—equitum, the cavalry of the Britons. When the essedarii had dismounted, the British line was composed of alternate bodies of horse and foot.
114 10 illi: i.e. the fighting men spoken of above.
114 11 expeditum... receptum, a ready retreat.
114 13 praestant, exhibit. Cæsar was much struck with the efficiency of the German and British horse (see ch. 12), and later made it the basis of important changes in the Roman army. The ordinary cavalry was never able to cope with infantry; cf. Cæsar’s stratagem in 38 1.
114 14 uti... consuerint: clause of result following efficiunt.—declivi ac praeципiti loco, a steep downward slope.
114 15 incitatos equos sustinere, to check their horses in full gallop (compl. infin. after consuerint).—brevi, within a short space.
114 16 iugo: made of straight or curved wood, resting on the necks of the horses and holding up the pole of the chariot.
114 18 Chap. 34. quibus rebus, under these circumstances: abl. of means.—nostris: dat. following auxilium tulit.—novitate: depends on perturbatis.
114 22 alienum: see note on 13 6.
114 26 quae... continerent: note the subjv.
115 1 quanta... facultas daretur: indir. quest. following demonstraverunt.
115 2 sui liberandi: cf. 40 15 and note.
115 7 Chap. 35. ut... effugerent: a result clause in app. with idem, the subject of fore, namely, that if, etc.
115 8 effugerent, would escape: the future idea is given by fore.—equites XXX: these few cavalry would be of no service in an engagement, but only in pursuit. To chase and cut down the beaten army was considered an essential part of the battle.
115 9 ante: i.e. 106 13-19, 110 13-17.
115 12 tanto spatio, ever as much ground: § 425. b (257. b); B. 223; G. 389; H. 417. 3 (379. 2); cf. H-B. 426. c.
115 19 Chap. 36. die aequinocti, etc. (Sept. 24, always held to be a stormy season), since the time of the equinox was near and his ships were
unseaworthy. Napoleon III estimates that the return to Gaul occurred Sept. 11 or 12. This would make the stay about three weeks.

115 23 eosdem portus, the same ports with the others.
115 24 paulo infra: the west current sets in on the French coast, while the east current is still running in mid-channel.
115 28 Chap. 37. primo: adv.; see Vocab.
116 1 orbe: the circle was formed by a small body of troops when entirely surrounded by the enemy. It was generally hollow, with officers and baggage in the centre. See chapter on military affairs, vii, last part.
116 5 horis: abl. of comparison with amplius; the more common construction would be horas; cf. note on 54 9.
116 6 postea vero quam, but as soon as.
116 12 Chap. 38. siccitatis:
see § 100. c (75. c); B. 55. 4. c; G. 204. 5; H. 138. 2 (130. 2); H-B. 240. 5. b; the tempestates of ch. 34 were apparently merely gusty weather without rain.
116 13 recipercnt: a purpose clause.—superiore anno: see Bk. iii. ch. 28.
116 29 supplicatio: cf. end of Bk. ii. The crossing of the Rhine strongly impressed the minds of the Romans at home, and so, too, the passage into Britain, though the last was in fact a failure. But, though Cæsar had added nothing to Roman power, he had opened a new world to Roman ambition.

Book Fifth. — B.C. 54.

Second Invasion of Britain. — The landing of the previous year had been only a reconnaissance. Cæsar now determines upon a regular advance and occupation. The earlier part of the season was chiefly taken up with naval preparations. The ships were apparently built on the inland streams, and the rigging and outfit brought from Spain, which was considerably in advance of Gaul in civilization. It abounded in metals, and, in particular, furnished the esparto, or Spanish grass, whose long, tough fibre made the best of cordage. Cæsar sails (by the reckoning of Napoleon III) on the 20th of July from Portus Itius, at or near Boulogne, drifting first with wind and tide some distance to the northeast, then making his way to his former landing.
Notes: Caesar.

Reading References on the Second Invasion of Britain.

Abbott's Julius Caesar, pp. 97-106.
Dodge's Caesar, chap. 12.
Fowler's Julius Caesar, pp. 199-206.
Froude's Caesar, last part of chap. 16.
Napoleon's Caesar, Vol. II. chap. 8.
Scarth's Roman Britain, chaps. 2 and 3.
Tacitus's Agricola.
Trollope's Caesar, chap. 6.

117 1 Chap. I. L. Domitio, etc.: cf. 94 1 and note. The consuls entered on their office Jan. 1, according to the official calendar; the real date appears to have been Dec. 12. Caesar's visit to Italy was therefore probably later.

117 2 ut quotannis, etc.: cf. 48 28, 73 7.
117 4 navis: see chapter on military affairs, ix. — navis . . . curent, have as many vessels as possible built during the winter and the old ones repaired: cf. 82 7, 11 5 and note.
117 5 modum formamque, style of build.
117 6 subductionis: the vessels of the ancients were usually "beached" and not left at anchor. — humiliores: agrees with eas, the understood object of facit; see note on 62 16.
117 7 nostro: i.e. the Mediterranean.
117 8 id: sc. facit; § 319 (206. c); B. 166. 3; H. 388. 5 (368. 3. N.1); H-B. 222. a.
117 9 minus magnos seems to refer to the smooth ocean swell, compared with the angry "chopping seas" of the Mediterranean.
117 10 iumentorum: not pack-animals so much as horses for his cavalry, the lack of which he felt so seriously the year before; see 110 6-9.
117 11 actuarias, fitted with oars as well as sails. The Gallic ships, it will be remembered, did not have oars. See Bk. iii. ch. 14.
117 12 humilitas: as compared with the high-banked galleys.
117 13 armandas, fitting out: see introductory note.
117 14 conventibus, proconsular or provincial courts. These courts were regularly held in the winter; cf. 48 29.
117 17 imperat: in the sense of to levy, to make requisition for, impero takes the acc. of the thing levied and the dat. of the person upon whom the levy is made.
118 5 arbitros, arbitrators.
118 6 litem, amount of damages. — poenam: i.e. the amount of compensation to be paid.
118 8 Chap. 2. Galliam revertitur: Cæsar's activity during these winter months had been remarkable. He left his troops in Belgium about Jan. 1, travelled all through Transalpine and Cisalpine Gaul, crossed over to Illyricum, and returned to his army again early in the spring. The distance was at least 2000 miles.
118 9 circumitis, having inspected: see last note on 49 6; § 388. b (237. a); B. 175. 2. a; G. 331; H. 406 (372); H-B. 391. 2. ft.
118 10 studio, etc.: i.e. the energy of the soldiers in building the vessels under difficulties.
118 12 neque . . . quin, and are not far from the condition that; eo is antecedent to the vague relative idea in quin, etc.
118 15 Itium: Boulogne or Wissant, either of which agrees with the account (cf. Bk. iv. ch. 23, and note on 107 6).
118 17 XXX: a little less than 28 English miles. — [transmissum]: omit in translation.
118 18 satis . . . militum, enough soldiers: part. gen.
118 19 Treverorum: a tribe reckoned as Gauls or Celts, but believed to be, in part at least, of German origin. Their name appears in the modern Trèves. This, their principal town (Augusta Treverorum), was long the seat of Roman power in northern Gaul.
118 20 concilia, assemblies, held by a province or confederacy for consultation or law-making. Cæsar seems to have organized such assemblies under his own authority in Belgic Gaul after its conquest. — veniebant, etc.: notice the force of the imperf. tense; § 471. f (277. g); G. 233.
118 22 dicebantur: the personal form is regularly used with the tenses of incomplete action.
118 23 Chap. 3. Galliae: part. gen.; § 346. a. 2 (216. a. 2); B. 201. 1; G. 372; H. 442 (397. 3); H-B. 346.
118 24 ut supra demonstravimus: cf. Bk. iii. ch. 11.
118 27 alter, the latter, Cingetorix, the son-in-law of Indutiomarus.
119 1 suos: i.e. clansmen, retainers, etc. Cingetorix offers to bring his nation under Roman authority on condition of ruling them himself as a subject or friend of Rome.
119 3 at: marking the transition to the other man.
119 4 cogere: with instituit, l. 8.
119 5 Arduennam: this hilly and forest region makes the natural frontier between Gaul and the Netherlands, and is the seat of the famous Belgian iron mines.
119 11 petere: used absolutely (i.e. without an object); ask his decision or assistance.—civitati, etc.: they were prevented by Indutiomanus from taking any measures for the general good, and so asked favors of Caesar for themselves individually.

119 12 possent: the reason given by these Gauls, hence the subjv.

119 16 laberetur, lit. fall off (from obedience).

119 17 se...eius fidei permissurum, to put...under his protection.

119 22 Chap. 4. omnibus...comparatis, now that, etc.

119 28 quod cum, etc.: Caesar seems to think this double dealing needs some excuse.

119 29 cum...intellegebat, considered on the one hand.—cum...tum: see Vocab.; eius refers to Cingetorix, se to Caesar.—merito eius, according to his deserts: § 418. a (253. N.); cf. B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 480 (424); cf. H-B. 414.—magni interesse: § 417 (252. a); cf. B. 203. 3; G. 380; H. 440. 3 (396. v); H-B. 356. i.

120 2 [suam...minui]: in app. with id factum, and may be translated, though not necessary to the sense.

120 3 qui...fuisset, while, etc.: § 535. e (320. e); cf. B. 283. 3. b; G. 634; H. 586. ii (515. iii); H-B. 523.

120 4 hoc dolore, this grievance; properly, indignation at this.

120 6 Chap. 5. in Meldis: these people were on the Marne, near Meaux. The ships were built here, probably for convenience of timber; they were low and of light draft (ch. 1), and proved too frail for the Channel waters (ch. 10; cf. Bk. iii. ch. 9, where sturdier craft are built upon the Loire).

120 8 eodem (adv.) = in eundem locum.

120 13 loco, in the condition: § 429. 3 (254. a); B. 228. 1. b; G. 385. N.1; H. 485. 2 (425. 2); H-B. 436.

120 14 cum...abesset, while he should be away: a fut. idea (cum abero) thrown into the past by verebatur.

120 15 Chap. 6. Dumnorix: as it appears, he had been kept four years under strict surveillance (18 11).

120 19 accedebat huc quod, to this was added the fact that: cf. 84 2 for a different construction after accedebat.

120 20 deferri: the present expresses the action as in process of completion, i.e. that Caesar was making arrangements, or intended, or the like.

120 21 neque, and yet not, a very common force of the word; cf. note on 80 11.


120 26 religionibus, scruples, perhaps in regard to leaving the country or crossing the sea; among superstitious peoples such ideas are common.
121 2 territare: histor. infin.; see 13 18 and note.
121 3 fieri ut, etc., it was coming to pass that, etc.; or may be translated, that Gaul was, etc., compressing the two clauses into one. — esse: depending on a verb of saying implied in metu territare.
121 6 interponere: same constr. as territare.—ex usu, to the advantage.
121 7 intellexissent: here represents the fut. perf. of dir. disc.
121 8 deferebantur: note the force of the tense.
121 9 Chap. 7. quod ... statuebat: i.e. the severity shown to Dumnorix was proportioned to the favor and consequence granted by Cæsar to his state.
121 11 longius, too far.
121 12 prospiciendum [esse], that precautions must be taken: depends on statuebat.
121 13 quid ... nocere, to do some harm to: quid is cognate or adv. acc.; § 390. d. N. ² (240. a. n.); B. 176. 3. a; G. 333; H. 409. 1 (371. ii, 378); cf. H-B. 396. 2, cf. 387. iii.
121 14 commoratus: i.e. during the delay; cf. 93 4.—Corus (or Caurus), the northwest wind.
121 15 omnis temporis, every season of the year; the windmills on this coast are said to have had their sails set permanently to the northwest.
121 18 milites: i.e. the legionary infantry.
121 19 at: note its force and cf. 119 3.—omnium impeditis animis, while the attention of all was occupied.
121 24 si vim ... iubet: informal indir. disc. The direct would be si vim facit neque paret, interficite [eum].
121 25 pro sano, rationally.
121 26 neglexisset: the tense depends on arbitratus, which is, however, essentially present in meaning; see note on commoratus, l. 14.
121 28 liberum, etc.: Cæsar takes no pains to conceal the violence of his acts. He had no authority over Dumnorix except that of the stronger.
122 7 Chap. 8. pro tempore et pro re, to suit the time and circumstance.
122 8 pari ... quem, the same ... as, etc.: i.e. 2000, as in l. 5.
122 10 Africo: the southwest wind.
122 12 sub sinistra: i.e. he had drifted to the northeast (see map, Fig. 65).

The voyage has been carefully calculated as follows: Cæsar weighed anchor at sunset (about 8 p.m.). A gentle breeze was then blowing from the southwest; but at the same time a tidal current was setting towards the southwest. Under the impulse of these two forces, the fleet kept a northwesterly course until about midnight. The wind then died down, and the current also began to set in the opposite direction (northeast).
With this current the Romans drifted, and at dawn the British coast appeared on their left. They had passed by (*relictam*) the North Foreland, and were drifting farther away from the land. But at about this time (5 A.M.) the tide changed, and the current again began to flow towards the southwest. With its help, and that of the oars, the fleet now began to move towards the land, aiming to reach the same point that had been found in the previous expedition to be the most convenient for debarking. Here they arrived at about noon. (von Göler.)

122 15 **superiore aestate**: cf. Bk. iv. ch. 23.
122 16 **virtus, pluck, spirit.** — **gravibusque, and heavy-laden besides.** — navigiis: abl. of means.
122 18 **accessum est** (impers.): the landing was probably near Walmer Castle.

122 20 **cum**: concessive.
122 22 **quae ... amplius DCCC, more than 800 of which**: subject of visae erant. — annotinis, those built the year before. — sui commodi: pred. gen.; § 343. b (214. c); B. 198. 3; G. 366. r.1; H. 447 (403); H-B. 340, here expressing purpose; cf. note on **deiciendi, 104 11**.

These were vessels that the rich members of Cæsar's staff had had built for their own use.

122 27 CHAP. 9. **cohortibus X**: i.e. two from a legion.
123 1 **navibus**: dat.
123 3 **noctu**: not **nocte**; see Vocab.
123 5 **equitatu atque essedis**: abl. of accomp. without cum; § 413. a (248. a. N.); B. 222. 1; G. 392. r.1; H. 474. 2 (419. iii. 1. 1); H-B. 420. — **flumen**: the Stour, which flows northeasterly through Canterbury. — **superiore**: the north bank is higher ground than the opposite.
123 11 **ipsi ... propugnabunt, they themselves rushed out of the woods in small parties to fight.**

123 12 **testudine facta et aggere ... adiecto**: from the rapidity with which this *agger* was completed, it is evident that it was not the elaborate structure required in attacking more formidable defences, but more like that described in Bk.iii. ch. 25. We may also infer that the British stronghold was only rudely fortified.

124 5 CHAP. 10. **tripartito**: i.e. following different roads.
124 7 **extremi**: i.e. the rear of the retreating enemy.
124 8 **Atrio**: who had been placed in command of the camp, 123 3.
124 12 **concursu**: referring to the violent driving together of the ships after they had broken from their moorings.
124 15 CHAP. 11. **revocari**: i.e. those who were in advance and out of sight. — **resistere, to halt**: i.e. those who were near.
124 17 coram perspicit: i.e. after a careful and thorough personal examination. Cæsar did not leave important duties of this sort to subordinates. — sic ut, etc.: i.e. he sees that the account of the disaster is true to the extent that, etc.; ut and similar words often have a limiting meaning; cf. tantum, meaning only so much.

124 19 fabros deligit: a certain number of carpenters (fabri lignarii) was attached to the engineer corps of the army; but Cæsar seems to have had no regular engineer corps, except that a praefectus fabrum was on his staff. See chapter on military affairs, i.-4.

124 20 legionibus: abl. of means.

124 26 easdem quas, the same as: see 122 27.

124 27 edem: i.e. to the British defences on the Stour.; cf. note on 120 8.

125 4 a mari: probably from Cæsar's place of landing. The distance is reckoned, not in a straight line, but by the roads, as the army marched.

125 5 huic, etc.: "The brave and cautious prince Cassivellaunus (Caswallon), who ruled in what is now Middlesex and the surrounding district,—formerly the terror of the Celts to the south of the Thames, but now the protector and champion of the whole nation." (Mommsen.) — huic . . . cum reliquis civitatibus . . . intercesserant, had occurred between him and the other states; note the idiomatic construction.

125 8 Chap. 12. natos in insula: they were not, however, indigenous, but a Celtic population following an earlier Iberian race.

125 9 proditum [esse]: the subject is quos natos [esse] in insula.—pars: sc. incolitur.

125 11 eis nominibus: for example, Atrebates and Belgæ.

126 3 Gallicis: brief references to the Gallic customs of building are made in Bk. v. ch. 43, and Bk. vi. ch. 30; see also introductory chapter on Gaul and the Gauls.

126 4 [aut nummo aereo]: omit in translation.

126 6 plumbum album: Cæsar is mistaken in placing tin mines inland and iron on the coast; it was just the other way. The tin mines of Cornwall were known to the Phœnicians from the earliest times. He does not say whether iron was used in the arts, which, if true, would imply a pretty advanced civilization.

126 7 exigua: the great mineral wealth of England was then unknown.

126 9 fagum atque abietem: another error; the beech and fir are both native to Britain.

126 10 gallinam, etc.: it is of interest to note that these domestic fowls were known to the savage Britons; see Fig. 113.

126 12 frigoribus, seasons of cold.
126 17 CHAP. 13. ad Hispaniam, etc.: i.e. he places Spain west of Britain on the same side as Ireland. For this crude geography, cf. Tacitus (Agric. 34), who says that Ireland is between Britain and Spain. Caesar conceives Britain as lying somewhat in the accompanying form.

126 20 atque, as: § 324. c (156. a); B. 341. 1. c; G. 643; H. 657. 1. N. (554. i. 2. N.); H-B. 307. 2. a; i.e. the distance from Ireland to Britain is the same as that from Britain to Gaul.

126 21 Mona: the Isle of Man, or confounded with it; but Tacitus evidently gives this name to Anglesea.

126 25 ex aqua mensuris: the clepsydra, or water-clock, measured time by the dropping of fixed measures of water through a small pipe or aperture something like a sand-glass. — breviores: naturally, as this was in the summer.

127 1 hoc: sc. latus.

127 6 CHAP. 14. interiores: the ruder barbarians here described are probably represented by the later Picts, whose name Picti (cf. picti, painted) has been thought to denote their woad-staining. The woad plant, Isatis tinctoria, akin to the common shepherd’s purse, is still used somewhat for dyeing.

127 11 parte: § 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473. ii (419. ii); H-B. 443.

127 13 sed qui sunt, etc., but the children of these wives are regarded as belonging to the man to whom each maiden was first espoused.

127 14 quo (adv.) here stands for ad quos: § 321. a (207. a); G. 611. r.1; H. 307. 4 (304. ii. 3. N.); H-B. 284. 10.

127 16 CHAP. 15. essedarii: see Bk. iv. ch. 33.

127 18 fuerint: for tense, see 85 14 and note.

127 25 atque his, and these, too. — primis: the first cohorts had the best soldier; see chapter on military affairs, 1. 7 (last part).

127 27 per medios: i.e. through the interval between the two cohorts.

128 11 CHAP. 16. [equestris, etc.]: this parenthesis may be translated. — cedentibus et inequentibus (abl. abs.): with eis understood, referring to the Britons. Whether advancing or retreating, the islanders were equally formidable.

128 14 proeliarentur: this clause is conceived as a result, and hence is expressed by ut with the subjv. instead of the usual construction with quod and indic.; cf. 120 19 and note. — stationes, supports. It will be observed that the Britons showed considerable military skill, and that their
mode of battle somewhat resembled that of the Romans themselves. They
used an open and flexible array, rather than the dense masses (*phalanges*)
of the Gauls and Germans.

128 24 Chap. 17. *quoad*: followed by the indic.; cf. 100 2 and note.
128 27 sui conligendi: cf. 77 3, 115 2.
129 1 facultatem: cf. note on 16 7. — *ex*, directly after.
129 5 Chap. 18. *uno loco*: somewhere between Brentford and the
mouth of the Wey. The details of Caesar's march are here uncertain.

129 13 capite solo: a most hazardous depth. By the rule for modern
infantry, a ford should not be more than three feet deep. But, says Meri-
vale, "the swimming and fording of rivers were among the regular exercises
of the Roman legionary. Though immersed up to his chin in water, he was
expert in plying his hatchet against the stakes which opposed his progress,
while he held his buckler over his head not less steadily than on dry land.
Behind him a constant storm of stones and darts was impelled against the
enemy from the engines which always accompanied the Roman armies."

130 1 Chap. 19. *supra*: i.e. 129 1-3.
130 3 servabat, excederebat, etc.: note the imperfects, expressing cus-
tomy and repeated action, *he used to*; cf. 121 8.
130 4 locis, regionibus: loc. abl. — *locisque impeditis ac silvestribus*:
from this description we must infer that the British chariots were very
narrow, to pass through the forest roads, and had high wheels, to go easily
over rough ground.

130 7 *cum* . . . *eicerat*: a general condition; see note on *cum*, 84 22.
Other instances of general conditions occur in 103 24, 109 15, 110 3.

130 9 *emittebat, conligebat, prohibebat*: the subj. is Cassivellaunus.
130 10 hoc . . . prohibebat, *by fear of this kept them [sc. eos] from
roving too widely.*

130 11 relinquebatur ut, *the consequence was that.*
130 12 discedi: impersonal.
130 13 tantum . . . *quantum*: correlatives; see Vocab.
130 16 Chap. 20. Trinobantes: in Essex. Their chief place was
Camulodunum, later *Colonia Castrum*, now Colchester. This defection
was soon followed by the break-up of the Briton confederacy.

130 18 [*Galliam*]: omit in translation.
130 23 mittat: *sc. aliquem.*
130 24 his imperat obsides: see note on 117 17.

131 2 Chap. 21. Cenimagni, etc.: these were petty populations of
the vicinity.
131 4 oppidum Cassivellauni: thought to be the modern St. Albans.
131 6 oppidum, etc.: the Britons, like the Germans, did not live in
towns, but used these strongholds simply for defence against attack.
131 7 cum, whenever, another general condition: cf. 130 7 and note.
The preceding case refers to repeated action in past time, this to the pre-
sent of a general truth. Notice the difference between these cases and the
regular descriptive cum in narration.
131 9 consuerunt: what tense in translation?
131 14 multi: i.e. the people, not the cattle.
131 17 Chap. 22. supra: see 127 5.
131 18 regionibus: implying that Kent (Cantium) was divided into
four recognized military commands.
131 20 castra navalia: i.e. the fortified camp on the beach, surround-
ing the beached ships; see 124 21-25.
131 28 neque multitum aestatis: Cæsar had now been in Britain about
two months (cf. ch. 23). The dates assigned by Napoleon III for his sail-
ing and return are July 20 and Sept. 21.
131 29 extrahi, protracted, i.e. wasted. Besides, Cæsar had just
learned of the death of his daughter Julia, Pompey's wife, which threatened
the dissolution of the triumvirate and gave him strong reason for wishing
to be nearer home.
132 1 vectigalis (part. gen.): this was mere form, as no means were
left to enforce the tribute.
132 7 Chap. 23. commeatibus: has its original meaning; see Vocab.
132 8 accidit uti, etc.: cf. 130 11 for a similar construction.
132 10 portaret, remitterentur: subj. of characteristic.
133 1 [et]: omit. — prioris commeatus, etc., after the soldiers of the
first trip had been landed.
133 2 quas: refers back to ex eis. — faciendas curaverat, had had
made: cf. 82 7, 11 5. Labienus had been ordered to build these directly
after the big storm; see 124 20.
133 3 locum: i.e. Britain. — caperent, reicerentur: in the same con-
struction as desideraretur.
133 6 aequinoctium: cf. 115 19 and note.

Fresh Risings of the Gauls.—The remaining events of this campaign are
among the most critical of the entire Gallic War, and show to what extreme peril
Cæsar had exposed his conquests by his expedition across the Channel. They
serve, besides, to bring out in very marked relief the personal qualities of his several
lieutenants. As a series of episodes, this Book is, in fact, the most interesting
of the eight. The Romans did not visit Britain again till A.D. 43, in the reign of
Claudius.
Reading References on the Gallic Rebellions.

Dodge's Caesar, chap. 13.
Fowler's Julius Caesar, chap. 13 (first part).
Froude's Caesar, chap. 17.
Holmes's Caesar's Conquest of Gaul, pp. 76–93.
Napoleon's Caesar, Vol. II. chap. 8 (last part); see also Appendix D, on Caesar's Lieutenants.
Trollope's Caesar, chap. 6 (last part).

133 10 Chap. 24. Samarobrivae (locative): the chief town of the Ambiani, whose name is found in the modern Amiens.

133 12 aliter ac: i.e. distributing them where supplies were most abundant, not where there was most danger of disturbance, as in previous years.

The location of these camps has been much disputed. The most common view puts Fabius at St. Pol, Cicero at Charleroi (or possibly Namur), Roscius at Séez in Normandy, Labienus on the Ourthe (in Luxembourg), Crassus, Plancus, and Trebonius not far from Amiens, Sabinus and Cotta at Tongres. These places do not quite agree with the description unless we take the hundred mile limit (133 29) as the radius of a circle, a meaning which seems improbable. But this division is perhaps near enough.

133 15 ducendam: gerundive expressing purpose; cf. faciendas, l. 2; § 500. 4 (294. a); B. 337. 7. b. 2; G. 430; H. 622 (544. 2. N.2); H-B. 605. 2.
— Q. Ciceroni: the younger brother of the orator, and a man of tougher fibre and of great military and executive ability. He had joined Caesar's army that very year and had taken part in the expedition to Britain. Quintus, like his brother Marcus, sided with Pompey in the Civil War, and met a similar fate in the same year (b.c. 43) at the command of the triumvirs.

133 20 proxime, latest. This was the 14th legion, enrolled in b.c. 57.

133 21 cohortis: these must have been troops not organized into a legion, probably provincials.

133 25 inopiae: dat. with mederi; § 367. b (227. b); G. 346. N.4; H. 385. ii. N.8; H-B. 364. 5.

133 29 quoad . . . cognovisset: cf. 128 24. Why is the indic. used there and the subjv. here?

134 3 Chap. 25. Carnutibus: in the vicinity of Chartres.

134 4 huic: indir. obj. of restituerat.

134 7 restituerat: this act of restoring chiefs exiled by the democracy of the tribes was peculiarly odious to the Gauls, as here appears.

134 8 auctoribus (abl. abs.): i.e. either at their instigation, or, at any rate, with their consent.
Notes: Cæsar.

134 12 quorum: the antecedent is hos.
134 13 comprehensos . . . mittere: cf. 5 5, 55 3, and notes.
134 14 [legatis quaestoribusque]: omit in translation.
134 17 CHAP. 26. diebus . . . quibus, within a fortnight after, etc.
134 20 praesto, in attendance upon, as obedient subjects.
135 1 Indutiomari: for the bitter offence given him by Cæsar, see above, ch. 4.
135 2 subitoque, etc., and after suddenly surprising the wood-cutters.
135 7 aliqui: the usual form is aliquis; § 151. e (105. d); B. 252. 2; G. 107; H. 187. N.¹ (190. N.²); H-B. 142.

Note.—This cut represents an attack both by land and water, in which no agger is employed. While in these respects unlike the attack on the Gallic towns, it shows very clearly some siege implements in active use.

135 12 CHAP. 27. eques, a knight, a member of the equestrian order, the commercial aristocracy of Rome.
135 19 Aduatuci: subject of tenuissent.
135 20 fecerit: by sequence of tense we should have fecisset, but see note on 51 11. Note several similar cases in this speech.
135 22 imperia, sovereignty. The word is used in English abstractly, referring to all cases; while in Latin each act of sovereignty is regarded as a separate imperium. Observe the emphasis on sua, that His own sovereignty was of such a nature.
135 26 humilitate, weakness.
135 27 rerum: § 349. a (218. a); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 451. 1 (399. i. 2) H-B. 354.
135 cf. omnibus...oppugnandis: dat. of gerundive expressing purpose; see 76 21 and note.

136 non...potuisse, that Gauls could not easily say "no" to Gauls.

136 pro pietate: pietas implies the love of a child to a parent; here, of course, to his native land, patriotism.

136 rationem offici, regard to his duty.

136 hanc: i.e. manum.—ipsorum, etc.: i.e. it was for themselves to consider.

136 quod cum faciat, in so doing, subjv. merely because of indir. disc.

136 hibernis: i.e. the burden of providing grain for the soldiers.

136 Chap. 28. ausam [esse], with civitatem.—consilium: as the two legates had one and one-half legions under their command, the council of war contained, besides the legates, nine military tribunes, and either nine or six centurions, according as the half legion did or did not include the first cohort. Thus there were in the council either twenty or seventeen persons.

136 [magnas]: may be omitted.

136 quod...sustinuerint: in apposition with rem.

137 quid esse, etc.: see note on 12 8.—auctore hoste, on the advice of the enemy.

137 proximis, nearest. This camp was farthest off from the main body, and hence if the nearest camps should be taken, the forces could not easily withdraw in safety.

137 se: i.e. Titurius.

137 fuisse capturos: in direct, cepissent, a contrary-to-fact apodosis; § 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579 (510); H-B. 581.

137 nostri: obj. gen.; § 295. b (194. b); B. 242. 2; G. 304. 2; H. 500. 4 (446. N. 3); H-B. 254. a.—venturos esse: for venirent of the direct, the apodosis of a pres. condition contrary to fact. We should expect venturos fuisse: § 589. N. 2 (337. b. N. 3); B. 321. 1. a; G. 659; H. 647 (527. iii); H-B. 581. b. 1.

137 auctorem: cf. auctore hoste, l. 2.

137 Ariovisti mortem: he had, however, escaped after the battle (Bk. i. ch. 53).

137 ardere, is in a blaze.

137 persuaderet: direct, persuadeat, a deliberative question.

137 esset: direct, erit, a fut. protasis; § 516. a (307. a); B. 302. 1; G. 595; H. 574 (508); H-B. 579. a.

137 consentiret: pres. ind. in direct, a simple condition.—esse...positam: direct, est posita, a past apodosis with a pres. protasis.

137 habere: cf. esse, l. 2.
Notes: Caesar.

137 23 esset: direct, est.
137 26 Chap. 30. primis ordinibus = primorum ordinum centurioni-bus.
137 27 id: sc. he said from preceding inquit.
138 2 ex vocis: instead of a part. gen. after gravissime. — hi: i.e. the magna pars militum who were listening.
128 3 acciderit, etc.: a more vivid fut. condition; for the tense, see § 516. c (307. c); B. 303; G. 244; H. 540. 2 (473); cf. H-B. 577. a.
138 4 liceat, etc.: a less vivid fut. condition.
138 8 Chap. 31. comprehendunt: i.e. the centurions. — utrumque: i.e. Sabinus and Cotta.
138 12 res disputatione perducitur, the question is debated at length.
138 13 dat manus (a formal sign of surrender), gives in.
138 14 pronuntiatur, word is given out.
138 15 ituros [esse]: sc. eos; see second note on 59 23.
138 18 [omnia, etc.]: this passage has been questioned, but it seems to mean that all the measures taken were devised as if on purpose to make it dangerous to remain, and to increase the danger of departure through the fatigue and demoralization of the men.
138 20 ut quibus, etc., as if they were convinced that: § 535. ε, 372 (320. ε, 230); B. 283. 3. a, 187. ii. b; G. 634, 217; H. 586. ii, 426. 3; (515. iii, 334. 5); H-B. 523, 364. 2.
138 22 [Ambiorige]: omit in translation. — longissimo: the line of march was very long, as it might well be under a guaranteed safe conduct, and consequently very weak.
138 24 Chap. 32. at: note the force and cf. 119 3, 121 19. — fremitu vigiliisque: almost a hendiadys, i.e. the noise caused by the soldiers who took no rest; cf. 28 25 and note.
138 26 a milibus, etc., about two miles off. — On this use of a, cf. 54 9.
138 28 convallem: a valley inclosed on all sides. In such a place of course the Romans were at a disadvantage.
139 1 ex utraque, etc.: at each end, attacking the advance which was coming up out of the glen, and the rear from the heights at the other end. — tum demum: implying, as always, "not till then"; here with the further idea that he ought to have roused himself before.
139 5 Chap. 33. — providisset: a rel. clause of cause; § 535. ε (320. ε); B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592 (517); H-B. 523. — trepidare: histor. infin.; for use, cf. note on flagitare, 13 18.
139 9 cogitasset: cf. providisset, l. 5.
139 14 quoque: from quisque.
139 15 possent: the subj. is Cotta and Titurius.
139 in orbem: see note on 116 i. A modern army would form a hollow square. The orbis also was hollow, having room within for the higher officers, the non-combatants, the wounded, etc.

140 accidit... ut, etc. (cf. 132 8): this clause is divided into three parts with the verbs discederent, properaret, completerentur, the first two being connected by -que (quaque).

140 fletu: not from cowardice. These men fought with splendid courage. It was their way of showing their feelings.

140 Chap. 34. at barbaris, etc.: showing the contrast with the behavior of the Romans about their valuables.

140 existimarent: for inv. of dir. disc.; § 588 (339); B. 316; G. 652; H. 642 (523. iii); H-B. 538.—[erant, etc.]: these bracketed words may be omitted, as also in the passage below.

140 a fortuna: i.e. the goddess fortune, as is shown by the preposition.

140 quotiens... procurrerat, ... cadebat: a general condition referring to past time; cf. 130 7, 131 7.

140 ad signa recipiendis: the standards remained fixed during these sorties, thus indicating the alignment of the circle.

140 cum... exesserat, as often as, etc., equivalent to a general condition; cf. note on l. 15 above: § 518. b (309. c); B. 288. 3; G. 584; H. 601. 4 (521. ii. 1), with last example.

140 eam partem, etc.: when the soldiers from one side of the orbis made a sally, that side, of course, had no defenders.

140 proximi, etc.: only those immediately opposite the sally had fled, and so the party on its return was attacked at once by the enemy remaining on both flanks and also by the late fugitives.

141 vellent: not contrary to fact, but a future condition thrown into the past; § 516. f (307. f); H-B. 580. b.

141 resistebant, they kept on fighting. Note the force of the tense.

141 esset: characteristic subjv.

141 Balventio: connect with femur; dat. of reference where we might have expected a gen. of possession.—qui... duxerat: as he had been chief centurion the year before, we infer that he was now serving in the corps of veterans called evocati; see chapter on military affairs, iv. a.

141 Chap. 36. rogatum: supine; cf. 26 15.

142 ipsi vero, etc., that to him, certainly, no harm will be done; nihil is acc. of specif. and nocitum iri imper. Instead of the latter we should expect fore ut noceatur.
Notes: Caesar.

141 21 sperare se, etc., that he hopes to be able to obtain a request from him so far as pertains to their own safety and that of the soldiers.

141 24 Chap. 37. quos ... tribunos militum = eos tribunos militum quos.

141 26 Ambiorigem: cf. 41 10 and note.

142 1 condicionibus: i.e. of surrender.

142 8 aquilam: he thus saved the standard from disgrace,—a characteristic and truly heroic act.

142 11 se interficiunt: a death worthy of Roman soldiers.

This was the most serious loss that Caesar sustained during the Gallic War. There must have been at least 5000 men in the ill-fated command of Cotta and Sabinus. From this time on Caesar makes it his duty to avenge his massacred legion, and he carries on a relentless warfare against the Eburones and Ambiorix, until the former are exterminated and the latter becomes a hunted fugitive.

142 17 Chap. 38. neque noctem neque diem intermittit: Ambiorix marched only one night and one day. More than that would have been expressed by nocturnis diurnisque itineribus: cf. 33 16.

142 19 in Nervios: see introductory note to Bk. ii and note on 68 18.

142 23 nihil esse negoti, that it was a matter of no difficulty.—oppressam ... interfici: render by two verbs, to be surprised and slain; § 496 N.2 (292 R.); B. 337. 2; G. 664. R.1; H. 639 (549. 5); H-B. 604. 1.


143 1 advolant: note the speed expressed in this verb.

143 3 ut non nulli, etc.: cf. 135 2.

143 13 Chap. 40. pertulissent: for the fut. perf. implied indir. disc.

144 2 turre: these were open at the sides and behind, solidly timbered towards the enemy, and their object was, like that of the modern bastion, to shorten the length of wall to be occupied by the defence as well as to give the soldiers a still higher position from which to throw their missiles. In this case they were probably not more than three stories, or perhaps thirty feet, high. Each story was floored with a platform on which the soldiers stood. The front and sides of each platform were protected by a parapet (loricae) of hurdles, to the height of about four feet. Above this projected a sort of battlement of stakes (pinnae), or of hurdles standing erect, with spaces at intervals, through which the spears were hurled. The structure was square, of about ten feet on a side. Of these towers it appears that on the first night only the framework was erected. On succeeding nights they were completed. Cf. Fig. 103.
144 10 praestae sudes: heavy stakes or piles of wood, sharpened at the end, and charred to harden the point. They were hurled by the tormenta; see Fig. 61. — muralium pilorum: javelins heavier than usual for the defence of the wall.

144 11 contabulantur, were floored with plank. Possibly also the towers were connected by galleries, one for each story.

144 12 cum: concessive.

144 14 concursu ac vocibus, by the spontaneous movement and entreaties.

144 18 Chap. 41. potestate: see note on 167.

144 23 errare . . . si . . . sperent: simple condition, indir. disc.; cf.

137 19. — qui: referring to eis.

144 24 hoc: with animo.

144 25 ut, etc.: i.e. they will be friends, but not subjects; they only refuse to admit a standing military force.

145 2 se adiutore utantur (for the inv. of dir. disc.), they may use him as an advocate.

145 5 Chap. 42. hac spe: i.e. of betraying Cicero as they had betrayed Sabinus. — fossa pedum quindecim: a ditch 15 ft. wide would be 11 ft. deep.

145 8 ab his: i.e. the captives. — nulla . . . copia, having no supply, etc. (a sort of abl. abs.). “They were not yet used, like the Romans, to fight with the spade.”

145 10 manibus sagulisque . . . exhaure, to dig out with their hands, and [carry] in their cloaks. A kind of zeugma, § 640 (385); B. 374. 2. a; G. 690; H. 751. 2. N. (636. ii. 1); H-B. 631. 7; but, as usual in such cases, the meaning of the verb really covers the thought by implication.

145 13 XV: probably an error, as a circuit of fifteen miles seems out of the question; perhaps pedum, or else V, instead of XV.

145 14 falcis, hooks: see note on 84 22. — testudines: wooden galleries or sheds, to protect the undermining (see Figs. 33, 126).

145 16 Chap. 43. ferventis . . . glandis, red-hot balls of clay.

145 18 casas: the huts of the encampment, thatched with straw.

145 20 distulerunt: sc. ignem.

145 21 clamore: see 142 4.

145 28 non modo, etc.: needs a “pulpit” paraphrase, which, after all, would be, like many, less forcible than the original. Omit the bracketed words.

146 2 pugnarent: same construction as respiceret and decederet.

146 5 ut, etc.: this use of ut, as, is almost precisely parallel to the English causal, as, inasmuch as. In fact, the expressions have really the same origin.
While the flames were raging, such exploits of attack and defence were of course impossible.

Turri: this advance of a tower was quite in the manner of Roman attack.

Vellent: implied indir. disc.; in their words, si ... vultis, cf. § 529. ii; B. 323; G. 662; H. 652 (529. ii); H-B. 536. a.

Deturbati: i.e. the enemy.

This superb bit of narrative, marvellous for its matter and its manner, shows the kind of soldiers with which the Romans conquered the world. Everywhere, where great deeds are done in personal prowess, you will find this mixture of rivalry and common spirit. These are the conditions of the great feats of the world.

Primis ordiniibus: see chapter on military affairs, I. 7.

Habebant, used to have.

De loco, for promotion or rank.

Locum, opportunity.

Sese vallo continet, remain within the wall.

Hic casus, etc.: i.e. the javelin, piercing his sword belt, twisted the scabbard of his sword out of his reach.

Translate the bracketed words.

In locum deiectus, etc., slipping into a hollow, he fell.

In contentione, in their rivalry.

Chap. 45. quanto ... gravior ... tanto crebrisores, the more severe ... the more frequent.

A prima obsidione, at the beginning of the siege.

In iaculo: i.e. the shaft of the spear was probably hollow and the letter was inserted in it.

Versatus, going about.

Chap. 46. hora XI: i.e. about five or six o'clock. In this chapter and the following note the wonderful celerity of Caesar's movements and the quick obedience of his officers.

Milia passuum XXV: i.e. from Amiens to (probably) Montdidier.

Rei publicae, etc.: cf. 31. 24 and last note.

Reliquam partem: the detachments under Roscius and Plancus were too far away.

Chap. 47. antecursoribus: the vanguard of Crassus's cavalry, or his scouts.

Non ita, etc., not delaying for a moment.

Veritus ne: § 564 (331. f); B. 296. 2; G. 550. 2; H. 567 (498 iii); H-B. 502. 4.
149 5 quos ... sciret = *cum eos sciret*: a causal clause.
149 6 quanto ... esset: indir. quest. depending on the verb of *telling* implied in *litteras remittit*.
149 7 rem: i.e. the loss of Sabinus and Cotta.
149 12 Chap. 48. *duas*: Caesar thus had only his own legion and that
of Fabius,—a very small force to face the multitude of the enemy.
149 17 Graecis litteris: i.e. *in Greek letters*. The Gauls were well
acquainted with the Greek characters (26 4–6, 167 6). According to
Polyzenus, the despatch contained merely the words, "Caesar to Cicero.
Be of good courage. Expect aid."
149 20 amentum: the *amentum* was a small strap fastened to
the middle of a light spear, in some cases, at any rate, giving it a
whirling motion, like the rifle-ball of modern times. By its use the spear could be
thrown twice as far and with better aim than without it, as has been
proved by experiment.
149 25 biduo, *for two days*: § 424. c (259. c); cf. B. 231. i; G. 393;
H. 486 (429); H-B. 439.
149 26 perlectam ... recitat, having *read it through* (to himself), he
then *recited it aloud* in the assembly of the soldiers.
150 3 Chap. 49. Gallum ... repetit, *asks again for the Gaul*.
150 4 supra: see 148 4–6.
150 6 faciat: *ut* omitted; cf. note on 108 1.— *se ... eum*: notice
the difference in meaning.
150 9 animo: abl. of specification.
150 14 aequo animo, etc., *he thought that he might well be content to
slacken his speed*.
150 16 haec: referring to *castra*, and obj. of *contrahit*.— *hominum*:
a pred. gen. after *erant*.
150 17 milium VII: these legions averaged, then, 3500 men each, and
this was somewhat less than the normal strength; see chapter on military
affairs, I. 1.
150 18 angustiis viarum: i.e. narrow paths or streets within the camp;
angustiis, a loose use of abl. of means, a very elastic construction. The
abl. in Latin contains three different cases, *from, with* or *by*, and *at*, so that
its range of meaning is very wide.
150 19 hostibus: dat. of reference.
150 23 Chap. 50. Galli: *sc. sese continent*.
150 24 Caesar, etc.: translate as if *Caesar sese continet ut, si*, etc. — *si
... posset*: future protasis of *ut ... contenderet*, which, expressing a
purpose, has a future force; § 516. d (307. d); G. 595; cf. H-B. 582. 2.
The same construction is repeated in the next sentence.
Notes: Cæsar.

151 3 equites . . . castra: notice that with iubeo and veto either the person or the thing may be the subject of the dependent infin., or the verb may even be used impersonally, as in concursari.

151 12 Chap. 51. velit: direct, volet.

151 16 ea: an adverb.

151 21 exuit: i.e. by forcing them to throw their arms away as they fled.

151 23 Chap. 52. Omit the bracketed words.

151 27 decimum quemque, one man in ten.

152 6 certius: the letter of Labienus had given him the first news of this calamity; see 149 7.

152 7 rem gestam [esse]: i.e. the destruction of Sabinus and Cotta.

152 8 quod detrimentum = detrimentum quod; observe that a rel. clause standing first usually incorporates its antecedent.

152 9 hoc: the usual abl. of cause (properly degree of difference) with comparatives.

152 10 beneficio deorum: see 10 17 and note.

152 15 Chap. 53. eo: i.e. at Cicero’s camp. Cæsar arrived there about three o’clock, and the news of his victory reached Labienus, sixty miles away, before midnight. See 187 24–27 for the Gallic method of sending news across the country.

152 19 Indutiomanus: see 120 2–4, 135 1.

153 2 trinis: § 137. b (95. b); B. 81. 4. b; G. 97. r.8; H. 164. 3 (174. 2. 3); H-B. 247. 1. a.

153 4 ad exercitum manere: contrary to his usual course, which was, for political reasons, to keep in near communication with Italy.

153 7 quid . . . caperent: what future plan they should adopt.

153 10 quin . . . acciperet: result clause after neque . . . intercessit; § 558 (319. d); B. 284. 3; G. 554; H. 570 (500. ii); cf. H-B. 521. 2.

153 11 in his: i.e. consiliis or nuntiiis.

153 12 L. Roscio: see 133 16.

153 13 [Gallorum]: may be translated.

153 14 Aremoricae: i.e. the natives along the coast of the Atlantic.

153 15 afuisse: notice the tense, they had been, but, etc.

153 19 Chap. 54. alias . . . alias: see Vocab.—cum . . . denuntiaret, by announcing, etc. The descriptive cum-clause admits a great variety of translations.

153 22 Cavarinum: obj. of interficere.

153 23 Moritasgus: sc. regnum obtinebat, from regnum obtinuerant in the next line.

153 24 adventu (abl. of time), at the time of, etc.
V. 50–58. ] Fresh Risings of the Gauls. 399

153 25 publico consilio, by general consent, or on the authority of the people, not a private act of revenge, or the like.— conati: agreeing with Senones.— ille: i.e. Cavarinus.

153 26 regno domoque: i.e. as a king and as a citizen as well.

154 1 valuit . . . atutilit: these verbs have for their subject esse, etc.; and such an influence did it have that some had been found, etc. . . . and such a change did this fact produce that, etc.

154 4 alteros . . . alteros: see Vocab.

154 6 adeo (emphatic), in fact.

154 7 cum . . . tum maxime quod, not only for several other reasons, but especially because.

154 8 praeferebantur, used to be held superior.

154 12 Chap. 55. quin . . . mitterent, etc.: cf. 153 10.

154 15 ulti civitati, etc.: cf. 56 24.

154 16 cum . . . dicerent: a common periphrasis for our pres. part.— bis: see Bk. i. chs. 31–54; Bk. iv. chs. 1–15.

154 20 tota Gallia, throughout Gaul: see note on 150 18.

154 25 Chap. 56. ultro veniri: i.e. that there was a spontaneous rising for his support.

154 26 Senones, Carnutes: about Sens and Chartres. The latter are not mentioned before, but seem to have taken part against Cavarinus (ch. 54).

154 28 defore si . . . coepisset: a fut. condition. What would it be in direct discourse?

155 1 hoc: subj. of est.

155 2 quo, at which (lit. whither).

155 6 supra: see 118 25 ff.

155 10 huc: i.e. on his way to the Senones and Carnutes he will go through the territory of the Remi.

155 26 Chap. 58. in dies: see Vocab.

156 1 arcessendos curaverat: cf. 117 4.

156 10 praecipit: refers to petant; interdicit to neu volneret.— pro-territis hostibus, etc.: translate by a temporal clause, when, etc.

156 13 mora reliquorum: lit. the delay of the others. The regular way of expressing the relation between two nouns is by the use of the genitive. Here the delay caused by the pursuit of the others is characteristically looked upon as belonging to them. Translate, by waiting to attack the others.

156 14 spatium nactum, gaining time.

156 18 redeuntis: i.e. from the pursuit of Induiniomarus.
SECOND PASSAGE OF THE RHINE.—The last campaign had been a series of disappointments and reverses. The expedition to Britain had been only moderately successful and led to no permanent results; Cæsar’s return found the Gauls in a state of unrest, which culminated in open revolt and in the annihilation of the division of Sabinus and the attacks upon the winter quarters of Quintus Cicero and of Labienus. Cæsar, to be sure, rescued Cicero in the nick of time and Labienus was successful against Indutiomarus; but, on the whole, the advantage had been with the Gauls, and they had gained fresh hope in their desperate struggle for independence. The strength of their resistance was in the north and east, where they had the support of raids from across the Rhine,—a danger which it was especially the business of Cæsar to check by a daring blow; hence the policy of this new, but idle, advance into Germany. It may be borne in mind that this campaign was the more critical, as it followed closely upon the defeat and destruction of the Roman armies under Crassus in the East.

Reading References on Cæsar’s Sixth Campaign.

Dodge’s Cæsar, chap. 14.
Fowler’s Julius Cæsar, chap. 13.
Froude’s Cæsar, chap. 17 (last part).
Holmes’s Cæsar’s Conquest of Gaul, chap. 6.
Plutarch’s Lives, Cæsar.
Tacitus’s Germania.
Taylor’s Hist. of Germany, chaps. 1 and 2.
Trollope’s Cæsar, chap. 7.

157 1 Chap. i. multis de causis: viz. the profitless expedition to Britain, the desertion of Dumnorix, the loss of Cotta and Sabinus, and the sudden revolt led by Indutiomarus (see Bk. v. chs. 55-58).
157 2 per Silanum: the regular construction of the means when it is a person; cf. 57 3 and note.
157 3 delectum: i.e. in Italy.
157 4 proconsule: Pompey had been consul b.c. 55. He was now nominally proconsul of Spain, with six legions; but he remained in Italy, ruling his province through legati. — ad urbem (not in urbe): as long as he was in military command (cum imperio) he could not enter the city.
157 5 rei publicae causa: this business was the superintending of the corn supply (cura annonae). — quos . . . rogavisset, whom he had enlisted from Cisalpine Gaul when consul; the verb rogare is used of a commander
who exacts an oath of allegiance from his men; hence *sacramento rogare* means *to enlist*; *quos*: sc. the antecedent *eos* as obj. of *iuberet* and subj. of *convenire* and *proficisci*. —Cisalpina Gallia: this was Cæsar’s own province. But Pompey and Crassus had received authority to raise troops where they pleased, and in whatever number.

157 7 iuberet: subjv. of purpose, with *ut* omitted, following *petit*; cf. 108 1.— magni: cf. 52 11 and note.— etiam, etc.: i.e. not merely for this campaign, but for the Roman prestige in future.

157 8 opinionem Galliae: subj. gen.

158 2 augerī: does not refer to *detrimentum*, but to Cæsar’s forces (implied). This linking of different ideas with a word that properly belongs only to one is called *zeugma*.

158 3 quod: i.e. the loan of the legion.— amicitiae: Cæsar and Pompey were still openly friends, though by the recent death of Julia, Cæsar’s daughter and Pompey’s wife, as well as by the death of Crassus, the political coalition which united them had been dissolved, and an open rupture soon followed. The legion now forwarded to Cæsar was demanded back two or three years later.

158 5 constitutis et adductis: i.e. two levied and one borrowed.

158 6 duplicato: fifteen cohorts had been lost under Sabinus (Bk. v. chs. 26–37). The three legions now received had of course thirty cohorts. The new legions were known as I, III, and XIV, the last taking the place of the legion and a half that had been lost under Sabinus at Aduatuca. Cæsar now led ten legions.

Chap. 2. In the details of this chapter, notice the formidable appearance, but the really long, weak, and broken line of the Gallic confederacy.

158 9 ut docuimus: see Bk. v. ch. 58.

158 13 civitatibus: i.e. of the Germans.— inter se, each other, a common use of the phrase in any reciprocal relation.

158 14 obsidibus . . . cævant, by hostages give security for the money, i.e. the money promised the Germans for their help.— Ambiorigem: the clever chief of the Eburones, who had entrapped and destroyed Sabinus.

158 20 maturius: i.e. earlier than usual.

158 22 Chap. 3. nondum, etc.: notice that it is the promptness and dash of Cæsar’s operations that win the victory in almost every case.

158 23 Nerviorum: see note on 68 18.

158 24 possent: for mood, see § 551. b (327); B. 292; G. 577; H. 605. 2 (520. i. 2); H-B. 507. 4. b; cf. 38 27 and note. Here, as with *cum*, there is an inner connection between the two clauses. It is not merely before they were in a position to gather, but before they could get a chance to gather.
praeda, as booty; ea (referring to magno ... numero) agrees by attraction with the appositive: § 296. a (195. d); B. 250. 3; G. 211. R. 6.
H. 396. 2 (445. 4); H-B. 326. 1.

158 27 coegit: sc. eos.
159 2 ut ... videretur: i.e. to show that he was determined to put down the rising at once.

Lutetiam: the first mention in history of Paris, which was a place of no great importance until its occupation as a royal town by the Franks in A.D. 502. The original place of meeting had perhaps been Samarobriva (Amiens). Caesar apparently considered Lutetia a point nearer the scene of operations, and proceeded at once to the affected district.

159 4 civitatem ... coniunxerant: i.e. with the Senones. This was a close political union, not a mere military league (foedus).
159 5 hoc consilio: the new confederacy (cf. Bk. vii. ch. 75). — hac re: the removal to Lutetia. — pro suggestu, in front of the platform; i.e. by public announcement, not special notification to the commanders. See chapter on military affairs, v.

159 9 Chap. 4. conantibus (sc. eis, abl. abs.), while they were attempting to effect the gathering.
159 12 quorum in fide, under whose protection; i.e. of the Hædui, whose supremacy had once extended over the greater part of Gaul.
159 13 libenter, etc.: but Acco was afterwards put to death; see ch. 44.
159 15 instantis belli (pred. gen.): i.e. the war against the Treveri and Ambiorix.

159 16 custodiendos: gerundive expressing purpose; § 500. 4 (294. d); B. 337. 7. b. 2; G. 430; H. 622 (544. 2. n. 2); H-B. 605. 2; cf. also 117 4, 156 1.

equites: the cavalry of the Roman armies was wholly furnished by the subject-allies.

Cavarinum: a chief appointed at Caesar's dictation, and odious to his tribe (153 21-29). Hence came his animosity (iracundia) against the state which had driven him into exile.

meruerat: implying a harsh and tyrannical rule, which had aroused the hatred of the state. Either the old odium of Cavarinus or his new animosity against the state might cause a disturbance.

pro explorato habebat, he considered certain.

reliqua, etc.: i.e. what else Ambiorix would be likely to do.

venisse: understand eum (Ambiorix).

haec ... auxilia: i.e. both the Menapii and the Germans.— prius, with quam. Notice that the parts of this word are very often
separated. — illi, a dat. rendered by from, instead of the abl. of separation: § 381 (229); B. 188. 2. d’; G. 345. r.1; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371.

160 6 lacesset: subj. in indir. disc., following existimabat.

160 7 congridi, to form an alliance with.

160 14 CHAP. 6. tripartito: in three columns, on different roads.

160 20 Commium: appointed king of the Atrebates by Cæsar (106 13–17). He served as Cæsar’s friend and ally in Britain and elsewhere, but finally joined in the great revolt against him (Bk. vii. ch. 76). — custodis loco, as a guard.

160 23 CHAP. 7. dum geruntur: the regular construction with dum; cf. 113 1 and note.

160 25 in eorum finibus: see Bk. v. ch. 24.

160 26 via: abl. after longius. — cum ... cognoscunt: not like the descriptive cum, but really the main proposition; § 546. a (325. b); B. 288. 2; G. 581; H. 600. i. 1; H-B. 566. a.

160 27 a (adverbial), away.

161 1 impedimentis: i.e. the greater part of the heavy baggage. He took a small baggage-train with him (see 161 28); but probably only what was necessary.

161 4 flumen: probably some stream flowing into the Meuse (Mosa).

161 5 transire, transituros: notice the regular use of these two constructions side by side; the first verb (habebat in animo) expresses intention and has the simple complem. infin.; the second (existimabat) is a verb of thinking and takes the indir. disc. This is one of the most important distinctions in Latin grammar.

161 6 augebatur: i.e. in the minds of the Treveri.

161 7 spes, their (the Treveri) hope. — loquitur: i.e. Labienus. — palam, freely or openly, on purpose to be heard, but not in a set speech.

161 10 castra moturum: of course to withdraw.

161 12 natura: i.e. their natural attachment to their own land.

161 13 consili: pred. gen.; cf. 18 19.

161 20 CHAP. 8. cum: see note on 160 26.

161 21 longum esse, it would be tedious: § 437. a (264. b); B. 271. i. b; G. 254. r.1; H. 525. 2 (476. 5); H-B. 582. 3 and 2.

162 4 imperatori: Cæsar, who alone had the imperium, or military authority. Labienus was only dux.

162 6 derigì: i.e. to be formed and aligned; the verb properly has only the latter meaning, the former is only implied.

162 8 celeriter, etc.: see chapter on military affairs, vii.

162 14 recepit, recovered to obedience. — auxilio: dat. of service.
comitati eos, in company with them (the Germans).

demonstravimus: see Bk. v. chs. 3, 4, and 56.

Chap. 9. paulo supra, a little above, or to the south.

nota ... ratione, on the plan already tried and approved (cf. Bk. iv. ch. 17).
	purgandi sui: § 504. c (298. a); B. 339. 5; G. 428. r.1; H. 626. 3 (542. i. n.1); H-B. 614; cf. 77 3, 115 2.

cognita, having inquired into.

Chap. 10. paucis post diebus: § 424. f (259. d); B. 357. 1; G. 403. n.4; H. 488. I (430); H-B. 424.

eis ... imperio: subject tribes, not confederate allies. Tacitus, however (Ger. 38), represents the Suevi as a confederacy; its former subjects may, after Cæsar’s time, have been admitted to alliance.

quaque: -que connects mittant and cognoscant.

silvam: this was the natural frontier and defence (pro nativo muro) of the north German plain towards the south. A range of wooded hills still borders the Saxon duchies on the north. The Cherusci held the valleys of the Weser and Elbe.

Chap. 11. locum, etc.: here there is really nothing to tell, as Cæsar found the country deserted (ch. 29), and returned at once to Gaul. We owe to this void in the narrative a most curious and entertaining glimpse into the geographic and ethnographic knowledge of the time. See the introductory chapters on Gaul and Germany.

existimantur: is only explanatory, hence the indicative.

quorum: the antecedent is principes.

redeat: is characteristic; § 535 (320); B. 283; G. 631. 1; H. 591. 1 (503. i); cf. H-B. 521. 1. The idea seems to be: It is the chief men of these factions (those namely who are regarded as most influential) who have the supreme authority. Hence the effort of each of the chieftains to look out for his dependents.

ne ... egeret: in app. with eius rei, the past tense (egeret) taking its time from institutum [esse]: § 485. j; 585. a (287. i, 336. b. n.2); B. 268. 7, 268. 2; G. 518; H. 548 (495. iv); H-B. 483.

haec ... Galliae, this same state of things exists in general throughout entire Gaul.

divisae: adj. use of the participle; cf. divisa, 1 1.

cum ... venit: notice the difference between this and the cum in descriptive clauses (cf. 11 7, 49 1). Here it means merely “at the time when,” and there is no inner connection with the main clause.

Sequani: these succeeded to the domination of the Arverni (see Bk. i. ch. 31). — hi, the latter.
antiquitus: really only a little while before, as the Hœduii had risen by favor of the Romans.

clientelae, dependencies. These were the petty tribes which grouped themselves about one or the other of the great rival states.
iurare: i.e. the Hœduii.
nihil...consili, no plans, part. gen.—et: connects cogerent and possiderent.
Diviciacus: cf. 27 13.

clientelae, dependencies. These were the petty tribes which grouped themselves about one or the other of the great rival states.
iurare: i.e. the Hœduii.
nihil...consili, no plans, part. gen.—et: connects cogerent and possiderent.

Diviciacus: cf. 27 13.

clientelae, dependencies. These were the petty tribes which grouped themselves about one or the other of the great rival states.
iurare: i.e. the Hœduii.
nihil...consili, no plans, part. gen.—et: connects cogerent and possiderent.

Diviciacus: cf. 27 13.

clientelae, dependencies. These were the petty tribes which grouped themselves about one or the other of the great rival states.
iurare: i.e. the Hœduii.
nihil...consili, no plans, part. gen.—et: connects cogerent and possiderent.

Diviciacus: cf. 27 13.

clientelae, dependencies. These were the petty tribes which grouped themselves about one or the other of the great rival states.
iurare: i.e. the Hœduii.
nihil...consili, no plans, part. gen.—et: connects cogerent and possiderent.

Diviciacus: cf. 27 13.
was carried thence to Britain, where it still flourished, but that it had declined for various political reasons in the mother country.

166 21 Chap. 14. The bracketed words merely repeat the thought of the preceding sentence and may be omitted.

167 2 \textbf{numerum versuum}: i.e. their lore was put into verse to assist the memory.

167 4 \textit{fas}: the words \textit{fas} and \textit{nefas} refer to what is religiously right and wrong; \textit{ius} and \textit{injuría} refer to human obligations only.

167 8 \textit{litteris confisos}, by trusting to written words, a useful hint to teachers.

167 11 \textit{hoc} (acc.), more usually \textit{illud}, refers to what follows; \textit{hoc} (abl.) to what has just been said.

167 12 \textit{transire}: the belief in the transmigration of souls was common to many ancient peoples, and is still a tenet of some Eastern religions, especially of the Buddhists.

167 15 \textit{mundi}, the universe (system of things); \textit{terrarum} (cf. \textit{orbis terrarum}), the world.

167 17 Chap. 15. \textit{equitum}: these made a sort of military nobility. It is interesting to compare the two “upper classes” here described with the ecclesiastics and feudal noblesse of France before the Revolution. — \textit{cum est}: notice the force of the indicative. See note on \textit{cum} \ldots \textit{premunitur}, 165 18. — \textit{usus}: a noun; see Vocab.

167 21 \textit{ut quisque} \ldots \textit{amplissimus, ita plurimos}, the more powerful \ldots the greater number: § 313. b (93. c, at end); G. 642. R.²; H. 515. 5 (458. 2).

167 22 \textit{ambactos}: this Celtic word was known as the equivalent of \textit{servus}, “slave,” as early as the time of Ennius, 150 years before. Cf. 165 16–21.

167 27 Chap. 16. \textit{hominis immolant}: it is not certain that the practice of human sacrifice existed so late as this in Gaul. Cæsar appears not to have known any actual instances of it.

168 3 \textit{plācāri}: distinguished from \textit{placère}. — \textit{publice}: as opposed to the private ones just referred to.

168 4 \textit{habent instituta}: cf. 40 20, 51 8, and notes.

168 9 \textit{cum} \ldots \textit{deficit}: cf. \textit{cum est}, 167 17.

168 12 Chap. 17. \textit{Mercurium}: the gods had no such names, nor were they, in fact, the same gods; but they were identified with similar Roman divinities as nearly as possible. The name of the god whom the Romans identified with Mercury is lost (\textit{Teutates}?) but it appears from inscriptions and images that his worship was very widespread and important throughout the period of the Empire. The other deities here mentioned appear
under numerous epithets. Jupiter was probably the Gallic Taranis, whose name appears to indicate that he was a god of thunder. He has been identified by some with a statuette bearing in its hand a long hammer or mallet, like the Scandinavian Thor.

168 20 cum, etc. : see 165 18 and note.
168 21 ceperint: subjv. of informal indir. disc., for the fut. perf. ind. of the direct.
169 2 neglecta religione: i.e. in violation of his vow. — capta, taken as spoil. — apud se, at his house.
169 3 posita, consecrated as a gift.
169 5 CHAP. 18. Dite, Pluto, the god of Darkness, or of the Underworld, meaning that they believe themselves to have sprung from the soil, the world below them: see § 403. a. N.1 (244. a. R.); B. 215. 2; G. 395; H. 409. 1 (415. ii. N.); H-B. 413. 6.
169 7 noctium, etc.: this usage is common to many primitive peoples; e.g. the Germans (Tac. Ger. 11). Our word "fortnight" is a relic of it. It doubtless had its origin in keeping time by the changes of the moon.
169 9 ut ... subsequeatur: i.e. the calendar day began at sunset.
169 10 fere (with hoc): i.e. speaking loosely. — suos liberos, etc. The Romans, on the other hand, accustomed their sons to public life, and in early times even took them with them into the Senate. Again cum with the perf. ind. expressing repeated or customary action; cf. 168 20. Observe that this perf. becomes a present in our idiom, expressing repeated action or a general truth.
169 13 turpe ducunt, they consider it disgraceful, turpe being pred. adj. agreeing with the infin. clause.
169 14 CHAP. 19. quantas ... communicant: i.e. the husband deposits, in a common fund, an amount equal to the wife's marriage portion.
169 16 ratio habetur, a reckoning is kept.
169 17 fructus, revenues or profits. — vita: abl. of specification.
169 19 viri in uxores, etc.: cf. the Roman patria potestas; the rank of the wife was much higher among the Germans.
169 22 de uxoribus: this would seem to imply polygamy among the Gauls. Probably it was limited to the chiefs, as among the Germans; see note on 48 6. — in servilem modum, after the manner of slaves, i.e. by torture.
169 23 compertum est: i.e. that there has been foul play.
169 24 excruaciatas interficiunt: cf. 5 5, 55 3, and notes. — pro cultu, considering the degree of civilization.
169 27 hanc = nostram (cf. 51 17), i.e. a generation ago.
170 1 dilectos: distinguish from delectos. — iustis, regular, by conventional rule. When these had been fulfilled, the sacrifice of dependents was added. These usages are in accordance with the belief of the Gauls in immortality, which is fully attested.

170 3 Chap. 20. quae civitates = eae civitates quae; a relative clause standing first generally incorporates its antecedent.

170 4 legibus sanctum, established by law, agreeing with the sentence si ... communicet (obj. of habent); cf. 40 20, 51 8.

170 6 neve, and that not, the regular connective for a negative purpose clause. — quo: indef., any one.

170 7 quod saepe, etc.: cf. the lively account 97 9-17.

170 9 quae visa sunt, what they think fit to conceal (understand occultanda).

170 11 per concilium, by means (or, in the proceedings) of the public assembly.

170 14 Chap. 21. neque druides habent: i.e. this particular hierarchy. They had, however, both priests and priestesses, with religious forms public and private.

170 15 deorum numero, etc. In this, Cæsar's testimony is directly contradicted by Tacitus, who speaks (Ger. 9) of their worship of Mercury, Mars, and Hercules. This is almost the only contradiction between these writers, in whose accounts of political and other institutions there is a striking agreement. This is all the more remarkable when we bear in mind that Cæsar went but little beyond the German frontier and had relatively little to do with them. This description of the Germans may be profitably compared with Cæsar's account of the Suevi in the opening chapters of Bk. iv.

170 19 a parvis, from childhood. — qui ... permanserunt: i.e. "who are slowest to outgrow" their boyhood. Cf. Tacitus: sera juvenum venus, rogue inexhausta pubertas; and contrast the premature debaucheries of the Roman youth.

170 20 hoc: abl. of cause.

170 22 nulla occultatio: like the English there is no hiding.

170 25 renonum: i.e. small cloaks of hide. — magna ... nuda: abl. abs.

170 26 Chap. 22. agri culturae: as to this chapter, cf. what is said in the general Introduction to the volume and in Bk. iv. ch. 1, where it is shown that the soil was tilled, not by the labor of old men, women, or slaves, but by that of the fighting men. In other words, the Germans were, though "barbarians," not (in one sense) a barbarous people.

170 27 neque quisquam, etc.: this temporary and shifting occupation
of land, as well as the holding of it by the family or clan (cognitionibus), is characteristic of a primitive society. Cf. the Introduction, as above.

171 1 finis propios, private lands.
171 2 gentibus, etc.: in the general gathering for this assignment each clan must have met by itself, and have been represented by its chief.
171 3 quantum agri, as much land; agri is part. gen.
171 6 agri cultura: notice the use of the abl. here to be rendered for; § 416 (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478. 4 (422. N.2); H-B. 427. 1, cf. 431.— ne . . . expellant: this was a flagrant evil in Italy, which Caesar in his own consulship had attempted to check, following the precedent of the Gracchi. There the potentiores had already succeeded in ousting the humiliores, and enormous plantations, cultivated by slaves, had taken the place of the earlier peasant freeholds.
171 11 cum . . . videat: this looks as if the land was portioned in equal shares to rich and poor alike. But on this question there are many and various opinions, and, at any rate, the words do not prove a division to each man as a freehold.
171 13 Chap. 23. maxima laus: so in Bk. iv. ch. 3.
171 14 virtutis: § 385. c (234. d'); B. 204. 2; G. 359. r.1; H. 435. 4 (391. ii. 4); H-B. 339. c.
171 16 prope, near; consistere, to stay or settle. The infin. clauses are in app. with hoc.
171 17 cum . . . infert: note the force of pres. indic. with cum; cf.
165 18 and note.
171 18 magistratus . . . deliguntur: by lot, according to the Saxon Bede, from among existing magistrates. The Goths, Burgundians, Franks, and Lombards, on the other hand, had real kings.
171 19 praeint, habeant: subjv. of characteristic.
171 21 principes . . . pagorum: these local and village chiefs, forming a sort of governing body, were probably the natural leaders each of his own district. They are said, however, to have been elected, no doubt for life, by an assembly of the tribe or nation (Tac. Ger. 12).
171 22 latrocinia . . . extra finis: as with the “cattle-lifting raids” of the Scottish Borderers.
171 25 ubi quis, etc., whenever any one, equivalent to the protasis of a general condition. This is the manner in which volunteers were mustered for the raids in question.
171 26 profiteantur: representing an inv. form in the dir. disc.
172 2 omnium rerum fides, confidence in anything.
172 3 qui . . . venerunt: again the perf. indic. in the protasis of a general condition,—whoever comes to them for any reason whatsoever.
Notes: Caesar.

172 6 Chap. 24. cum...superarent: a clause of characteristic, such that, etc.; see § 535. a. N. 8 (322. r.); G. 631. 2; H. 591. 4 (503. i. N. 3); H-B. 521. 1.

172 7 superarent, inferrent, mitterent: asyndeton, i.e. omission of connectives.

172 10 Hercyniam silvam: the great wooded range extending from the Black Forest to the Bohemian Highlands.—Graecis: i.e. other Greeks, as Eratosthenes was a Greek, though not of Greece proper.

172 11 Volcae Tectosages, etc.: occupying the southern part of Gaul, about Narbonne or Toulouse. A portion only had migrated to Germany; or, perhaps, had stayed behind from an early Celtic migration westward.

172 16 Gallis: indir. obj. of largitur, multa being the dir. obj.

172 22 Chap. 25. iter: acc. of extent; cf. 98 3.—expedito (dat.); i.e. to a man unencumbered with baggage.—non...noverunt: i.e. the Germans who live there. So at the present day, in the mountain regions of Germany and Switzerland, distance is measured by "hours" (stunden) instead of miles.

172 24 Nemetum, etc.: along the middle course of the Rhine, where it flows northward from Bâle.—recta regione: i.e. parallel.

172 25 Dacorum, etc.: occupying the eastern and western portions of Hungary.

172 26 sinistrorsus: in reality it is the river which leaves the course of the forest or highland, bending abruptly to the right, or southward.

173 1 huius: that familiar to the Romans, viz. western.

173 2 [aut audisse]: may be omitted in translation.—initium: as we should say the end, eastward, where it is lost in the Carpathian range. Its extent, in a direct line, is stated as 1600 miles.

173 3 processerit: subjv. as an intermediate clause in ind. disc. for perf. indic.

173 4 acceperit: subjv. of characteristic.

173 5 quae, such as, followed by the subjv. of characteristic.

173 6 differant: subjv. of characteristic.

173 8 Chap. 26. bos: this name seems to have been given loosely to any large-horned, unfamiliar beast, and even to the elephant; here it is perhaps the reindeer, which had anciently a wide-scattered range.

173 9 unum cornu: this description is unintelligible.

173 10 palmae ramique (hendiadys; cf. note on 28 25), branching antlers, evidently comparing the horns to a flat hand with branches like fingers.

173 13 Chap. 27. alces: this name is undoubtedly elks, but the description is widely unlike and quite unrecognizable.

173 17 *si . . . considerunt:* cf. 172 3 and note. By what tense should this perfect be rendered? The same construction occurs below in l. 20, *cum est animadversum,* and in l. 23, *cum reclinaverunt.*

173 21 *omnes:* with arbores.

173 22 ab radicibus, *at the roots.* — *accidunt, cut into.* — *tantum ut,* etc.: lit. *so far that the perfect appearance of them standing is left; translate, so that all appearances they are standing firmly.*

173 26 *Chap. 28.* *uri:* this name is generally understood to refer to the German *Urochs* (the primitive or wild ox, probably *buffalo*), said still to be found in the forests of Lithuania. Caesar evidently describes a very different animal, with spreading horns like those of a reindeer or moose; but the whole description must have been derived from a confused account.

174 6 *quae sint testimonio,* to serve as evidence, a purpose clause.

174 7 *ne . . . excepti,* not even when caught quite young.

174 12 *Chap. 29.* Caesar, etc. This chapter directly follows ch. 10 in the narrative, the intervening passage being a digression.

174 14 *supra:* see 170 26.

174 16 *ne . . . tolleret:* as would be done by completely destroying the bridge. — *barbaris:* dat.; § 381 (229); B. 188. 2. d; G. 345. r.1; H. 427 (385. ii. 2); H-B. 371. — *atque, and at the same time.* — *ut tardaret:* which he did by making the bridge practically useless.

174 17 *auxilia:* i.e. which the Germans might send to aid the Gauls.

174 19 *in extremo ponte.* There seems to have been an island in the river at this place, so that the bridge was in two sections. The section between the island and the east bank was destroyed, and at what was now the end of the bridge (extremo), on the island, the tower was built. There was probably a redoubt, as usual, at the entrance to the bridge on the mainland; see Fig. 59.

174 20 *cohortium:* these were auxiliaries, as it appears in ch. 33 that he took all his legions with him.

174 23 *cum maturescere,* etc.: i.e. early in August.

174 24 *Arduennam:* the modern Ardennes.

174 27 *D:* an obvious mistake, possibly of some copyist. The distance is about 150 miles. — *Basilum:* afterwards one of the conspirators against Caesar.

174 28 *si . . . possit,* (to see) *whether he can,* etc.: see § 576. a (334. f); B. 300. 3; G. 460. (b); H. 649. 3 (529. ii. 1. n.1); H-B. 582. 2 and a.

175 1 *qua:* why not *quae?*

175 2 *subsequi:* notice the pres. for the fut.

175 7 *Chap. 30.* *multum potest,* *has great power;* see note on 10 17.
175 8 nam ut, etc., for as it happened by a remarkable chance that, etc.;
the following clause being subj. of accidit.—ipsum: referring to Ambi-
orix; so too in l. 12.

175 9 prius...quam: render as one word, before; in English we
omit the relative particle. — eius: i.e. Basili.

175 10 videretur: in the same construction as incideret.—adferre-
tur: cf. 158 24 and note.

175 11 magnae fortunae (pred. gen.), a great piece of luck.
175 13 hoc: abl. of means, explained by quod, etc.
175 14 sunt fere, generally are.

175 16 propinquitatis: use the singular in English; § 100. c (75. c);
B. 55. 4. c; G. 204. N.6; H. 138. 2 (130. 2); H-B. 240. 5. b.

175 18 his pugnantibus: notice the force of the Latin order. While
these were fighting, time was given for the chief to be placed on horseback
by some of his followers, and, as soon as he actually got away, he was cov-
ered by the woods.

175 21 Chap. 31. iudicione...an, whether by design...or, etc.

176 9 quas aestus: i.e. islands only at high tide.

176 3 alienissimis, entire strangers.

176 4 Catuvolcus: see 133 20–23, 134 17–19.

176 6 precibus detestatus, cursing with formal imprecations, which,
from a dying man, were thought to have efficacy with the gods.

176 7 fuisset: informal indir. disc.—taxo: perhaps with a decoction
of yew leaves, as the berries are said to be harmless.

176 12 Chap. 32. neve: see note on 170 6.

176 12 unam esse causam, that the case was the same; i.e. that they
were all included in the league.

176 16 convenissent, reducerentur: in dir. disc. convenerint, redu-
cantur.

176 19 id castelli nomen est, that is the (German) name of a strong-
hold. It will be remembered that the Aduatuci were of German descent,
and it is thought that Aduatuca is an old German word, meaning a strong-
hold. Then the Aduatuci would be the people who held such a place of
safety. There were several towns of this name, which fact adds force to
the conjecture.

176 21 Titurius, etc. (Sabinus and Cotta): see 133 20–24.

176 24 laborem: i.e. of making a new fortified camp.

176 25 unam ex his, etc.: see 158 4 ff.

176 26 Q. Ciceronem: see Bk. v. chs. 39–52.

177 2 Chap. 33. ad...versus, towards.

177 5 Scaldim, the Scheldt. There seems to be some confused
Second Passage of the Rhine.

geography here, but the many and confused mouths of these rivers doubt
less gave rise to this idea.
177 8 vii = septimum. Cf. a different idiom, 163 9. — quam ad
diem: cf. 179 2 (quem ad diem). Observe that dies is often fem. when
it means time.
177 9 frumentum deberi: see chapter on military affairs, iv. f.
177 11 commodo (abl.), to (properly in accordance with) the advantage,
etc. — rei publicae: gen.; cf. 31 24, 148 18.
177 14 Chap. 34. supra: in ch. 31.
177 15 quod se defenderet, capable of, etc. (subjv. of charac-
teristic).
177 16 cuique, to each; notice the Latin idiom. We should put the
distributive with the leading verb (consederat), each had taken position
where, etc.
177 21 universis, to men gathered in one body.
177 23 ex parte, in a measure.
177 26 hominum sceleratorum, those scoundrels; an expression of
temper which Cæsar does not often permit himself towards his foes. It
shows his bitter hatred against the hapless Eburones, who had destroyed
his officers and legion.
177 27 vellet: not contrary to fact, but in both cases a future protasis
thrown back into past time; cf. note on 141 1.
178 4 ut in, etc., considering that it was in, etc.; a not uncommon
use of ut.
178 6 ut potius, etc.: we may translate so that some opportunities for
doing injury were neglected, though the clause is properly one of purpose.
Connect potius with quam. The thought is that Cæsar’s plan was to save
the lives of his soldiers, even at the expense of neglecting to punish the
enemy, and to employ others to carry out his vengeance.
178 7 ulciscendum: i.e. to avenge the destruction of the force of
Sabinus and Cotta (Bk. v. chs. 27–38).
178 8 noceretur (impers.), harm should be done to the enemy.
179 4 Chap. 35. fortuna: cf. 175 7. — possit, adferat: present
tense to express a general truth; though usually in Latin such expressions
follow the sequence of tenses.
179 8 ultro, freely; i.e. any that would; as a general invitation,
extending beyond those immediately concerned.
179 10 supra docuimus: see 102 21–25.
179 13 primos finis, the nearest limits.
179 16 paludes: subj. of morantur.
179 18 profectum: i.e. eum proiectum esse.
179 22. Aduatucam: i.e. where Cicero with a single legion was guarding the baggage of the whole army; see ch. 32.

179 23 tantum, only so much, really, so feeble.

179 24 cingi, surrounded; i.e. manned (with a line of defenders).

179 27 duce, as guide (pred. app.).

180 1 Chap. 36. Cicero: up to this time he had shown himself to be an unusually discreet and courageous officer.

180 2 continuisset (concessive subjv.), though he had, etc.

180 4 vii = septimo. — de numero: construe with fidem servaturum.

180 5 progressum: cf. prefectum, 179 18.

180 7 illius, etc., who called his quiet waiting a blockade.

180 8 si quidem, since: with subjv., indicating the ground of their complaint.

180 9 quo (following eius modi, of such sort that), with posset as subjv. of result.—oppositis, had gone to meet the enemy; the abl. abs. expresses cause.

180 10 in milibus passuum tribus: i.e. within three miles of his camp.

180 11 offendi (impers.), an attack could be made.

180 12 quas inter: several prepositions sometimes follow their cases.

180 14 hoc spatio: i.e. since Caesar's departure.

180 15 sub vexillo: here the vexillum was a little scarlet flag (quite distinct from the metal signum), used by small bodies detached for some special service. The name vexillarii was given to the soldiers of such a corps; see chapter on military affairs, ii, and Figs. 121, 127.

180 16 calonum: i.e. officers' servants and grooms for the horses. These were slaves.—iumentorum: to bring in the expected supplies.

180 17 subsederat, had remained behind when Caesar left.—facta potestate, obtaining leave.

180 18 Chap. 37. [et]: omit in translation.

180 19 ab decumana porta, at the rear gate (see Fig. 119). The camp fronted in the direction where the enemy were supposed to be, i.e. towards the Gallic tribes, so that its more exposed part lay nearest the German attack.

180 20 nec prius... quam, and not till; for the mood following, see 158 24 and note.

180 21 silvis: it was considered bad generalship to place a camp so near the woods as to conceal the approach of the enemy. The pickets, too, must have been either very carelessly stationed or very negligent.

180 22 usque eo, so close. — qui... mercatores, the traders who spread their booths (tentoria) under the shelter of the wall. — recipiendi sui: for construction, see § 504. e (298. a); B. 339. 5; G. 428. r.1; H. 626. 3 (542. i. n.1); H-B. 614; cf. 40 15, 77 3, 77 20.
415

180 24 in statione: i.e. before the gate.
180 25 circumfunduntur: the middle or reflexive use of the passive, rendered in English by the active intransitive form; pour in or about.
180 26 si: interrog., [to see] whether; cf. 174 28.
181 1 signa, etc.: i.e. as the whole camp was in confusion the soldiers could not tell in which direction the line was to be formed (signa ferantur) nor where each man should rally (quisque conveniat). It is noticeable that Cicero is not spoken of after the beginning of ch. 36. Ordinarily this would be just the moment when a commander would be most active. It seems to show that he shared in the general panic.
181 3 imperatore: Cæsar. Observe the force of atque: and the general, too!
181 4 novas religiones, a sudden superstition, as if the spot itself were unlucky to the Romans (see 176 20–22).
181 5 qui occiderint, who (as they recalled; hence subjv.) had fallen.
181 7 barbaris: dat. of reference.
181 12 Chap. 38. apud Caesarem, with Caesar.
181 13 proelis (abl. of time): see Bk. ii. ch. 25; Bk. iii. ch. 5.
181 17 consequuntur hunc: as primus pilus, he had authority to command all other centurions; although generally, as here, he really only formed a rallying point.

See chapter on military affairs, I. 7.
181 19 relinquit animus, his breath (or consciousness) fails him (he faints).
181 20 per manus traditus, passed along from hand to hand by his comrades.—hoc spatio: i.e. the time gained by this short resistance.
181 25 Chap. 39. hic: i.e. in the open field.
181 26 modo... expectant: the Roman discipline was so perfect that, in general, every man knew just what to do in any emergency (as in the fight with the Nervii, Bk. ii. ch. 21); but these new levies (see 176 24–27) were helpless till the exact order had been given, even the boldest of them (nemo est tam fortis, etc.).
182 2 legiones: those of Cæsar and his legati; see ch. 33.
182 4 paucitate: i.e. five cohorts and the 300 convalescent veterans.
182 6 Chap. 40. in signa manipulosque, among the cohorts and maniples. In their panic the servants rushed among the ranks of the cohorts (signa) and the maniples.
182 7 alii...alii: these seem to have had some presence of mind, as is implied in the expression censent, the regular expression for voting in a public assembly.
182 8 quoniam . . . sint, since [as they say], etc.
182 10 [confidunt]: may be omitted in translation, the infin. posse depending on the idea of saying involved in consent. — alii: sc. consent.
182 11 hoc: the latter counsel, which was that of the raw recruits. — duciimus: cf. 180 13-15.
182 13 C. Trebonio: this can hardly be the man referred to in ch. 33. He was away with the three legions intrusted to him, as there recorded.
183 2 militum virtute: i.e. of the infantry; the cavalry, it will be remembered, were not Romans, but Gauls and other allies.
183 3 nullo usu percepto, having gained no experience; i.e. even after seeing the successful action of the veterans.
183 4 eo consilio: with ut . . . defenderent in app.—permanere: compl. infin. with potuerunt.
183 5 quam: the antecedent is eam vim celeritatemque.
183 7 demiserunt: se has already been expressed with recipere.
183 8 ex inferioribus ordinibus: the officers of a new legion were usually obtained in this way, being promoted from the lower grades of veteran cohorts.
183 10 ne ante partam, etc.: notice again the esprit de corps of the Roman soldier; cf. 109 1-9, 142 7-11, 146 13 ff.
183 13 pars periiit: two cohorts; see 184 26.
183 16 Chap. 41. constitisse, etc., had now gained a position.
183 17 praeda: see 179 26.
183 20 fidem non faceret, could not make them believe.
183 22 alienata mente, beside themselves with terror.—deletis . . . recepisse: after dicerent.
183 23 neque: the negative belonging with oppugnaturos fuisse is, as often in Latin, combined with the general connective of the sentence. — incolumi exercitu (abl. abs. denoting condition), in case the army were safe.
183 24 oppugnaturos fuisse: the regular form in indir. disc. for oppugnavissent, a contrary-to-fact apodosis.

"Brave as they were, the Roman soldiers seem to have been curiously liable to panics of this kind. The faith with which they relied upon their general avenged itself through the completeness with which they were accustomed to depend upon him. He returned on the day which he had fixed, and not unnaturally was displeased at the disregard of his orders. He did not, or does not in his Commentaries, professedly blame Cicero. But the Cicerones perhaps resented the loss of confidence which one of them had brought upon himself. Quintus Cicero cooled in his zeal, and afterwards amused the leisure of his winter quarters with composing worthless dramas." — Froude’s "Cæsar."
183 26 Chap. 42. eventus (acc. plur.) belli, the fortune of war (in general).— unmum, only one thing.

183 28 casui: dat. with reliquii. — reliquii debuisse: § 486. a (288. a); B. 270. 2; H. 618. 2 (537. 1); H-B. 582. 3. a. ftm. 2; as usual added without any other word of saying beyond that involved in questus.

183 29 multum fortunam . . . potuisse: cf. 175 7 ff.

184 1 avertisset: sc. fortuna.

184 2 rerum: part. gen. with maxime.— videbatur: the subj. is quod . . . obtulerunt.

184 5 beneficium: i.e. by giving him opportunity to escape. He was never captured. In honor of his splendid resistance to the invader a colossal statue has lately been erected to him at Tongres; see Fig. 83.

184 10 Chap. 43. agebatur: i.e. especially cattle.— frumenta: distinguish from frumentum.

184 11 anni tempore: it was now late in the fall, but the unfortunate people had not been able to harvest their crops.

184 13 his . . . pereundum [esse], that these must needs perish; his is dat. of agent.

184 14 in eum locum ventum est, matters were brought to such a pass, i.e. they were so close upon him.

184 16 ut ([non] omit) . . . contenderent, that prisoners who were brought in looked round among their number for Ambiorix, whom they had just seen in flight— supposing that he must have been taken also — and insisted that he was not yet quite out of sight.

184 20 paene . . . vincerent: i.e. almost surpassed the bounds of nature in their eagerness.

184 21 summam felicitatem: i.e. complete success.— atque: almost equals but.

184 22 eriperet, peteret: in the same construction as the preceding verbs depending on ut.

184 26 Chap. 44. damno: abl. of manner. The reference is to those killed by the German raid, chs. 37-40.

184 27 coniuratione: see chs. 3 and 4.

185 1 more maiorum: the ancient Roman mode of punishment was to flog the criminal to death, after which he was beheaded, — an extraordinary sentence to pronounce on a prisoner of war. It was this mode of punishment that was symbolized directly by the lictors' fasces. Concerted resistance (coniuration) had come to be regarded as a flagrant crime, and its penalty was more and more bloody as time went on — as we see in the two succeeding Books.

185 2 aqua . . . interdixisset: i.e. banished them, forbade them to return to Gaul.
Book Seventh. — B.C. 52.

War of Vercingetorix. — The last three campaigns had been conducted wholly in the north, with a view either to crush the bolder and more restless northern populations, or to overawe the more barbarous Britons and Germans beyond the frontier. It is not quite clear why the discontented spirits of the south did not seize the occasion to join forces with the formidable Belgian revolt. At all events, they seemed quiet and submissive after their defeats in the earlier campaigns, and might have continued so but for the execution of Acco (Bk. vi. ch. 44), which had aroused the spirit of all the Gallic nobility, and the news from Rome, where the hostile aristocracy had long been waiting for some opportunity to check Cæsar in his career of conquest and call him home.

This opportunity seemed to offer in the disorders which followed the death of Clodius. Clodius was a bully and professional politician belonging to the popular party, a bitter enemy of Cicero, whom he had succeeded, a few years before, in driving into exile. He was killed in a street brawl on the 20th of January of this year by Milo, a ruffian of the senatorial or aristocratic party. For the time, all regular and orderly government was at an end, till at length Pompey was invested with dictatorial powers, and quiet was restored. The news of these events coming to Gaul gave the native leaders reasonable ground to hope that a new uprising might be successful. Their plan, it will appear, was, by a sudden movement, to cut off Cæsar’s communications with his military posts in the north, which would thus be speedily starved into surrender. This plan Cæsar foiled by striking, with his usual rapidity, through their line, and through the neutral or hostile populations of Central Gaul, and so advancing upon his assailants with the support of his legions from the north. His campaign of this year was the most fiercely contested, as well as the most important and decisive, of the entire war.

N. B. — In this book the editors have purposely abstained from grammatical comment except such as seemed necessary for the interpretation of the text, in order that the student might have one book of Cæsar’s Commentaries, and that one of the finest pieces of simple narrative in literature, to enjoy without trying to see how the words were parsed. Grammar is absolutely necessary for Latin, but there is much in Latin besides grammar. Intelligent reading presupposes that, but does not always have it uppermost.
War of Vercingetorix.

Reading References on the Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix.

Dodge’s Cæsar, chaps. 15-20.
Fowler’s Julius Cæsar, chap. 13.
Froude’s Cæsar, chap. 19.
Holmes’s Cæsar’s Conquest of Gaul, chap. 7.
Napoleon’s Cæsar, chap. 10.
Plutarch’s Lives, Cæsar.
Trollope’s Cassar, chap. 8.

186 1 Chap. i. quieta Gallia: cf. 73 3, 93 2.—in Italian: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.

186 3 Clodi: see note above.—ut...coniurarent (clause depending on senatus consulto): this was not an ordinary conscription, but a levy in mass, in which the entire population of Italy of military age took the oath. In addition, Cæsar orders a levy throughout his own province, in which were included Gallia Cisalpina, Gallia Transalpina, and Illyricum.

186 7 quod videbatur: it naturally seemed to them impossible for Cæsar to quit Italy at this crisis (urbano motu).

186 9 qui dolerent: trans. by pres. part., being indignant, etc.; the characteristic subjv. constantly has this meaning; cf. the use of cum. It approaches a causal relation, but has properly no notion of cause.—ante: adv. modifying dolerent.

186 11 principes Galliae: subj. of queruntur.—locis: loc. abl., without a prep., as usual.

186 13 Acconis: see Bk. vi. ch. 44.

186 15 qui: sc. eos, i.e. some state to begin hostilities.

187 1 capitis, of their lives; the sing. is idiomatic in Latin.

187 3 ut...intercludatur (see introductory note): depends on rationem, a plan (of campaign).

187 9 Chap. 2. Carnutes: this name is represented by Chartres.

187 12 cavere inter se, take security from each other.—ne res efferat-tur: as the exchange of hostages would be a conspicuous and public act.

187 13 conlatis, etc.: an armed or symbolically armed council seems to have been the most binding form of public ratification of concerted measures. Here the standards were gathered in a sheaf and the oath was taken by this symbol of unity.

187 15 deserantur: it seems to have needed the most solemn forms of agreement to bind the discordant and jealous Gauls.

187 19 Chap. 3. Cenabum: now Orleans, on the Loire.
187 20 negotiandi: their business was money-lending, the farming of taxes, purchase of slaves or corn, and the like. Cicero had said, some years before, that business affairs in Gaul were wholly controlled by Roman citizens.
187 21 constiterant, had settled.
187 24 maior atque inlustrior: i.e. than usual.
187 25 clamore: a sort of vocal telegraph, by which, as also by signal-fires, messages were conveyed, it is said, from towers 500 yards apart.
187 27 Cenabi: locative.
187 28 ante... vigiliam: between nine and ten at night; the sending of the message thus occupying about sixteen hours.—Arverorum: i.e. the country now called Auvergne, a region always noted for the vigor and hardihood of its people, who now became leaders in the great revolt, and furnished its dauntless chief Vercingetorix.
188 1 Chap. 4. Vercingetorix: a name or title explained as meaning "very brave lord," and well calculated (says the historian Florus) to inspire terror.
188 2 principatum, etc.: see 27 14 and last note on 21.
188 3 totius Galliae: i.e. all Celtic Gaul.
188 5 incendit: sc. eos.
188 6 prohibetur: conative present; i.e. they try to prevent him. This discouragement of the elders was of evil omen to his enterprise from the start.
188 8 Gergovia: the chief town of the Arverni, on an eminence near Clermont.
188 9 perditorum: men of ruined fortunes, desperate. This is the usual course of things and the usual accusation. The well-to-do are rarely ardent patriots. When trouble comes, they either make terms or flee to the provinces.
188 15 Senones, etc.: several of these names are preserved in the modern Sens, Paris, Poitiers, Tours, Limoges. The league included all Celtic Gaul south of the Seine and west of the loyal (or doubtful) Hædui and Bituriges, who were drawn into it later on.
188 19 imperat, he levies, with acc. and dat.
188 20 quantum armorum, how many arms.
188 21 quod (interrog.): agrees with tempus, and before what time.
188 25 necat: i.e. the offenders.
189 3 Chap. 5. Rutenos: these, as well as the Cadurci, lay between the Arverni and the Roman province. It was important, therefore, to secure them as a frontier defence.
189 6 de consilio, by the advice.
War of Vercingetorix.

189 8 qui: agrees with the persons implied in *equitatus peditatusque*; § 280. a (182. a); B. 235. b. 2. c; G. 211. r.1; H. 397 (445. 5); H-B. 325.
189 11 veritos: translate by a causal clause.
189 12 quibus id, etc., who they knew had this plan.
189 13 ipsi: i.e. the Bituriges.—id eane, etc., whether they did this for the reason which, etc.
189 15 quod (adv. acc.), because (the reason for non videtur, etc.). This is a bit which goes to show that the commentaries, notwithstanding their aim at political effect, are substantially true. Cæsar was too great a man to deceive others except when he deceived himself.
189 19 CHAP. 6. virtute = vigor. This word is in Latin often used in a vague sense equivalent to our 'thanks to' or the like.
189 21 qua . . . posset: indir. quest. following difficultate, which implies doubt.
189 23 se absent: Cæsar knew well his own influence over his army. See also introductory notes.—dimicaturas [esse]: sc. eas, i.e. the legions.
189 24 ipse, etc.: the most submissive Gauls at such a time were not to be depended upon, if they had the slightest chance to capture him. — eis: indir. obj. of committi, the subj. of which is suam salutem.
190 1 CHAP. 7. Lucterius, etc.: an officer of Vercingetorix; see 189 1. He endeavored to rouse the border tribes against the Romans, but was checked by the promptness and farsightedness of Cæsar.
190 2 Nitiobriges et Gabalos: these completed the Arvernian frontier, the Volcae and Helvii being within the limits of the Province.
190 4 Narbonem, Narbonne, the chief town of Gallia Narbonensis, founded by C. Gracchus.
190 5 antevertendum [esse] has for its subj. ut . . . proficisceretur, and is followed by the dat. consiliis.
190 7 provincialibus: a portion of the Ruteni had been incorporated in the Province.
190 14 CHAP. 8. quod . . . putabat: referring to Lucterius.
190 15 Cevenna: the pass crossing this range is about 4000 feet high.
190 16 durissimo, etc.: Pompey was put in authority February 25 (by the old calendar, which was now about six weeks ahead of the actual time); Cæsar, who left Italy directly after, probably crossed the Cevennes about the middle of January.
190 18 summō labore: "these admirable soldiers were worthy of the genius of their chief," but such men as Cæsar and Napoleon make that kind of soldiers.
190 21 singulari homini, a solitary wayfaring, to say nothing of an army.
191 1 Chap. 9. at: marks a transition as usual; translate meanwhile.

191 2 usu . . . praeeperat, had suspected would come to pass.—per causam, on the pretext (so elsewhere in Cæsar): his real motive was to join his force.

191 4 Brutum: Decimus Junius Brutus, afterward one of Cæsar's assassins. This same officer had command of the fleet in the famous battle with the Veneti; see 82 7–10.

191 6 triduo: this was a pretence, and was given out to conceal his real design.

191 8 Viennam, Vienne, a little below Lyons on the Rhone.—recentem: i.e. they were well rested and in good condition for a forced march.

191 11 hiemabant: see Bk. vi. ch. 44. His route would lie due north up the Saône along the eastern line of the Hædui. The distance of this rapid winter journey was above 300 miles.—quid: with consili.

191 12 de sua salute, affecting his own safety; opposed to any design on his forces.

191 13 reliquas, etc.: two of them were somewhere near Luxem- bourg, and six at Sens, about 140 miles apart.

191 14 prius: with quam.—unum locum: evidently Sens.

191 17 Gorgobinam: this was situated probably on the Allier, a southern confluent of the Loire.

191 18 Hæduis attribuerat: see 25 19 ff.

191 20 difficultatem: the dilemma in which Cæsar finds himself is expressed by the two parallel conditions, si . . . contineret, ne . . . deficeret, and si . . . educeret, ne . . . laboraret.

192 1 Chap. 10. stipendiariis: i.e. the Boii, who were tributaries of the Hædui.

192 2 amicis, etc., since his friends would find there was no help for them in him.

192 4 ab, in respect to his supply of corn.

192 10 Agedinci: now Sens, the chief town of the Senones.

192 12 Chap. ii. altero die, on the second day of the march.—Vellaunodunum: the position of this town is somewhat uncertain, but Cæsar apparently did not march directly towards Gorgobina, but made a detour towards the north in order to cross the Loire at Orléans.

192 13 quo, in order that.

192 15 circumvallavit: the circumvallation consisted of a line of wall and trench surrounding the town.

192 18 iter: i.e. to the relief of the Boii at Gorgobina.

192 19 qui tum primum, etc.: i.e. they had just heard of the invest-
ment of Vellaunodunum and, thinking the siege would last longer, were raising a force to defend their chief town about 120 miles off.

192 20 eam rem: i.e. the siege.
192 21 quod mitterent, to send, giving the purpose of comparabant.
192 24 in posterum: sc. diem.
192 25 militibus imperat, he orders the soldiers to prepare. The dir. obj. of imperat being a demonstrative antecedent of quae, not expressed in Latin, and in Eng. absorbed in 'what.'
192 26 contingebat, touched: i.e. led directly to. The town being on the north bank, the bridge would allow its defenders to cross to the friendly Bituriges.

193 3 desideratis quin, etc.: a loose use of the quin-construction; all, with very few exceptions, were captured.
193 5 diripit: cf. the fate of Avaricum, ch. 28.
193 8 CHAP. 12. ille: i.e. Cæsar.
193 9Noviodunum: the position is uncertain. Cæsar's march, however, was certainly to the south up the Loire. This town is to be distinguished from Noviodunum of ch. 55, a city of the Hædui.
193 11 celeritate: we may supply in Eng. a demon. as antecedent to qua.
193 20 novi aliquid consili, some new design.
193 22 omnis incolumis: see 1. 15 above; construe with receperunt, got their men all back safe to Cæsar's camp.

193 24 CHAP. 13. Germanos: this force was much superior to the Gallic cavalry, and was destined to turn the battle in Cæsar's favor at many critical times; see chs. 67, 70, 80. The tactics of the German cavalry are described 43 4 ff.
193 25 ab initio: the meaning of this is not clear. He had no German cavalry at the beginning of his campaigns. He may have obtained them after his struggle with Ariovistus.

194 2 quibus, and these (the Gallic horse).
194 3 eos (obj. of perduxerunt): i.e. the leaders in the sudden movement described above, ch. 12.
194 5 Avaricum: the modern Bourges, an important town of 40,000 inhabitants, the geographical centre of France.

195 3 CHAP. 14. longe alia ratione atque, in a way quite different from, etc.; by purely defensive or guerilla war.
195 6 anni tempore: i.e. scarcely yet spring, long before harvest; all supplies must be got from granaries or storehouses (aedificia), which might easily be destroyed.
195 8 hos omnis: i.e. hostis.
195 10 incendi: cf. the course of the Helvetians, Bk. i. ch. 5.
Notes: Cæsar.

195 11 hoc spatio: explained by quo, etc., i.e. the range of the Roman foraging parties. — [a Boia]: omit.
195 13 quorum: the antecedent is eorum.
195 15 neque interesse, and it makes no difference [he says]. — ne ... an, whether ... or.
195 19 sint receptacula, serve as retreats.
195 20 neu, and lest, sc. sint from preceding clause. — proposita, offered to be captured by the Romans. The method of warfare here advised by Vercingetorix and afterwards consistently followed by him stamps him as a general of first-rate ability. We may fitly compare Fabius Maximus harassing and weakening the army of Hannibal, and the burning of Moscow by the Russians to drive out Napoleon.

195 26 Chap. 15. urbes: Cæsar more commonly calls them oppida. Rome alone is always urbs.
196 2 solaci: part. gen. with hoc.
196 3 amissa, all they had lost (obj. of recuperaturos).
196 4 incendi, etc.: a double indir. quest., whether ... or.
196 9 flumine: the city was just above the junction of the Auron with the Yèvre.
196 12 volgi: obj. gen.; i.e. his compassion for the poor people, who would be turned out of house and home in the winter, if the town should be burned.
196 16 Chap. 16. longe, distant. — certos (cerno), regular.
196 17 in ... tempora, from hour to hour.
196 21 etsi, etc., although so far as skilful planning (ratione) could provide (against this danger), our men took the precaution of going at uncertain times and in different directions.
196 22 ut ... iretur: a clause of purpose, taking its construction from provideri, though not immediately connected with it. The verbs are used impersonally.
196 24 Chap. 17. quae ... habebat: i.e. the neck of the peninsula on which the town was situated (196 8 ff.).
196 25 intermissa, left free.— [a]: omit.
196 26 aggerem, etc.: see chapter on military affairs, VIII.

Between the Yèvre and the Auron was a plateau, some 1200 to 1600 feet high, with rather steep banks. As this plateau approached the town, it narrowed to a ridge only about 400 feet wide, with the Auron on one side and a swampy brook, the Yévrette, on the other. From the Yévrette to the Yèvre extended a morass. At a distance of about 300 feet from the city wall the ridge was intersected by a sudden depression like a trench, perhaps 50 feet deep (see plan, Fig. 90). Cæsar pitched his camp on the
plateau just back of the ridge, a little over half a mile from Avaricum. Along the ridge, right across the intersecting ravine, he built the agger.

196 alteri: the Hœdui, already wavering in their allegiance; alteri (next line): the Boii, a fragment of the defeated Helvetians (Bk. i. ch. 28).

197 ab eis: the source of vox, not the agent of audita. Notice again in this passage the invincible endurance of these soldiers.

197 ignominiae loco, in the place of (i.e. as) a disgrace.

197 Cenabi: locative.

197 parentarent = ut parentarent, the natural construction. As one might say irregularly in English, “It is better to suffer anything than not avenge our comrades,” omitting “to.”

197 Chap. 18. qui . . . consucessent: see Bk. i. ch. 48.

198 sarcinas, etc.: the regular preparation for battle.

198 Chap. 19. difficilis, hard to cross; impedita, embarrassing.

198 fiducia loci, trusting to the strength of the position.

198 [in civitatis]: omit. vada [ac saltus], fords and open spaces, where the way seemed practicable.

198 haesitantis, struggling in the mud or bushes. premerent: a purpose clause, taking its construction from sic animo parati, determined; cf. 199, where the same words take a result clause. The two constructions approach each other, but the first refers to future time, the last to present.

198 propinquitatem: i.e. the armies were separated only by the swamp. videret: the contrast is between the casual observer and the careful inspector (qui . . . perspiceret). prope, etc., on nearly equal terms; iniquitatem (next line), unfair advantage, showing that their offering battle was inanis simulatio.

198 quod . . . possent: follows indignantis, chafing that, etc.— conspectum suum, the sight of them.

199 necesse sit, etc., a victory must needs cost, with the abl. of price.

199 iniquitatis: § 352 (220); B. 208. 2. a; G. 378; H. 456 (409. ii); H-B. 342.

199 Chap. 20. proditionis: see last note.

199 discessisset and venissent refer to the action in ch. 18. imperio = imperatore.

199 non haec, etc., all these things could not [they said].

200 illum: connect with malle . . . habere.

200 ipsorum: sc. concessu.

200 persuasum [esse]: impers., that it had been recommended. qui se . . . defenderet, which was its own defence (ch. 19).
Notes: Caesar.

200 12 *fortunae* (dat.): as well as *inui* (referring to *alicuius*), to be construed with *habendam gratiam*, thanks were due.

200 16 *imperium*: the same as *regnum Galliae* above.

200 18 *quin etiam, nay even*. Distinguish carefully from *quin* introducing a neg. result. — *remittere*, is ready to resign; in dir. disc., *remitto*, I resign. — *si* = [to see] whether (indir. quest.).

200 27 *nec iam viris, etc.*, that no one any longer has sufficient strength; *viris* is from *vis*.

200 28 *posse*: sc. *quemquam*, supplied from *cuisquam*.

200 30 [Vercingetorix]: may be omitted.

201 2 *quem*: construe with *ne ... recipiat*, subj. of *provisum est*, and as it basely flees from this spot, I have provided that no state shall receive it within its boundaries.

201 4 Chap. 21. *suo more*: cf. Tacitus (Ger. 11), *si placuit sententia, frameas concuntiunt*.

201 5 *in eo, in the case of him*.

201 6 *summum*: this word is often used where we should say “a great.”

201 7 *maiore ratione*, with better generalship.

201 11 *si ... retinuissent*: in app. with *eo* (that condition).

201 14 Chap. 22. *genus*: i.e. the Gauls.

201 15 *atque ... aptissimum*: cf. Bk. iv. ch. 5; *atque* connects the descriptive gen. *summae sollertiae* and the descriptive adj. *aptissimum*.

201 16 *laqueis*, etc.: see Fig. 126.

201 17 *cum destinaverant ... reducebant*: a general condition expressing repeated action in past time; cf. 130 7.

201 19 *ferrariae*: so of the copper mines of the Aquitani; see 89 11–18.

201 25 *cotidianus agger*: i.e. the daily increase in the height of the agger. — *commissis malis, by splicing the upright timbers*; these were the high corner beams of the towers, by which they were raised in successive stages, so that each increase in the height of the Roman works was met by a corresponding increase in the height of the defences. The towers on the walls were probably connected by covered galleries, one for each story.

201 26 *apertos cuniculos ... morabantur*, etc.: this refers to the obstructions put by the Gauls in the way of the open passage ways which ran through the agger, and which the soldiers used in carrying material for its advance and completion; *morabantur* has the force of blocked or obstructed. See Figs. 92, 93, 120, and chapter on military affairs, VIII.

202 2 Chap. 23. *directae, at right angles* with the course of the wall. — *perpetuæ in longitudinem, along the whole length*.

202 4 *revinciuntur, are fastened by beams some forty feet in length, running lengthwise of the wall*.
202 5 *intervalla*: i.e. the two feet between each two of the beams in the lower tier (*ordo*).
202 7 *ut idem*, etc., *in such a way that the same space* (between the beams) *is preserved, and that the beams do not touch each other; but, placed at equal intervals, the individual beams are firmly bound together by the corresponding stones placed between them*; i.e. so alternating in the successive layers that beams rested on stone, and stone on beams.
202 11 *cum*: correlative with *tum* below.

202 15 *quadragenum*: note the distributive, forty each.

203 1 *introrsus revincta*: i.e. the beams were mortised together at some distance from the exposed ends, making it next to impossible to force them apart; see Fig. 94.

203 4 *Chap. 24.* *frigore*: it was still very early in the year, scarcely spring; see 208 10.

203 6 *latum*: as a width of over 300 feet is incredible, some have supposed that this is an error for *longum*; others, that the numeral should be *xxxx.* — *altum pedes lxxx*: it must be remembered that the height of the *agger* had to equal the depth of the ravine it crossed, and also the height of the Gallic wall. The latter may have been thirty feet.

203 11 *cuniculo*: i.e. a mine running under the *agger*. It should be remembered that the *agger* was built largely of wood.

203 13 *turrium*: the Roman towers, mounted on wheels or rollers, and here referring to those flanking the *agger*; see Figs. 43, 92, 126.

203 19 *partitis temporibus*: i.e. *in their turn.*

203 20 *reducerent*: i.e. out of reach of the fire.

203 21 *interscinderent*: i.e. they cut away the unfinished end of the *agger*, which was in flames. Thus the rest was saved.

203 25 *Chap. 25.* *pluteos*: here the high wooden bulwarks (*loricae*) protecting each story of the tower; see note on 144 2.

203 26 *nec ... animadvertabant*, and noticed that the exposed men did not readily approach to give assistance.

204 2 *accidit*, etc., *an incident occurred before my eyes, which, seem
ing worthy of record, I thought ought not to be omitted. Observe the use of the plural pronoun, the ‘editorial we,’ extremely common in Latin.

204 4 per manus traditas: i.e. his companions passed them to him to throw.

204 5 scorpione: this was a powerful cross-bow, for hurling darts or bolts; see chapter on military affairs, 1. 5 and Fig. 95.

204 18 palus: probably the watery valley of the Auron.

205 3 Chap. 26. suorum, their husbands.

205 5 quos: refers to se as well as to liberos.

205 8 quo timore: the regular Latin idiom where we should expect cujus rei timore.

205 16 Chap. 27. [intra vineas]: it would be impossible for legions to find room inside the vineae. Either legiones here refers to the storming columns, or intra vineas means within the line of the sheds, and so out of sight. Many editors omit the words altogether. — expeditis, put in fighting order.

205 18 adscendissent: informal indir. disc. for the fut. perf. of the direct.

205 22 Chap. 28. cuneatim, in a compact body; (lit. wedge-fashion) implying tactics like those of the Romans.

205 23 si qua ... veniretur, if an attack should be made from any side; [contra] may be omitted; veniretur is impersonal.

205 25 circumfundi (impers. pass.) = that men were pouring in.

205 27 continenti impetu, without stopping.

206 1 exitu: abl. of cause.

206 3 quisquam: i.e. Romanorum. — Cenabensi caede: see ch. 3.

206 10 [ut]: omit. — procul in via, etc., placing his friends and the chiefs of the states at intervals for some distance along the road, he took care that they [the fugitives] should be separated and conducted to their own people.

206 12 quae ... pars = ad eam partem ... quae and refers to the persons implied by suos, and is explained by 198 7, where it is said that the Gallic forces were arranged generatim.

206 14 Chap. 29. consolatus cohortatusque: the fall of Avaricum must have been a crushing blow to Vercingetorix, but he meets the disaster with a magnificent courage.

206 18 errare si qui = that those were mistaken who, etc.

206 19 sibi numquam placuisset: see 196 3-13.

206 23 quae ... dissentirent: i.e. the states that had not yet joined the rebellion.

206 27 effectum habere: see notes on 13 4, 40 20, 51 8.
206 28 impetrari, etc.: i.e. he had a right to ask them to proceed to fortify, etc.; notice the modesty of these words, appropriate to the great disaster just suffered.

207 5 Chap. 30. re integra, before anything had happened (see ch. 15).

207 6 ut . . . sic: correlative.

207 9 de reliquis, etc.: follows in spem, hope of, etc.

207 11 homines insuetti: an appositive expressing concession; translated by although.

207 18 Chap. 31. capere, gain over (the neutral states).

207 19 armandos vestiendosque: gerundives expressing purpose agreeing with the understood obj. [eos] of curat; cf. 11 5, 82 7.

207 21 quem: sc. numerum.

208 1 sagittarios: apparently the Gauls had trusted too much, especially during the siege, to hand-to-hand fighting.

208 6 quos conduxerat, whom he had hired; i.e. mercenaries.

208 11 Chap. 32. confecta: it was now about the end of March, or a little later. — tempore: i.e. the time was suitable for campaigning.

208 12 sive . . . sive: understand to try, or some such phrase to introduce these clauses which are treated as indir. questions.

208 15 maxime necessario tempore, in an extreme emergency.

208 23 proximo anno, the year before.

208 24 suas . . . clientelas, that each of them had his own [armed] followers (see Bk. vi. ch. 15).

208 25 quod si, but if; see second note on 40 20.

208 27 positum [esse], depended on.

209 6 Chap. 33. minus [sibi] confideret, felt itself weakest.

209 8 eis: dat. with liceret.

209 11 quos inter = eos inter quos.

209 14 atque, than, as often after alius. — oportuerit: for oportuit of the direct, implying the nonfulfilment of the duty, see § 522. a (311. c); B. 304. 3. a; G. 597. R. 3; H. 583 (511. 1. n. 3); H-B. 582. 3. a.

209 15 renuntiatum: renuntiare is the technical term for the act of a magistrate who, after an election, formally declares the result, and thus "creates" the new official. In this case one brother had declared the other elected after a sham election by an illegal convention. — vivo utroque, when both are living.

209 18 intermissis magistratibus, there being a vacancy in the magistracy; this phrase signifies that an interval occurred between the term of one magistrate and the due election of his successor. Valetiacus (208 22) had illegally appointed his brother Cotus to be his successor. The priests
promptly declared the office vacant and appointed Convictolitavis to fill the position until a regular election could again be held. In such a case at Rome (as had recently occurred twice, B.C. 55 and 52), the patrician senators appointed an interrex by virtue of the sacred authority residing in them. Cæsar here, accordingly, recognizes the likeness to a Roman precedent.

209 19 obtinere, to hold against (ob) the rival claimant. See note on 21.

209 22 Chap. 34. [his]: makes sense and may be translated.
209 25 quae = ut ea: purpose.
209 27 ducendas: cf. 206 12.
210 1 secundum flumen, along the stream (construe with duxit).
210 4 ab altera parte: Cæsar being on the right or eastern bank, Vercingetorix on the western, on which the town of Gergovia lay.
210 6 Chap. 35. e regione: see vocab.; cf. 204 5.—castris: dat. of reference.

210 9 partem: acc. of extent of time.
210 12 rescindendos: cf. 209 27.
210 14 distractis, etc.: this means that Cæsar made up two sham legions by taking cohorts from the others, so that there might appear to be six full legions as before.

210 18 perventum [esse] (impers.): i.e. that the four legions that had gone on ahead had reached their camping ground.—pars inferior: the lower end of the piles, which (being under water) was not burned or cut away, served as a support to the new bridge hastily constructed for the crossing.

210 22 magnis itineribus: see note on 8 22.
210 24 Chap. 36. quintis castris, at the fifth encampment, or end of the fifth day's march.
210 26 situ: see plan, Fig. 97.
210 27 oppugnatione, taking (it) by storm, without a formal siege.—de obsessione, etc.: i.e. he concluded not to invest it regularly until supplies had been provided.

211 5 qua despici poterat, where a view could be had from above.
211 8 seu quid, etc., in case any communication or orders should seem necessary.

211 10 quid: with animi ac virtutis (part. gen.).
211 19 collis: the so-called Roche Blanche (White Rock), at whose foot flows the only sufficient stream of water (see plan, Fig. 97). Cæsar's larger camp, it will be observed, lay toward the southeast of the town, and the smaller towards the south; while the forces of the Gauls lay on the
gentler southern slopes of the hill (measuring nearly a mile from east to west, and a third as much from north to south) on which the town was built (see ch. 46).

211 13 *quem si*, etc.: fut. condition, indir. disc.
211 14 *et . . . et*: correlatives.
211 16 *tamen*: opposed to the whole description, not to the last part merely.

211 17 *posset*: see note on 158 24. The verb is here impersonal.
211 23 *Chap. 37. demonstravimus*: see 209 17–19.
211 27 *praemium communicat*: i.e. the money from the Arverni.
211 28 *imperio natos, born for command* (dat.). — *unam*, etc., *was the only thing*, etc., though *unam* as usual agrees with the pred.

212 1 *traducta, carried over* to the patriotic party.
212 3 *beneficio, a friendly act*; i.e. deciding the magistracy in his favor. — *sic . . . obtinuerit*: i.e. this (he claimed) was only his due and not a special favor.

212 8 *vel principes, even leaders*, not mere followers or adherents.
212 11 *placuit, it was decided.* — *milibus*: this refers to the troops that Cæsar had asked for against Vercingetorix; see 209 23–25.

212 12 *ea ducenda curaret, that he should have charge of their march.*
212 13 *reliqua*: subj. of *agi*, the whole clause being the obj. of *constituunt.*

212 18 *Chap. 38. principes civitatis*: see ch. 39.
213 1 *consili res, a matter for deliberation.* — *sit*: for mood and tense, see § 524 (312); B. 307; G. 602; H. 584 (513. ii); H-B. 504. 3.
213 4 *concurrant*: § 558. a (319. d’); B. 284. 3; G. 555; H. 595. 1 (504. 3. 2); H-B. 521. 3. b.

213 8 *una* (adv.), *with him.* — *frumenti*: i.e. which these Romans were taking to Cæsar under the protection of the Hæduan guard.

213 15 *Chap. 39. genere dispari, of lower birth.*
213 16 *traditum*: here equivalent to *commendatum*, — *presented* as suited for public service.

213 17 *nominatim*, etc.: i.e. he had sent them a personal summons.

213 23 *quod . . . provideat, which he foresees will be the consequence.*
213 25 *levi momento, of light account; momentum* (from *moveo*) is strictly the weight which "moves" the balance scale.

214 3 *Chap. 40. contrahenda*: as only two legions were left behind, the camp should have been "contracted," so that these few might be equal to the task of keeping and relieving guard. The danger to which the situation exposed them is related in the next chapter, — *propter magnitudinem castrorum*, l. 26.
214 5 *fratres*: these had gone to Cæsar in advance of the Hæduan force; see 212 13. They seem to have suspected, or to have been warned, that the plot had been betrayed.

214 7 *necessario . . . labore, by the hardship of a forced march*. It is worth while to notice the frank terms on which Cæsar stands with his citizen-soldiers. This was an essential element of his success.

214 12 *quos . . . existimabant*: owing to the falsehoods of Litavicus,

212 17–20.

214 16 *quibus nefas est, for whom it is wrong*; see Bk. iii. ch. 22.

214 21 **Chap. 41.** [noctis]: if this word is authentic, it must refer to the early part of the night, for Cæsar marches back to his camp, a distance of twenty-five miles, before sunrise.

214 26 *quibus isdem*: dat. of apparent agent after *permanendum esset*. The thought is that the soldiers were so few that the same men had to do all the fighting and could not be relieved.

214 29 *tormenta*: see chapter on military affairs, i. 5.— *discessu eorum*: at the suspension of their attack when night came on; his messengers had apparently set out about midnight.

215 1 *obstruere, etc.*: these pres. infinitives show that his preparations were still going on.— *pluteos vallo addere*: to make a defence behind which the soldiers could stand while manning the wall.

215 4 *ante ortum solis, etc.*: Cæsar left his camp a little after midnight, marched twenty-five miles, gave his soldiers a rest of three hours, and marched back twenty-five miles, reaching camp before sunrise, having been away but little more than twenty-four hours; truly a remarkable display of energy.

215 9 **Chap. 42.** *levem auditionem*: see 97 6–9.— *pro re comperta, as an ascertained fact.*

215 11 *proclinatam*: "leaning forward" like a wall just ready to fall = *perilous as it was* (in itself).

215 14 *fide data, giving pledges of security.*

215 15 *idem facere*: i.e. to come out and put themselves in their power.

215 19 **Chap. 43.** *omnis eorum milites*: i.e. the contingent sent under Litavicus, ch. 38.

215 24 *suorum*: i.e. their soldiers.

215 25 *capti, etc., tempted (as they had been) by the profit of the plunder.* — *ea res*: i.e. responsibility for it.

216 2 *nihil se gravius de civitate iudicare, that he thought none the worse of the state.*

216 6 *a, away from (the neighborhood of).*
216 7 contraheret: i.e. join his forces with the four legions of Labienus, 209 26.

217 8 Chap. 44. dorsum, etc.: the hill (collis) was southwest of the town and northwest of Cæsar's smaller camp (see plan); while from it a narrow wooded ridge (dorsum), nearly level, gave easy access to the town at its western side. Most of the Gallic force had been transferred to that side from the eastern and southern defences. This left the Gallic camps and the part of the city opposite the Romans bare of defenders.

217 11 uno . . . occupato: see 211 11-21.

217 12 quin . . . viderentur: after aliter sentire ( = dubitare); cf. 213 3.

217 13 hunc: i.e. alterum collem.

217 18 Chap. 45. impedimentorum (= iumentorum) beasts of burden.

217 19 stramenta, the pack-saddles, which would prevent the animal from being ridden conveniently.

217 20 collibus (loc. abl.) circumvehi: i.e. towards the westerly side. All these movements were designed to make the Gauls fear an attack from the west or northwest. Cæsar's real design was to make a sudden dash from the south and east and surprise their camps.

217 22 easdem regiones: i.e. in the vicinity of the hill which the Gauls were fortifying.

218 5 ut contineant, etc.: i.e. the design was not to hold the camp, but simply to sweep through it by a sudden and daring raid.

218 9 ab dextra parte: i.e. from the larger camp to the east.

218 11 Chap. 46. recta regione, in a straight line.

218 12 si . . . intercederet . . . aberat: cf. § 517. c and n. 2 (308. c and n. 2); B. 304. 3. a; G. 597. 3; H. 583 (511. 1. n. 8) ; H-B. 581, 582. 3. a. n. 1.

218 13 huc, to this amount.

218 14 in longitudinem ut . . . ferebat, lengthwise of the hill.

218 16 murum: traces of this wall are still found, at some distance down the slope, parallel with the town wall.

218 17 inferiore omni, etc.: i.e. the space below the six-foot wall to the bottom of the ascent, a distance of about half a mile, was vacant; an equal space above to the city wall was filled with the Gallic encampments.

218 18 castris: the separate camps of the several Gallic states, set close together, of which three (trinis) were taken.

218 19 ad munitionem: i.e. ad murum a medio colle.

218 20 trinis: § 137. b (95. b); B. 81. 4. b; G. 97. r. 8; H. 164. 3 (174. 2. 3); H-B. 247. 1. a.

218 26 Chap. 47. legionis: with signa. Observe that Cæsar is found, as usual, with his favorite legion; cf. 36 21-25. This legion, it will
be remembered (217 25), was first stationed some distance away from the others. It seems to have returned and taken a prominent part in the assault.

218 27 reliquarum: i.e. those engaged in the assault just described.
219 3 retinebantur: conative; the officers tried to hold them back.
219 13 Avarici: see 206 3-5.
219 16 quem . . . constabat, who, it was certain, said that day in the presence of his soldiers. The subj. of constabat is quem . . . dixisse.
219 17 prius quisquam, any body before him.
219 21 Chap. 48. supra: see 217 26 ff.
219 23 oppidum . . . teneri: depends on nuntiis as a word of telling.
219 25 sub muro: i.e. below and outside of the city wall.
220 2 cursu: they had run about a mile up a steep ascent.
220 8 Chap. 49. sub infimo colle: at the foot of the hill on which was the smaller Roman camp (211 11-21), see Fig. 97 (Sextius, 1st position).—ab . . . hostium: i.e. on the Roman left; Cæsar, meanwhile, was posted considerably to the right (eastward).
220 10 hostes: translate as if the obj. of terreret.—quo . . . insequerentur: expresses the purpose of terreret.
220 11 progressus: it was rather a retreat than an advance; see plan, Fig. 97 (Leg. x, 2d position).
220 15 Chap. 50. laterae aperto, the exposed flank of the Romans; i.e. the right flank.
220 16 manus distinendae causa: i.e. to make a diversion.
220 18 insigni pactum, the signal agreed upon. The Hædui had their Gallic arms and standards, so that the mistake was a natural one, especially at such a time of excitement.
220 23 excidere, to cut away; i.e. from within, to gain his escape.
221 9 Chap. 51. aequiore loco, on more level ground, farther back from the town; see plan, Fig. 97 (Leg. x, 3d position).
221 12 locum superiorem, higher ground, in the direction of the larger camp; see plan, Fig. 97 (2d position of Sextius). The retreat was made in good order, as is shown by what immediately follows.
221 18 Chap. 52. cupiditatem, eagerness for battle.
221 22 ad Avaricum: referring to the operations in that neighborhood described in ch. 19.
221 25 quanto opere . . . tanto opere: correlatives.
222 9 Chap. 53. eadem, etc.: i.e. that the wisest course would be to join his forces with those of Labienus, in view of all the troubles that were threatening; cf. 216 4-8.
222 11 nihilò magis: Vercingetorix was far too wary and skilful to
put himself at such disadvantage. He knew that he was no match for Cæsar on level ground. A parallel might be drawn between the tactics of Vercingetorix and those of Fabius the Delayer against Hannibal.

222 12 secundo, favorable to the Romans. By this slight success and the refusal of Vercingetorix to meet him in the plain on even terms, Cæsar avoids the appearance of a compulsory retreat. Still, it is evident that Cæsar's operations against Gergovia were far from being as successful as he himself had hoped or wished. It was the only city that successfully defied his assault, and its victorius resistance must have been a great encouragement to the Gallic patriots.

222 18 Chap. 54. Viridomaro, etc.: see 213 13–17. These young Hæduan nobles had decided to desert Cæsar, and so, as soon as they reached the frontier of their country, on the east side of the Allier, they invented an excuse for leaving him.

222 21 perfidiam... habebat: see note on coactum habebat, 13 4.
222 25 discendentibus (dat.), as they were setting out.
222 26 quos et quam humilis, in what a state (lit. whom) and how humbled; shortly before Cæsar's arrival in Gaul the Sequani with the Germans as their allies had conquered the Hædui and imposed heavy conditions on them. See Bk. i. ch. 31.

223 6 mandatis: this word implies that what he has just said to them is to be repeated to their countrymen at home.

223 8 Chap. 55. Noviodunum: the modern Nevers, on the right bank of the Loire (Liger), just above its junction with the Allier (Elaver). The Noviodunum of ch. 12 is probably Sancerre.

223 14 civitatis: the Hæduan commonwealth. The status is described in the clause which follows, down to missos.

223 15 Bibracte: loc. abl.

223 19 tantum commodum: i.e. of taking the town, seizing the Roman stores, and especially of capturing the hostages, whose possession was all important to Cæsar for keeping the tribes in subjection.

223 23 deducendos: § 500. 4 (294. d); B. 337. 7. b. 2; G. 430; H. 622 (544. 2. N.2); H-B. 612. iii.

223 24 cui: indef. pron. with usui.

224 2 in provinciam: Cæsar was now on the western or further bank of the Loire, which he would thus be obliged to follow up towards its source, thence crossing over to the province. The bracketed words may be translated.

224 4 nivibus: it was still spring, perhaps about May.

224 7 Chap. 56. si esset, etc., in case (i.e. lest, he might have to risk a battle while the bridge-building was under way.
Cæsar felt that to effect a union with Labienus as soon as possible was vitally important. Depending on impediebat, Caesar felt that to effect a union with Labienus as soon as possible was vitally important. Most men would have done so, but Cæsar was a man apart, an extraordinary military genius.

To judge from the expression, these marches must have been extraordinary, considering the emergency, difficult and hazardous as it was.

By this barrier the violence of the current was checked. Another line also was stationed below the ford to catch any that were swept away.

Aulerco: this tribe was the next westerly, south of the Seine (see map, Fig. 88).

The marsh ground along the little river Essonne, which flows into the Seine on the south a little above Paris. Labienus was proceeding on the left or southerly bank of the Seine. See plan, Fig. 99.

Metiosedum (or Melodunum) Melun: here Labienus crosses to the north or right bank.

Having boats or pontoons, he would easily cross the Marne just above Paris.

Neque: connects intellegebat and cogitabat. The latter verb is here followed by two clauses of purpose. The infin. would be more usual.
VII. 56–64.  

War of Vercingetorix.  

227. 1 altera, alteram: the Bellovaci were on the north of the Seine; Camulogenus (ch. 57) was on the south.—quae civitas: the defection of this tribe might well cause Labienus uneasiness. They were a nation of warriors and could put 100,000 men in the field. When the tribes of Belgic Gaul conspired against Cæsar, the Bellovaci, because of their importance, were placed at the head of the league; see 51 11–15.

227. 4 praesidio: at Agedincum (Sens) on the other side of the Seine; see 224 23–26.

227. 6 ab animi virtute: a truly Roman quality, of which, fortunately, Labienus had a good supply.

227. 9 Chap. 60. equitibus: not cavalrymen, but unattached officers of equestrian rank (tribuni militum, comites imperatoris, etc.) put in charge each of a single vessel.

227. 15 adverso flumine: a feint, the real attack being made below.—imperat, gives orders (followed by the acc. and infin. instead of the usual ut-clause).

227. 21 Chap. 61. exercitus equitatusque: thought of as one body, hence with a sing. verb.

227. 25 tumultuari: the magno tumultu of l. 15.

227. 27 paulo infra: about four miles below.

228. 2 Omit the bracketed words.

228. 4 castrorum: the Roman camp.

228. 6 naves: i.e. the lintris of 227 16, not the ships, for they had gone the other way.

228. 22 Chap. 62. ostenderunt: sc. tribuni.

228. 27 neque potuerunt, but could not. Much of Cæsar’s success was due to the excellence of his officers. In this case, for example, Labienus does not supinely wait for Cæsar to come and extricate him from his difficulties, but by a military exploit of the first rank rescues himself and goes to the help of his chief.

229. 5 Chap. 63. circummittuntur, etc.: these are the acts of the Hœdui.

229. 7 quos Caesar, etc.: see 223 9, 22. — supplicio: i.e. by threats; cf. 188 22–28.

229. 9 rationes communicet: not simply consult, but share the direction of affairs.

229. 15 illi: i.e. the Remi (see Bk. ii. ch. 5; 154 3–5) and the Lingones.

229. 20 requirunt = recall with regret.

229. 21 summae spei, of high ambition (213 13–20).

229. 24 Chap. 64. ipse: i.e. Vercingetorix.

229. 25 huc: at Bibracte, the capital of the Hœdui.
230 2 factu: supine after perfacile; § 510 (303); B. 340. 2; G. 436; H. 635. 1 (547); H-B. 619. 1.
230 3 aequo animo, without complaint.—modo . . . corrumpant, only let them, etc.: a hortatory subjv. expressing a kind of proviso.
230 6 finitimi: see map, Fig. 2.
230 7 [ei] may be omitted.
230 9 Allobrogibus: these and the peoples mentioned in the next sentence were allies or subjects of Rome, and would look to Cæsar for protection if attacked; see 231 5 ff.—altera ex parte: as the Roman frontier was bent into an irregular curve by the line of the Cévennes, the Gauls would strike the Province in two directions, the Hædui from the north, the Ruteni, etc., from the west; see map, Fig. 2.
230 13 superiore bello: the war of eight years before, in which the Allobroges had been subdued by Pompeius (Bk. i. ch. 6).
230 16 Chap. 65. cohortium: not legionary troops, but auxiliaries levied in the Province.
230 17 L. Cæsare: a cousin of Julius, consul b.c. 64.
230 18 ad omnis, etc., were arrayed against the enemy in every quarter.
230 20 Donnotauro: a brother of Procillus (42 10); the Roman name (C. Valerius) is regularly taken in compliment to his Roman patronus (see also 17 9, 48 10-20).
230 21 muros, strongholds—not simply the walls of the oppida.
230 24 interclusis, etc.: from this we see how much Cæsar was hampered by the plan of campaign that Vercingetorix employed against him.
230 27 equites: the German cavalry were far superior to the Gallic; see 193 23 ff. and note.
230 28 inter eos proeliani: see 43 4 ff., 95 15-20.
230 29 equis: for a description of these, see 95 10-14.
231 1 [sed et]: these words should probably be omitted.
231 4 Chap. 66. equites: see 229 25.
231 6 per . . . finis: bearing from near Agedincum (where he had been joined by Labienus, ch. 62) toward the east, and so leaving the hostile Hædui to the south. This movement, checked by the attack of Vercingetorix, explains how the crisis of the campaign came to be the siege and capture of Alesia (see map, Fig. 88).
231 13 parum profici, that little advantage was gained.—reversuros [esse]: i.e. Romanos.
231 15 adoriantur: for adoriamur in dir. disc., let us charge upon them. —si pedites, etc.: the attack was to be made on the baggage train, which was guarded by cavalry.
Vercingetorix knew Caesar's weakness in this arm, and did not suspect the German reinforcement. If the infantry stopped to assist the cavalry (suis) the march would be delayed.

231 16 magis futurum, is more likely.
231 18 dignitate, etc. : i.e. the dishonor of retreat with loss of baggage.
—nam de equitibus, etc. : i.e. even the Gauls whom he was addressing could not suppose that the Roman cavalry would wish an engagement.
231 19 quin . . . audeat follows ne . . . dubitare : i.e. even they themselves would admit that, etc.
231 20 id quo . . . animo, that they (i.e. the Gauls) may do so (i.e. attack the Romans) with greater courage.
231 21 pro castris, in front of the camp, by way of defiance, to support by a demonstration the attack of the cavalry.
231 23 confirmari oportere, that they ought to bind themselves.

232 1 CHAP. 67. a primo agmine, at the front of the (Roman) line of march.

232 7 aciem converti: by a change of front, turning the line of march to a line of battle.
232 9 Germani: it is evident that the victory was due to them; cf. ch. 13.
232 10 flumen: the Vingeanne, and its tributary the Badin, about which many ornaments, weapons, etc., have been found.
232 15 Cotus, etc. : see 208 14–23, 209 12–19.
232 16 proximis comitibus: i.e. of the Haedui for chief magistrate.
232 18 quo duce, etc. (see Bk. i. ch. 31): this was seemingly another Eporedorix, not the rival of Viridomarus.

232 21 CHAP. 68. Alesiam: this famous fortress (now called Alise Ste. Reine) was on the territory lying just north of the Haeduan frontier. Its natural advantages — summed up in the succeeding chapters — are thus described:

“Alesia, like Gergovia, is on a hill sloping off all round, with steep and, in places, precipitous sides. It lies between two small rivers, both of which fall into the Brenne, and thence into the Seine. Into this peninsula, with the rivers on each side of him, Vercingetorix had thrown himself with 80,000 men. Alesia as a position was impregnable except to famine. The water supply was secure. The position was of extraordinary strength. The rivers formed natural trenches. Below the town, to the west, they ran parallel for three miles through an open alluvial plain before they reached the Brenne. In every other direction rose rocky hills of equal height with the central plateau, originally perhaps one wide tableland, through which the water had ploughed out the valley. To attack Ver-
cingetorix where he had placed himself was out of the question; but to blockade him there, to capture the leader of the insurrection and his whole army, and so in one blow make an end with it, on a survey of the situation seemed not impossible.”—Froude’s “Cæsar.” See plan, Fig. 103.

233 2 Chap. 69. loco: in app. with colle; cf. § 282. d (184. c); B. 169. 4; G. 411. 3; H. 393. 7 (363. 4. 2); H-B. 319. 1.

233 7 sub muro, etc.: this sentence is an excellent example, at the same time, both of the natural precedence of the relative in Latin and of the freedom of all real language from grammatical trammels. The student should first translate it literally thus: Under the wall, which side of the hill (i.e. the side which) faced the east, all this space the forces of the Gauls had filled, and had carried along a ditch, etc. The meaning of this is obvious, but it is not at all in accordance with our English idiom. Indeed, it is not strictly grammatical in any language. After the student has seen what it means, he should try to put it into some form that is allowable in English idiom, say: Under the wall, the side... all this space the forces... and had made there, etc.

233 10 munitionis: Cæsar constructed a line of contravallation; i.e. a series of works entirely surrounding the town, so as to resist a sortie.

233 11 milia: acc. of extent; tenebat having here the force of pertinebat.—castra, etc.: in the remains of these works traces have been found of four infantry and four cavalry camps (see plan, Fig. 102).

233 13 stationes, etc.: in the daytime a mere picket-guard occupied each redoubt; at night it was necessary to station in them strong garrisons with numerous sentries (excubitoribus) on their walls.

233 18 Chap. 70. supra: i.e. l. 4.

233 19 Germanos: cf. 232 9 and note.

233 20 pro castris: these were on the high ground south of the city (see plan, Fig. 102); castris is plural, = camps.

233 23 angustioribus, too narrow, either from unskilful construction or more easily to prevent the enemy’s entrance. The gates referred to were in the stone wall (maceria); see plan.

233 24 acrius, with all the more vigor.

234 1 veniri... existimantes, thinking that an immediate attack is to be made upon them.

234 4 portas, town gates; these were closed, lest those who manned the exterior defences (the fossa and maceria) should rush into the town in a panic.

234 7 Chap. 71. perficiantur: for mood, cf. 57 20 and note.

234 11 suae, se: i.e. Vercingetorix.—neu, and not, the regular way
of continuing a negative purpose. We say 'and not'; the Romans said 'nor,' which is the real meaning of *neu.*

234 14 *ratione inita,* having made a calculation.

234 17 *opus:* i.e. the Roman works of contravallation, still unfinished.

234 21 *copias omnis:* not those that held the fortification east of the town (233 7–10), but the outlying pickets on all the other sides.

234 26 Ch. 72. *pedum viginti:* i.e. in breadth.

234 27 *directis,* vertical, the bottom (solum) being as broad as the top. The ditch was usually dug with sloping sides; the object here was (as it was probably shallow) to make it harder to cross. This was the interior line of defence against the town. — *solum:* notice the quantity of the first syllable.

235 2 [*id*] may be omitted. — *hoc consilio,* with this design, followed by the app. clauses of purpose, *ne ... possent.*

235 3 *quoniam ... ne,* that, since, etc., *not,* etc. — *esse complexus* and *cingeretur* are subjv. because integral parts of his purpose, *ne ... possent.*

235 4 *nec = et non,* as usual. — *totum opus,* the entire work, eleven miles in extent, according to 233 11.

235 6 *operi:* take with *destinatos.*

235 8 *eadem altitудine,* of equal depth. — *quarum interiorem:* i.e. the one nearer the town. — *campestribus ... locis:* loc. abl. describing the situation.

235 10 *aggerem:* here not the technical approach used in a siege, but a *bank of earth* serving as a rampart, on top of which was placed the *vallum* of stakes, twelve feet in height.

235 11 *loricam,* *pinnas:* see Bk. v. ch. 40. These were to raise higher the defence of the *vallum.* — *cervis:* stumps with roots, or trunks with branches, projecting like stags' horns. — *ad commissuras,* at the joining, i.e. the place where these *plutei* were fixed in the *agger,* which would be at their lowest part.

235 12 *pluteorum:* the *lorica* was really a series of *plutei,* arranged side by side on a wall and bound together.

235 13 *turris:* if these were ten feet wide at the base, there must have been at least 400. — *quae ... distarent:* not *which were distant* (this would be indic.), but *so placed as to be,* etc., hence subjv.

235 15 Ch. 73. *erat:* with *necessa;* its subj. is the infinitives. — *materiali:* i.e. to get timber; *ignari* would mean to get firewood.

235 16 *copiis:* Caesar had about 50,000 men.

235 20 *quo,* in order that.

235 21 *trunci arborum,* etc.: trunks of trees or very stiff boughs
were cut down; then the boughs were trimmed and sharpened at the ends, and then planted in five rows in trenches each five feet deep (quinos pedes), and perhaps one and a half feet wide.

235 24 huc ... eminebant, those boughs being sunk in these (huc, i.e. the trenches) and being securely fastened at the bottom so that they could not be torn up, projected from the ground only with their branches.

235 25 quini ... ordines: these five rows of chevaux-de-frise, intertwined so as to be continuous, covered a space perhaps twenty-five feet wide, so that, even with the help of a pole, an enemy could not easily leap over them.

235 26 quo qui intraverant, whoever entered within them; protasis of a past general condition.

235 27 cippos: i.e. boundary-stones, so called jestingly by the troops; see Fig. 103.

235 29 scrobes, little pits, with sloping sides, three feet deep, dug in eight rows, arranged, as we should say, in diamond-pattern, or as trees were planted in an orchard (in quincuncem), so that each should be equally distant from the six adjacent. A stout, sharp stake was set in each, packed with a foot depth of earth, its point projecting four inches, the pit being then loosely filled with twigs and brush. This funnel-shaped trap for man or beast the soldiers called a “lily-cup” (lilium); see Fig. 131. — paulatim ... fastigio, sloping gradually towards the bottom.

235 30 teretes, round, like a cylinder, while the word rotundus means round like a ball. — huc, in these; cf. same word in l. 24.

235 31 praeusti: to harden the point.

236 2 singuli ... exculcabantur, a foot of each [stake] was packed down with earth at the bottom.

236 7 taleae: blocks of wood or stakes with iron barbed points fixed in them. Several of these hooks have been found in excavations on this site; see Fig. 132. — totae, their whole length, so that only the hooks projected.

236 10 Chap. 74. regiones ... aequissimas: the line of circumvallation (see plan, Fig. 102) was parallel with the works just described, and distant from it about 700 feet. It was protected by a single ditch.

236 11 xiv milia: of course the works of circumvallation included all the Roman camps, and must have had a greater circuit than the inner line of contravallation (see 233 11).
VII. 73-77.  

War of Vercingetorix.  443

236 12 diversas, facing the other way.
236 14 Omit the bracketed words.
236 16 habere ... convectum: see note on compertum habere, Bk. i. ch. 44.
236 19 Chap. 75. omnis: subj. of convocandos [esse].
236 24 [Blannoviis]: this name is doubtful.
236 25 milia: dir. obj. of imperant, the datives being the indir. obj. The same construction is continued in the next sentences, where imperant is to be supplied.
237 4 The bracketed words may be omitted.
237 6 quo in numero: cf. Bk. iii. ch. 7.
237 10 crudelitatem: perhaps so in a Gaul, but in a Roman it would be constantiam.
237 12 deditionis: a mere “laying down of arms.”
237 14 animi est, etc.: the infin. clause following is in app. with ista. From the English idiom we should expect istud, but in Latin such pronouns agree with the predicate.
238 10 offerant, ferant: subjv. of characteristic.
238 14 atque, and yet. — probarem ... viderem: apodosis and protasis in a contrary-to-fact supposition; § 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579 (510); H-B. 581.
238 18 tantum potest: see Vocab. — dignitas: i.e. of those who advocate making a sally.
238 19 vitae nostrae: depending on iacturam, to be supplied according to the Latin idiom.
238 21 quid animi, what heart.
238 22 propinquis, consanguineis: dat. of poss. after fore.
238 27 pro sternere, subicere: connected by nec with exspoliare.
239 2 animi causa, for the pleasure of it.— illorum: the Gauls; his:
the Romans.— exerceri, are toiling.
239 4 testibus, as witnesses, pred. app.
239 6 consili: pred. gen.— facere: sc. meum consilium est, from the
preceding.
239 7 Cimbrorum: see note on 7 1. They did great damage in laying
waste Gaul and Spain before they turned to Italy.
239 12 pulcherrimum: in pred. agreement with the two preceding
infinitives.— quid, etc., what was there in that war like this?
239 17 quos: the antecedent is horum.
239 21 finitimam: "over the border,"— the Province.
239 22 securibus: the lictor's axes, the sign not simply of military
rule, but of bloody execution (as a servile insurrection would be revenged).
239 27 Chap. 78. illo: observe the emphasis.— potius, with quam.
— utendum [esse]: impers., governing the abl.; § 500. 3 (294. c. N.); B.
337. 7. b. 1; G. 427. N. 4; H. 623. 1 (544. N. 5); H-B. 600. 3. a.
240 4 prohibebat: one of the cruel necessities of war. The wretched
creatures must have perished miserably between the city walls and the
Roman lines.
240 7 Chap. 79. colle: this hill is southwest from Alesia, beyond the
Brenne; see plan, Fig. 102.
240 10 demonstravimus: see 233 4.
240 13 concurrunt: i.e. the Gauls in Alesia.
240 16 fossam: see 234 26 ff., and plan, Fig. 102.
240 23 Chap. 80. Galli, etc.: the Gauls here adopt the German
cavalry tactics; see Bk. i. ch. 26.
240 26 complures: i.e. of the Roman cavalry.
241 5 neque . . . ac, etc. (perhaps a misreading for neque . . . nec),
and because neither a brave nor a cowardly action, etc.
241 8 Germani: for the fourth time in this campaign the Germans
decide the day for Cæsar; cf. 232 9 and note.
241 12 at: what is its force here? Cf. 240 4, 238 1, and note.
242 3 Chap. 81. atque, and even.
242 4 harpagonum: iron hooks fastened to poles, for tearing down
the defences; see Fig. 126.
242 5 campestris munitiones: the works in the plain; i.e. the line
of circumvallation in the Plain of the Laumes, southwest from Alesia; see
plan, Fig. 102.
VII. 77–86. War of Vercingetorix.

242 6 *qua = ut ea*: introducing a clause of purpose.
242 8 *cratis, hurdles* of woven twigs, to cover the trenches.
242 13 *fundis librilibus*: heavy stones fastened to a thong, by which they were hurled with great force.
242 14 *glandibus*: leaden bullets.
242 18 *his auxilio*: two datives.
242 19 *deductos*: sc. *milites*. The thought is that men were withdrawn from the more distant redoubts to defend those that were in greatest danger.

242 22 *Chap. 82. stimulis*: cf. 236 7–9.— *scrobis*: cf. 235 28 ff.
242 23 *pilis muralibus*: large darts perhaps hurled by the engines.
242 26 *superioribus*: on the higher ground to the north and south (see next chapter).

242 29 *fossas*: this word should probably be *fossam*. It seems to refer to the ditch twenty feet wide; see 234 26 ff. and plan.— *explent*: coördinate with *proferunt*.

243 6 *Chap. 83. collis*: see plan; the camp of these two legions was on the southern slope of Mont Rea.
243 13 *quoque pacto, and in what manner*.
243 15 *Vercassivellaunum*: see 237 23–25.
243 29 *Chap. 84. multum valet, tends greatly*.

244 1 *quod . . . constare*: as the attack is both from without and within, the Romans in their fortifications have enemies both in front and in the rear, and the shouting of those in their rear tends to disconcert them. As they face the enemy they feel that their safety depends on the valor of those who are defending their rear.

244 4 *Chap. 85. idoneum locum*: i.e. where he can see everything.
244 5 *utrisque, etc.*, the thought is present to the minds of both parties that this is the time of all others best suited for the greatest exertion.
244 8 *si rem obtinuerint, if they (shall) gain the day*.
244 11 *iniquum . . . fastigium*, the unfavorable downward slope of the ground (see 243 8). The Romans always aimed to have their camp where no higher ground could command it.

244 13 *agger*: i.e. earth, stones, or anything else handy.
244 15 *occultaverant*: i.e. the *stimuli, scrobes*, etc., described in ch. 73.
244 17 *Chap. 86. Labienum*: he was encamped on the heights of Bussy. See plan.

244 19 *deductis . . . pugnet*, to draw off his cohorts and make a sally.
244 22 *interiores*: i.e. the Gauls within the town.
244 23 *loca praerupta*: probably the Heights of Flavigny.
244 24 *[ex]*: may be omitted.
Notes: Caesar.

244 26 vallum ac lorica: see 235 10 ff.

245 1 Chap. 87. integros: i.e. troops that had not yet been engaged. The cohorts of Brutus and Fabius were probably of those that had been defending the works in the plain.

245 2 eo, etc.: i.e. to the works on Mont Rea.

245 10 Chap. 88. ex colore: the purple or scarlet paludamentum. The bracketed words may be omitted.

245 12 de locis superioribus, from the high ground occupied by the Gauls.

245 13 declivia, the downward slopes.—cernebantur, were in plain sight.

245 14 excipit clamor: i.e. the shout of the combatants is taken up and re-echoed all along the lines. Notice the vividness and power of the following description, the short quick sentences, the absence of connectives, and the rapidity of the whole.

245 16 equitatus: who had been sent for that purpose as told above.

245 22 conspiciati: agrees with the subj. of reducunt; sc. Galli.

245 24 quod: lit. as to which, referring to the preceding sentence; § 397. a (240. b); B. 185. 2; G. 610. r; H. 510. 9 (453. 6); cf. H-B. 388. a. n.; translate and.

245 25 crebris subsidii, constant service in relief parties.

246 8 Chap. 89. Vercingetorix deditur: the fate reserved for this gallant and ill-fated chieftain was to be kept for six years in chains, and then, after being led in Cæsar's triumphal procession, to be put to death. Plutarch in his "Life of Cæsar" describes the surrender as follows: "Vercingetorix, who was the chief author of all the war, putting on his best armor, and adorning his horse, came out of the gate, and rode round Cæsar as he sat, then dismounted from his horse, threw off his armor, and remained sitting quietly at Cæsar's feet until he was led away to be reserved for the triumph."

246 9 si [to try], whether, indir. quest.

246 10 capita singula, one apiece.

246 17 Chap. 90. huic: i.e. Labienus.

246 25 Bibracte: loc. abl.

246 26 Cf. the close of Bks. ii and iv.

From 1862 to 1865 careful excavations were made under direction of the emperor Napoleon III on the site of the works at Alesia. The discoveries that resulted were most interesting. There were found the remains of Cæsar's four infantry camps and of his four cavalry camps. Of the twenty-three redoubts, remains of only five could be traced. It is likely that the rest were mostly of wood, so that they had crumbled entirely away.
The trench twenty feet wide remains in its entirety. Of the pits (scrobes) in which the sharp stakes were buried, more than fifty were discovered. They are all three feet deep, two feet wide at the top, and one foot wide at the bottom. Of course they do not retain the original dimensions. In the trenches were found a great number of coins, Roman and Gallic, swords, daggers, spear-heads, and the like. The result of these researches was a very striking corroboration of Cæsar’s narrative.

CLOSE OF THE CAMPAIGN.—If Cæsar was merciless in war, he was wise and humane in victory. Even in the moment of the fall of Alesia, he uses his prisoners to make terms with the more important states (si per eos, etc.). His aim was “not to enslave the Gauls, but to incorporate them in the Empire; to extend the privileges of Roman citizens among them, and among all the undegenerate races of the European provinces. He punished no one. He was gracious and considerate to all, and he so impressed the central tribes by his judgment and his moderation that they served him faithfully in all his coming troubles, and never more, even in the severest temptation, made an effort to recover their independence.”

Cæsar’s own narrative closes with the great and decisive victory at Alesia. The short remainder of the story is told by his faithful officer and friend, Hirtius Pansa, in the Eighth Book. A rising of the Carnutes and Bituriges in the west, undeterred by the fate of Avaricum, was crushed by a rapid winter march across the Loire. The Remi in the north, who alone of the Gauls had been steadily true to Rome, were attacked by the Bellovaci under Commius, but the latter were crushed in a single battle, and Commius fled to Germany. The final rally of the patriot party was made at the stronghold of Uxellodunum, on a branch of the Garonne, in the southwest; but this was also reduced by a siege of extreme difficulty, and the one act of vindictive barbarity which stains Cæsar’s record was inflicted after its fall by cutting off the hands of the desperate defenders who had held out to the last for the independence of Gaul. Cæsar then “invited the chiefs of all the tribes to come to him. He spoke to them of the future which lay open to them as members of a splendid imperial state. He gave them magnificent presents. He laid no impositions either on the leaders or their people; and they went to their homes personally devoted to their conqueror, contented with their condition, and resolved to maintain the peace which was now established,—a unique experience in political history.”
GROUPS OF RELATED WORDS.

N.B. — These lists are not intended to be exhaustive, and pupils may do well to add to them as they increase their vocabularies.

1
acer, sharp, violent.
acriter, violently.
acerb, bitter, cruel.
acerb, bitterly.
acerb ferre, take hard.
acerbitas, bitterness, suffering.
acervus, heap.
acies, sharp edge, line.
[acus, needle.]
acuo, sharpen.
acutus, sharp.

2
alacer, lively.
alacriter, promptly.
alacritas, readiness.

3
aedes, fireplace, house.
aedificium, building.
aedifico, build.
aestas, heat.
aestivus, hot.
aestus (boiling), tide.
aestuarium, tideway.

4
eaequus, even, level.
iniquus, uneven, unfavorable.
iniquitas, unfavorableness.
aequitas, fairness.
eaqualis, equal.
eaqualiter, evenly.
eaquinocium, equinox.
eaquo, equalize.
adaequo, make equal.

5
ago, drive.
actuarius, fast sailing.
agmen, line of march.
ager, field.
cogo, compel.
cogito, think.
adigo, force.
agito, pursue.
examino, weigh.

6
alo, foster.
altus, grown high.
altitudo, height.

7
alius, other.
alienus, of another.
alieno, alienate.
alias, elsewhere.
aliter, otherwise.
ale, elsewhither.
Groups of Related Words.

8
animus (breath), soul, mind.
anima, breath.
aminal, animal.
exanimis, out of breath.

9
ante, before.
antea, before.
antiquus, ancient.
antiquitus, anciently.

10
ars, art.
articulus, joint.
arma, arms.
armo, equip.
armamentum, rigging.
armatura, equipment.

11
arx, citadel.
arceo, keep off.
co-erceo, restrain.
exerceo, exercise.
exercitus, training, army.
exercitatio, exercise.

12
augeo, increase.
auctor, responsible party.
auctoritas, influence.
autumnus, harvest season.
auxillium, help.
auxiliaris, helping.
auxilior, assist.

13
cado, fall.
casus, fall, chance.
cadaver, body.
caedo, fell.
caedes, murder.

accido, befall.
accido, cut into.
concido, fall down.
concido, cut down.
incido, happen.
incido, cut into.
ocido, fall.
ocasio, occasion.

14
capio, take.
captus, capacity.
captivus, captive.
accipio, receive.
decipio, deceive.
excipio, take up.
excepto, catch up.

15
caput, head.
capillus, hair.
anceps, double-headed.
praeceps, head-foremost.

16
cerno, separate, distinguish.
certus, fixed, certain.
crimen, charge.
certe, surely.
[certo, decide by contest.]
certamen, contest.
concerto, contend.
decerno, decide.
decerto, decide by contest.
decretum, decision, decree.
discerno, decide.
discrimen, decision.

17
circum, around.
circa, circiter, about.
circinus, compasses.
circuitus, circuit.
Groups of Related Words.

colo, till.
cultus, cultivation.
cultura, cultivation, culture.
[colonus, husbandman.]
colonia, colony.
incolo, inhabit.
incola, inhabitant.

conscius, conscious.
[consciens, being conscious.]
conscientia, conscience.
conscisco, resolve.
inscius, not knowing.
insciens, unknowing.

consto, be established (stand firm).
constans, firm.
constantier, firmly.
constantia, firmness.
consisto, take a stand.
constituo, establish.

consul, consul.
consulatus, consulship.
consulo, consult.
consilium, plan.
consultum, decree.
consulto, by determination, designedly.
consulto, consult.

cresco, grow.
creber, thick.
crebro, frequently.
creo, make to grow, create.
[Ceres, goddess of growth.]

curro, run.
currus, chariot.
cursus, course.
concurro, run together.
concurus, rush.
concurso, rush together.
decurro, run down.
excursio, sally.
incurro, rush upon.
incursio, attack.
incursus, rush.
percurro, run along.
succurro, run to help.

de, down from.
desuper, from above.
deinde, then.
demum, at last (farthest down).
denique, at last.
deterior, worse.

defatiscor, give out (cf. 'busted').
defessus, tired out.
defatigo, wear out.
defatigatio, exhaustion.

dico, say.
indico, ordain.
index, informer.
indicium, information.
indico, give information.
iudex, judge.
iudicum, trial.
[vindex, avenger.]
vindico, avenge.
dictum, thing said.
dictio, pleading.
dico, adjudge.
dicio, sway ('say so').
condicio, terms.
Groups of Related Words.

27
dies, day.
diu, long, all day.
interdiu, by day.
diutinun, long continued.
diurnus, by day, daily.
diuturnus, long.
diuturnitas, length of time.
biduum, two days.
triduum, three days.

dies, day.
cotidie, every day.
cotidianus, daily.
hodie, to-day.
pridie, the day before.
postero die, the next day.
postridie, the day after.
[perendie, day after to-morrow.]
perendinus (adjective).

do, give.
dedo, give over.
deditus, devotion.
deditio, surrender.
dediticuus, surrendered.
reddo, give back.
trado, hand over.
donum, gift.
donu, present.

duo, two.
bis, twice.
bini, two apiece.
bellum, for duellum, war.
dubius, doubtful.
dubium, doubt.
dubito, doubt.
dubitatio, doubt.
duplex, double.
duplico, double.

31
emo (take), buy.
eximus, exceptional.
exemplum, specimen.

32
equus, horse.
eques, horsemann.
equester, of cavalry.
equitatus, cavalry.
[equito], ride.
adequito, ride up.
perequito, ride over.

33
ex, out.
exter, outer.
extra, outside.
extremus, last.

34
facio, make, do.
beneficus, well doing, beneficent.
facilis, easy (to do).
facultas, facility.
difficilis, difficult.
difficilus, difficult.
difficultat, difficulty.
difficuler, with difficulty.
factio, employment, party.
facies, face (the 'make').
factum, deed.
facinus, deed (usually evil).
artifex, artist.
conficio, make up.
perficio, accomplish.

35
fides, faith.
fidelis, faithful.
perfidus, faithless.
perfidia, perfidy.
Groups of Related Words.

fiducia, confidence.
foedus, treaty.
infidelis, unfaithful.
confido, trust.

finis, bound, boundary.
fines, country.
finio, set bounds.
finitimus, neighboring.
adfinis, connection.
adfinitas, connection (by marriage).
confinis, adjacent.
confinium, neighborhood.
definio, set limits, fix.

fors, chance.
fortuito, accidentally.
fortuna, fortune.
fortunatus, fortunate.

fructus, enjoyment.
fructuosus, fruitful.
frugis, grain.
frumentum, grain.
frumentor, forage.
frumentatio, foraging.
frumentarius, of grain.

fugio, fly.
fuga, flight.
fugo, put to flight.
fugitivus, a runaway.
effugio, escape.
perfuga, refugee.
perfugio, escape to.
perfugium, refuge.
profugio, flee forth.
refugio, run away.

gero, carry, carry on.
res gestae, exploits.
[aggero, heap up.]
agger, earthworks.
congero, heap together.
suggestus, raised mouna.

iacio, throw.
iaculum, javelin.
iaceo, lie.
actura, loss.
lacto, toss about.

is, this.
item, likewise.
ita, so.
itaque, therefore.
iterum, again.
ident, the same.
ideo, therefore.
ipse, himself.
eo, thither.
ea, that way.

iubeo, order.
iussu, by order.
iniiussu, without orders.

ius, right.
iudex, judge.
judicium, judgment.
judico, judge.
adiudico, assign.
deiudiico, decide (between).
iniiuria, wrong.
iustus, just.
iustitia, justice.
iuro, swear.
Groups of Related Words.

coniuro, conspire.
coniuratio, conspiracy.

45
[lego, choose.]
legio, levy, legion.
delectus, levy.
legionarius, soldier.
lex, law.
[lego, assign by law.]
legatus, lieutenant.
legatio, embassy.
deligo, select.
diligo, love.
tellego, understand.

46
[libet], it pleases.
libenter, willingly.
liber, free.
liberi, children.
libertas, freedom.
literalis, generous.
literaliter, generously.
literalitas, generosity.
liero, set free.

47
mane, in the morning.
maturus, early, ripe.
mature, early.
mature, make haste.
maturesco, ripen.

48
memini, remember.
mens, mind.
[demens], mad.
dementia, madness.
mentio, mention.
[memor], mindful.
memoria, memory.
moneo, remind.

reminiscor, remember.
commemoro, mention.

49
moveo, move.
mutus, motion.
mobilis, mobile.
mobilter, easily.
mobilitas, mobility.
momentum, means of motion.
commuto, change.

50
nascor, be born.
natus, birth.
natalis, of birth.
nativus, native.
natura, nature.
natio, race.

51
navis, ship.
novicula, boat.
nivalis, naval.
nauta, sailor.
nauticus, of a sailor.
navigo, sail.
navigium, vessel.
navigatio, voyage.

52
usco, learn.
novi, be acquainted with.
notus, known.
notitia, acquaintance.
ignotus, unknown.
nobilis, famous.
ignobilis, ignoble.
nobilitas, nobility.
nomen, name.
nomino, name.
nominatim, by name.
ignominia, disgrace.
Groups of Related Words.

cognosco, investigate.
ignosco, pardon.

53
nuntius, messenger, news.
nuntio, announce.
denuntio, warn.
enuntio, report.
renuntio, bring back word.
pronuntio, make known.

54
obses, hostage.
obsideo, blockade.
obsidio, blockade.
obessio, blockade.

55
[Ops], goddess of abundance.
opes, resources.
copia, abundance.
copiae, resources.
copiosus, well supplied.
inops, poor.
inopia, want.

56
[paciscor, agree.]
pango, join.
pactum, agreement.
pax, peace.
paco, pacify.
pacatus, subject.

57
pario, acquire.
parens, parent.
parento, sacrifice to ancestors.

58
ex-perior, try.
peritus, experienced.
periculum, danger (trial).
periculus, dangerous.
perictitor, be in peril.
aperio, open.
reperio, find.

59
paro, prepare.
impero, order.
imperium, power.
pareo, be on hand, obey.

60
parum, too little.
parvus, small.
parvulus, very small.
paucus, few.
paucitas, small number.
palus, small.
paulatim, little by little.
paulum, a little.
paululum, a very little.
paulo, a little.
paulisper, a little while.

61
[pasco, feed.]
pabulum, forage.
pabulor, forage.
pabulatio, foraging.
pabulator, forager.
pater, father.
patrius, belonging to a father.
patronus, patron, protector.
patriuus, uncle (on the father's side).

62
pes, foot.
pedes, footman (man on foot).
peditatus, infantry.
pedester, of men on foot.
pedalis, a foot long, etc.
impedio, entangle.
impedimentum, hindrance.
Groups of Related Words.

impeditus, hampered.
expedio, disentangle.
expeditus, unincumbered.
expeditio, expedition.

pleo, fill.
ple内科, fill up.
expleo, fill out.
plenus, full.
plene, fully.
plerique, most of.
plerumque, for the most part.
completus, filled up.
expletus, filled out.
plus, more.
plurimus, most.
complures, very many.

also
plebs, the populace.
populus, people.
publicus, of the people.
publice, publicly.
publico, confiscate.

porta, gate.
porto, carry.
adporto, bring in.
comporto, bring together.
deporto, carry away.
exporto, carry off.
reporto, bring back.
supporto, bring up.
transporto, carry over.
portus, harbor.
portorium, customs.

[putus], clean.
puto, clean up, reckon, think.
[purus, clean.]
Groups of Related Words.

sacerdos, priest.
sacramentum, oath.
sacrificium, sacrifice.

secio, cut.
sectio, a cutting, a lot.
sectura, mine.
securis, axe.

sequor, follow.
secundus, second.
secus, otherwise.
secius, less.
sector, pursue.
socius, companion.
societas, society.

[sero, bind.]
servus, bondman.
servio, be a slave.
servo, guard.
conservo, preserve.
servilis, servile.
servitus, slavery.
sermo, speech (connected discourse).
praesertim, especially (at the head of the row).

similis, like.
simul, at the same time.
simultas, quarrel.
simulo, pretend.
dissimulo, pretend not.
simulatio, pretence.
similitudo, likeness.
simulacrum, image.

species, appearance.
conspicio, behold.
conspexitus, sight.

conspicor, espy.
adspectus, view.
specto, gaze at.
exspecto, expect.
speculator, spy.

sto, stand.
statio, station.
statim, forthwith.
status, position.
statuo, set up.
constituo, establish.
stabilis, stable.
stabilitas, steadiness.
stabilio, make firm.

sub, under, up.
superus, above.
super, over.
superior, superior.
supero, overtop.
supra, over.
summus, supremus, highest.
summa, total.
superbus, proud.
superbe, arrogantly.

tam, so.
tamen, nevertheless.
tametsi, although.
tandem, at last.
tantus, so great.
tantulus, so little.
tantum, tantummodo, only (so much and no more).

tango, touch.
contingo, touch, happen.
Groups of Related Words.

contagio, contact.
contamino, taint.
integer, untouched, whole.
redintegro, renew.

79
tempus, time.
tempestas, weather.
tempero, control.
temperantia, self-control.

80
teneo, hold.
tener, tender.
tenuis, thin.
tenuitas, scantiness.
tenuiter, scantily.
continueo, hold together.
continens, continuous (a continent).
continenter, without stopping.
continuitaia, self-control.
continuus, continuous.
continuo, forthwith.
continuo, continue.
continuatio, continuance.

also
tendo, stretch.
tento, try.
contendo, contend.
contentio, contest.
intendo, strain.
ostendo, show.
ostentatio, ostentation.

81
[tribus, tribe.]
tribunus, tribune.
tribuo, assign.
tributum, tribute.
distribuo, distribute.
attribuo, assign.

82
utor, use.
utilis, useful.
utilitas, advantage.
usus, use.
usitor, use.
usitas, customary.

83
vertio, turn.
versus, towards.
versus, verse.
universus, all together.
verso, deal with.
versor, engage in.
averto, turn aside.
adverto, turn to.
adversus, turned towards, opposed.
adversarius, opponent.
animadverto, attend to.
converto, turn about.
reverto, turn back.
rursus, back, again.
transversus, across.

84
vetus, old.
veteranus, veteran.
inveterasco, grow old in.

85
vir, man.
virgo, maiden.
virius, manliness.
viritim, man by man.

86
volo, wish.
voluntas, will.
voluntarius, volunteer.
voltus, countenance.
voluptas, pleasure.
malo, wish more.
nolo, not wish, wish not.
ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF PROPER NAMES.

KEY TO DIACRITICAL MARKS.

ā as in fāte  ē as in mēte  ĭ as in yt  ū as in ūnite
ā "  senāte  ē "  ēvent  ō "  old  ū "  ūp
ā "  fāt  ē "  mēt  ō "  ōbey  ū "  ūr
ā "  ārm  ē "  ēr  ō "  nōt  ū "  pūl
ā "  āll  ī "  Ice  ō "  cōrk
ā "  āsk  ī "  īdea  ū "  ūse  Ÿ "  babī

C as in call  G as in go  qu as in quit
Ç "  çity  Ĝ "  cage  Ŝ "  ĭtg
Eh "  school  Ņ "  ink

All other unmarked consonants have their usual English sounds. Silent letters are italicized. Primary accents are heavy, secondary accents light.

Ac' cō  Ã nār'tēs  Är'pl nēliūs
Ad' lā tun'nūs  Ān cāl'I tēs  Ār vēr'nī
Ad' uāt'ā cá  Ān'dēg  Ėt'rē bāt'tēg
Ad' ūāt'ū čl  Ān'dī  Ėt'rī ūs
Aē mūl'I ūs  Ėn'dō cōm bō'gli ūs  āu lēr'čī
Āf'rî ċūs  Ėn tūs'tī ūs  āu lūs
Āg'ē din'cūm  Ėn tō'nī ūs  āu rūn'cū lē'jiūs
Ā le'șī ā  Ė pōl'ō  Āul'scī
Āl lō'b'rō ēg̥  Ėp'pl ūs  Ā vār'I ēn'sēg
Ām bā'rī  Ėq'ūl lē'jā  Ā vār'I cūm
Ām'bī ā'nī  Ėq'ūl tā'nī ā
Ām'bi bā'rī I  Ār'rār
Ām'bil I ā'tī  Ār'dū ēn'nā
Ām bī'ō rīx  Ārē cōm'I ćī
Ām'bī vār'ē tī  Ār'ī ē vīst'tūs  Āx'ō nā
Ām'bī vār'I tī  Ā rīst'tī ūs  Bā ēn'nīs

459
English Pronunciation of Proper Names.
Haëd'ū i
Hà ru'dëg
Hél vë'tti i
Hél'vi i
Hï bér'nî à
Hîs pâ'nî à
Hîc'ci ûs
Hî lî'rî cîm
Hîn dus'tô mây'rûs
Hîtû ûs
Hîn'nî ûs
Hîptî têr
Hînra
Hà bê'ri ûs
Hàbî è'nûs
Hà'tô brî'gi
Hèm'ô vil'cêg
Hè pön'iti i
Leû'çî
Lèv'â çî
Lèx òví i
Lí'gér
Lin'gô nêg
Listûs
Lit'û vil'cûs
Lû cã'nî ûs
Lû'çî ûs
Lûc té'ri ûs
Lû gô'tô rîx
Lû têtî á
Màg'ë tôb'ri'gâ
Mân dü'blî
Mân'dû brâ'çî ûs
Mân'li ûs
Màr'cô mân'nî
Màr'cûs
Màr'rû ûs
Màr'sû
Mà tës'cô
Mà'trô nâ
Màx'tî mûs
Më'dî ô mût'rî çî
Mël'dî
Më nàl'plî i
Mës sà'là
Më'tî ô së'dûm
Më'tî ûs
Mî nèr'vâ
Mî nûl'ô ûs
Mî'nà
Mîr'fî ni
Mîr' tô tás'gûs
Mîsâ
Mû nâ'tî ûs
Nàm mël'ûs
Nàm'nî têg
N'àn'tû à'têg
Nàr'bô
Nàs'tû à
Nëm'tê têg
Nër'vî i
Nëtî ôb'rî'gêg
Nô rë'lîô
Nô'vî ô dû'nûm
Nûl'mûs
Nû'vîô dû'nûm
Öç'tê lûm
Öç'tô dû'rûs
Öl'òvîl cô
Ôr çûn'î à
Ôr gë'tô rîz
Ô sì's'mî
Pà'dûs
Paë mân'nî
Pà rû's'lî i
Pë'tô ûs
Pë'trô cô'rî i
Pë trô'nî ûs
Pë'trô sid'i ûs
Pic'tô nêg
Pl rû's'taë
Pl'sô
Plàn'cûs
Plêu mûx'î i
Pôm pëltûs
Prô cêl'îûs
Pti a'nî i
Pû'bîl ûs
Pûl'tô
Quad râ'tûs
Quîn'tûs
Râu'râ çî
Rê'bî lûs
Rêdô nêg
Rê gû'nûs
Rê'mî
Rê'mûs
Rô'sçî ûs
Rû'fûs
Rû tê'nî
Rû'tî lûs
Sà hû'nûs
Sà'bîs
English Pronunciation of Proper Names

Săm â rô brî'vâ
Sàn'tô nêg
Sân'tô nî
Scâl'dîs
Sê dùllî ûs
Sê dù'nî
Sê dù'sî î
Sêg'înî
Sêg'î ô nàx
Sê gôn'tî á'sî
Sê gû'sî á'vî
Sêm prô'nî ûs
Sân'o nêq
Sêq'ûâ nà
Sêq'ûâ nî
Sêr tô'rî ûs
Sêr'vî ûs
Sêx'tî ûs
Sîb'û sâ'têq
Sî lá'nûs
Sîl'î ûs
Sôt î â'têq
Suês'sî ô'nêq
Suê'vî
Sû gâm'brî
Sûl'â
Sûl pîčî ûs
Târ bê'lî
Tâ'rû sâl'têq
Tàs gê'tî ûs
Tàx'î màg'û lûs
Têc tôst'â gêq
Tênc'tê rî
Têr'rá sû'dî ûs
Teû tôm'mâ tûs
Teû'tô nêq
Tîg'û rî'nî
Tî tô'nîrî ûs
Tî'tûs
Tô làl'sâ.
Tô làst'â têq
Trâns rhê nà'nî
Trè'bî ûs
Trè bônî ûs
Trêv'tê rî
Trîb'ô gêq
Trîm'ô bân'têq
Tû lîn'gi
Tûl'î ûs
Tûl'lûs
Tûr'ô nêq
Ü'bî l
Ü sîpt'ê têq
Vàc'â lûs
Và lê'rî ûs
Vàl'ê tî âl'oûs
Vàn giô nêq
Vè là'nî ûs
Vêl'î ô càs'têq
Vêl lâu'nô dù'nûm
Vêl là'vî î
Vê nêl'î
Vêntê tî
Vê nê'tî â
Vê'rê' gî
Vê'r bû'gê nûs
Vêr càs'sî vêl lâu'nûs
Vêr'çîn gêût'ô rîx
Vêrî tô
Vê'r'ô dôc'tî ûs
Vê sôn'tî ô
Vi ên'nà
Vir'dô mà'rûs
Vi rîd'o víx
Vir'ô mân'dû î
Vo cà'têq
Vôc'çî ô
Vo côn'tî î
Vôl'gàe
Vôl càm'nûs
Vôl cà'tî ûs
Vôl'ô sê'nûs
Vô rè'nûs
Vôs'ê gûs
VOCABULARY

to

CÆSAR'S GALIC WAR.

COVERING SEVEN BOOKS.
### SIGNS AND ABBREVIATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abs</td>
<td>absolute(ly).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>act</td>
<td>active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>borr</td>
<td>borrowed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cf</td>
<td>compare.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cog</td>
<td>cognate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comp</td>
<td>composition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comp., compar.</td>
<td>comparative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concr</td>
<td>concretely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decl</td>
<td>declined.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>def</td>
<td>definite, defective.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dep</td>
<td>deponent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dim., dimin.</td>
<td>diminutive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distrib</td>
<td>distributive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emph</td>
<td>emphatic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>ending.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eng</td>
<td>English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp</td>
<td>especially.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F., fem.</td>
<td>feminine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fig</td>
<td>figuratively(ly).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fr</td>
<td>from.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freq</td>
<td>frequentative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gr</td>
<td>Greek.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imp., impers</td>
<td>impersonal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inv</td>
<td>imperative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>increased</td>
<td>indicates the addition of a letter or letters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ind., indecl.</td>
<td>indeclinable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indef</td>
<td>indefinite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insep</td>
<td>inseparable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instr</td>
<td>instrumental.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inter., interro.</td>
<td>interrogative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intens</td>
<td>intensive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irr</td>
<td>irregular.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lit</td>
<td>literal(ly).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc</td>
<td>locative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m., masc.</td>
<td>masculine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neg</td>
<td>negative(ly).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>neuter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n., neut.</td>
<td>neuter (intransitive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num</td>
<td>numeral.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opp</td>
<td>opposed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orig</td>
<td>originally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p</td>
<td>present participle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass</td>
<td>passive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf</td>
<td>perfect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perh</td>
<td>perhaps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl., plur.</td>
<td>plural.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss</td>
<td>possibly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. p.</td>
<td>perfect participle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prob</td>
<td>probably.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron</td>
<td>pronoun, pronominal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reduced</td>
<td>indicates the loss of a syllable in derivation or composition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reflex</td>
<td>reflexive(ly).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel</td>
<td>relative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sc</td>
<td>supply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>singular.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sk</td>
<td>Sanskrit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>st</td>
<td>stem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subjv</td>
<td>subjunctive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subst</td>
<td>substantive(ly).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sup., superl.</td>
<td>superlative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>term</td>
<td>termination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transf</td>
<td>transferred (i.e. fr. a proper to a forced meaning).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unc</td>
<td>uncertain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
<td>verb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wh</td>
<td>which, whence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weakened</td>
<td>indicates a change of vowel.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other common abbreviations will be readily understood.

(-). A hyphen at the end of a word means that the word is a stem; between two words it means composition.

(+). A plus sign indicates derivation by means of a derivative suffix following the sign.

A root is generally given in **small capitals**.

(†). A dagger denotes a word not actually found, but assumed as having once existed.

(?). A query denotes a doubtful etymology or meaning.

**Full-faced** type in parentheses denotes other spellings or forms.

1, 2, 3, 4, refer to conjugations of verbs.
A., Aulus (wh. see).
ä, see ab.
ab (ä, abs), [akin to Eng. off, of],
adv. (in comp.). — Prep. with abl.,
away from, from (cf. ex, out of). —
Of place, with idea of motion, from:
ab Arar i iter convertere. — Of time,
ab hora quarta. — Fig., from,
with idea of motion, /r*
ab Aran iter convertere.
— Of place, with idea of motion,
ab cohortatione profectus;
temperare ab iniuriia;
tutus ab;
ab ramis {from
the branches, as
far as where
they begin).
— With expressions of measure,
off, away, at a distance of:
a milibus passuum duobus, two miles
off. — With different notion in
Eng.: ortum est ab, began with;
vacuum ab, destitute of; cap it
ini t i um a, begin at; ab tanto spatio,
so far off; ab officio discedere (for-
sake, etc.); a quibus decedere (aban-
don, etc.); gratiam inire ab, secure
gratitude from, win favor with;
postulare ab, ask of. — Esp. with
passives and similar notions, by:
accidere a Caesare (at the hands of;
showing the origin of this meaning).
— Esp. also (prob. as the place
whence the impression comes), on
the side of, on, at, on the part of:
a fronte; a tergo; ab infimo; a dextra
cornu; a re frumentaria (in,
respect to); intritus ab labore (by). —
In comp. off, away, apart; not, dis, un-
abditus, p. p. of abdo.
abdö, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [ab-do
(pul)], 3. v. a., put away, remove,
hide. — With reflex., conceal one's
self, hide. — With in and acc., hide
in, withdraw to (take refuge among),
withdraw and hide away.—abditus,
-a, -um, p. p., hidden, remote, re-
moved: abditi in tabernaculis (seclud-
ing themselves, etc.).
abdücö, -dücre, -düxi, -ductus,
[ab-duco], 3. v. a., lead away, draw
away, take away, lead off, carry away
(of persons or things which move of
themselves).
abeö, -ire -ii, -itürus, [ab-eo], irr.
v. n., go away, go off, retire, go (out
of sight or away).
abiciö, -icere, -ieci, -iectus, [ab-ia-
cio], 3. v. a., throw away, throw
down, throw (away from one's self).
abiës, -ietis, [?], f., fir or spruce
(tree or wood).
abietus, p. p. of abicio.
abiunctus, p. p. of abiungo.
abiungö, -iungere, -iünxi, -iunctus,
[ab-iungo], 3. v. a., disjoin, detach:
acclivis, -e, [ad-clivus, slope (weakened)], adj., sloping towards, rising, sloping, ascending: collis aditus.
acclivitas

acclivitas, -tatis, [acclivi- + tas], f., slope (upward), inclination, steepness.

Accō, -ōnis, [Celtic], m., one of the Senones, who stirred up his people against the Romans.

accommodatus, p. p. of accommodate.

accommodō, (adc-)āre, āvī, ātus, [accommodō- fitting, or ad-commodo], 1. v. a., fit on, fit: insignia (put on, adjust). — accommodātus, -a, -um, p. p., fitted, adapted.

accurātē, [old case-form of accuratus, done with care], adv., with care, carefully.

accurrō, -currere, -currī (-cucurrī), no p. p. [ad-curro], 3. v. n., run to, run up (on foot), rush up (on horseback), ride up.

accusō, -āre, āvī, ātus, [ad-+ causo, assign as a reason or charge], 1. v. a., accuse, blame, find fault with.

acer, -cris, -cre, [AC, sharp (cf.acus, needle)], + ris], adj., sharp. — Fig., keen, active, violent. See acriter.

acerbē [acerbus], adv., bitterly. — Fig. (of the mind), ferre inopiam (suffer severely from, etc.).

acerbitās, -tātis, [acerbō- + tas], f., bitterness. — Concrete in plur., sufferings (with a change of point of view in Eng.).

acerbus, -a, -um, [acer (treated as st.) + bus (cf. superbus)], adj., bitter (to the taste). — Fig. (to the mind), bitter, hard to bear, cruel.

acerbīrcēs, superl. of acriter.

acervus, -ī, [acer (shortened as st.) + vus], m., (pointed ?), a heap, a pile.

acēs, -ēi, [AC (sharp) + ies (cf. materies)], f., point, sharp edge, edge: oculorum (keen glance, glare).

— Esp., line, battle line, array, army (in battle array, cf. agmen), rank (of an army in several ranks): acie instructa depugnare, fight a pitched battle.

acquirō, see adquiro.

aćriter [acri- + ter], adv., sharply. — Fig., fiercely, violently, holly (of fighting), with spirit: acriter pugnatum est, a fierce battle was fought, there was hot fighting.

āctuārius, -a, -um, [actu-, movement (AG in ago) + arius], adj., fast sailing (provided with both sails and oars).

āctus, p. p. of ago.

acuō, -ure, -uī, -ūtus, [acu-, sharp (in acus, needle)], 3. v. a., sharpen.

— acūtus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., sharpened, sharp.

acūtus, p. p. of acuo.

ad [?], adv. (in comp.). — Prep. with acc. With idea of motion, to, towards, against. — Where the idea of motion is more or less obliterated, to, towards, for, at, on, against, in, near, in regard to. — Of time, till, at, on; ad diem, on the day. — With numerals, about. — Esp., deferre ad, lay before; recepti ad se (among); ad fortunam Caesari defect (Caesar lacked to complete, etc.); contendere ad occupandam (to, for), and often with the gerund or gerundive expressing purpose; ad certum pondus (up to, i.e. of); ad modum (in); commere ad, visit; ad impedimenta (by); ad auxilium.
(to give assistance); ad arbitrum (according to); proficiisci ad (for); ad unum, to a man; ad celeritatem (for, in the way of); ad speciem, for show; ad extremum, at last, finally. — In comp., to, towards, up to, up against, in, by, in addition, and the like.

a. d., see ante.

adactus, p. p. of addigō.

adaequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [adaequo-, make equal; cf. aequus], 1. v. a., make equal to: moles moenibus (make as high as). — More commonly with the verb neuter and the acc. or dat. depending on the combined idea, become equal to, equal: altitudinem muri (reach up to); cursum (keep up with).

adamō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [adamo, love], 1. v. a., take a fancy to, fall in love with, covet, become attached to.

addō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [addo (1 and 2)], 3. v. a., give to. — Also, place to, add (with acc. or absolutely).

adducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, [adduco], 3. v. a., lead to, draw to, bring in (of persons), bring, draw in (towards one), drive, force. — Fig., induce, drive.

adductus, p. p. of adduco.

addemptus, p. p. of adimo.

adeō, -ire, -iī (īvi), -itus, [ad-eō], irr. v. a. and n., go to, visit, get at, come to, come up, go to (a place), get in (to a place), advance (somewhere), attack, approach (speak with), accost: with ad, come into the presence of.

adeō [ad-eō (thither)], adv., to that point. — Less exactly, to that degree, so much so: discessisse adeo ut (so speedily that). — Still weaker, in fact, at all, exactly.

adeptus, p. p. of adipiscor.

adequitō, -āre, -āvi, no p. p., [adequo, ride, cf. eques], 1. v. a. and n., ride up, ride against, skirmish with (of cavalry).

adfectus, p. p. of adficō.

adferō (aff-), -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [ad-fero], irr. v. a., bring to, bring: litteras. — Fig., cause, bring forward, allege, report, announce: fortuna casus (bring about, give).

adficō (aff-), -ficere, -fēci, -fectus, [ad-facio], 3. v. a., do to, affect. — With acc. and abl., affect with, inflict upon, produce in, cause to, visit with, fill with. — In passive, suffer, receive, be in (a condition), be afflicted by, suffer from: beneficio adfectus, having received favors; magno dolore adfici, be greatly distressed.

adfigō (aff-), -figere, -fixi, -fixus, [ad-figo, fix, fasten], 3. v. a., fasten to (by insertion or the like).

adfingō (aff-), -fingere, -finxi, -fictus, [ad-fingo], 3. v. a., make up in addition. — Of rumors, invent more, add.

adfinītās (aff-), -tāitis, [adfini-(close to, fr. finis, boundary) + tas], F., nearness. — Esp. of relation by marriage, relationship, alliance, connection. — Concretely, a connection: adfinitatus coniuncti (marriages).

adfirmātiō (aff-), -nīs, [adfirmatio, cf. adfirmo, assert], F., assurance. — Concretely, an assertion.

adfixus (aff-), p. p. of adfixo.

adflctō (aff-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ad-
adictus (aff.), p. p. of adfligo.
adfligō (aff.), -fligere, -flīxi, -flictus, [ad-fligo], 3. v. a., dash against, dash upon, dash to the ground. Hence, overthrow, overwhelm, wreck.
adicitus (aff-), p. p. of adfligo.
adfligo (aff-), -fligere, -flīxi, -flictus, [ad-fligo].

adigo, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [ad-ago], 3. v. a., drive to, drive up (of cattle, etc.). — Less exactly, drive in, drive home (of piles), move up (of towers), shoot (of weapons). — Fig., force, bind (by oath).

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -emptus, [ad-emo, take], 3. v. a., take away (the action being looked upon as done to somebody, usually in the dat.). — Fig., destroy, cut off, spem; prospectum (intercept, cut off).
adipiscor, -ipiscī, -eptus, [ad-apiscor, lay hold of], 3. v. dep., obtain, secure: victoriam (win, gain).
aditus, -ūs, [ad-itus, cf. adeo, go to], m., approach, arrival, coming, access: defugere (contact, intercourse). — Concretely, an avenue (of approach), access (excuse for approaching), admission, means of approach, means of access, way of approach, approach (in military sense); sermonis (occasion for intercourse); ad uxorem (intercourse).
adictus, p. p. of adicio.
adividātus, p. p. of adiudico.
adidico, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-idico, cf. iudex, judge], 1. v. a., adudge, assign (by deliberation).

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, [ad-iungo], 3. v. a., join to, unite to, attach, unite with.

adiutor, -tōris, [ad-riutor, cf. adiutus, help], m., helper, assistant, abettor.
adītus, p. p. of adiuvō.
adiuvō, -iuva-, -iūvī, -iūtus, [ad- 

adiuvo, help], 1. v. a., assist, help, help on, be of advantage, be an assistance to; ad sem (encourage).

adlātus (all-), p. p. of adfero.

adliciō (all-), -licere, -lēxī, -lectus, [ad-lacio], 3. v. a., allure to, invite, entice, attract.

admāturō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-maturō, fr. maturus, early], 1. v. a., hasten: defectionem (bring to a head more quickly).

administer, -trī, [ad-minister, servant], M., servant, minister: ad sacrificia (priest, celebrant).

administrö, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-ministro, serve], 1. v. a., carry into execution, perform, execute, carry out, carry on (war), attend to (duties): imperia (give, carry out the duties of a commander).

admīrātus, p. p. of admiror.

admorr, -ārī, -ātus, [ad-mirror, wonder], 1. v. dep., be surprised, wonder at, admire. — admirandus, -a, -um, as adj., surprising. — admirātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, being surprised, wondering.

admissus, p. p. of admitto.

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [ad-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go to), let go: admissō equo, at full speed. — Fig., allow (cf. com- and per-mitto): in se facinus (commit a crime); dedecus (permit to be incurred, incur). — Also pass. without in se, be committed.

admodum [ad-modum, measure, limit], adv., to a degree. Hence, very, very much, greatly, exceedingly, so (very) much.

admoneō, -ēre, -ūī, -itus, [ad-moneō], 2. v. a., warn, urge.

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultus, [ad-olesco, grow], 3. v. n., grow up (to maturity), mature. See also adulescens.

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus, [ad-adori], 4. v. dep., (rise up against), attack, assail.

adortus, -a, -um, p. p. of adorior.

adparō (app-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-paro, make ready, cf. pareo, be on hand], 1. v. a. and n., prepare, get ready, make preparations.

adpellō (app-), -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [ad-pello, drive], 3. v. a. and n., land (ships), bring to land.

adpetō (app-), -petere, -petīvī, -petitus, [ad-peto, aim at], 3. v. a. and n., seek to gain, desire, aim at. — Abs., approach.

adplicō (app-), -plicāre, -āvī (-ui), -plicātus (-plicitus), [ad-plico, fold], 1. v. a., (bend towards). With reflex., lean against.

adportō (app-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-porto, carry], 1. v. a., bring in, bring (to some place).

adprobō (app-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-probo, esteem good, cf. probus, good], 1. v. a., approve of, agree with (an opinion or action).

adpropinquō (app-), -āre, -āvī, no p. p., [ad-propinquo, cf. propinquus, near], 1. v. n., approach, come nearer, come near.

adpulsus (app-), p. p. of adpello.

adquirō (acq-), -quirere, -quisīvī, -quisitus, [ad-quaero, seek], 3. v. a. (get in addition), acquire: aliquid (gain some advantage).
adripio (arr-), -ripere, -ripui, -rep-tus, [ad-rapio], 3. v. a., snatch up, seize.

adroganter (arr-), [adrogant- (st. of p. of adrogo, assume) + ter], adv., with presumption, presumably, with insolence.

adrogantia (arr-). -ae, [adrogant- (see preceding) + ia], f., insolence, insolent conduct, presumption.

adscendo, [ad-lescendo, approve, fr. scio], 3. v. a., attach (by formal decree).
— Less exactly, attach to (one's self), unite with (one's self).

adscidus (ass-), -a, -um, [ad-
†sidus (sed in sedeo, sit) + uus], adj., (sitting by), constant, continued, incessant.


adspectus (asp-), -us, [ad-†spectus, cf. adspicio, look at], m., a looking at. — Transf., an appearance, aspect.

adsuefaciō (ass-), -facere, -feci, -factus, [†adsueī (cf. suesco, become accustomed) -facio, make], 3. v. a., accustom, train. — Pass., be accustomed.

adsuefactus (ass-), -a, -um, p. p. of adsuefacio.

adsueścō (ass-), -suēscere, -suēvi, -suēitus, [ad-suesco, become accustomed], 3. v. a. and n., accustom, become accustomed, become wonted (of animals).

adsuētus (ass-), -a, -um, p. p. of adsuesco.

adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, [ad-sum], irr. v. n., be near, be by, be present, be at hand, be there, appear.

Aduatuca, -ae [Celtic, a fortress?], f., a fortress of the Eburones (prob. Tongres), near the Meuse.

Aduatući, -orum [Celtic], m., pl., a tribe of the Belgae (originally Germans) living on the west bank of the Meuse (later, Tongri).

aduleścēns (adol-), -entis [p. of adolesco, grow up], adj., young. — As noun, a youth, young man. — With proper names, the younger (Jr., to distinguish one from his father).

adulescentia (adol-), -ae, [adulescent- + ia], f., youth.

adulescentulus (adol-), -i, [adulescent- + ulus, dim. end.], m. (often as adj.), a mere boy, very young.

adventus, -ūs, [ad-†ventus, cf. advenio, come to], m., a coming, arrival, approach.

adversārius, -a, -um, [adversō-(reduced) + arius], adj., (turned towards), opposed. — As noun, opponent, adversary, foe, enemy.

adversus, p. p. of adverto, in various uses.

adversus, prep. with acc., see adverto.

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [ad-vero], 3. v. a., turn towards: animum (turn the attention, notice, see animadvertō), turn against, turn (to anything). — adversus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., in front, opposed, opposite, in opposition, adverse, un-
favorable, in the face of: proelium (unsuccessful); hostibus adversus occurrebant (right against, in their front); in adversum os, right in the face; flumine (up, cf. secundo); res adversae, adversity, want of success. — adversus [petrified as adv., cf. versus], prep. with acc., against.

advocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-voco], i. v. a., call (to one), summon.

advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [advolō], i. v. n., fly to, fly at. — Less exactly, of cavalry, rush at, fly at, charge upon.

aedificium, -i, [taedific- (cf. aedifico) + ium], n., building. — Esp. buildings standing singly, opposed to villages, farm houses.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [taedific- (aedes, house, fac in facio)], i. v. a., build (of houses). — Less exactly, of ships.

aeger, -grā, -grum, [?], adj., sick, disabled.

aegerrimē, superl. of aegre.

aegrē [old case-form of aeger], adv., feebly. Hence, with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely.

Aemilius, -i, [?], m., (Lucius), a Gaul, a subaltern in Caesar’s Gallic cavalry. Probably named from some Roman Aemilius from whom he had received the citizenship.

eaquālitēr [aequali- (fr. aequus, even) + ter], adv., evenly, uniformly.

aequinocētium, -i, [as if aequinoct-, indirectly fr. aequo-, equal, nox (night) + ium], n., the time of the equinox, the equinox.

aequītās, -tātis, [aequō- (even, equal) + tas], f., evenness. Hence (cf. aequus), fairness, justice. — Esp., aequitas animi, evenness of mind, contentment, resignation.

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [aequō-], i. v. a., make equal, equalize.

aequus, -a, -um, [?, perh. akin to unus, formed with -cus instead of -nus], adj., even, level, equal. Hence, fair, just, equitable. — Esp., aequus animus, equanimity, contentment, resignation; aequo animo aequus, adj., of equal success.

aerārius, -a, -um, [aer- (as st. of aes, copper) + arius], adj., (having to do with copper). — Fem. as noun, a mine.

aereus, -a, -um, [aer- (as st. of aes, copper) + eus], adj., of copper, copper (as adj.).

aes, aeris, [?], n., copper (as metal for ships, or as money). Hence, money. — Esp., alienum (debt, another man’s money).

aestās, -tātis, [st. akin to aedes (hearth) + tas], f., (heat), summer (the season for military operations).

aestimātiō, -ōnis, [aestimā- (st. of aestimo, value) + tio], f., valuation, estimation, value.

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [aestimō-, assayer], i. v. a., value, estimate. — Less exactly, regard: gravius (consider more serious, of calamities).

aestivus, -ā, -um, [taestu- (cf. aestus, heat) + ivus], adj., hot
Hence, summer (as adj.): tempus
aestuarius, -a, -um, [aestu- (cf. aestus, tide) + arius], adj., (relating to the tide).— Only in neut., as noun, creek, estuary, marsh.
aestus, -tūs, [AED (in aedes, heart) + tus], M., heat (plur. in same sense). Hence, boiling, tide.
aetās, -tāsis, [for aeōtis, fr. aevo- (st. of aevum, age) + tas], F., age (of old or young): aetate confectus, oppressed with years.
aeternus, -a, -um, [aevo- (st. of aevum, age) + ternus], adj., (relating to age), eternal, lasting.
aff-, see adff-.
Affricus, -a, -um, [Afro- (st. of Afer, African) + cus], adj., of Africa.
— Esp., sc. ventus, the S.W. wind (blowing from Africa to Italy).
Æfuisse, Æfutūrus, see absūm.
Agēdincum, -i, [Celtic], N., chief town of the Senones, on the Yonne; now Sens.
ager, agrī, [AG in ago (drive?) + rus, akin to Eng. acre], M., land (cultivated), fields, country (opposed to city), territory (country), cultivated lands, fields (as opposed to woods).
agger, -eris, [ad-ger (for ges in gero, as st.), M., (that which is carried to a place), earth (for a wall), earth of a wall, a mound of earth, a wall, a rampart, a mole, a dike (either the regular earthwork of the Romans for an entrenched camp or line of circumvallation, or the dike of approach, a long sloping mound leading up to the height of the walls):
cotidianus (daily addition to the dike or walls).

aggress- (except agger), see adgg-.
agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [agitō- (freq. of ago, put in motion)], I. v. a., drive, chase. Hence, vex, trouble.
— Fig., turn over (in mind), propose, discuss, purpose.
agmen, -minis, [AG (in ago, put in motion) + men], N., a moving, a march.— Concretely (of bodies in motion), a body in motion, a column, an army, a line (of troops in march), a train, a fleet.— Less exactly, an army (not in march). Phrases: primum (the van); novissimum (the rear); claudere (bring up the rear); conferto agmine, in close order; agmine, on the march; agmen legi- num (the main column); extremo agmine, in the rear.
agō, agere, ēgī, ēctus, [AG, put in motion], 3. v. a., drive (apparently from behind, cf. duco, lead): sub- licas (drive down); vineas, turres, etc. (set in motion, move on, advance); cuniculos (extend); ac portare (of live stock as booty, drive off).— Loosely, do (cf. “carry on”), act, treat, discuss, plead. — Phrases: conventum (hold’); gratias (render, give, express, cf. habere and referre); quid agit, what is one about?; quid agitur, what is going on?; de obse- sione agere (do anything about, en- gage in).
agricultūrā, see cultura.
alacer,-cris,-cre, [?], adj., active, eager, spirited.
alacritās,-tāsis, [alacris- (eager) + tas], F., eagerness, readiness, spirit, promptness.
ālārius, -a, -um, [alāri- (st. of
albus, -a, -um, [?], cf. Alpes], adj., white (pale, opp. to ater, cf. candidus, shining white, opp. to niger): plumbum album, tin.

alciś, -is, [Teutonic, cf. elk], F., the elk (a large beast of the deer kind, resembling the moose).

Alesia, -ae, [Gallic], F., a city of the Mandubii, west of Dijon; now Alise Ste. Reine.

aliaś [unc. case-form of alius, but cf. foras], adv., elsewhere.—Of time, at another time: alius . . . alius, now . . . now (cf. alius . . . alius).

aliēnātus, p. p. of alieno.

aliēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [alienō-, another's], I. v. a., make another's.

Also, make strange, alienate, estrange: alienata mente, in a frenzy.

aliēnus, -a, -um, [unc. st. akin to alius, other, (prob. imitated from verb-stems of 2d conj.) + nus], adj., another's, of others, other people's: fines (others'); aes (debt). Hence, strange, foreign, unfavorable (cf. suus), foreign to the purpose.—Superl., M. plur. as noun, perfect strangers.

aliō [old case-form of alius], adv., elsewhere, elsewhere (of end of motion).

aliquamdiū [aliquam-diū, cf. quam diu], adv., for some time, some time, a considerable time.

aliquandō [ali- (in alius, other) -quando, when], at some time.—

Emphatically, at last (at some time, though not before).

aliquantō, see aliquantus.

aliquantus, -a, -um, [ali- (in alius, other) -quantus, how great (cf. aliquis)], adj., considerable. — Neut., as noun, a good deal, a considerable part. — aliquantō (as abl. of measure), by considerable, considerably, a good deal.

aliquis (-quî), -qua, -quid (-quod), [ali- (in alius, other) -quis, any], indef. pron. (more forcible than quis; not universal, like quisquam), some, any. — Emph., some (considerable), any (important). — As noun, some one, any one, something, anything.

aliquot [ali- (in alius, other) -quot, how many], indecl. adj., several, some (more than one, but not conceived as many).

aliter [ali- (in alius, other) + ter], adv., otherwise, differently. — Often rendered by a noun or adjective implied in the context, aliter se habere ac, be different from what, etc.; nec aliter sentire quin, have no other idea but that.

alius, -a, -ud, [unc. root (cf. else) + ius], adj. pron., another (any one, not all), other, different, else, another (of the second of three or more). — Repeated (either in separate clauses or in same), one . . . another, one another, one one (thing), another another: alius alia causa illata, alleging different reasons; alius ex alio (from different, etc., one from one, another from another). — Esp. in a partitive use, ex alis (with superl., most of all others, cf. "the
fairest of her daughters, Eve’);
alias atque (see atque).

all-, see adl-.

Allobroges, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Celtic people (of Gaul), living between the Rhone, the Isère, the Lake of Geneva, and the Alps (in Dauphiny and Savoy). They were conquered in B.C. 121 by Fabius Maximus.

alō, alere, aluī, altus, [AL, nourish], 3. v. a., cause to grow, feed, nurse, support (supply with food), foster, raise, keep (of animals): saturam (increase).—Fig. foster, foment, feed.

Alpēs, -ium, [Celtic form, (cf. albus) + is], F. pl., the Alps, more or less loosely used of the whole mass of mountains between Italy (Cisalpine Gaul), Gaul, and Germany.

alter, -era, -erum, [AL- (in alius, other) + ter (for -terus, compar. suffix)], adj. pron., the other (of two).
—In plur., the other party.—Repeated (cf. alius), one the other, one another (of two), one...the other.
—In plur., one party...the other.
—Also, the second (of more than two), another (the second of three): dies (the second).—Also (esp. with negatives), another (beside one’s self, where all are conceived as two parties, one’s self and all the rest).

alternus, -a, -um, [alter- (as st.) + mun], adj., alternate, reciprocal, mutual, alternating.

altitūdō, -inis, [altō- (high) + tudo], F., height, depth (cf. altus), thickness (of a timber).

altus, a, -um, [p. p. of alo (nourish), as adj.] (grown high by nourishing), high.—From opposite point of view, deep.—Neut., as noun, the sea, the deep: in alto, in deep water; ex alto, from the sea.

alūta, -ae, [cf. alumen, alum], f., leather (of a fine sort, like morocco?).

amb- [akin to ambo, both], prep. only in comp., about, round about.

ambactus, -i, [prob. German], m., a retainer, a vassal.

Ambarrī, -orum, [Celtic], plur. of adj., a tribe of Gaul, on the Saône. They seem to have been clients of the Hædui, and are called Haedu Ambarri.

Ambiānī, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a Belgian tribe, whose chief town, Samarobriva, is now called from their name, Amiens.

Ambibarii, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., an Aremorican tribe living in a part of Normandy.

Ambiliātī, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a tribe on the Somme (possibly part of the preceding).

Ambiorīx, -īgis, [Celtic], m., an able prince of the Eburones. He caused a revolt of his nation against Cæsar, which was partially successful, and came near being entirely so. He caused Cæsar uneasiness for several years, and eluded every effort to capture him.

Ambivaretī (Ambila-), -orum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a Gallic tribe, dependents of the Hædui.

Ambivarītī, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a Belgic tribe on the west bank of the Meuse.
ambō, -ae, -ē (-ōrum), [akin to amb-, round about], num. adj., both (together, cf. uterque, both separately).

ämēns, -entis, [ab-mens], adj. (having the mind away), mad, crazy.

ämēntia, -ae, [ament- (mad) + ia], F., madness, frenzy, (mad) folly.

ämēntum, -i, [? unc. root + mentum], N., a thong (attached to a javelin, and wound around it to give it a twisting motion in throwing, as with rifle balls).

amicitia, -ae, [amicō- (friendly) + tia], F., friendship, friendly relations, alliance. — Opp. to hospitium, personal friendship.

amicus, -a, -um, [unc. st. fr. AM (in amo, love) + cus], adj., friendly, well disposed: praesidium (devoted).

As noun, m., a friend, an ally.

amissus, p. p. of amitto.

āmittō, -mittere, -missi, -missus, [ab-mitto], 3. v. a., let go (away), let slip, let pass. Hence, lose (esp. of military losses).

amor, -ōris, [AM (in amo, love) + or (for os)], M., love, affection.

amplē [old case-form of amplus], adv., widely, largely. — amplius, compar., farther, more, longer: amplius quingenti, five hundred and more; ne quis, ... amplius (any more); amplius obsidum (see amplius); munera amplissime missa (generous gifts).

amplificātus, p. p. of amplifico.

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [amplificō-, (amplō-) with FAC, make], 1. v. a., increase, enlarge, extend, heighten.

amplītūdō, -inis, [amplō- (large) + tudo], F., size, extent, greatness: cornuum (spread).

amplus, -a, -um, [?, perh. amb- (about) + st. akin to plus, plenus], adj. Of size and extent, lit. and fig., large, wide, great. — Esp., prominent, of consequence, splendid, noble, distinguished: munera (lavish, valuable); dimissis amplioribus copiis (the greater part of). — amplius, neut. comp. as noun (cf. plus), more, a greater number: amplius obsidum.

an, [?], conj. introducing the second member of a double question, or, or rather. — Often with the first member only implied, or: quid venirent, an speculandi causa ((or) was it).

Anartēs, -ium, [?], M. plur., a people in Dacia (Transylvania), on the river Theiss, at the eastern end of the Hercynian forest.

Ancalites, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a nation of Britain.

anceps, -cipitis, [amb-, about, ca-put, head], adj., (having a head on both sides), double-headed. — Less exactly, twofold, double: proelium (on both fronts, of an army facing in two ways).

ancora, -ae, [Gr.], F., anchor: in ancoris, at anchor.

Andēs, -ium, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul north of the Loire, in modern Anjou.

Andī, -ōrum, the same as the Andes.

Andocombogius, -i, [Celtic], M., a chief man of the Remi.

ānfraētus (āmf-), -ūs, [am(b)-,
fractus, fr. FRAQ (in frango, break), m., a bending round. Hence, a winding, a circuit, a deviation (from a straight line).

angulus, -i, [prob. ancō- (st. of ancus, bent) + lus], m., (a little hook), a corner.

angustē [old case-form of angustus], adv., narrowly, in narrow quarters (closely). — Fig., sparingly (cf. ample).

angustiae, -ārum, [angustō- (narrow) + ia], F. plur., narrowness (prop. concrete, narrow); itinerum (a narrow ἓστις); propter angustias (narrowness of the passage). — Fig., straits (difficult position, etc.), hard straits, difficulties: angustiis premi, to be hard pushed.

angustus, -a, -um, [angor (squeezing) + tua], adj., narrow, confined: angustiora castra (less extensive); angustiōre fastigio (narrowing, sloping, drawing in). — Fig., in angusto res est, the position is critical (cf. “in a tight place”).

anima, -ae, [ani- (treated as root, fr. AN, blow) + ma (f. of mus), cf. animus], f., breath. Hence, soul. — Plur., the soul (of man, abstractly).

animadvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus, (also animum admonit), [animum advertō], 3. v. a., turn the mind to, attend to: in aliquem (punish, cf. the domestic “attend to”). — Less exactly, observe, notice, learn.

animal, -ālis, [anima- + lis, N. of adj.], N., (a creature endowed with life), an animal (including man), a living creature (opp. to booty).

animus, -i, [ani- (st. as root, fr. AN, blow) + mus], m., breath, life, soul (vital). — Usually (the above meanings being appropriated to anima, wh. see), soul (as thinking, feeling), mind, feelings, feeling, intellect (but cf. mens), spirit: effeminate; levitas animi (disposition, nature, or together, want of constancy); animus relinquuit aliquem, one faints, loses consciousness; animi mollitia, want of energy or endurance; animo paratus, resolute; animum advertere (see animadverto).

Esp. (in a good sense, often in plur.), spirit, constancy, courage, resolution: confirmare (encourage any one); relinquescere; promptus; paratus ad aliquid. — Also (as opp. to mens, wh. see), the moral powers, will, desires, affections, etc., the heart, the feelings, the disposition: bono animo esse, be well disposed, be of good cheer; esse in animo aliqui, to have in mind, as a purpose; offendere or avertere (feelings); magni animi, of great ambition. — Also, animus magnus, courage, magnanimity, lofty spirit; animi magnitudo, lofty spirit; permulcere (angry spirit); mentes animosque perturbare (minds, as thinking, and hearts, as feeling, etc.); animi virtus, nobleness of soul; animi causa, for pleasure, for amusement, for fancy.

annōtinus, -a, -um, [some form of annō- (year) + tinus (cf. diutinus)], adj., last year’s, old (of ships made the year before).

annus, -i, [?] m., a year (as a point of time, as the course of the year, or as a period).
annuus, -a, -um, [annō- (year) + us], adj., annual: magistratus creator (annually).

ante, -eris, [for hanser, akin to goose], m., a goose.

ante [old case-form], adv., before (of place and time), in front: ante dictum (above, before, previously); ante habuerat (formerly, once); iam ante, already before, already; pauci ante diebus, a few days before. — Prep. with acc., before (of place or time): ante semittit (in advance of).
— In dates, ante diem (a. d.) (on such a day before). — In comp., before (of place, time, and succession).

anteā [ante ea, case-form of is], adv. (of time), before, previously, once.

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus, [ante-cedo], 3. v. n. and a. (fr. force of prep.), go forward, advance, surpass (in size, etc.), exceed, precede, go in advance of.

antecursor, -ōris, [ante-cursor, runner], m. (a forerunner). — Esp. of the army, a scout, pioneer.

antefero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [antefero], irr. v. a., place in advance, prefer. — Pass., be preferred, be the first, have the superiority.

antemna, -ae, [?], F., a yard (for sails).

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [ante-pono], 3. v. a., (place in advance, cf. antefero), think of more importance.

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [ante-verto], 3. v. a., (turn in front, cf. antepono), prefer.

antiquitūs [antiquō- + tus], adv., from ancient times, from early times.
— Less exactly, long ago, in early times, anciently.

antiquus, -a, -um, [anti- (cf. ante) + tus], adj., old (existing from early times, not so much in reference to present age as to former origin, cf. vetus), ancient.

Antītius, -ī, [antīsti- (antistēs, overseer) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Gaius Antistius Reginus, a legatus of Cæsar.

Antōnius, -ī, [?], m., a Roman family name. — Esp.: 1. Marcus, Mark Antony, the famous triumvir, a legatus of Cæsar in Gaul; also 2, his brother, Gaius, a legatus of Cæsar.

Ap., for Appius.

aperiō, -perire, -peruī, -pertus, [abperio, get off, cf. operio, cover], 4. v. a., uncover, open. — aperitus, -a, um, p. p. as adj., open, exposed, uncovered, unobstructed, unprotected: latus (the right side, not covered by the shield); collis (without trees); loca (open country); impetus maris (unbroken).

apertē [old case-form of apertus], adv., openly.

Apollō, -inis, [?], m., the son of Jupiter and Latona and twin brother of Diana, god of the sun, of divination, of poetry and music, and president of the Muses. He was also god of archery, of pestilence, and, on the other hand, of healing. He is identified by Cæsar with some Celtic divinity.

apparō, see adparo.
1. appellō, see adpello.
2. appellō (adv.), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ad-pellō, cf. compello], 1. v. a., call, name, address, call upon, style (declare one something or address in a certain character).

app-, see adp.-

Appius, -ī, [?] a Sabine word?, m., a Roman prænomen.

Apr., for Aprilis.

Aprilis, -e, [prob. akin to aperio, open], (the month which opens the ground), adj., of April.

aptus, -a, -um, [AP (in apiscor, lay hold of) + tus], adj., (fitted to), suited, adapted, fit, apt.

apud [akin to ab], prep. with acc., at, among, with, before, on one's part, in relation to (a person); in one's house (company, possession).

aqua, -ae, [?], F., water, a water-course: aqua atque igni interdicere (a form of banishment among the Romans); mensurae ex aqua, by the water-clock (a contrivance like an hour-glass for telling time by the running of water).

aquātiō, -ōnis, [aquā- (st. of aquor, fetch water) + tio], F., getting water (cf. pabulatio).

aquila, -ae, [F. of aquilus, dark gray, perh. remotely akin to aqua], F., an eagle. — Esp., the standard of the Romans, consisting of an eagle on a staff.

Aquilēia, -ae, [Aquila- + eius], F., a city of Cisalpine Gaul (Venetia), founded by a Roman colony in B.C. 182 as an outpost on the northeast.

aquilifer, -erī, [aquila-fer (reduced fr. -ferus, fer (in fero, bear) + us)], m., a standard bearer (of the eagle)

Aquitānia, -ae, [F. of adj. developed fr. Aquitanus], F., the part of Gaul between the Province, the Pyrenees, the Garonne, and the ocean (see I. 1).

Aquitānus, -a, -um, [?], adj., of Aquitania. — Plur., as noun, the people of Aquitania. — Sing., a man of Aquitania, an Aquitanian.

Arar, -aris, [?], m., the Sabine, a river of Gaul rising in the Vosges and flowing into the Rhone at Lyons.

arbiter, -tri, [ad-bito (go) + trus, cf. -trum], m., (a bystander), a witness. — Less exactly, a referee, an arbitrator.

arbitrium, -ī, [arbitrō- (umpire, judge) + ium (cf. iudicium)], n., judgment, will, pleasure (what one sees fit to do).

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, [arbitrō-, umpire, judge], 1. v. a. and n., think, suppose (judge).

arbor, -oris, [?], F., a tree.

arcessō, -sere, -sīvī, -sītus, [akin to accedo, but the exact relation uncertain], 3. v. a., summon, invite, send for (persons), call in: aliquem mercede (call in to serve for pay).

ārdeo, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsus, [prob. aridō-, dry], 2. v. n., be hot, be on fire. — Fig., be excited, be in a blaze, burn.

Arduenna, -ae, [?], F., the Arden-nes (a very large forest region in northeastern Gaul).

arduus, -a, -um, [?], adj., high, steep, difficult (of ascent).

Arecomici, -ōrum, [?], m. plur., a branch of the Volcae.

Aremoricus (Arm-), -a, -um, [Celtic are, near, and mor, the sea],
argentina, -ae, [armā- (st. of armo) + tura], F., equipment: levis armaturae Numidae (light armed, without the heavy defensive armor of the legionary).

armātus, -a, -um, p. p. of armo.

armō, āre, āavi, ātus, [armō- (st. of arma)], i. v. a., equip, arm. — Pass., arm (one's self). — armātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., armed, in arms, equipped.

Arpinēius, -i, [Arpinō- (st. of Arpinum) + eius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Gaius, a Roman knight in Caesar's army, possibly of Gallic origin, of a family enfranchised by Marius, who came from Arpinum.

arr-, see adr-.

ars, artis, [AR (fit) + tis (reduced)], F., (skill in fitting), skill, art. — Plur., the arts, the useful arts. artē [old case-form of artus], adv., × closely, tightly.

articulus, -i, [artu- (joint) + cul-], M., a little joint. — Less exactly, a joint.

artificio, -e, [artif- (artificer) + ium], N., a skilful contrivance, an artifice, a trick. Also, a trade (opp. to ars, a higher art).

artus, -a, -um, [p. p. of arceo (shut up)], as adj., tightly bound, close: silva (thick).

Arvernum, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Arverni (a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Cevennes in modern Auvergne). — M. plur., the Arverni.

arx, arcis, [arc (in arceo, shut up), + is (reduced)], F., a stronghold, a fortress, a citadel.
ascendō (ads-), -scendere, -scendi, -scēnus, [ad-scando, climb], 3. v. a. and n., climb up, climb, ascend: val- lum (mount, scale).

ascēnus (ads-), -īs [ad-īscensus, cf. ascendo], M., a climbing up, an ascent, a going up. — Conc., a way up, a means of ascent: prohibere ascensum (from climbing up).

asciscō, see adscisco.

aspectus, see adspectus.

asper, -era, -erum, [?], adj., rough, harsh. — Fig., fierce, violent.

ass-, see ads-.

at [prob. form of ad], conj., but, but yet, at least.

atque (ac), [ad-que], conj., and (generally introducing some more important idea), and even, and especially. — Also, as, than: par atque, idem atque, the same as; simul atque, as soon as; similis atque, just like; alter ac, otherwise than, different from, etc.; aliud atque, different from, etc.

Atrebās, -ātis, [Celtic], adj., Atrebian, of the Atrebates (a people of Belgic Gaul), rarely sing. of one. — Plur., the Atrebates.

Ātrius, -ī, [ātrō- (st. of ater, black) + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus, a soldier in Caesar’s army.

attexō (adt-), -texere, -texui, -textus, [ad-texo], 3. v. a., weave on, make on (by weaving).

attingō (adt-), -tingere, -tigē, -tactus, [ad-tango], 3. v. a., touch upon, touch, reach, join (of a nation’s boundaries).

attribuō (adt-), -buere, -buī, -būtus, [ad-tribuo], 3. v. a., allot to, assign.

attulī, see adfero.

auctor, -ōris, [AUG (in augeō, increase) + tor], M., a voucher (for any act or statement), an authority, an adviser: defectionis (leader); auctor esse, approve, advise; eis auctóribus, with their approval; auctore hoste, on the authority of the enemy.

auctorītās, -tātis, [auctor- (as if i-st.) + tas], F., influence, prestige, authority (not military or political, cf. imperium and potestas).

auctus, -a, -um, p. p. of augeō.

audācia, -ae, [audac-(bold') + ia], F., daring, boldness, effrontery.

audācēr, [audac-(bold') + ter], adv., with daring, boldly, fearlessly (but of an enemy): audacissime, with the greatest daring.

audāx, -ācis, [audā- (as if st. of audēo) + cus (reduced)] , adj., daring, bold. — See audacia and audācēr.

audō, audēre, ausus, [prob. avidō-, eager], 2. v. a. and n., dare, venture, risk, dare to try (or do). — ausus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, daring.

audiō, -dire, -divī, -ditus, [prob. akin to auris, ear], 4. v. a., hear, hear of. — audiēns, -entis, p. as adj., obedient (with dicto).

audītīō, -ōnis, [audī- (st. of audio) + tio], F., a hearing, hearsay, report.

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, [AUG (causative or fr. unc. noun-stem)], 2. v. a., increase, magnify, enhance, add to (something). — Pass., increase.

Aulercus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj.,
of the *Aulerci* (a widespread people of several tribes in the interior of Gaul).—Plur., the *Aulerci*.

Aulus, -i, [?], m., a Roman prænomen.

auriga, -ae, [poss. akin to auris and ago, cf. *aurea*, headstall], c., a charioteer, a driver.

auris, -is, [akin to *ear*, st. *auri* (cf. audio)], F.; an ear.

*Aurunculēius*, -i, [Aurunculē- (dim. of Auruncus, name of an Italian tribe) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., Lucius *Aurunculeius Cotta*, a legatus of Cæsar.

Auscī, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur. of adj., a tribe of Aquitania.

*ausus*, -a, -um, p. p. of *audio*.

aut [?; but cf. *autem*], conj., or (regularly exclusive, cf. *vel*).—Repeated, *either . . . or*.

*autem* [?; akin to *aut*], conj., but (the weakest degree of opposition, cf. *sed*), on the other hand, then again, now (explanatory), whereas (in slight opposition to something preceding).

*autumnus* (auct-), -i, [for *tactus*- (cf. augeo) + minus], m., *autumn* (the season of increase).

auxiliarius, -e, [auxiliō-, help (as if auxiliā) + ris], adj., *auxiliary*.—Plur. as noun, auxiliaries, auxiliary troops (not Roman legionaries).

auxilior, -āri, -ātus, [auxiliō-, help], i. v. dep., *give assistance*.

auxilium, -i, [†auxili- (akin to augeo, *increase*) +ium], N., assistance, aid, remedy, relief: extremum (the last resource); *ferre* (to assist, to aid); auxilio (as a reënforcement); quos auxili causa habebat (as auxiliaries, etc.).—Plur., auxiliaries (as opp. to the regular heavy-armed infantry); reënforcements: auxilia tardare, hinder from rendering assistance.

Avaricēnsis, -e, [Avarīcō- + ensis], adj., of *Avaricum*.—Plur., the people of *Avaricum*.

Avaricum, -i, [Celtic], N., a town of the Bituriges, now Bourges.

avāritia, -ae, [avarē- (greedy) + tia], F., covetousness, greed, avarice.

āvehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus, [ab-vehō], 3. v. a., *carry off, carry away*.

āversus, -a, -um, p. p. of *averto*.

āvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus, [ab-vertō], 3. v. a., *turn aside, turn off, push aside*.—Fig., alienate, estrange.—Āversus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *turned away*. Hence, flying, or, with a change of point of view in translation, *in the rear* (of that to which the word is applied): *ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur (by the enemy getting in their rear, etc.)*.  

avis, -is, [unc. root + is], F., a bird.  

avus, -i, [?], m., a grandfather.

Axona, -ae, [Celtic], F., a river of Gaul (now Aisne), a tributary of the Isara (*Oise*).
Bācenis, -is, [Teutonic], r., with silva, a forest of Germany between the Cherusci and the Suevi.

Bacenus, -is, [Teutonic], m., a forest of Germany between the Cherusci and the Suevi.

Baculus, -I, [baculus = baculum, staff], m., agnomen of Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Cæsar's army.

Baleāris, -e, [?], adj., Balearic (belonging to the Baleares insulae in the Mediterranean, now Ibiza, Majorca, and Minorca, famous for their slingers).

Balteus, -I, [?], m., a belt, a baldric (for the sword, passing over the shoulder, but sometimes also, a belt encircling the waist).

Balventius, -I, [?], m., a Roman gentile name, only with Titus, a centurion in Cæsar's army.

Barbarus, -a, -um, [prob. fr. imitation of unintelligible speech, cf. balbus, stammering], adj., foreign (not Greek or Latin), uncivilized, savage, barbarian, of the barbarians. — Plur., the barbarians or savages (used of the Gauls).

Basilus, -I, [?], m., agnomen of Lucius Minucius Basilus, an officer in Cæsar's army.

Batavi, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., the Batavi or Batavians, a nation occupying the region about the mouths of the Rhine.

Belgae, -arum, [?], m. plur., the Belge or Belgians, a nation occupying the northern part of Gaul. — Perh. also a small tribe of that nation with this special name.

Belgium, -I, [Belga- + ium], n., the country of the Belæc.

Bellicōsus, -a, -um, [bellicō- (of war) + osus], adj., warlike.

Bellicus, -a, -um, [bellō- (war) +cus], adj., of war, in war.

Bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [bellō-, war], i. v. n., fight, make war: studium bellandi, a passion for war.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, [?], m. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Seine, Somme, and Oise, about modern Beauvais.

Bellum, -i, [old duellum, (fr. duo), a strife between two], n., war, a war: bello persequī, etc. (in arms); bellum inferre, make war (offensive); bellum defendere, defend one's self from war; parare bellum, make warlike preparations.

Bene [old case-form of bonus, good], adv., well: bene gerere negotium, be successful in, etc.

Beneficium, -i, [benefico- (reduced) (cf. bene, FAC in facio) + ium], N., well-doing, a service, a favor, often rendered by Eng. plur., services, favors shown, services rendered: sortium beneficio, thanks to the lot; beneficio suo adductus, by gratitude for his favors.

Benevolentia, -ae, [benevolent- (cf. bene, VOL in volo) + ia], f., goodwill, kindness.

Bibracte, -is, [Celtic], n., the chief town of the Haedui (Mont Beuvray) near Autun, which was founded later.
Bibrax, -ctis, [cf. last word], f., a town of the Remi.

Bibroci, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of southeast Britain.

biduum, -i, [bi- (= dvi, akin to duo, -duum (akin to dies)], n., two days’ time, two days.

biennium, -i, [bienni- (bi, akin to duo, -annō-, year) + ium], n., two years’ time, the space of two years, two years.

Bigerriōnes, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of the Pyrenees (cf. Bigorre).

bīnī, -ae, -a, [bi- (= dvi, akin to duo) + nus], distrib. num. adv., plur., two each, two sets of, two (of things in pairs or sets).

bipartitō, [abl. of bipartitus, parted in two], adv., in two divisions: bipartito conlocatis insidiis (in two places).

bipedālis, -e, [biped- (bi-ped-, in pes, foot) + alis], adj., of two feet (in measure), two feet (long, wide, etc.).

bis [for dvis, unc. case-form of duo], adv., twice.

Biturīges, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Celtic Gaul, in two branches, Vibisci (around Bordeaux) and Cubi (around Bourges).

Boduōgnātus, -i, [Celtic], m., a leader of the Nervii.

Bōia, f. sing. of Bōii, Boia.

Bōii, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Celtic nation, of which a part occupied lands in Cisalpine Gaul, a part settled in Pannonia, and a part joined the Helvetii in their emigration.

bonitās, -tātis, [bonō- (good) + tas], f., goodness: agrorum (fertility).

bonus, -a, -um, [?], adj., good: bono animo esse, to be well disposed; optimum est, it is best; optimum iudicium facere, express so high an opinion.— Neut. as noun, good, advantage; plur., goods, property, estate.

bōs, bovis, [akin to cow], c., a bull, a cow, an ox.— Plur., cattle.

bracchium (brach-), -i, [?], n., an arm.

Brannovīces, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a division of the Aulerci living near the Hāedui.

Brannovīi (Bl-), -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Celtic tribe, dependents of the Hāedui.

Bratuspantium, -i, [Celtic], n., a fortified town of the Bellovaci, not certainly identified.

brevis, -e, [for bregus, (bragh, break) + us], adj., short (of space or time): brevi, in a short space.

brevitās, -tātis, [brevi- (short) + tas], f., shortness, short stature: brevitas temporis, want of time.

breviter [brevi- (short) + ter], adv., briefly.

Britanni, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., the Britons (including all the tribes of Britain).

Britannia, -ae, [Britannō- + ia (F. of ius)], f., Britain.

Britannicus, -a, -um, [Britannō- + cus], adj., of Britain, Briton: bellum (with Britain).

brūma, -ae, [brevi- (short) + ma (superl.), sc. dies], f., the winter solstice.
Brütus, -ī, [brutus, heavy], a family name at Rome.—Esp., Decimus Janius Brutus Albinus, a legatus of Cæsar. He distinguished himself in command of Cæsar's fleet off the coast of Gaul, and afterwards in the civil war on the side of Cæsar. But he joined the conspiracy against Cæsar with Marcus Brutus, and was one of Cæsar's assassins. He was afterwards killed in Gaul by order of Antony.

c, for centum, hundred.
C., for Gaius.
Cabillōnum, -ī, [Celtic], n., a town of the Helvetii on the Saone (Chalon-sur-Saône).
Caburus, -ī, [Celtic], m., the personal name of Gaius Valerius Caburus, a Gaul, made a Roman citizen by C. Valerius Flaccus, and father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Donnotaurus.

caçūmen, -inis, [?], n., the top (of trees, mountains, etc.).
cadāver, -eris, [akin to cado, fall], n., a corpse, a body (dead).
cadō, cadere, cecidī, cäsūrus, [cad, fall], 3. v. n., fall, be killed.
Cadurcũs, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Cadurci (a tribe of Aquitania).
— Plur., the Cadurci.
caedēs, -is, [†caed (as if root of cado, kill) + is or es], f., a murder, massacre, slaughter, killing.
caedō, caedere, cece-de, caesus, [prob. causative of cado, cf. fall, fell], 3. v. a., strike, strike down, cut, fell, cut down, slay.

caelestis, -e, [†caelft- (st. of caeles, fr. caelum) + tis], adj., heavenly.
— Plur., the gods.

caelum, -i, [?], n., the sky, the heavens, heaven.—See caelestis.

cærimōnia, -ae, [?], f., a rite, a ceremony.
Caerōsi, -orum, [?], m. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
caeruleus, -a, -um, [perh. akin to caesius, bluish], adj., dark blue.
Cæsar, -aris, [?], m., a family name in the gens Iulia.—Esp.: 1. C. Iulius Cæsar, the conqueror of Gaul and the author of the Commentaries.—2. L. Iulius Cæsar, a kinsman of the former, acting as his legatus in Gaul.
caespes, -itis, [?], m., a sod (used in fortification).
caesus, -a, -um, p. p. of cædo.
calamitās, -tātis, [?], f., disaster (orig. to crops?), defeat, misfortune (also euphemistically for death): ejus (any accident to him).
Caletes, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe in Normandy, on the Seine.
Caletī, -orum, same as the preceding.
callidus, -a, -um, [†callū- (cf. callum, thick skin) + dus], adj., (tough?), shrewd, cunning, skilful.
cālō, -onis, [?], m., a servant (of a soldier), a camp follower.

campester, -tris, -tre, [campō- (plain) + ster, as if †campet + tris
(cf. equestris), adj., of the plain: loca (level plains).

Campus, -i, [-?], m., a plain.

Camulogenus, -i, [Celtic], m., a chief of the Aulerci.

Caninius, -i, [-?], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., C. Caninius Rebilus, a legatus of Caesar.

canō, canere, cecīnī, cantus, [Can], 3 v. a. and n., sing, sound (with voice or instrument).

Cantaber, -bra, -brum, [Celtic], adj., of the Cantabri (a warlike people in the north of Spain, allied with the Gauls of Aquitania). — Plur., the Cantabri, the Cantabrians.

Cantium, -i, [Celtic], n., Kent (the southeastern corner of Great Britain).

caper, -pri, [-?], m., a goat, f., capra, -ae, a she-goat.

capillus, -i, [adj. form akin to caput, head], m., the hair (collectively).

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, [Cap], 3 v. a., take, capture; take possession of, get, acquire, seize: stipendium; nomen; arma (take up); montem (occupy). — Less exactly, choose, select: locum. — So also (esp. of ships, etc.), reach: portus (arrive at, make). — Fig., take in (deceive), captivate, beguile, also experience: dolorem; coniecturam (make); quietem (take, enjoy); fugam (take to flight).

caprea, -ae, [†caprō- (reduced) (cf. caper, goat) + ea (F. of -eus)], f., a roe (a small animal of the deer kind). Another reading for capra in vi, 27.

captivus, -a, -um, [as if †capti-

( imaginary st. of capto, fr. capio) + vus], adj., captive. — Masc. as noun, a captive, a prisoner.

captus, -a, -um, p. p. of capio.

captus, -ūs, [Cap (in capio) + tus], m., a seizing. Hence, what one can grasp. — Fig., capacity, character, nature.

caput, -itis, [-?], akin to head, n., the head: capite demisso; capite solo ex aqua exstare, have only the head above water. — Less exactly, person (cf. "head of cattle"); mouth (of a river). — Fig., life: poenam capitis (of death); capitis periculo (of life).

careō, -ère, -uí, itūrus, [-?], 2 v. n., be without, go without.

carīna, -ae, [-?], f., keel, bottom (of a ship).

Carnutes, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic people between the Loire and the Seine, about Orléans.

carō, carnis, [akin to crudus and raw], f., flesh, meat.

carpō, -pere, -psi, -ptus, [akin to harvest], 3 v. a., pluck. — Fig., find fault with (cf. "pick at").

carrum, -i, [Celtic], n., a cart (of the Gauls).

carrus, -i, m., another form for carrum.

cārus, -a, -um, [-?], adj., dear, precious, valuable.

Carvilius, -i, [-?], m., a Roman gentile name. — Also, a king of part of Kent.

casa, -ae, [-?], f., a cottage, a hut.

cāseus, -i, [-?], m., cheese.

Cassī, -orum, [Celtic, cf. Velio-
casses and Cassivellaunus], m. plur., a British tribe.

Cassianus, -a, -um, [†Cassio- (reduced) + ānus], adj., of Cassius: bellum (the war in B.C. 107, in which L. Cassius Longinus was defeated by the Tigurini, near Lake Geneva, and killed).

cassis, -idis, [?], f., a helmet (of metal, for horsemen, cf. galea).

Cassius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., L. Cassius Longinus, consul B.C. 107 (see Cassianus).

Cassivellaunus, -i, [Celtic], m., a British chief ruling north of the Thames, who took command of the general resistance of his countrymen to Cesar, but was finally reduced to submission.

castellum, -i, [†castrō- (fortress) + lum (N. of -lus)], n., a fortress, a fort, an outwork, a redoubt.

Caticus, -i, [Celtic], m., a chief of the Sequani.

castrum, -i, [SKAD (cover) + trum], n., a fortress.—Plur., a camp (fortified, as was the manner of the Romans): in castris, in camp, also in service; castra ponere, pitch a camp; castra movere, break camp, move; quintis castris, after five days' journey, as the Romans encamped every night.

cæsus, -ûs, [CAD (in cadō, fall) + tus], m., (what befalls), an accident, a chance (good or bad), a mischance: hoc ipso tempore et casu (emergency); casu, by accident, by chance; casu devenit, chanced to, etc.; quarum rerum casus (the occurrence, the happening, the possibility); eundem casum ferre (fate); belli casum sustinere (take the chances); in eiusmodi casu (a case); ad extremum casum, to the most critical position; ad omnes casus, against all accidents; in eum casum deduci (that pass).

Catamantāloedēs, -is, [Celtic], m., a chief of the Sequani.

catēna, -ae, [?], f., a chain (for prisoners), a cable: in catenās condicēt (into prison); in catenis tenere.

Caturiges, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a people in Roman Gaul (Provincia).

Catuvolcus, -i, [Celtic], m., a chief of the Eburones.

causa, -ae, [?], f., a cause, a reason, an excuse, grounds, a motive (for an act), a right (to anything): satis causae, sufficient reason. Abl. after a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, for, on behalf of: libertatis causa; potentiae causa (to gain); praedandi causa (to, etc.); insidiarum causa, for an ambuscade; animi causa, for amusement, for fancy.—Also, a cause (in law), a case: causa cognita, after trial; causa indicta (unheard); causam dicere, plead one's cause, stand a trial, be tried; causae dictio (a trial). Hence, also, a situation, a case: Germanorum unam esse causam (the case ... the same); in eadem causa, in the same situation, also, on the same side.

cauta [old case-form of cautus], adv., with caution, cautiously.

cautēs, -is, [akin to cos, whetstone], f., a rock (sharp or jagged), a reef.

cautus, p. p. of caveo.
Cavarillus, -î, [Celtic], M., a prince of the Hædui.

Cavarinus, -î, [Celtic], M., one of the Senones, made their king by Cæsar.

caveô, cavère, cavi, cautus, [perh. skv, cover], 2. v. n. and a., be on one's guard, guard against (something), take or give security.

cêdô, cêdere, cessî, cessurus, [?], 3. v. n., make way (in any direction). — Esp., give way, retreat, retire: cedentes, the flying; cedere loco, abandon a position, a military term. — Fig., yield: fortunae.

celer, -eris, -ere, [CEL (in cello, rush) + ris], adj., swift, quick, speedy, fast: motus (sudden).

celeritâs, -âtis, [celeri- (in celer) + tas], F., swiftness, activity, speed, promptness: ad celeritatem onerandi, to secure quick loading; itineris (quick marching).

celeriter [celeri- (in celer) + ter], adv., quickly, speedily, very soon, soon.

cêlô, -âre, -âvî, -âtus, [?], akin to clam, secretly, and caligo, mist], I. v. a., conceal, hide: arma. — Pass., pass unnoticed.

Celtae, -ârum, [Celtic], M. plur., a great race in Gaul and Britain. — More particularly, the Celts (in a narrower sense, occupying the interior of Gaul).

Celtillus, -î, [Celtic], M., one of the Arverni, father of Vercingetorix.

Cênabënis, -ë, [Cenabô + ensis], adv., of Cenabum, of the Cenabenses, the people of Cenabum.

Cênabum (Gên-), -î, [Celtic], N., the chief city of the Carnutes, now Orleans (from its later name, urbs Aurelianensis).

Cênimâgni, -õrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a British tribe.

Cênomâni, -õrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a division of the Aulerici.

cênsô, cênsère, cênsui, cênsus, [?], 2. v. a., (perh. fine), reckon, estimate. — Less exactly, give one's opinion, advise, decree (of the Senate), determine.

cênsus, -ûs, [akin to censeo], M., a numbering, a count, a census.

cêntum (C), [akin to hund-red], indecl. num. adj., a hundred.

cênturiô, -onis, [†centuria- (century) + o], M., a centurion. A sub-altern officer from the ranks, commanding a century, originally a hundred men.

cernô, cernere, crêvi, crêtus, (sifted), certus, (determined), [cer-, separate], 3. v. a., separate. Hence, distinguish, see, behold, descrie. — Also, determine.

cêrêtamen, -inis, [†certâ- (in certo, fr. cerno) + men], N., a struggle, a contest, rivalry.

cêrêt [old case-form of certus], adv., certainly, surely, at least (surely what is mentioned, if nothing more).

certus, -a, -um, p. p. of cerno as adj., determined, fixed, certain (of the thing as well as the person), sure, established, regular: certiorem facere, inform, order; certissimae res, absolutely certain facts; dies certa, an appointed day; certa subsidia (regular, as organized beforehand); certum in locum (particular).
cervus, -i, [root of cornu (horn) + vus], m., a stag; plur., in military language, a structure of forked stakes (like stags' horns), chevaux-de-frise.

(ceterus), -a, -um, [ce (in ecce, behold, hic, this) + terus (cf. alter)], adj., the rest of (cf. alius, other, not including all). — Usually plur., the rest, the remaining; the others; frumento ceterisque rebus (everything else necessary, where aliis would mean some other things).


Cévenna, -ae, [Celtic], f., the Cévennes (a woody mountain region on the west side of the lower Rhone valley).

Chèrusci, -orum, [?], m. plur., a tribe of the Germans between the Weser and the Elbe.

cibarius, -a, -um, [cibō-, food (reduced) + arius], adj., pertaining to food. — Neut. plur. as noun, provisions: molita (ground corn).

cibus, -i, [?], m., food.

Cicerō, -onis, [cicer (chickpea) + o, orig. a nickname, possibly from excrescences on the nose], m., a name of a Roman family from Arpinum. — Esp.: 1. Marcus Tullius, the great orator. — 2. Quintus (Tullius), his brother, in Caesar's service in Gaul as legatus.

Cimberius, -i, [akin to Cimbri], m., a prince of the Suevi.

Cimbri, -orum, [?], m. plur., a German tribe living in Jutland, who overran Gaul and made a successful inroad into the Roman dominions in the second century B.C. They were conquered at Aquæ Sextiae and Vercellæ by Marius and Catulus, B.C. 102 and 101.


cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cinctus, [?], 3. v. a., surround, encircle: flumen oppidum (run around). — Less exactly, man (occupy in a circuit, of walls).

cippus, -i, [?], m., a stake, a pillar, a post. — Plur., apparently jocosely used of a peculiar form of palisades, boundary-posts (?), chevaux-de-frise.

circā [case-form (instr.?) of circus (cf. circum)], adv. and prep. with acc., about, around. — See circiter.

circinus, -i, [circō- (cf. circum) + nus], m., a pair of compasses, a compass.

circiter [circō- (around) + ter], adv. and prep. with acc., about. — Fig. (of time, number, and quantity), about (in the neighborhood of), near, not far from.

circuitus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumceo.

circuitus, -tūs, [circum-itus], m., a circuit (a going round), a circuitous route, a circumference: in circuitu, all around.

circum [acc. of circō-, around (cf. curvus)], adv. and prep. with acc., about, around.

circumcidō, -cìdere, -cīdi, -cīsus, [circum-caedo], 3. v. a., cut around,
cut (the idea of around being implied in the context).—circum-
cisus, -a, -um, p. p.—Fig., isolated: collis.
circumcludō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clū-
sus, [circum-claudō], 3. v. a., en-
close around, encircle, place a band around.
circumdatus, -a, -um, p. p. of
circumdo.
circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus,
[circum-dō], I. v. a., put around:
murus circumdatus (encircling, thrown around).—By a confusion of ideas, surround, encircle: aciem rhedis.
circumdūcō, -ducere, -ducī, -duc-
tus, [circum-duco], 3. v. a., lead around.—Less exactly, of a line, draw around.
circumdūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of
circumduco.
circum(m)eō, -ire, -ī, -itus, [circum-
eō], irr. v. n., go around.—Becoming active, visit, make a tour of: hiberna.
circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fū-
sus, [circum-fundo], 3. v. a., pour around.—Pass. (as reflexive), pour in, rush around, rush in on all sides.
—Also (cf. circumdo), surround: multitudine praeidia (surround with a swarming multitude).
circumiciō, -icere, -īeci, -iectus,
[circum-iacio], 3. v. a., throw around.
—Esp. in a military sense, hurl
around, throw around: circumiecta multitudine (assailing on all sides).
circumiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of
circumicio.
circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-
sus, [circum-mitto], 3. v. a., send
around.
circummūniō, -ire, -iī, -itus, [cir-
cum-munio], 4. v. a., fortify around, throw fortifications around, fortify, protect (by a fortification).
circummūnitus, -a, -um, p. p. of
circummunio.
circumplector, -plectī, -plexus,
[circum-plectō, twine], 3. v. dep.,
embrace, surround.
circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī, no
p. p., [circum-sisto, place (one's self)], 3. v. a., stand around, flock around, rally around, surround, hem in, beset.
circumplicō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus, [circum-specio], 3. v. a.,
look about for.—Fig., think over, consider, cast about for: animo consilia (by way of investigating or divining).
circumsistō, -stāre, -stetī, no p. p.,
[circum-sto, stand], I. v. a., sur-
round.
circumvāllātus, -a, -um, p. p. of
circumvallo.
circumvāllo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cir-
cum-vallo, intrench], I. v. a., sur-
round with walls, blockade, invest.
circumvectus, p. p. of circum-
veho.
circumvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vec-
tus, [circum-veho], 3. v. a., carry around.—Esp. pass. as dep., ride around, sail around.
circumvenēō, -vēnire, -vēnī, -ven-
tus, [circum-venio, come], 4. v. a.,
surround.—Fig. (cf. 'get round'), impose upon, defraud, betray, cir-
cumvent.
circumventus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumvenio.

cis [case-form of ce (cf. ec-ce, cetera)], adv. and prep. with acc., this side, this side of.

Cisalpinus, -a, -um, [cis Alpes (as if cisalpi-) + nus], adj., being this side the Alps, Cisalpine. Gallia (that part of Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps).

Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um, [cis Rhe-num (as if cisrhenā-) + nus], adj., being this side the Rhine, this side the Rhine (as adj. phrase). — Plur. as noun, the people this side the Rhine (i.e. towards Gaul).

Cita, -ae, [perh. ci (in cieo) + ta (cf. nauta)], m., a Roman family name. — Only, C. Fufius, a Roman knight doing business in Cenabum.

citātus, -a, -um, p. p. of cito.

citer, -ra, -rum, [ce (cf. cis) + terus (reduced, cf. alter)], adj., on this side (rare and antiquated). — Usually citerior (compar.), nearer, hither (as adj.) : provincia, Gallia (Gaul on the Italian side of the Alps as opp. to Farther Gaul, cf. Cisalpinus); Hispania (the eastern part of Spain).

citō, -āre, -āvi, ātus, [citō- (fr. cieo, put in motion)], i. v. a., urge on, hurry. — citātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., in haste: citatus furtur, runs very rapidly.

clārus, -a, -um, [CLA (in clamo, cry out) + rus], adj., bright, clear. — Fig., famous. — Also (of sound), loud, distinct.

classis, -is, [CLA (in clamo, cry out) + tis], f., (a summoning). — Less exactly, the army (called out). — Esp., an army (called out for duty at sea), a fleet (the most common later meaning).

Claudius, -i, [claudō- (lame) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name, probably borrowed from the Sabines. — Esp.,

citrō [dat. of citer], adv., to this side: ultro citroque, back and forth, to and fro.

civis, -is, [ci (in quies, rest) + vis (weakening of -rus)], c., a citizen, a fellow-citizen.

civitās, -tātis, [civi- + tas], f., the state of being a citizen, citizenship. — Esp., Roman citizenship, the Roman franchise. — Less exactly, a body of fellow-citizens, the citizens (as a body), one's fellow-citizens, a state (composed of citizens), a city (because the city was the state), a nation, a tribe (politically): expellit ex civitate (from the country).

clam [case of st. akin to caligo, mist, etc.], adv. and prep. with abl., secretly.

clāmitō, -āre, -āvi, ātus, [freq. of clam], i. v. a., keep crying out, vociferate, cry out.

clāmor, -ōris, [clam (as if root of clamo) + or], m., a shouting, a shout, a cry, an outcry.

clandestinus, -a, -um, [unc. st. (perh. manufactured from clam) + tinus], adj., secret, clandestine.

clārus, -a, -um, [CLA (in clamo, cry out) + rus], adj., bright, clear. — Fig., famous. — Also (of sound), loud, distinct.

classis, -is, [CLA (in clamo, cry out) + tis], f., (a summoning). — Less exactly, the army (called out). — Esp., an army (called out for duty at sea), a fleet (the most common later meaning).

Claudius, -i, [claudō- (lame) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name, probably borrowed from the Sabines. — Esp,
Appius Claudius, consul with L. Domitius in B.C. 54.

claudō, claudere, clausi, clausus, [of unc. form., akin to clavis, key], 3. v. a., close, shut, fasten. — Esp., claudere agmen, close the line of march, bring up the rear.

clausus, -a, -um, p. p. of claudo. clāvus, -i, [CLAU- (cf. claudio) + us], M., a nail, spike.

clemens, -entis, [perh. CLA (in clarus, bright) + mens (cf. vehemens)], adj., (bright?), gentle (of weather). — Fig., gentle, kind, merciful. — See clementia.

clementia, -ae, [clement- + ia], F., kindness, gentleness, humanity, clemency.

cliēns, -entis, [= cluens, p. of clueo, hear, obey], c., (a hearer), a dependant, a vassal, a retainer.

clientēla, -ae, [client- + ēla (imitating suadēla, etc.)], F., vassalage (as condition of a cliens). Hence (viewed fr. the other side), protection. — Phrases: magnae clientelae, many vassals (extensive relations of "clientage"); Remis in clientelam se dicaverunt (surrendered themselves as vassals to, etc.).

clivus, -i, [CLI (lean) + vus], M., a slope, a declivity, an acclivity; ad mollitudinem clivum, to make the ascent easier.

Clōdius, -i, [the popular form of Claudius], M., a Roman gentile name, belonging to the plebeian branch of the gens Claudia. — Esp., P. Clodius, a most bitter enemy of Cicero. He was killed in a fray by T. Annius Milo, who was defended by Cicero in a famous oration still extant.

Cn., for Gnaeus.

coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-acervo], I. v. a., heap up, mass together, heap on top (of others).

coāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of cogo.

coāctus, -tūs, [con-actus (cf. cogo, force)], M., compulsion.

coagmentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [coagmentō-, joint], I. v. a., fasten together.

coartō (-arc-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-arto], I. v. a., press together, confine.

Cocosātes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Aquitania.

coemō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, [con-emo], 3. v. a., buy up.

coēō, -ēre, -ēvī (-ii), nōp. p., [con-eo], irr. v. n., come together, unite, meet.

coēpi, -isse, coēptus, [con-ēapi (perf. of ēapo, cf. apiscor)], def. v. a., (have taken hold of), began, undertook, started. — coēptus, -a, -um, p. p. used in same sense as the active with pass. infinitives.

coēptus, -a, -um, p. p. of coēpi.

coercēō, -ercēre, -ercū, -ercitus, [con-arceo], 2. v. a., confine, keep in check.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-agito (in sense of revolve, discuss)], I. v. a., consider, think over. — Esp. (as to some plan of action), think about, discuss (what to do), have an idea of, intend, consider (that something may happen), expect (contemplate the possibility): cogitare ne, see that not, think how not, plan to prevent; nihil cogitare de bello (have no thought of, etc.).
cōgnātiō, -ōnis, [con-(g)natio, birth], F., connection by birth. — Concretely, a family, a clan: magnae cognationis, having connections (by blood).

cōgnitus, -a, -um, p. p. of cognosco.

cōgnōsco, -gnōscere, -gnōvi, -gnitus, [con-(g)noso, learn], 3. v. a., learn, find out, find, become aware. — Esp., investigate, inquire into, learn about, study. — In perf. tenses (cf. nosco), know, be aware: cognitum est de aliqua re (something was known); causa cognita, upon a full investigation, after trial; egregia virtute erant cogniti (had been found to be of, etc.); ad cognoscendum, for inquiry.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, [con-agō], 3. v. a., bring together, collect, assemble, get together. Hence, force, compel, oblige: coactus, by compulsion.

cohor(s), -hortis, [con-hortis (reduced), akin to hortus, garden] F., an enclosure. Hence, a body of troops, a cohort (the tenth part of a legion, corresponding as a unit of formation to the company of modern tactics, and containing from 300 to 600 men).

cohortātiō, -ōnis, [con-hortatio (cf. cohortor)], F., an encouraging, encouragement. — Esp. (to soldiers), an address (almost invariably a preliminary to an engagement).

cohortor, -āri, -ātus, [con-hortor], 1. v. dep., encourage, rally, address (esp. of a commander): cohortati inter se, encouraging, urging one another.

coll- (except collis), see con-.
collis, -is, [?], m., a hill.
colō, colere, coluī, cultus, [?], 3. v. a., till, cultivate. — Fig., attend upon, court, cultivate (as a friend), pay court to, worship (of divinities).

colōnia, -ae, [colonē (cf. colo) + ia], F., (state of a colonist). — Concretely, a colony (both of the establishment and the persons sent). The Roman colonists were and continued to be Roman citizens, and served as armed occupants of the soil where they were sent in the interests of the mother country.

color, -ōris, [prob. akin to cāligō, as opp. to white], m., color.

com- (con-, co-) [the same as cum], adv. in comp., with, together, up. Often intensifying the meaning without definite translation.

combūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstus, [con-ibuero (?), relation to uro very uncertain, cf. bustum, funeral pyre], 3. v. a., burn up, consume.

comes, -itis, [con-imitis (MA in meo, go) + tis], c., a companion (esp. an inferior as attendant or follower).

cōminus [formed by some false analogy from con manus], adv., hand to hand (cf. ēminus, at a distance), in close combat, at short range.

comitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of comitor.

comitium, -i, [?], perh. comit- (see comes) + ium, the assemblage of followers (cf. servitium), N., a part of the Forum at Rome. — Plur., an election (assembly of the people for voting).
comitor, -ārī, -ātus, [comit-, companion], i. v. dep., accompany. —
comitātus, -a, -um, p. p. in present sense, accompanying.
commeātus, -tūs, [con-meatus, cf. commeo, go to and fro], M., a going to and fro, an expedition (back and forth), a trip. Hence, communications (of an army). — So also, supplies (of an army), provisions.

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [commemor, call to mind], i. v. a., remind one of. Hence, speak of, mention, state (in a narrative).
commendo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [commando, commit], i. v. a., intrust, recommend, surrender.
commoē, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [commeo], i. v. n., go back and forth. — With ad, visit, resort to.

commilitō, -onis, [con-milito (soldier) + o], M., fellow-soldier, comrade.
commīnus, see comminus.

commissūra, -ae, [con-fmissura (cf. committo)], F., a joint, a seam.
commissus, -a, -um, p. p. of committo.

committō, -mittere, -missē, missus, [con-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go (send) together or altogether). Hence, join, unite, attach: proelium (engage, begin the engagement). — Also, trust: se barbaris committere (put one's self in the hands of, etc.); nihil his committere (place no confidence in, etc.). — Also, admit, allow (to happen), commit (suffer to be done, cf. admitto), perpetrate: neque commissum a se, nothing had been done by them; committere ut posset, leave it possible; nihil committebant, did nothing.

Commnius, -ī, [Celtic], M., a leader of the Atrebates.

commode [old case-form of commodus], adv., advantageously, conveniently, fitly, readily, to advantage: satis commode, to much advantage; non satis commode, not very easily. commodum, see commodus.

commodus, -a, -um, [con-modus, measure, adj., (having the same measure with), fitting, suitable, convenient, advantageous: commodissimum est, it is the best thing, most advantageous. — Neut. as noun, convenience, comfort, advantage, interest: commodo rei publicae, without prejudice to the public interests; omnibus in vita commodis, all the blessings of life; rei familiaris commodum, the interests of one's property; quas sui quisque commodi fecerat (for his own convenience).

commonefaciō, -facere, -fecī, -facitūs, [unc. case-form (of st. akin to moneo, warn) -facio], 3. v. a., remind.

commorātus, -a, -um, p. p. of commoror.

commoror, -ārī, -ātus, [con-moror], i. v. dep., delay, stay, linger.
commōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of commoveo.

commoveō, -movēro, -mōvī, -mōtus, [con-moveo], 2. v. a., move, stir, agitate. — With reflex., or in pass., be moved, move (intrans.), stir. — Fig., disturb, agitate, affect, alarm, influence (with idea of violent feeling).
commūnicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of communico.

commūnicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [communīcō- (st. of communicus, communi- + cus)], i. v. a., (make common), share, communicate, consult (with a person about a thing, and so make it common), add (a thing to another), put in along with (something else).

commūniō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [communio], 4. v. a., strongly fortify, fortify, intrench, build (make by fortification).

commūnis, -e, [con- + munis (cf. munia, duties)], adj., (having shares together), common, general, in common: ex communī consensu, by general agreement; consilium (general plan, concerted action); res (the common interest).

commūtātiō, -ōnis, [con-mutatio (cf. commuto)], f., change: aestus (turn).

commūtātus, -a, -um, p. p. of commuto.

commūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [commuto], i. v. a., change, exchange: studium belli agricultūrā (exchange the pursuits of war for agriculture).

comparātus, -a, -um, p. p. of comparo.

1. comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [comparo], i. v. a., get ready, prepare, procure, gain, get together, prepare for (with a different view of the object in English): omnibus rebus comparatis, having made all arrangements.

2. comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [com-

paro], i. v. a., (pair together), compare.

compellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, [con-pello], 3. v. a., drive together (or altogether), drive in, force, drive.

compendium, -i, [con + pendium], N., (a weighing in, cf. expendō, weigh out), a saving, profit.

comperiō, -perīre, -peri, -pertus, [con-pario], 4. v. a., (get together), find out (by inquiry), ascertain, discover.— compertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., certain (cf. exploratus).

compertus, -a, -um, p. p. of compertio.

complector, -pectī, -plexus, [completō, fold], 3. v. dep., embrace, include, enclose.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus, [con-pleo], 2. v. a., fill up, fill.— With a different conception of the action from Eng., cover, man (of walls).

complexxus, -a, -um, p. p. of complector.

complūres, -plūra (-ia), [con-plus], adj. plur., very many, a great many, a great number of.

comportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [comporto], i. v. a., bring together, collect.

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsus, [con-prehendo], 3. v. a., seize, catch, arrest, capture, grasp (one by the hand or clothing).— Fig., take, catch (of fire).

comprehēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of comprehendo.

comprobō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [comprobō], i. v. a., prove, approve: consilium fortuna (justify).
compulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of compel.

cónátum, -i, [N. p. p. of conor as pass.], N., an attempt, an undertaking.

compulsus, -tus, [con- (st. of conor) + tus], M., an attempt, an effort.

cónátus, -a, -um, p. p. of conor.

concēdō, -cēdere, -cēdi, no p. p. [con-caedo], 3. v. n. and a., (give up a thing to one), allow, grant, assign (leave, where the rest is taken away), permit, yield the palm (to a superior), yield, make a concession.

concertō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [concerto], i. v. n., contend.

concēssus, -sius, [con-cessus (cf. concedo)], M., a concession, a permission.

concīdō, -cidere, -cidī, no p. p. [con-caedo], 3. v. n., fall down, fall.

concīdō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus, [con-caedo], 3. v. a., cut to pieces, cut down (kill), cut up (land by estuaries).

concīliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [concīliō-, assembly], i. v. a., bring together. Hence, win over, secure (even by force), win, gain.

concīlium, -i, [con-īciūm (call) + ium, cf. Kalendae)], N., a meeting.—Esp., an assembly (of war or state), a council, a conference: per concīlium, in council.

concīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of concīdo.

concītatus, -a, -um, p. p. of concīto.

concītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [concīto, freq. of cīeo, stir], i. v. a., arouse, stir up, call out (and so set in motion).

condiciō, -ōnis, [con-DIC, say (cf. condiciō, -a, -um, p. p. of condemno.

condēmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [condemnō, cry out], i. v. n., cry out, shout: victoriam (cogn. acc.), shout victory.

concludō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus, [con-claudō], 3. v. a., shut up, enclose: mare conclusum (enclosed, inland).

conclusus, -a, -um, p. p. of conclusō.

Conconnetodumnus, -i, [Celtic], M., a leader of the Carnutes.

concrepō, -crepāre, -crepū, -crepītūrus, [con-crepo], i. v. n., rattle, clash: armis (clash their arms, of soldiers).

concurrō, -currere, -currī (-currencī), cursus, [con-curro], 3. v. n., run together, rush up, rush in, rush (advance), flock to, hasten in: cursus est, there was a rush.

concurrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [concurro, freq. of curro, run], i. v. n., rush to and fro: concursari iubet, orders a noise of running to and fro to be made.

concurrus, -a, -um, p. p. of concurrō.

concurrus, -sūs, [con-cursus (cf. concurro)], M., a rushing to and fro, a dashing together (collision).—Esp., a charge, onset, a crowd running, a crowd.

condemnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of condemnō.

condemnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [condemnō, condemn], i. v. a., condemn, find guilty.

condiciō, -ōnis, [con-DIC, say (cf.
condōnō, condico, agree), F., terms, condition, terms of agreement, terms (of fighting), state (of slavery): ad inquam condicionem pugnandi, to fight on unequal terms.

condōnō, -āre, -āvi, ātus, [con-done],

1. v. a., give up, pardon for the sake of.

Condrūsī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. pl., a Belgic tribe on the Meuse, clients of the Treveri.

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, [con-duco, lead], 3. v. a., bring together, bring up (soldiers), hire: manus conducta, a band of mercenaries.

conflictus, -ārī, -āvit, -ātus, p. p. of conficio.

conficiō, -ficiere, -fēsī, -fertus, [con-facio], 4. v. a., crowd together.
—confertus, -ārī, -āvit, -ātus, and adj., close, crowded, dense, closely crowded, in close order, in a solid body.

confērō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [confero], irr. v. a., bring together, get together, bring in, gather, collect.—With or without culpam, lay the blame on, charge.—With reflexive, betake one's self, remove, take refuge. —So with other words, fortunas, (remove, transfer).—Also, postpone, delay.

confertus, -ārī, -āvit, -ātus, p. p. of conficio.

confestim [acc. of con-festis (cf. festino, hasten)], adv., in haste, immediately, at once.

conficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [con-facio], 3. v. a., (do up), accomplish, complete, finish up, carry out, finish, perform.—Also, make up, write up (of a document), work

up, dress (of skins).—Also (cf. Eng. "done up"), finish up, exhaust, wear out: nondum confecta hieme, when the winter was not yet spent, before the end of, etc.—See also confio.

confidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum, [confido, trust], 3. v. n., (trust fully), be confident, trust, trust to, have confidence in, rely on, feel assured.—confīsus, -ārī, -āvit, -ātus, p. p. in act. sense, trusting in.

confingō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, [configo, fix], 3. v. a., fasten together, fasten.

confinis, -ēs, [con-finis], adj., having boundaries together, adjacent: confines Senonibus, neighbors of the Senones.

confīnium, -ī, [confini- + ium], n., neighborhood, confines, common boundaries.

confīō, -fīrī, -fectus, [confio], irr. v. n. (used rarely as pass. of conficio), be accomplished, etc. (see conficio).

confirmātiō, -ōnis, [con-firmatio, cf. confirmo], F., (positive) assurance, confirmation.

confirmātus, -ārī, -āvit, -ātus, p. p. of confirmo.

confirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [confirmo, make firm], 1. v. a., strengthen.
—Fig., strengthen, establish (pacem), reassure, encourage, confirm, assure (by oath): se (resolve). Hence (of things and statements), confirm, declare.

confīsus, -ārī, -āvit, -ātus, p. p. of confido.

confiteor, -sitērī, -ssus, [con-
**fateor, confess**, v. dep., confess, acknowledge, admit.

**coniuxus**, -a, -um, p. p. of configo.

coniagro, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [coniagro, blaze], i. v. n., be on fire, burn.

coniunctatus, -a, -um, p. p. of conficteo.

coniunctō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [coniunctō, cf. confingo], i. v. a., dash against (one thing against another), assail, harass.

coniigō, -figere, -fixi, -fectus, [coniigō, strike], 3. v. a. and n., dash against, contend, fight.

coniunctūn, -entis, [pres. p. of confluō], m., a meeting of two rivers, confluence.


coniugō, -ugere, -ūgī, no p. p. [coniugō], 3. v. n., flee, take refuge.

coniundo, -fundere, -fūdi, -fusus, [coniundo], 3. v. a., pour together.

— Less exactly, mingle, mix indiscriminately, unite without distinction, unite, combine.

congreō, -gredi, -gressus, [congreō, step], 3. v. dep., come together. — In peace, unite with. — Esp. in war, come in contact with, engage, fight.

congressus, -a, -um, p. p. of congreō.

congressus, -sūs, [congressus, cf. congreō], m., an engagement, encounter.

coniō (-icio), -icere, -iēci, -iectus, [coniacio], 3. v. a., throw together, hurl, cast, discharge: se conciere, throw one’s self, rush. — Less exactly (esp. in a military sense), throw (into prison), put (to flight), place, station (cf. military throw troops into, etc.), force. — Fig., put together (of ideas).

coniēctūra, -ae, [coniactura, cf. conicio], F., a guess (“putting two and two together”), a conjecture: coniecturam capere, form a conjecture, infer.

coniectus, -a, -um, p. p. of conicio.

coniunctim [acc. of tconiunctis (iung as root) + tis, cf. coniungo], adv., unitedly, in common, altogether.

coniunctus, -a, -um, p. p. of coniungo.

coniungo, -iungere, -iünxī, -iunc-tus, [coniungo, join], 3. v. a., unite, connect, fasten together. — In pass., or with reflexive, unite (neut.), connect one’s self, join. — coniunctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., united, closely connected.

coniünx, -iunxis, [coniux (rug, yoke, as st., with intrusive n from iungo)], c., a spouse. — Esp., f., a wife.

coniūrātiō, -onis, [coniūratio, cf. coniuro], F., conspiracy, a confederacy.

coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [coniuro], i. v. n., swear together, take an oath (together), swear mutual oaths. Hence, conspire, plot.

conlatus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of confero.

conlauddō (coll-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus,
conlectus, i. v. a., praise (in set terms).

conlectus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of conligo.

conligō (coll-), -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [con-lego], 3. v. a., gather together, gather, collect, acquire (by accumulation). — With reflexive, collect one's self, recover.

conligō (coll-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-ligo], i. v. a., bind together, fasten together: scuta (lock together).

conlocātus (coll-), -a, -um, p. p. of conlocō.

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-loco, place], i. v. a., place, set, station (of troops, etc.): angustius milites (stow, in a vessel). — Esp. (with or without nuptum), give in marriage, marry (of a father or guardian). — Fig., settle: rebus conlocandis, making dispositions.

conloquium (coll-), -i, [con-loquium, cf. conloquor], n., a conference, an interview, a parley.

conloquor (coll-), -loqui, -locūtus, [con-loquor], 3. v. dep., (talk together), confer, hold an interview (or parley), parley, converse.

conprātus, -āri, -ātus, [ ? con-, st. akin to onus, burden], i. v. dep., attempt, try, endeavor: idem conari, make the same attempt.

conquēscō, -quiēscere, -quiēvī, -quiētūrūs, [con-quaesc(o, rest)], 3. v. n., rest, repose.

conquirō, -quirere, -quisīvī, -quisītus, [con-quaero, seek], 3. v. a., search for, seek for, hunt up.

conquisītus, p. p. of conquirō.

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, [con-sanguin- (blood) + eus], adj., akin (by blood). — As noun, a kinsman.

cōnsendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scensus, [con-scando, climb], 3. v. a., climb, climb upon: navis (in navis) (go on board); vallum (man, mount).

cōnscientia, -ae, [con-scientia, cf. conscius], F., consciousness, privity, conscience, knowledge.

cōnciscō, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītus, [con-scisco, decree], 3. v. a., resolve. Less exactly, with dat. of reflex., take to one's self: mortem (commit suicide).

cōnsicius, -a, -um, [con-†scius, sci (in scio, know) + us], adj., knowing (with one's self or another), conscious, aware of.

cōnscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, [con-scribo], 3. v. a., write down. — Esp., enrol, conscribe, levy, enlist.

conscriptus, -a, -um, p. p. of conscribec.

consecrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of consecrō.

consecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [con-sacro, make sacred], 1. v. a., hallow, consecrate. — cōnsecratūs, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., consecrated, sacred.

consector, -ārī, -ātus, [con-sector, freq. of consequor], 1. v. dep., overtake, follow up.

consecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of consequor.

cōnsensius, -onis, [con-†sensio, cf. consentio], F., agreement, unanimity.

cōnsensus, -sūs, [con-sensus, cf. consentio], M., agreement, consent, harmonious (or concerted) action.

cōnsentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēn-
sūrus, [con-sentio, feel], 4. v. n., agree, conspire, make common cause, act with (some one).

cŏnsequor, -sequĭ, -secūtus, [consequor], 3. v. dep., follow (and stay with), overtake. Hence, obtain, secure, attain, succeed in (some purpose).—Also, follow close upon, succeed, ensue.

cŏnservŏ, -āre, -āvī, ātus, [conservŏ, save], i. v. a., save, preserve, spare.—Also, observe (law, right), regard.

Cŏnsidius, -i, [con-ĭsidius (akin to sedeo, sit)], a Roman name.—Esp., Publius, a Roman soldier.

cŏnsīdŏ, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, [con-sīdŏ], 3. v. n., sit down (in a place).—Less exactly, take a position, halt, encamp, settle.

cŏnsilium, -ĭ, [con-ĭsilium (cf. consul, akin to salio, in some earlier unc. meaning)], N., deliberation, a council (of war, more commonly concilium).—Esp., wise counsel, prudence, discretion. Hence, a plan, counsel, design, purpose.—And so (design carried out), course, measure, conduct.—Phrases: ipsorum esse consilium (a matter for them to decide); quasi consili sit res, as if it were a matter for consultation; commune consilium, concerted action; publicum consilium, action of the state, official action; barbaris consilium non defuit (an intelligent plan of action).

cŏnsimilis, -e, [con-similis], adj., very like, just like.

cŏnsistŏ, -sistere, -stitĭ, no p. p., [con-sisto, place (one's self)], 3. v. n., take a stand, take a position, stand, keep one's position, form (of troops).—In perf. tenses, have a position, stand. Hence, stop, halt, make a stand, hold one's ground, run aground (of ships), remain, stay.—With in, occupy, rest on.—Fig., depend on, rest on.

cŏnsobrĭnus, -i, [con-sobrĭnus, cf. soror, sister], m., first cousin (on the mother's side).—Less exactly, (any) cousin german.

cŏnsolātus, -a, -um, p. p. of consolor.

cŏnsŏlor, -āri, ātus, [con-sŏlor, comfort], i. v. dep., console, cheer.—
cŏnsōlātus, -a, -um, p. p. as pres., consoling.

cŏnspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of conspicio.

cŏnspectus, -tŭs, [con-spectus, cf. conspicio], m., sight.—in conspectu, in one's presence; in conspectum proferre (display).

cŏnspicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of conspicor.

cŏspiciŏ, -spicere, -spexĭ, -spectus, [con-specio, look at], 3. v. a., catch sight of, espy, see.

cŏspicor, -āri, ātus, [†conspic-, cf. spec, see], i. v. dep., catch sight of, espy, see.

cŏspĭrŏ, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [conspīro, breathe], i. v. n., sound together.—Fig., harmonize, agree.—Also, conspire, league together.

cŏstanter, [constant- (standing firm) + ter], adv., consistently, uniformly, steadily, with constancy, firmly.

cŏstantia, -ae, [constant- (stand-}
Consultum

consternatus, -a, -um, p. p. of consterno.
consternō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [con-*tternō (cf. sternax, prostrating)], i. v. a., overwhelm.—Fig., dismay, alarm.—consternātus, -a, -um, p. p., stricken with fear.

consternō, -stermere, -strāvī, strātus, [con-stereno], 3. v. a., strew over (both of the thing thrown and that over which): navis constrata (decked, full decked, as opposed to ships only covered at the ends).

constipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [constipō, press], i. v. a., crowd, cram.—In pass. or with reflexive, crowd together.

constituō, -stituere, -stitūris, -stitūtus, [con-statuto], 3. v. a. and n., set up, raise, put together, make up. Hence, establish, station, arrange, draw up (aciem).—Fig., determine, appoint, agree upon, determine upon, fix, decide upon: praemia (offer).

constō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātūrus, [con-sto], i. v. n., stand together.—Fig., agree (esp. of accounts): numerus (be complete). Hence, be established, appear, be agreed upon, be evident. (Esp. constat, it appears, etc.)—Also (from accounts), cost.—Also (with in), depend upon.

constrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of consterno.
consuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus, [con-suesco], 3. v. n., become accustomed.—In perf. tenses, be accustomed, be wont.—consuētus, -a, -um, p. p., accustomed, wont, used.

consultum, -i, [N. p. p. of consulto], n., a decision, an order, a decree.—Esp., senatus consultum, an order of the senate.

constuētūdō, -inis, [con-*tuetudo (prob. tuetu- + do), cf. consuēscō], r., habit, custom, habits (collectively), manners, customs, practice: victus (customary mode of living); itineris (usual manner of marching).

consultus, -a, -um, p. p. of consuesco.

consul, -ulis, [con-sul (cf. praesul, exsul), root of salio in some earlier unc. meaning], m., a consul (the title of the chief magistrate of Rome, cf. consilium).—With proper names in abl., the usual way of indicating dates: M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus, in the consulship of, etc.; se consul, in his consulship, as a date or occasion.

consulātus, -tūs, [†consulā-, (cf. consul) + tus], m., consulship.

consulō, -sulere, -suli, -sultus, [prob. consul, though poss. a kindred or independent verb], 3. v. a. and n., deliberate, consult, take counsel, decide.—With acc., consult, take the advice of:—With dat., take counsel for, consult the interests of, consult for the welfare of, look out for, do a service to: vitae (sparer).—Phrase: sortibus consultum (est), lots were drawn to decide.

consultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [consultō-, decision], i. v. n., consult: de bello (take measures for).

consultō, [prob. like abl. abs. used impersonally], adv., with deliberation, purposely, designedly.

consultum, -i, [N. p. p. of consulto], n., a decision, an order, a decree.—Esp., senatus consultum, an order of the senate.
contineo, -tendere, -tendi, -tendit, [con-tendo, stretch], 3. v. n., strain, struggle, strive, try, endeavor, exert one's self; attempt, be zealous: id contendere et laborare, strive and exert one's self for, etc. — Esp. with verbs of motion, press on, hasten. — Also, fight, contend, wage war. — With ad and in like constructions, hasten, march, start to go (in haste): vi contendere, to force a passage; petere contendit, seek earnestly.

contentio, -onis, [con-†tentio, cf. contendo], F., struggle, efforts.—Esp., contest, fighting, dispute.

contentus, -a, -um, p. p. of contendo and contineo.

contexto, -texere, -texuī, -textus, [con-texo], 3. v. a., interweave, weave together. — Also, weave (make by weaving).

contextus, -a, -um, p. p. of contexto.

continens, -entis, pres. p. of contexto, wh. see.

continenter [continent- (holding together) + ter], adv., continually, without stopping, continuously, incessantly.

continentia, -ae, [continent- (holding together) + ia], F., self-restraint, moderation.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [con-teneō], 2. v. a., hold together, hold in. Hence, in many fig. meanings, restrain, hold in check, keep (within bounds), hem in, retain (in something). — Pass. or with reflex., keep within, remain, be included in, be bounded, consist in (be contained in). — Also, hold on to, join. — con-

consumō, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūmpstus, [con-sumo], 3. v. a., (take out of the general store). Hence, waste, consume, destroy, spend, exhaust.

consumptus, -a, -um, p. p. of consumo.

consurgō, -surgere, -surrēxi, -surrēctus, [con-surgo, rise]. 3. v. n., rise, rise up. — Esp. of a session, break up.

contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [contabulo, cf. tabula, board], 1. v. a., build up (with floors in stories), floor with planks. — Also, build up (generally, as of a wall with towers).

contāgiō, -ōnis, [con-†tagio, fr. tag in tango, touch, cf. contingo], F., contact. — Esp. with something noxious, implying contagion.

contāminātus, -a, -um, p. p. of contamino.

contāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [contamin- (st. of con-tāmen, i.e. tag (touch) + men)], 1. v. a., bring into contact, unite. — Esp. with notion of contagion (cf. contagio), contaminate: faciōre contaminatus (impli-
cated in).

contegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus, [con-tego], 3. v. a., cover up, cover.

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsi, -temptus, [con-temnō, slight], 3. v. a., despise, disregard, hold in con-
tempt.

contemptiō, -ōnis, [con-†temptio, cf. contemno], F., contempt, scorn: in contemptionem venire, incur the contempt, etc.

contemptus, -tūs, [con-†temptus, cf. contemno], M., contempt, scorn: contemptui est, is a matter of ridicu-
cule.
tinēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., (holding together), continual, contiguous, continuous. — Also, restraining one's self, continent. — As noun, the continuous land, the continent. — contentus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., satisfied, content.

convertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus, [con-vertere], 3. v. a., turn about, turn.
— Fig., change: signa (change front, wheel); conversa signa bipartito intulerunt, wheeled and charged the enemy in two directions; conversa signa in hostes inferre, face about and charge, etc.; in fugam conversa, put to flight; conversam [materiam] ad hostem collocabat, placed [fallen trees] with their tops towards the enemy; contra vim fluminis, against the current; itinere converso, altering his course; mentes conversae sunt, their state of mind was changed.

**Convictolitavis**, -is, [Celtic], m., a young Hæduan nobleman.

**convictus**, -a, -um, p. p. of convinco.

**convincō**, -vincere, -vici, -vicit, [con-vinco, conquer], 3. v. a., prove, make good (a charge, etc.): avaritia convicta, found guilty of avarice (changing the point of view for the Eng. idiom).

**convocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [convoco], i. v. a., call together, summon, call (a council).

**coörior**, -orīri, -ortus, [con-oriar, arise], 3. (and 4.) v. dep., arise, spring up, break out (of a war).

**coörtus**, -a, -um, p. p. of coörior.

**cōpia**, -ae, [*cōpi-* (con-ops, aid) + ia, cf. inopia, inops], F., abundance, plenty, supply (both great and small), quantity, number.—Esp., luxury (abundance of everything).—Plur. (esp. of forces), forces, resources, supplies.—Phrases: copiam facere, afford a supply, give an opportunity; magna copia locorum (choice); copia atque usus, necessary supplies.

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, [copia (reduced) + osus], adj., (abounding in wealth), well supplied, wealthy.

**cōpula**, -ae, [con-tapula (from ap, lay hold of)], F., (holding together), a grappling-hook.

cor, cordis, [root as st. (akin to Eng. heart)], N., the heart.—Phrase: cordi esse, be dear.

cōrām [unc. case, formed from con and os, face], adv. and prep. with abl., face to face, present, in person.

**Coriosolites**, -tum, [Celtic], m., plur., a people of Aremoric Gaul.

corium, -i, [?], N., a hide, a skin.

cornū, -ūs, [?], N., a horn.—Fig., a wing (of an army).

**corōna**, -ae, [?], F., a garland.—Fig., a circle (line, of soldiers).—Phrase: sub corona, at auction (the garland being the symbol of a captive for sale at auction).

**corpus**, -oris, [unc. root + us], N., the body, the person.—Also, a body (dead).—Less exactly, extent (of a camp).—Phrase: magnitudo corporis, size, stature.

**corrumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpī,-ruptus, [con-rumpo, break], 3. v. a., spoil, ruin.

cortex, -icis, [?], M. (also F.), bark.

Cōrus (Caurus), -ī, [?], m., the northwest wind.

cōtēs, -is, (cau-) [akin to cos, whetstone], F., a rock (sharp or jagged), a reef.

cotidiānus (quo-), -a, -um, [cotidie-+ anus], adj., daily: cotidiano labore.

cotidie (quo-), [quot (how many)
Cotta, -ae, [?], m., a Roman family name.—Esp., Lucius Aurrunculeius Cotta, a legatus of Caesar.

Cotuatus, -i, [?], m., a chief of the Carnutes.

Cotta, -i, [Celtic], m., a young Hæduan nobleman.

crassitūdō, -inis, [crassō + túdo (as if crassitu- + do)], F., thickness.

Crassus, -i, [crassus, fat], m., a Roman family name.—Esp.: 1. Marcus (Licinius) Crassus, consul with Pompey, B.C. 55; one (with Cæsar and Pompey) of the combination called the First Triumvirate. — 2. Publius Crassus (called Adulescens, the Younger, only as distinguished from his father), son of the Triumvir, serving with Cæsar in Gaul as commander of cavalry. — 3. Marcus Crassus, another son of the Triumvir, quaestor, B.C. 54, in Cæsar’s army.

crātēs, -is, [?], F., a hurdle, a fascine (a hurdle used to hold earthworks in fortification). — Also, wicker (for hurdles).

creātus, -a, -um, p.p. of creo.

crēber, -bra, -brum, [crē- (in creo, bring forth) + ber], adj., thick, close, numerous, frequent: arbores (thickly growing); praesidia (continuous, not far apart, at short intervals).

crēbrō, [prob. abl. of creber], adv., frequently, constantly, in rapid succession, at short intervals.

creōdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, [†cred-, faith (of unc. formation) + do, place], 3. v. a. and n., trust, entrust, believe, suppose.

cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?], i. v., a., burn, consume: igni cremari, be burned alive, be burned to death.

crēō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [unc. form., akin to cresco], i. v. a., (cause to grow), create.—Esp., elect, choose, appoint.

Crēs, Crētis, [Gr.], m., a Cretan. — As adj., Cretan.

crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētus, [st. crē- (also in creo, bring forth) with -sco], 3. v. n., grow, increase, swell (of a river), be swelled, increase in influence (of a man), grow great, grow powerful.

Crittōgnātus, -i, [Celtic], m., a chief of the Arverni.

crucīātus, -tūs, [cruciā- (st. of crucio, torture) + tus], m., crucifying. Hence, torture.—With a change of relation, suffering (of the person tortured).

crūdēlis, -e, [†crūdē- (in crudescare, akin to crūdus, bloody) + lis, cf. Aprilis, animālis], adj., (bloody?), cruel.—See the following.

crūdēlitās, -tātis, [crudelī- + tas], F., cruelly.

crūdēliter [crudelī- + ter], adv., cruelly, with cruelty.

crūs, crūris, [?], n., the leg.

cubīle, -is, [†cubī- (st. akin to cumbo) + lis (cf. crudelis)], n. of adj., n., a couch, a resting-place, a bed, a lair.

culmen, -inis, [unc. root (in cello?, rise) + men], n., a height, a top, a summit, a roof.

culpa, -ae, [?], F., a fault, blame, guilt.

cultūra, -ae, [cultu- (cf. colo, till)]
+ ra (f., of rus)], f., cultivation, culture: agri cultura, or agricultura, the cultivation of the soil, agriculture.

cultus, -tús, [col (in colo, till') + tus], m., cultivation. — Esp. of one's self, care. Hence, civilization, manner of life, state of civilization.

cum [?] prep. with abl., with.

cum (quam), [case-form of qui], conj., when, while, whenever. — Often rendered by a different construction in Eng.: cum non possent, not being able; cum prohibet, while defending. — Of logical relations (usually with subjv.), when, while, since, inasmuch as, though, although: cum ... tum, while ... so also; cum ... tum maxime, not only ... but especially; cum primum, as soon as.

cumulus, -i, [tcumŏ + lus], m., a mass, a heap, a pile.

cunctātiō, -ōnis, [cunctā- (st. of cunctor) + tio], f., hesitation, reluctance, indisposition to fight.

cunctor, -āri, -ātus, [?], i. v. dep., hesitate, hang back, be reluctant: non quin (have no hesitation in, etc.).

cūnctus, -a, -um, [for coniunctus ?], adj., all, all together.

cuneātim [cuneō-, wedge (reduced) + atim, as if acc. of tuncatis], adv., in the shape of a wedge. — Esp. of soldiers, in (a peculiar wedge-shaped) column of attack.

cuneus, -i, [akin to conus, cone], m., a wedge.

cuniculus, -i, [Gr.], m., (a cony). — Transf., a burrow. Hence, a mine (esp. in a military sense).

cupidē [old case-form of cupidus], adv., eagerly, zealously, earnestly. — 

cupiditās, -tātis, [cupidō- + tas], f., desire, eagerness, greed: cupiditate adductus, through over seal.

cupidus, -a, -um, [noun st. akin to cupio + dus], adj., eager, desirous, longing (for), fond of, ambitious (for), with a passion (for).

cupiō, -pere, -pī, -pītus, [partly root verb, partly from tcupi- (cf. cupidus)], 3. (and 4.) v. a. and n., be eager (for), be anxious, desire, (stronger than volo). — With dat., wish well to, be zealous for. — Phrase: cupientibus signum dat, gives the signal to his impatient soldiers.

cūr (quōr), [perh. for qua re], adv., why (rel. and intern.).

cūra, -ae, [akin to caveo, beware], f., care, anxiety, attention: curae alicui esse, be one's care, object of one's attention.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [cura], i. v. a. and n., take care, provide for. — With gerundive, cause (to be done), have (done).

currus, -ūs, [CUR (?) + us, cf. curro, run], m., a chariot (= essedum).

cursus, -sūs, [CUR (?) + tus, cf. curro, run], m., a running, running, speed, a run (in concrete sense), a course (space or direction run) : cursu adaequare (keep up with); cursu incitato or magnō, at full speed; eodem cursu, with the same impetus, without stopping; in hoc medio cursu, midway of this passage, from Britain to Ireland.

custōdia, -ae, [custod-(guard) + ia], f., custody, guard (state of being guarded). — Plur. (concretely), guards, keepers.
custōdiō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, [custod-, guard, as if custodi-], 4. v. a., keep under guard, guard.

D, [half of CIĆ = M], 500.  
D., for Decimus.

Dācus, -a, -um, [, adj., Dacian (of the Dacians, a people of Thrace, north of the Carpathian Mountains, occupying parts of Hungary, Galicia, Wallachia, etc.).— Plur., the Dacians.

damnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of damnō.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [damnō-, loss], I. v. a., (fine), find guilty, condemn.

damnum, ī, [?, DA (give) + menus (cf. alumnus)], N., (fine), loss.

Đanuvius (-bius), ī, [?], M., the Danube, the great river flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea.

dātus, -a, -um, p. p. of do.

dē [unc. case-form of pron. st. DA (in idem, dum)], adv. (only in comp.) and prep. with abl., down from, off from, from, away from. Hence, qua de causa, for which reason; de populo mereor (deserve well or ill of, properly win from); de consilio (by, cf. ex).— Esp. in partitive sense, out of, of: pauci de nostris.— Also (cf. Eng. of), about, of (about), in regard to, concerning, for: de regno desperare; nihil de bello timere, have no fear of war; de potentatu contendere; de iniuris satisfacere. — In expressions of time, just after, about: de tertia vigilia.—

D, [half of CIĆ = M], 500.

D., for Decimus.

Dācus, -a, -um, [, adj., Dacian (of the Dacians, a people of Thrace, north of the Carpathian Mountains, occupying parts of Hungary, Galicia, Wallachia, etc.).— Plur., the Dacians.

damnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of damnō.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [damnō-, loss], I. v. a., (fine), find guilty, condemn.

damnum, ī, [?, DA (give) + menus (cf. alumnus)], N., (fine), loss.

Đanuvius (-bius), ī, [?], M., the Danube, the great river flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea.

dātus, -a, -um, p. p. of do.

dē [unc. case-form of pron. st. DA (in idem, dum)], adv. (only in comp.) and prep. with abl., down from, off from, from, away from. Hence, qua de causa, for which reason; de populo mereor (deserve well or ill of, properly win from); de consilio (by, cf. ex).— Esp. in partitive sense, out of, of: pauci de nostris.— Also (cf. Eng. of), about, of (about), in regard to, concerning, for: de regno desperare; nihil de bello timere, have no fear of war; de potentatu contendere; de iniuris satisfacere. — In expressions of time, just after, about: de tertia vigilia.—

D, [half of CIĆ = M], 500.

D., for Decimus.

Dācus, -a, -um, [, adj., Dacian (of the Dacians, a people of Thrace, north of the Carpathian Mountains, occupying parts of Hungary, Galicia, Wallachia, etc.).— Plur., the Dacians.

damnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of damnō.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [damnō-, loss], I. v. a., (fine), find guilty, condemn.

damnum, ī, [?, DA (give) + menus (cf. alumnus)], N., (fine), loss.

Đanuvius (-bius), ī, [?], M., the Danube, the great river flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea.

dātus, -a, -um, p. p. of do.

dē [unc. case-form of pron. st. DA (in idem, dum)], adv. (only in comp.) and prep. with abl., down from, off from, from, away from. Hence, qua de causa, for which reason; de populo mereor (deserve well or ill of, properly win from); de consilio (by, cf. ex).— Esp. in partitive sense, out of, of: pauci de nostris.— Also (cf. Eng. of), about, of (about), in regard to, concerning, for: de regno desperare; nihil de bello timere, have no fear of war; de potentatu contendere; de iniuris satisfacere. — In expressions of time, just after, about: de tertia vigilia.—

D, [half of CIĆ = M], 500.

D., for Decimus.

Dācus, -a, -um, [, adj., Dacian (of the Dacians, a people of Thrace, north of the Carpathian Mountains, occupying parts of Hungary, Galicia, Wallachia, etc.).— Plur., the Dacians.

damnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of damnō.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [damnō-, loss], I. v. a., (fine), find guilty, condemn.

damnum, ī, [?, DA (give) + menus (cf. alumnus)], N., (fine), loss.

Đanuvius (-bius), ī, [?], M., the Danube, the great river flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea.

dātus, -a, -um, p. p. of do.

dē [unc. case-form of pron. st. DA (in idem, dum)], adv. (only in comp.) and prep. with abl., down from, off from, from, away from. Hence, qua de causa, for which reason; de populo mereor (deserve well or ill of, properly win from); de consilio (by, cf. ex).— Esp. in partitive sense, out of, of: pauci de nostris.— Also (cf. Eng. of), about, of (about), in regard to, concerning, for: de regno desperare; nihil de bello timere, have no fear of war; de potentatu contendere; de iniuris satisfacere. — In expressions of time, just after, about: de tertia vigilia.—

D, [half of CIĆ = M], 500.

D., for Decimus.

Dācus, -a, -um, [, adj., Dacian (of the Dacians, a people of Thrace, north of the Carpathian Mountains, occupying parts of Hungary, Galicia, Wallachia, etc.).— Plur., the Dacians.

damnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of damnō.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [damnō-, loss], I. v. a., (fine), find guilty, condemn.

damnum, ī, [?, DA (give) + menus (cf. alumnus)], N., (fine), loss.

Đanuvius (-bius), ī, [?], M., the Danube, the great river flowing from the mountains of Germany eastward to the Black Sea.

dātus, -a, -um, p. p. of do.

dē [unc. case-form of pron. st. DA (in idem, dum)], adv. (only in comp.) and prep. with abl., down from, off from, from, away from. Hence, qua de causa, for which reason; de populo mereor (deserve well or ill of, properly win from); de consilio (by, cf. ex).— Esp. in partitive sense, out of, of: pauci de nostris.— Also (cf. Eng. of), about, of (about), in regard to, concerning, for: de regno desperare; nihil de bello timere, have no fear of war; de potentatu contendere; de iniuris satisfacere. — In expressions of time, just after, about: de tertia vigilia.—
décidó, -cidere, -cidi, no p. p., [decadeo], 3. v. n., fall off (or down), fall (from one’s horse).

decimus, -a, -um, [†deci- (as st. of decem) + mus], adj., tenth. — Masc. as noun, a Roman praenomen (see Brutus).

décipió, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [de-capio], 3. v. a., (take off, catch), beguile, deceive.

déclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-claro], i. v. a., (clear off), make plain, declare (decide and state).

déclīvis, -e, [de-clivis (or clivus, slope)], adj., sloping down, inclined. — Plur. as noun, slopes.

déclīvitās, -tātis, [de-clivī- + tas], F., slope: ad declivitatem, downward.

décrētum, -i, [prop. N. of decretus], N., a decree, a decision.

décrētus, -a, -um, p. p. of decerno.

decumānus, -a, -um, [decumō (reduced) + anus], adj., belonging to the tenth: porta (the rear gate, of a camp, where the tenth cohort was posted).

decuriō, -ōnis, [decuria- (reduced) + o], M., a commander (of a decuria of cavalry, a small squadron).

décurrō, -currere, -currī (cucurri), -currūs, [de-curro], 3. v. n., run down, run away, hurry off.

decus, -oris, [unc. root (cf. decet, it becomes) + us], N., honor, glory.

dēdecus, -oris, [de-decus], N., disgrace, dishonor.

dēditicius, -a, -um, [deditō- (reduced) + cius], adj., surrendered. — Plur. as noun, prisoners (taken by surrender), subjects, persons surrendered.

dēditiō, -ōnis, [de-datio, cf. dedo], F., surrender: in dēditionem accipere, receive one’s surrender; in dēditionem venire, to surrender.

dēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of dedo.

dēdō, -dere, -dēdi, -ditus, [de-do], 3. v. a., give over, surrender, give up, devote. — In pass. or with reflex., surrender one’s self, submit.

dēducō, -ducere, -düxi, -ductus, [de-duco], 3. v. a., lead down or off, lead away, withdraw, draw off (praesidia), take away (of men), bring away, lead (from one place to another), bring (into a situation). — Fig., induce, bring, lead. — Esp. of ships, launch (draw down); of women, marry (used of the man, cf. nubō); of things, bring, draw, turn. So, raise (a man to fortune). — Also, remain in perilum (cause a perilous situation); re in controversiam dēducta (coming to, etc.); dēduci milites (march out, led by their commander).

dēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of deduco.

dēfatigātiō (-fet-), -ōnis, [de-fatigatio], F., exhaustion.

dēfatigātus (-fet-), -a, -um, p. p. of defatigo.

dēfatigō (-fet-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-fatigo], i. v. a., wear out, exhaust, worry, tire out.

dēfectiō, -ōnis, [de-factio, cf. defeicio, fail], F., falling off, defection, falling away, revolt.

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnus, [de-fendo, strike], 3. v. a., ward off, defend one’s self against. — Also, with changed relation, defend, protect.
défensió, -ónis, [de-ţfensio, cf. defendo], F., a defence.

defensor, -óris, [de-ţensor, cf. defendo], M., a defender. — Also, a means of defence, a defence, a buffer.

— Phrase: speciem defensorum, a show of defence.

deférerō, -ferre, -tuli, -látus, [defero], irr. v. a., carry down, carry away, bring, land (of ships). — Pass., be borne down or on, drift (of ships), turn aside: delati in scrobes (falling). — Fig., confer upon, put in one's hands, hand over, report, lay before.

defessus, -a, -um, p. p. of defetiscor.

defetiscor, -fetisci. -fessus, [defatiscor, gape], 3. v. dep., crack open.

— Fig., become exhausted. — defessus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., exhausted: defessus, an exhausted man.

deficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus, [defacio, make], 3. v. a. and n., fail, fall away, revolt, fall off, abandon (with ab): animo (despond).

defigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus, [defigo, fasten], 3. v. a., fix (in or down), plant, set, fasten, drive down.

definīō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, [de-finio, end'], 4. v. a., set limits to, fix, appoint.

defixus, -a, -um, p. p. of defigo.

defluō, -fluere, -flūxi, -flūxus, [de-fluo], 3. v. n., flow down, flow apart, divide (of a river).

defore, see desum.

deformis, -e, [de-forma (shape), weakened and decl. as adj.], adj., uncomely, unshapely, ugly, bad-looking.

defugīō, -fugere, -fūgī, no p. p., [de-fugio], 3. v. a. and n., fly from, avoid, fly, flee.

deficiō (dēlic-), -icere, -iēci, -iectus, [de-iacio], 3. v. a., cast down, throw down, drive off, drive out, dislodge, kill (pass., fall), overthrow, throw on shore (of ships), deprive, reduce: ea spe deiecti, disappointed in this hope.

defectus, -a, -um, p. p. of deicio.

defectus, -tūs, [de-lactus, cf. iacio, throw], M., a declivity, a slope.

deinceps, [dein- (cf. deinde) + ceps, cf. CAP in capio], adv., in succession.

deinde (dein) [de-inde, thence], adv., then, next.

defatūs, -a, -um, p. p. of defero.

deflectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [deflecto, cf. delicio], I. v. a., delight.

— Pass., take delight, delight.

deflectus (di-), -tūs, [de-lectus, cf. deligo, select], M., a levy, a conscription.

deflectus, -a, -um, p. p. of deligo.

defleō, -lēre, -lēvi, -lētus, [de-ľcdeo (akin to lino)], 2. v. a., (smear out), blot out, wipe out (of a disgrace). — Fig., annihilate, destroy.

defletus, -a, -um, p. p. of deleo.

defliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [def-libero, perh. akin to libra, balance], I. v. a. and n., discuss, consult, deliberate: re deliberata, after discussing the matter.

deflibrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [tdef-libro-, bark (adj. de-liber)], I. v. a., peel, strip (of bark).

deflictum, -i, [N. p. p. of delinquo], N., thing left undone, failure, offence.
déligenus, -a, -um, p. p. of deligo (āre).

déligen, -igere, -lägi, -läctus, [delego], 3. v. a., choose out, select.—

déllectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., chosen, picked.

délīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-ligō, bind], 1. v. a., tie down, moor, tie.


dementia, -ae, [dement- + ia], f., madness, folly.

dēmēsus, -a, -um, p. p. of demeto.

dēmetō, -metere, -messuī, -messus, [de-meto, reāp], 3. v. a., reāp, cut down.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [de-migrō, depart], 1. v. n., move away (change residence), move one's effects, emigrate.

dēminūō, -ūere, -ūī, -ūtus, [de-minuo, cf. minus], 3. v. a. and n., diminish, curtail, lessen, detract: de voluptate quicquam (make any diminution of): quid de legibus (disregard in any manner); de sua benevolentia (lessen his good-will).

dēminūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of deminuō.

dēmittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus, [de-mitto], 3. v. a., let go down (cf. mittō), let down, stick down (at the bottom of a ditch).—In pass. or with reflex., let one's self down, descend, set one's self down.— Fig., despond (se animo), be discouraged.—dēmissus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., low-hanging, bowed (of the head).

dēmō, dēmere, dēmūs, dēmptus, [de-emo, take], 3. v. a., take down, take off, remove, take away.

dēmōnstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of demonstro.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-monstro, show], 1. v. a., point out, show, represent, mention, state, speak of, make known.

dēmoror, -āri, -ātus, [de-moror], 1. v. dep., delay, retard.

dēmptus, -a, -um, p. p. of demo.

dēmum [acc. of ὁdēmus (superl. of de), nethermost, last], adv., at last, at length (not before).

dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-nego], 1. v. a. and n., deny, refuse, say not.

dēnī, -ae, -a, [for decnī, decrem reduced + nus], distrib. num. adj. plur., ten each, ten (on each side), ten (in sets of ten).

dēnique [ὁdēnō- (de + nus, cf. demum) que], adv., at last: molto denique die, not till late, etc.— Of order, finally, in a word, in short. — Of preference; at any rate (if no better, etc.).

dēnus, -a, -um, [?], adj., thick, crowded, dense.

dēnuntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-nuntio], 1. v. a., announce (with notion of threat), threaten, declare, warn, order.

dēpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, [de-pello], 3. v. a., drive off, drive away), dislodge, avert.

dēperdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [de-perdo], 3. v. a., lose, be deprived of: tantum opinionis (forfeit).

dēperēō, -perīre, -perī, -perītūrus, [de-pereō], irr. v. n., be lost.
dépoñō, -pônerē, -posūi, -positus, [de-pono], 3. v. a., lay down, lay aside, deposit. — Fig., lose, abandon (hope), blot out (memory), resign.
dépopulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dépopulor.
dépopulor, -āri, -ātus, [de-popu-lor], i. v. dep., ravage, lay waste; p. p., pass., laid waste.
déportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [de-porto], i. v. a., carry off, carry away, remove.
déposcō, -poscere, -poposī, no p. p., [de-posco], 3. v. a., demand earnestly, demand, call for, claim.
dépositus, -a, -um, p. p. of dépno.
déprecātōr, -ōris, [de-precator, cf. deprecō], M., a mediator (to beg off something for somebody): eo déprecatore, by his mediation.
déprecor, -āri, -ātus, [de-precor], i. v. dep., pray to avert something, pray (with accessory notion of relief), beg, beg off, pray for pardon, pray to be spared, resort to prayers, ask for quarter, beseech.
déprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, hēnsus, [de-prehendo, grasps], 3. v. a., capture, catch, seize, take possession of. — As in Eng., catch (come upon), surprise.
déprehensus, -a, -um, p. p. of déprehendo.
dépugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [de-pugno], fight decisively, fight it out.
dépulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of dépello.
dérectē (dī-) [old case-form of dérectus], adv., straight: ad perpendicular (perpendicularly).
dérectus (dī-), -a, -um, p. p. of dérego.
déregō (dī-), -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus, [de-rego], 3. v. a., straighten out, direct: aciem (form); opera (set in order, arrange). — dérectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., straight, straight up and down, perpendicular.
dérivātus, -a, -um, p. p. of dérivo.
dérivō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [perh. immediately fr. dé-rivus (brook), prob. through adj. st.], i. v. a., draw off (water), divert.
dérogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [de-rogo, in its political sense], i. v. a., take away, withdraw.
déscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scen-surus, [de-scando], 3. v. n., climb down, descend. — Fig., resort to, have recourse to, adopt (with ad).
désecō, -secāre, -secūi, -sectus, [de-seco], i. v. a., cut off.
déserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, [de-sero, join], 3. v. a., disunite. — Esp., abandon, forsake, give up, leave in the lurch. — désertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., deserted, solitary.
désertor, -ōris, [de-tseror, cf. desero], M., a deserter.
désertus, -a, -um, p. p. of désero.
désiderātus, -a, -um, p. p. of désidero.
désiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?, cf. considerō], i. v. a., feel the want of, desire, miss, need, desire (want to see), lose (of soldiers). — Pass., be missing (lost): perpauci désiderati quin cunti, etc. (all with very few exceptions).
désidia, -ae, [desid- (st. of deses, de- sed as st.)], F., idleness, sloth.
désignātus, -a, -um, p. p. of designō.
désignō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [de-signō], i. v. a., mark out, indicate, mean.
désiliō, -silire, -silīu, -sultus, [desalio], 4. v. n., leap down, leap (down), jump overboard, dismount.
désistō, -sistere, -stītī, -stitūrus, [de-sisto], 3. v. n., stand off, cease, stop, desist from, abandon: fuga (cease flying).
déspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of despicio.
déspectus, -tūs, [de-tspectus, cf. despicio], m., a view down, view (from a height): oppidum haberet despectūs (sheer precipices).
despérātiō, -onis, [de-śperatio, cf. despero], F., despair, desperation.
despérātus, -a, -um, p. p. of despero.
despérō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [destero, cf. speś, hope], i. v. n. (but see below), cease to hope, despair.—
despérātus, -a, -um, as pass., despaired of. — Also as adj., (hopeless?, perh. orig. despaired of), hence desperate.
despiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [de-specto], 3. v. a. and n., look down, look down upon. — Fig. (cf. Eng. equivalent), look down upon, despise.
despoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [despolio], i. v. a., strip off. — With change of relation, strip (also fig., as in Eng.).
destinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of destino.
destinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [perh. destinā-, a prop (fr. de-sta-nus)], i. v. a., fasten, make fast, make firm, get fast hold of, catch firmly. Hence, fig., fix upon, appoint, choose, destine.
destituō, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtus, [de-stātue], 3. v. a., set apart (from one's self), abandon, desert.
destitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of destituō.
destīctus, -a, -um, p. p. of stringo.
destīngō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictus, [de-stringo], 3. v. a., strip off. — Also (cf. despolio), strip, draw (of swords, stripping them of their scabbards).
dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, [desum], irr. v. n., (be away), be wanting, be lacking, fail. — Esp., fail to do one's duty by, etc. — Often, lack (changing relation of subj. and following dat.), be without, not have.
dēsuper [de super], adv., from above.
deterior, -ius, [compar. of ῥăter (de + terus, cf. interior)], adj., (farther down), inferior, worse: deteriora vectigalia facere (impair).
dēterreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -territus, [de-terreo], 2. v. a., frighten off; deter, prevent (esp. by threats, but also generally).
dētestātus, -a, -um, p. p. of detestor.
dētestor, -āri, -ātus, [de-testor], i. v. a., (call the gods to witness to prevent something), entreat (from a thing). — Also, curse.
dētineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus.
dētrāctō
[de-teneo], 2. v. a., hold off, detain, delay, stop.

dētrāctō (-trecto). -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-tracto], 1. v. a., (hold off from one's self), avoid, shun.

dētrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of de-traho.

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [de-trahō], 3. v. a., drag off, snatch (away). — With less violence, take away, take off, withdraw (with no violence at all).

dētrictō, see detracto.

dētrimentōsus, -a, -um, [detrimentō- (reduced) + osus], adj., detrimental, hurtful.

dētrimentum, -ī, [de-trimentum (tri- in tero, rub, + mentum), cf. detero], n., (a rubbing off), loss, injury. — Esp., defeat, disaster.

dēturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of deturbo.

dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [deturbo, disturb], 1. v. a., drive off (in confusion).

dēūrō, -ūere, -ūssī, -ūstus, [deuro], 3. v. a., burn off, burn up.

dēus, -ī, [akin to divus, Iovis, dies], m., a god.

deūstus, -a, -um, p. p. of deuro.

dēvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectus, [de-veho], 3. v. a., carry away, bring (to a place), bring along.

dēveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [de-venio], 4. v. n., come away, land (come down from the sea), come (from one place to another).

dē vexus, -a, -um, [prop. a p. p. of deveho], adj., sloping. — Neut. plur. as noun, slopes, hillsides.

dēvictus, -a, -um, p. p. of devinco.

dēvincō, -vincere, -vičī, -victus, [de-vinco], 3. v. a., conquer (so as to prostrate), subdue (entirely).

dēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [de-voco], 1. v. a., call down (or away).
— Esp., fig., invite, bring: fortunas in dubium (risk).

dēvōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of de-voveo.

dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, [de-voveo], 2. v. a., vow (away). — Less exactly, devote. — dēvōtus, -a, -um, p. p. as noun, a devoted follower (sworn to die with his companion).

dexter, -era, -erum, (-tra, -trum), [unc. st. (perh. akin to digitus ?) + terus], adj., right (in the right hand).
— dextra, f., (sc. manus), the right hand (esp. used as a pledge of faith, as with us).

Diablintes (-tres), -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of the Aulerici.


dīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dīcō- (cf. causi-dicus)], 1. v. a., adjudge, assign (in some legal manner). — Less exactly (esp. with reflex.), assign, make over: se in clientelam (bind one's self, attach one's self); se in servitutem (surrender).

dīcō, dicere, dīxī, dictus, [dic, in dīco and dicus], 3. v. a. and n., (point out?), say, speak, name. — Esp., with authority, name, appoint, fix: ius (administer, cf. dīco); sententiam (give). — Special uses: dicunt, they
dictīō, -ōnis, [dic (as root of dico) + tio], F., a speaking, a pleading (cf. dico): causae (pleading one's cause, trial).

dictum, -i, [N. p. p. of dico], N., a thing said, a statement, a remark, a command: dicto audiens esse alicui (be obedient, obey).

didūcō, -ducere, -duξ̣i, -ductus, [dis-duco], 3. v. a., draw apart, lead apart, separate, divide.

diēs, -ēs, [prob. for dives, DVU + AS], M. (rarely F. in some uses), a day (in all Eng. senses). — Also, time: in diēs, from day to day, with idea of increase or diminution: diem ex die ducere, put off a thing day after day; ad diem, on the day; dies longior, a later time.

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus, [dis-fero], irr. v. a. and n., bear apart, spread. — Also, postpone, de- fer, differ.

difficultās, -tātis, [difficilī- (weakened) + ūas], F., difficulty: magna difficultate adficiebatur, was much troubled; rei frumentariae (difficulty of supplying grain).

difficulter [difficilī- (weakened) + ter], adv., with difficulty; compar., with greater difficulty.

diffidō, -fidere, -fūsus sum, [dis-fido], 3. v. n., distrust, not have confidence.

diffusus, -a, -um, p. p. of diffido.

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdi, -fūsus, [dis-fundo], 3. v. a., spread out.

digitus, -i, [?] M., a finger: pollex (the thumb). — As in Eng., a finger's breadth, a finger (as a measure).

dignitās, -tātis, [dignō- + tas], F., worthiness, worth, dignity, prestige, position (superior); tribuere (have respect for).

dignus, -a, -um, [?, perh. root of dico + nus], adj., worthy.

diūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dis-iudico, judge], 1. v. a. and n., decide (between two).

dilēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of diligo.

diligenter [diligent- + ter], adv., carefully, with care, with exactness, exactly, with pains: conservavit (took pains to save); parum diligenter, too carelessly.

diligentia, -ae, [diligent- + ia], F., care, pains, painstaking, diligence: remittere (cease to take pains, take less care).

dilīgō, -ligere, -lēxi, -lēctus, [dis-lego], 3. v. a., (choose out), love, be fond of. — See also diligens.

dimēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of dimetior.

dimētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus, [dimetio], 4. v. dep., measure (in parts), measure out (esp. of camp). — dimēnsus, -a, -um, measured.

dimicātiō, -ōnis, [dimico], F., fight, contest.

dimicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [dimico], 1. v. n., (brandish swords to decide a contest?), fight (a decisive battle), risk an engagement.

dimidius, -a, -um, [dis-mediōs],
adj., (divided in the middle), half.

- Neut. as noun, the half.

dimittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [dis-mitto], 3. v. a., let go away, let slip, let pass, let go, give up, relinquish, abandon: oppugnationem (raise); victoriam (let go, on purpose). — Also, send in different directions, send about, despatch, detail, disband, dismiss.

dirēctus, -a, -um, see directus.

direptus, -a, -um, p. p. of diripio.

dirigō, see derigo.

dirīmō, -emere, -ēmī, -emptus, [dis-emo, take], 3. v. a., take apart, break up (a conference).

diripio, -ripare, -ripūi, -reptus, [dis-rapi], 3. v. a., seize (in different directions), plunder, pillage, ravage.

Dis, Ditis, [akin to dives, rich, as the earth is the source of riches], M., Pluto (the god of the under world, and so of death).

discedō, -cedere, -cessi, -cessūrus, [dis-cedo, go], 3. v. n., withdraw, depart, retire, leave (with ab), go away: locus unde discesserant, the place which they had left; ab officio (fail in one's duty); spes hostibus (forsake, fail); ab signis (leave the ranks); ab armis (lay down one's arms).

disceptātor, -tōris, [disceptā- (st. of discpto, decide) + tor], M., a judge, an arbiter, umpire.

discernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus, [dis-cerno, separate]. 3. v. a., separate, distinguish.

dissensus, -sūs, [dis-cessus, cf. discedo], M., a departure, a withdrawal.

disciplīna, -ae, [discipulō- (reduced) + ina, cf. rapina], F., (pillage ?), discipline, instruction, a system (of doctrine, etc.), a course of instruction.

disciūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus, [dis-claudo], 3. v. a., shut apart, keep apart, separate, divide.

disçō, discere, didicī, discītūrus, [for *disco (dic + sco)], 3. v. a. and n., learn: discendi causa, for instruction.

discrimen, -inis, [dis-crimen, cf. discerno], N., a separation, a decision. Hence, a moment of decision, a crisis, critical condition, danger.

discussus, -a, -um, p. p. of discutio.

discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus, [dis-quatio, shake], 3. v. a., strike (or shake) apart, beat away, drive away, clear away, dislodge, shatter.

disiciō, -icere, -īcī, -iectus, [dis-iacio], 3. v. a., hurl apart, break up (a phalanx), disperse, tear off (yards). — disiectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., scattered, broken, in disorder: pabulatio (in widely scattered places).

disiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of disicio.

dispār, -paris, [dis-par], adj., unequal, inferior, ill-matched, different.

disparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [dis-
divertó, -vertere, -erti, -versus, [dis-verte], 3. v. a. and n., turn aside (or apart), separate.

diversus, p. p. of divertó.

distineó, -tinère, -tinuit, -tentus, [dis-teneo], 2. v. a., keep apart, hold asunder, keep from uniting, cut off (in military sense), isolate.

distò, -stäre, [dis-sto], 1. v. n., stand apart, be distant: quantum iunctura distabat (as far as the distance between, etc.) ; quantum summa labra distabant (the width [of the ditch] at the top).

distrahó, -trahere, -traxi, -tractus, [dis-traho], 3. v. a., drag asunder, separate. Hence, distract.

distribuó, -buere, -buī, -būtus, [dis-tribuo, assign], 3. v. a., assign (to several), distribute, divide.

dittissimus, -a, -um, superl. of dives.

dii [prob. acc. of st. akin to dies], adv., for a time, a long time, for some time, long: tam diu, so long ; quam diu, how long, as long as; diutius, any longer; diutissimé, for the longest time, longest.

diurnus, -a, -um, [†dius, akin to diy and dies, + nus], adj., of the day, daily (as opposed to nightly): nocturnis diurnisque itineribus (by night and day).

diūtinos, -a, -um, [diu + tinus], adj., (long in time), long continued.

diūturnitás, -tātis, [diūturno + tas], F., length of time, long continuance, length (in time).

diūturnus, -a, -um, [diu + turnus, cf. hesternus], adj., long continued, long (in time).

diversus, p. p. of divertó.

divertó, -vertere, -verti, -versus, [dis-verto], 3. v. a. and n., turn aside (or apart), separate.
sus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., separate, distant, diverse, different.

dives, -itis, [?], adj., rich.

Diviciacús, -i, [Celtic], m.: 1. A leader of the Hædui, brother of Dumnorix.— 2. A leader of the Suessiones.

Divicō, -onis, [Celtic], m., a leader of the Helvetii.

dividō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsus, [dist. vīdō, VIDH (?), cf. vidua, widow],
3. v. a., divide, separate. — dividus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., divided: Gallia divisā est.— Also, spread out.

divinus, -a, -um, [divō- (as if divi) + nus], adj., of the gods, divine: res divinae, matters of religion, religion.

1. dō, dare, dedī, datus, [da, give, cf. 2. do], 1. v. a., give, afford, offer, allow, concedo, assign, grant: responsūm (answer, reply); sibi minus dubitationis dari, that he had less hesitation; filiam in matrimonium (marry); se vento (run before the wind); mānus (submit, yield, from holding out the hands to be bound); hostes in fugam (put to flight); operam (take pains, exert one’s self, see to it that, etc.); negotium uti (employ one to, etc., engage one to, etc.); suspicionem (afford, make a show, but also have an appearance); arbitros (assign referees, a judicial function).

2. do [DHA, place], confounded with 1. do, but appearing in comp., place, put, as abdō, condō.

doceō, docère, docuf, doctus, [unc. formation akin to dico and disco], 2. v. a., teach, show, inform, repre-
sent, state (in the course of the narrative).

documentum, -i, [docu- (?) (as st. of doceo) + mentum], N., a means of teaching, a proof, a warning, an example.

doleō, dolère, doliū, doliūrus, [perh. dolō- (st. of dolus, craft)], 2. v. n., feel pain, suffer.— Esp. mentally, be pained, grieve.

dolor, -ōris, [dol- (as root of doleo) + or], m., pain (physical or mental), distress, indignation, chagrín, vexation: magno dolore ferre, be very indignant, feel much chagrín; magno esse dolori, to be a great annoyance or sorrow; almost concrete, a grievance.

dolus, -i, [perh. akin to doleo, originally stroke?], m., an artifice, deceit, tricks, a stratagem.

domesticus, -a, -um, [domō- (as if domes-, cf. modestus) + ticus], adj., (of the house), of one’s home, one’s own, at home: bellum (domestic, internal, intestine).

domicilium, -i, [perh. domō- + tčilium (fr. root of colo)], N., an abode, a house, a dwelling-place, a house (as a permanent home).

dominor, -āri, -ātus, [dominō-], 1. v. dep., rule, be master.

dominus, -i, [↑domō- (ruling) + nus], m., a master, an owner.

Domitius, -i, [domitiō- (reduced) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, consul in B.C. 54.

domus, -i (-ūs), [DOM (build?) + us (-os and -us)], f., a house, a home: domi, at home; domum, home,
dōnātus, -a, -um, [duo + bius, cf. superbus and dubito], adj., doubtful: est dubium, there is doubt, it is doubtful.
ducentī, -ae, -a, [duō-centī (plur. of centum)], adj., two hundred.
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [duc (in dux)], 3. v. a., lead, draw, bring (of living things): primum pilum (be first centurion).—Esp. of a general, lead, march. With or without in matrimoniun, marry (of the man).—Less exactly, run (a line, a ditch), draw, make.—Fig., prolong, drag out. As mercantile word, and so fig., reckon, consider.
ductus, -ī, [duc + tus], m., lead, command.
dūm [pron. DA, prob. acc., cf. tum], conj., at that time.—Also, while, so long as. Hence, till, until.
Dumnorīx, -īgīs, [Celtic], m., a leader of the Hāedui, brother of Diviciacus.
duo, -ae, -o, [dual, of st. dūvō, cf. bis], num. adj., two.
duodecim [duo-decem], indecl. num. adj., twelve.
duodecimus, -ā, -um, [duo-decimus], num. adj., twelfth.
duōdēni, -ae, -a, [duo deni], num. adj., twelve (in a set).
duōdēvigintī [duo de viginti, twenty], indecl. num. adj., eighteen.
duplex, -plicis, [duo+tplex, cf. plico, fold'], adj., two-fold, double: acies (in two divisions, arranged for successive attacks in the same direction, or for the same tactical purpose).
duplicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [duplic-],
1. v. a., double, increase two-fold.
dūritia, -ae, [durō- + tia], f.,
hardness, hardship.
dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [durō-],
1. v. a., harden, toughen, make hardy.
Dūrocortorum, -i, [Celtic], N.,
the chief city of the Remi, now Rheims.

ē, shortened form of ex (esp. in composition), which see.
ēā [instr. or abl. of is], adv., this way, that way, thus, in that direction, in that quarter.
Eburōnes, -um, [Celtic], m. plur.,
a Belgian tribe, dependents of the Treveri, living north of these between the Meuse and the Rhine.
Eburovīces, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe, a branch of the Aulerci living in the region of modern Perche.
ēdiscō, -discere, -didēci, no p.p.,
[ex-disco], 3. v. a., learn off, learn by heart, commit to memory.
ēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of edō.
ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus, [ex-do],
3. v. a., put forth, give forth: exempla cruciatusque (make an example by inflicting severe torture). —
ēditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., elevated, raised, high.
ēdoceō, -docēre, -docuī, -doctus,
[ex-doceo, teach], 2. v. a., show forth, explain, inform, tell, instruct.
ēducō, -ducere, -düxi, -ductus,
[ex-duco], 3. v. a., lead out, lead forth, draw (a sword), bring out (baggage-train).
eductus, -a, -um, p. p. of educo.
effarcīō (-ferc-), -farcīre, -farsi,
-fertus, [ex-farcio], 4. v. a., stuff out, fill in (solid).
effeminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-tfeminō, or perh. †effeminō- (or -i), in either case from femina], 1. v. a., make into a woman. — Less exactly, (make like a woman), enervate, weaken: animos (enfeeble, debauch).
efferō, efferre, extuli, ēlatus, [ex-fero], irr. v. a., carry out, bring out, carry away. — Less exactly and fig., spread abroad, make known, publish abroad, puff up, elate (cf. Eng. “carried away”). — Also (cf. edo), raise up.
efficīō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [ex-facīo], 3. v. a., make out, make, enable, accomplish, cause, produce, cause to be, make into, make out (furnish): ut praebērent (make them afford); ut sint laboris (make capable of); ut posse (make possible); classem (get together, construct).
-effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus,
[ex-fodio], 3. v. a., dig out, gouge out.

efossus, -a, -um, p. p. of effodio.
effugīō, -fugere, -fugi, -fugītūrus, [ex-fugio], 3. v. a., escape, flee (absolutely), fly from.
egĕns, pres. p. of egeo.
egĕō, egĕre, egui̇, no p. p., [tegō- (cf. indigus, in want)], 2. v. n., want, need, be in want.— egĕns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., needy, destitute.
egestās, -tātis, [unc. st. (perh. egent-)] + tas], F., poverty, destitution.
egō, mei̇, [cf. Eng. I], pron., I (me, etc.). — Plur., nōs, we, us, etc.

egomet, nōsmet, etc., pron. emph., with encl. -met, I, we.
egredior, -redni̇, -gressus, [exgradior, step], 3. v. dep., march out, go out, move beyond: finis (pass beyond); navi (land, disembark); unde erant egressi, the place they had left; ex oppido (evacuate).
egregiē [old case-form of egregius], adv., remarkably, finely, extremely well.
egregius, -a, -um, [e grege (out of the herd) + ius], adj., out of the common, remarkable, superior, excellent, uncommon, special.
egressus, -a, -um, p. p. of egredior.
egressus, -sūs, [e-gressus, cf. ingressus and egredior], m., a landing.

êiciō, -icere, -íeci, -iectus, [exficio], 3. v. a., cast out, drive out, cast up (cf. edo). — With reflex., rush out, rush.

êiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of eicio.
êiusmodī [eius modi], as adj. phrase, of this kind, of such a kind, such, of such a nature, of this nature.
êilabor, -läbi, -lapsus, [ex-labor], 3. v. dep., slip out, escape.
êlapsus, -a, -um, p. p. of labor.
êlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of effero.
Elaver, -veris, [Celtic], N., a tributary of the Loire, now Allier.
êlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of eligo.
elphantus, -ī, [Gr. acc. ēléphantos, declining], M., an elephant.
eluteī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people dependent on the Arverni.
êliciō, -licere, -licūi, -licitus, [exlacio], 3. v. a., entice out, draw out.
elīgō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctus, [exlego], 3. v. a., pick out, select.—
elēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., picked (troops).
Èlusātēs, -ium, [Iberian], M. plur., a people of Aquitania.
êmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [exmigro], 1. v. n., remove (permanently), emigrate. — With domo (in same sense).
êminēō, -něre, -nu̇o, no p. p., [ex-†mineo, project], 2. v. n., stand out, project.
êminus [ex manu, hand, cf. cominus], adv., at a distance, at long range.
êmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [ex-mitto], 3. v. a., let go, drop, send out, throw, hurl, discharge. — Pass., or with reflex., rush out.
emō, emere, êmī, emptus, [EM?, orig. take], 3. v. a., (take, only in compounds). — Esp., buy (cf. Eng. sell, orig. give), purchase.
ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus, [ex-nāscor], 3. v. dep., spring out, grow out.

ēnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of enāscor.

enim [prob. e (in en, ecce) + nam], (always postpositive) conj., really. — Esp. as explanatory, for, but, now, for in fact: neque enim, for of course . . . not, for you see . . . not.

ēnūntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of enuntio.

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [enuntio, announce], i. v. a., make known, report, disclose, reveal: hostibus enuntiari, (that) the enemy were informed of.

eō, ire, īvī (iī), ītūrus, [root īr.], irr. v. n., go, pass, march, advance, proceed. — Pass. inf. īri used with verbs to form the fut. pass. inf.

eō [old dat. of is], adv., thither, there (in sense of thither). — Often translated by more def. expressions in Eng., to the place (where, etc.), on them (it, him, etc.) : usque eo ut, to that degree that, so far that.

eō, abl. neut. used as the abl. of degree of difference; see is.

eōdēm [old dat. of idem, cf. eo, thither], adv., to the same place, in the same place (cf. eo), there also: eodem conducxit (to the same place [as himself]); eodem pertinere, look in the same direction, tend the same way; eodem illo pertinere . . . ut, favored the same idea . . . that, belonged to the same design . . . that.

ephippiātus, -a, -um; [ephippiā- (as if st. of verb, cf. auratus) + tus, see ephippium], adj., saddled, caparisoned; equites (riding on saddles, as a less manly form of horsemanship).

ephippium, -i, [Gr. ἐφιππίον (ἐπί, upon; ἐπίπ, a horse)], N., a horse-cloth, caparison, housing.

epistula (epistola), -ae, [Gr.], F., a letter, a note, a message (in writing), a despatch.


epulum, -i, plur., -ae, -ārum, [?], N. (sing.), F. (plur.), a feast, a banquet.

eques, -itīs, [equō + tīs (reduced)], m., a horseman, a rider. — Plur., cavalry. — Esp. (as orig. serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). — So also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class).

equester, -tris, -tre, [equit- + tris], adj., of knights, of cavalry.

equitātus, -tūs, [equītā- (as st. of equīto, ride) + tus], m., cavalry, horse (troops serving on horseback).

equus, -i, [AK (swift) + vus], m., a horse.

Eratosthenēs, -is, [Gr.], m., a Greek philosopher and mathematician of Alexandria, born at Cyrene B.C. 276. He was famous for his investigations in geography and astronomy.

ērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of erigo.

ēreptus, -a, -um, p. p. of eripio.

ergā [prob. instr. of same st. as ergo], prep. with acc., towards (of feeling and conduct): fides erga aliquem.
ergó (-ō rarely) [unc. form, perh. dat., cf. erga], adv., therefore, then.

erigo, -rigere, -réxi, -rēctus, [ex-rego, make straight], 3. v. a., set up straight, raise up. — With reflex., get up. — erēctus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., high, high and straight.

eripio, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptus, [ex-rapio], 3. v. a., snatch away, wrest (a thing from), deprive (one of a thing, changing the relation in Eng.), take from, rescue: se eripere ne, save one's self from doing a thing.

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [?], i. v. n., wander, go astray, err, be mistaken.

erumpō, -rumpere, -rupi, -ruptus, [ex-rumpo], 3. v. a. and n., burst out, sally out, make a sally.

eruptiō, -ōnis, [ex-ruptio, cf. erumpo], F., a breaking out, a sally, a sortie.

essesā, -ae (-um, -ī), [Celtic], F. (and N.), a war chariot (of the Gauls).

essēdārius, -ī, [essedā- (-a) (reduced) + arius], M., a charioteer (a warrior fighting from an esedum).

Esuvīi, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the region of Normandy.

et, conj., and: et ... et, both ... and.

etiam [et iam], conj., also, even, even now, yet: quin etiam, nay more.

etsī [et sī], conj., even if, although, though.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus, [ex-vado, go], 3. v. n., escape.

ēvellō, -vellere, -velli (-vēsī), -vulsus, [ex-vello], 3. v. a., pull out, pluck out.

ēveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [ex-venio], 4. v. n., come out, turn out, happen.

ēventus, -tūs, [ex-ventus, cf. conventus and evenio], M., result, issue, fate, success.

ēvocātus, -a, -um, p.p. of evoco.

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-voco], i. v. a., call out, call forth, summon, challenge (ad pugnam), carry away (cupiditas longius), invite (omnes ad se spe praedae). — ēvocātus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj. and noun, veteran (of soldiers who have served their time and are only called out in emergencies), veterans (almost equal volunteers).

ēvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [ex-volo], i. v. n., fly out, rush out.

ex (ē) [?], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., out of (cf. ab, away from), out. — Less exactly, from (lit. and fig.), of (made of): faciā ex difficillimus redegerat, had made easy instead of most difficult, as they were. Hence, after. — Also, on account of, in accordance with, by means of. — Also, above (raised from). — Also (cf. ab), in, on: una ex parte, on one side; ex itinere, on the march, starting from it; ex vinculis, in chains, doing something from them; so, ex equis, on horseback; ex eorum corporibus; ex ea civitate, from that nation, belonging there; ex fuga, in their flight. — Other phrases: ex commutatione dolere, suffer from the change; diem ex die, day after day; magna ex parte,
in a great degree, for the most part; quae rerere ex, ask of, ask, cf. ab; ex eo plus doloris capere (on this account, etc.); ex cratibus (of, made of); unus e filiis (one of, etc.); ex communi consensu, by common consent; ex percontatione, by inquiry, from one which was made; ex Hispania (a man from); ex eo die quintus (from, after); ex usu, for the advantage, cf. "of use"; ex planitie editus (above, raised out of); e regione, opposite; ex litteris (in accordance with, from facts stated in, etc.); ex tertia parte aestimare (as a third, cf. heres ex asse), ex contrario, on the contrary.—In comp., out, completely (cf. "out and out"), off, up, after, from, un-.

exactus, -a, -um, p. p. of exigo.

exagitó, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-agito, freq. of ago, drive], i. v. a., pursue, drive, harass, persecute.

examinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of examine.

examinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [examin- (st. of examen, tongue of the balance)], i. v. a., weigh.

examinātus, -a, -um, p. p. of examine.

exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [exanimō-], i. v. a., deprive of breath (life), kill.—exanimātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., out of breath, exhausted.

exārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, no p. p., [ex-ardesco, cf. ardeo, burn], 3. v. n., blaze up.—Fig., become enraged, become excited.

exaudiō, -āre, -ivī, -itu, [ex-audio], 4. v. a., hear (from a distance), hear distinctly.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus, [ex-cedo], 3. v. n., go out, leave (with abl.), withdraw, retire.—Absolutely, leave the fight.

excello, -ere, -ui, -sus, [ex-†cello], 3. v. a. and n., raise, rise, surpass; exc. — excelsus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., high, elevated.

excelsus, -a, -um, p. p. of excello.

exceptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [excepto, cf. excipio], i. v. a., catch up, take hold of.

exceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of excipio.

excīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [excædō], 3. v. a., cut out, cut off, break down (gates).

excipīō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [ex-capio], 3. v. a., take off, take up, pick up, receive, catch (of animals). Hence, follow, come after, come next: vada (stand, of vessels); vim fluminis (break); alios alii (succeed); hunc alii (follow, take up the cry in shouting).

excitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of excitō.

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-cito, cf. excicio, call up], i. v. a., call out, rouse, stimulate (induce).—Also, raise (towers), kindle (fire).

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, [ex-cludo], 3. v. a., shut out, cut off (from doing a thing), prevent.

exclūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of excludo.

excogitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-cogito], i. v. a., think out, devise.

excruciātus, -a, -um, p. p. of excrucio.

excrucīō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [excrucio, cf. crux, cross], i. v. a., torture, torment.
excubitor, -tōris, [as if ex-†cubitor, cf. excubo], m., a sentinel (as lying out of the camp or tent).

excubō, -cubāre, -cubui, -cubitūrus, [ex-cubo], i. v. n., lie outside. — Esp. of camp, stand guard, keep a night-watch, watch.

exculcō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [excalcō], i. v. a., tread down, trample down.

excurrō, -currere, -currī, (-currīrī), -cursūrus, [ex-curro], 3. v. n., run out, make a sally. — See excursio.

excursiō, -ōnis, [ex-†cursus, cf. ex-curro], F., a sally, a sortie.

excūsātiō, -ōnis, [ex-†causatio, cf. excuso], F., an excuse, an apology.

excūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-†causa, reason], i. v. a., give as an excuse. — Also (with change of relation), excuse, exculpate.

exemplum, -I, [ex-†templum, EM (in emo, take) + lus with parasitic p], N., (something taken out), a sample, a copy, a precedent, an example.

exēō, -ēre, -ēvi (-ii), -itus, [ex-eo], irr. v. n., go forth, go out, emigrate, march out, remove.

exerceō, -ercēre, -ercui, -ercitus, [ex-arceo, drive off], 2. v. a., train, practise, exercise.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, [exercitā- (st. of exercito) + tio], F., practice, exercise.

exercitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of exercito.

exercitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [exercitiō, cf. exerceo], i. v. a., train, practise. — exercitātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., trained. — Superl., very well trained.

exercitus, -tūs, [as if ex-arcitus, cf. exerceo], m., (a training). — Concretely, (a body trained or in training), an army (large or small, acting independently), a force.

exhauriō, -haurire, -hausī, -haus-tus, [ex-haurio], 4. v. a., drain off. — Less exactly, carry off (earth).

exigō, -igere, -ēgi, -actus, [ex-ago], 3. v. a., (lead out), pass, spend, finish, complete: exacta hiems, the end of winter; aestas exacta erat (was ended).

exiguē [old case-form of exiguus], adv., scantily, meagrely: exigu habere frumentum (have a scanty supply of, etc.).

exiguitās, -tātis, [exiguō + taa], F., scantiness, meagre-ness: temporis (short time, want of time); pellum (small size); castrorum (narrowness, small size).

exiguus, -a, -um, [ex-†aguus (AG + uus), cf. exigo], adj., (exact?), narrow, scanty, small, meagre.

eximius, -a, -um, [ex-temius, EM + uus, cf. eximo, take out], adj., (taken out), exceptional, remarkable, very high (opinio).

existimātiō, -ōnis, [ex-aestimatio, cf. existimo], F., estimate, opinion.

existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ex-aestimo, reckon], i. v. a. and n., estimate, believe, think, suppose, imagine.

exitus, -tūs, [ex-itus, cf. exeo], m., (a going out), a passage (out, concretely). Hence, an end, the last part: quem habere exitum (what is the result of, etc.). — Fig., a result, a turn (of fortune), an issue.
ing. service expiate dep., dispel. troops), pioneer troops, — expeditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., unincumbered, easy (iter), not difficult, quick, active, light-armed (of troops), in light marching order (of troops without baggage), mobile (of troops), ready. expeditio, -onis, [as if ex-tpedi- + tio, cf. expedio], v., (light-armed service f.), a getting ready, a despatching. Hence, an expedition: misit in expeditionem (detached).
expeditus, p. p. of expedio.
expellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, [ex-pello], 3. v. a., drive out. — Fig., dispel.
experior, -perīri, -pertus, [ex-

expeditus, -a, -um, p. p. of experior.
expiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of expio. 
expiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-pio], 1. v. a., (purify), expiate. — Transferred to the signs of divine wrath, expiate: incommodum (wipe out, i.e. make good, retrieve).
expleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [ex-
pleo], 2. v. a., fill out, fill up, make up (filling the required measure).
explōrātor, -tōris, [as if ex-tplorator, cf. explorō], m., a scout, a pioneer (as a means of reconnoitring, cf. speculator, a spy).
explōrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of exploro.
explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-ploro, prob. search by calling or crying], 1. v. a., investigate, explore, search, examine, reconnoitre. — explōrātus, -a, -um, p. p., assured, certain: explorata victoria, being assured of victory: habere omnia explorata, know certainly.
expōnō, -pōnerē, -posuī, -positus, [ex-pono], 3. v. a., place out, set out: exercitum (disembark, also draw up, array). — Fig., set forth (in speech), state.
exportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-

exporto], 1. v. a., carry out, carry away, export.
exposcō, -poscere, -poscēsī, no p. p., [ex-posco], 3. v. a., demand (with eagerness).
exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [ex-premo], 3. v. a., press out. force out: vocem (elicit, get out of one, extort). — Also (cf. edo), raise up: turris agger (as the mound of circumvallation rose with the towers on it as it approached the city).
expugnātiō, -onis, [ex-pugnatio, cf. expugno], F., a storming (of a city), taking (of a city by storm).
expugnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of expugno.
expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ex-
pugno, fight], 1. v. a., take (by storm), capture (by storming a city or boarding a ship): stipendiarius expugnatis, the cities of their tributaries sacked.
expulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of expello.
exquirō, -quīrere, -quisīvī, -quisi-
tu, [ex-quaer, seek], 3. v. a., search out, inquire, ask for.
exquisitus, -a, -um, p. p. of exquiroy.
exsequor, -sequi, -secutus, [exsequor], 3. v. dep., follow out, follow up: ius (enforce).
exsero, -serere, -serui, -sertus, [exsero], 3. v. a., (disentangle), thrust out, uncover.
exsurtus, -a, -um, p. p. of exsero.
exsistō, -sistere, -stiti, -stiturus(?), [ex-sisto], 3. v. n., stand out, rise up, come out: malacia (ensue); motus (break out); cornu (grow out, project).
exspectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [exspecto], I. v. a. and n., look out for, wait for, wait to see (si, whether, etc.), expect, anticipate.
exspoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [exspolio], I. v. a., strip off.— Also, strip of (cf. despolio).—Fig., deprive, rob (of, abl.).
exstinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of extinguo.
exstinguō, -stinguere, stinxi, -stinctus, [ex-stinguō], 3. v. a., (punch out, as a fire in the woods?), extinguish (lit. and fig.), destroy, put an end to.
exsto, -stāre, -stiti, -stāturus(?), [ex-sto], I. v. n., stand out: ex aqua (be above).
exstrrctus, -a, -um, p. p. of exstruo.
exstruō, -struere, struxi, -stractus, [ex-struo], 3. v. a., heap up, build up, pile up.
exsusl, -ulis, [ex- sal (of salio), as st., with some lost connection of meaning, cf. consul], c., an exile.
exter, -tera, -terum, [ex + terus (reduced)], adj., outer, outside.—
extrēmus, -a, -um, superl., farthest, extreme, last: extremi, as noun, the rear; in extremis lingulis (at the extremity of, etc., and often in this sense); ad extremum, till the last, at last; ad extremum producta casum (to the last extremity); ab extrema parte, at the very end; in extrema spe, almost in despair; in extremis suis rebus, in the last extremity; extrema fames, the last extremity of hunger.
exterreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -territus, [ex-terreo], 2. v. a., frighten away, frighten greatly, terrify.
exterrītus, -a, -um, p. p. of exterreo.
extimēscō, -timēscere, -timui, no p. p., [ex-timesco], 3. v. a. and n., fear greatly, fear (much), dread.
extorquēō, -torquēre, -torsi, -tortus, [ex-torqueo, twist], 2. v. a., wrench from, wrest from, force from.
extortus, -a, -um, p. p. of extorquio.
extrā [abl. or instr. (?) of exter, cf. supra], adv. and prep. with acc., outside, out of.
extrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of extraho.
extrahō, -trahere, -frāxi, -fractus, [ex-traho], 3. v. a., drag out: multum aestatis (drag out, waste).
extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsi, -trūsus, [ex-trudo], 3. v. a., thrust out, push out, shut out (by dikes).
exuō, -vere, -vī, -vīs, [ex- unc. verb, cf. induo], 3. v. a., strip off: × armis exutis, deprived of arms.—
Also (cf. despolio), strip, deprive, despoil: Romanos impedimentis.

Faber, -bri, [FA (in facio) + ber (for brus)], (M. of faber, skilful), a mechanic, an engineer (in an army).

Fabius, -i, [? faba- (bean) + ius, cf. Cicero], m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp.: 1. Quintus Fabius Maximus (Allobrogicus), who conquered the Arverni in B.C. 121 on the Rhone.—2. Gaius Fabius, a legatus of Caesar in Gaul.—3. Lucius Fabius, a centurion.

Facilis, -e, [†facēo (cf. beneficus) + lis], adj., easy (to do, cf. habilis), convenient, without difficulty, easy (generally).—facile, n. as adv., easily, conveniently, without difficulty.

Facinus, -oris, [†facin- (as if root of †facino, longer form of facio) + ius], n., a deed (of any kind).—Esp. (as in English), a deed (of crime), a misdeed, a crime, guilt (referring to some particular act), criminal conduct. See admitto.

Facio, facere, feci, factus, [FAC + io], 3. v. a. and n., make, do, act.—Used in a great variety of senses as in Eng.: coniurationem (form); sementes (do planting); iter (march, travel, proceed); vim (use violence, force a passage, offer resistance); vates (build); testudinem (form); ea (perform); pacem (as in Eng.); finem orandi (put an end to, stop, etc., cease, etc.); phalangem (form); fidem (give assurance, also gain be-

Exurō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ūstus, [ex uro], 3. v. a., burn up.

Exūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of exuo.

Factūs, -onis, [prob. †facti + o, but treated as FAC + tio, cf. co-
hortatio], F., a business, an employment.— Also, a party, a faction.

factum, -i, see facio.

factus, -a, -um p.p. of facio.

facultas, -tatis, [facul (for facilis cf. simul) + tas], F., ease, facility. — So, chance, power, opportunity. quantum facultatis dari potuit, so far as opportunity was offered; sui conligendi (chance to, etc.). Hence, concretely, means, resources, supply: navium, facultas, facultates ad largiendum.

fagus, -i, [prob. BHAG, eat, + AS (-us), from the fruit], F., a beech, beech (of the timber).

falla, fallare, gefelli, falsus, [? SPHAL, trip up], 3. v. a. and n., deceive: specia aliquem (disappoint); fallendo, by deceit. — falsus, -a, -um, p.p., deceived.— Also (transferred to things), false, unfounded.

falsus, -a, -um p.p. of fallo.

fæx, falcis, [?], F., a sickle, a pruning-hook. — Also, a hook (of similar form for demolishing walls).

fama, -ae, [FA (in for, speak) + MA], F., speech, common talk, reputation.— Concretely, a rumor, a story.

famēs, -is, [?], F., hunger, starvation: famem tolerare, keep from starving, appease hunger.

familia, -ae, [famulō-, servant (reduced) + ia], F., a collection of attendants, a household.— Applied to Gaul, a clan, retainers.

familīaris, -e, [prob. familiā- + ris, but treated as famili- + aris (cf. animalis)], adj., of the household: res (estate, property).— Esp. as noun, a friend.

familiāritās, -tātis, [familiāri- + tas], F., intimacy (with, genitive).

fās [FA (in for, speak) + as], indecl. N., right (in conscience, or by divine law): non est fas (permitted, allowed).

fastigātē [old case-form of fastigaturas], adv., sloping.

fastigātus, -a, -um p.p. of fastigo.

fastigium, -i, [†fastigō- (unc. form akin to fastus, scorn, cf. castigo) + ium, cf. fastigo], N., elevation, slope, descent (of a slope).

fastigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†fastigō-(cf. fastigium)], 1. v. a., bring to point.— Esp. fastigātus, -a, -um p.p. as adj., inclined, sloping: leniter (with an easy slope).

fātum, -i, [N. of fatus, p.p. of for], N., (what is spoken, cf. fas), fate, lot, destiny.

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, [?], 2. v. n., favor, be favorable to.

fax, facis, [?], F., a torch, a firebrand, fire (lighted missiles).

fēlicitās, -tātis, [felic- (as if felici-) + tas], F., good fortune, good luck, lucky star: summa (perfect success).

fēlicititer [felici- (as if felici-) + ter], adv., happily, fortunately, luckily, successfully.

fēmina, -ae, [FE, nurse, + mina, cf. alumna], F., a woman, a female.

femur, -oris (-inis), [?], N., the thigh.

fera, see ferus.

ferāx, -ācis, [reduced noun-st. (akin to fero) + ax, as if †fera + cjs (reduced)], adj., fertile.
ferē [?- old case-form of st. [ferō (akin to fero)], adv., almost, about. — Also, almost always, generally, usually, for the most part. — With negatives, hardly.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus (for lātus), [bhar, bear, and tol (TLA) in tollo], irr. a. and n., bear, carry, endure, tolerate, stand, withstand, carry off, win. — Often in a loose sense, translated by various special words in Eng., commit, offer, etc. — With reflex. or in pass., rush, pass, proceed, roll (of a river). — With advs. indicating manner of receiving anything, suffer, bear, take it, feel: acerbius ferre inopiam (suffer severely from); magnō cum dolore ferre, be much pained or indignant at; moleste (graviter) ferre, be annoyed at, take hard, be indignant at. — Special uses: responsa (carry away, receive); auxilium (carry aid, assist); arma (bear arms, fight); condicionem (propose); signa (bear on the standards, march); ventus ferebat (carried the ships, blew); consuetudo fert (is); opinio fert (goes); ut natura montis ferebat, according to the outline of the mountain.

ferramentum, -i, [as if ferrā- (st. of verb from ferrum) + mentum], N., a tool (of iron).

ferrāria, -ae, [F. of ferrarius, cf. ferrum], F., an iron mine.

ferreus, -a, -um, [ferō- + eus], adj., of iron, iron (made of iron).

ferrum, -i, [?]., N., iron, steel, sword.

fertilis, -e, [tferi- + lis, (as if fer + tillis)], adj., fertile, fruitful.

fertilitās, -tātis, [fertili- + tas], F., fertility, productiveness.

ferus, -a, -um, [FER (rush) + us, cf. deēr], adj., wild, ferocious. — Fem. as noun, wild beast, game.

fervafaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [†ferve- (case-form akin to ferveo) + facio], 3. v. a., heat, heat hot (iacula).

fervefactus, -a, -um, p. p. of fervefacio.

ferveō, fervēre, ferbuī (fervi), no p. p., [noun-st. akin to febris], 2. v. n., be hot, be red-hot.

fibula, -ae, [FIG (in figo, fasten) + bula], F., a clasp, a buckle.

fictus, -a, -um, p. p. of fingo.

fidēlis, -e, [fidē- (st. of fides) + lis], adj., faithful.

fidēs, -ēi, [FID (bind') + ae], F., a promise, a pledge: laedere (break faith); fidem facere, give assurance: fidem praestare, keep faith, perform one’s duty. — Also, good faith, fidelity. — Transferred, confidence, faith (in); fidem facere, gain credence. — Esp. of promised protection, protection, dependence, alliance: quorum in fide erat civitas (to whom . . . was subject, under whose protection); Caesaris fidem sequi (come under, surrender one’s self to); in fidem sé permittere (venire), place themselves under protection of, etc.

fidūcia, -ae, [†fiduc- (fidu-, faithful, + cus, reduced) + ia], F., confidence, reliance.

figūra, -ae, [†figu- (FIG, in fingo, + us) + ra, F. of rus], F., shape, form.

filia, -ae, [F. of filius], F., a daughter.
filius, -i, [?], M., a son.

ängō, fingere, finxī, fictus, [FIG, cf. figura]. 3. v. a., mould; vol tum (compose). — FIG., invent, contrive.

— fictus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj. and noun, N. pl., fictions: ficta respondent, make up answers; sibi (conjure up).

finiō, -īre, -īvi, (-īvi), -ītus, [fīni-], 4. v. a., set bounds to, limit, measure (ending a division).

finis, -is, [?], M., a limit, an end: finem facere, put an end to, cease; quem ad finem, as far as. — Plur., boundaries, limits, territories, country.

finitimus, -a, -um, [fīni- + timus], adj., on the borders, neighboring, adjacent, neighbors (of). — Plur. as noun, neighbors. — Also, finitumus.

fō [FU in fui], as pass. of facio, which see.

fīrmiter [fīrmō- + ter], adv., firmly, stoutly, steadily.

fīrmitūdō, -inis, [fīrmō- + tūdo], F., solidity, strength (of resistance).

fīrmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [fīrmō-], 1. v. a., make strong, strengthen, fortify.

fīrmus, -a, -um, [Dhar, hold, + mus], adj., strong (for resistance), firm, steady: minime firma, weakest.

fīstūca, -ae, [?], F., a pile-driver.

Flaccus, see Valerius.

flāgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [as if flagitō, p. p. of flago, akin to flagro, blaze], 1. v. a., ask (in heat?), demand earnestly: Haeduos frumentum, grain of the Haudans.

flamma, -ae, [flag (blaze) + ma], F., flame, fire.

flectō, -lectere, flēxi, flexus, [?], 3. v. a., bend, turn.

flēo, flēre, flēvi, flētus, [?], 2. v. a. and n., weep: flentes, in tears.

flētus, -tūs, [flē- (st. of flēo as root) + tus], M., weeping, lamentation: magno fletu, with many tears.

flō, flāre, flāvi, flātus, [?], 1. v. n. and a., blow.

flōrens, -entis, [pres. p. of floreo, bloom], as adj., blooming. — FIG., flourishing, prosperous, influential (iuvēns): florentissimis rebus, in most prosperous circumstances.

flōs, flōris, [?], M., a flower. — FIG., the flower (of troops).

fluxus, -tūs, [FLU (g) (in fluō, cf. fluxi) + tus], M., a wave.

flūmen, -inis, [FLU (in fluō) + men], N., a river.

flūo, fluere, flūxī, fluxus, (flūxūrus, flūctūrus, fluitūrus), [FLU], 3. v. n., flow.

fodiō, fōedere, fōdi, fossus, [?], 3. v. a., dig.

foedus, -eris, [FID (in fīdes, cf. fidus) + us], N., a treaty, a league, a compact.

fore, for futurum esse; see sum.

forem, for essem; see sum.

forīs [abl. plur. of fōra], as adv., out of doors. — Less exactly, outside (of anything, as beyond the siege lines).

forma, -ae, [Dhar (in firmus) + ma], F., shape, form.

fors, foris, [FER (in fero) + tis (reduced)], F., chance. — forte, abl. as adv., by chance, perchance, accidentally, as it happened.
forte, see fors.
fortis, -e, [akin to firmus], adj.,
strong, brave, courageous: vir fortis,
a man of courage.
fortiter [forti- + ter], adv., brave-
ly, stoutly, undauntedly: fortius
factum, any deed of prowess.
fortitūdō, -inis, [forti- + tudo],
F., bravery, prowess.
of verb in -uo, cf. fortuna], adv., by
chance, accidentally, fortuitously.
fortunā, -ae, [fortu- (fer + tus,
cf. fortuito) + na, F. of -nus], F.,
fortune, chance, fate, lot (one's for-
tune), chances (belli), success (good
or bad). — Plur., fortunes, resources,
chances (means) of success. — Esp.,
good fortune, success: fortunam temp-
tare, try one's chances.
fortunātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of for-
tuno], as adj., fortunate, prosperous.
forum, -i, [akin to fora], N., (an
open place), a market-place.
fossa, -ae, [F. of fossus, p. p. of
fodio, dig], F., a ditch, a trench.
fovea, -ae, [?, perh. akin to foveo,
as a pit for storage], F., a pitfall.
fractus, -a, -um, p. p. of frango.
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus,
[frag], 3. v. a., break (as a solid
body). — Esp. of ships, wreck. —
Fig., break down, crush.
frāter, -tris, [prob. fer + ter, cf.
pater], M., a brother.
frāternus, -a, -um, [frater + nus],
adj., of a brother, fraternal: nomen
(the name of brothers).
frāus, fraudis, [?, akin to frustra],
F., loss. Hence, treachery, deceit.
fremitus, -tūs, [fremi- (st. of
fremo, roar) + tus], M., a murmur,
a confused noise, a roar.
frēquēns, -entis, [orig. pres. p.
akin to farcio, stuff], adj., crowded,
numerous, in great numbers.
frētus, -a, -um, [root akin to
firmus + tus], adj., relying on, con-
fident in (on account of).
frigidus, -a, -um, [frigō- (whence
frigio, be cold) + dus], adj., cold.
frīgus, -oris, [frig (in frigio,
etc.) + us], N., cold. — Plur., cold
(cold "snaps," frosts).
frōns, frontis, [?, akin to brow],
F., brow, face: a media fronte, from
the middle of the forehead. — Less ex-
actly, front, brow: a fronte, in front.
frūctuōsus, -a, -um, [fructu- +
osus], adj., fruitful.
frūctus, -tūs, [fru(g) + tus], M.,
enjoyment. Hence, (what one en-
joy), fruit, crops, income, profit,
interest (from money): victoriae (ad-
vantages of victory).
frūmentārius, -a, -um, [frumentō-
(reduced) + arius], adj., of grain:
loca (fruitful in grain); res (grain
supply, provisions); inopia (scar-
city of grain).
frūmentātiō, -onis, [frumentā- (st.
of frumentor) + tio], F., foraging,
gathering grain, harvesting, foraging
expedition.
frūmentor, -tāri, -tātus, [fru-
mentō-], 1. v. dep., forage, gather
grain, get supplies.
frūmentum, -i, [fru (in fruor) +
mentum], N., grain (cf. fructus). —
Plur., standing grain, crops.
fruor, frūi, frūctus, [fru, cf. fruc-
tus], 3. v. dep., enjoy.
frustrā [abl. or instr. of st. akin to fraus, loss], adv., to no purpose, without effect.

[frūx], frūgis, [FRU(G) in fruor as st.], F., fruit. — Plur., crops.

Fūnius (-sius), -i, [?], m., a Roman gentile name. See Cita.

fuga, -ae, [FUG + a], F., flight: fit fuga, a rout ensues; fugae mandare se, take to flight; in fugam dare, put to flight; fugam petere, seek safety by flight; ex fuga evaserat, had escaped from the flying crowd.

fugātus, -a, -um, p. p. of fugo.

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugīturus, [FUG (in fuga)], 3. v. a. and n., fly, fly from, run away. — Fig., shun, avoid.

fugitivus, -a, -um, [fugi- (st. of fugio ?) + tivus], adj., runaway. — Plur. as noun, runaway slaves.

fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [fuga-], I. v. a., put to flight, rout.

fūmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [fumō-], I. v. n., smoke.

fūmus, -i, [FU (DHU) + mus, akin to dust], m., smoke. — Plur., smoke (in several columns).

funda, -ae, [akin to fundo], F., a sling.

funditūrus, -e, [funda as if verb-st.] + tor], m., a slinger.

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fāsus, [FUD], 3. v. a., pour. — Less exactly, scatter. — Esp. of battle, put to rout, rout.

fūnebris, -e, [cf. funus], adj., of a funeral. — N. plur. as noun, funeral rites.

fungor, fungī, fūnctus, [?], 3. v. dep., perform, discharge (abl.).

fūnis, -is, [?], m., a roof.

fūnus, -eris, [unc. root + us], N., (murder ?), death, a funeral.

fūrot, -ōris, [FUR (cf. furo, rage) + or], m., madness, frenzy, fury.

fūrītum, -i, [N. p. p. of lost verb akin to fur, thief], N., theft, a theft.

fūsilis, -e, [fuso- (p. p. of fundo) + is], cf. flexilis], adj., (capable of being poured), molten (of metals), vitrified, red-hot.

futūrus, see sum.

Gabali, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic people, dependants of the Arverni.

Gabinius, -i, [Gabinō- (cf. Gabii) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Aulus Gabinius, consul with Lucius Piso in B.C. 58.

gaesum, -i, [Celtic], N., a javelin.

Gāius (Cāius, C.), -i, [?], m., a Roman praenomen.

Galba, -ae, [Celtic, meaning fat], m., a Gallic and Roman family name.


galea, -ae, [?, akin to galerus, leather cap], F., a helmet (of leather, worn by cavalry).

Gallia, -ae, [F. of adj. in -ius, Gallo- + ius], F., Gaul, including all the country bounded by the Po, the Alps, the Rhine, the ocean, the Pyrenees, and the Mediterranean, thus occupying all northern Italy, France, and Belgium.
Gallicus, -a, -um, [Gallō- + cus], adj., of the Gauls, Gallic.

gallina, -ae, [gallo- (cock) + ina], F., a hen.

Gallus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of Gaul, Gallic. — As noun, a Gaul, the Gauls. — Also, as a Roman family name. See Trebius.

Garumna, -ae, [Celtic], c., a river of S. W. Gaul, now the Garonne.

Garumnī, -orum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Gallic tribe in the Pyrenees, on the head waters of the Garonne.

Gates, -ium, [Celtic], m. pl., a Gallic people of Aquitania.

gaudēō, gaudēre, gāvisus, [†ga-vidō-, cf. avidus], 2. v. n., be delighted, rejoice.

gāvisus, -a, -um, p. p. (neut. pass.) of gaudeo.

Geidummī, -orum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Belgian tribe, dependants of the Nervii.

Genāva, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city of the Allobroges, at the outlet of Lake Leman, now Geneva.

gener, -erī, [?] , m., a son-in-law.

generātīm [as if acc. of tgenerātis (generā- + tis)], adv., by tribes.

gēns, gentis, [gen, beget, + tis (reduced)], F., a family, a tribe, a clan, a people.

genus, -eris, [gen, beget, + us], N., a generation, a race, a family (stock), a nation, a tribe. — Less exactly, a kind, a sort, a class. — Also, abstractly, kind, character, nature, method (pugnae): genus hominum, the character of the inhabitants.

Gergovia, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city in the lands of the Arverni.

Germānia, -ae, [F. of adj. in -ius, cf. Gallia], F., Germany, the whole country between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea.

Germānicus, -a, -um, [Germanō- + cus], adj., of the Germans, German, Germanic.

Germānus, -a, -um, [?], adj., German (of the country of Germany or its people. The name of the people is the original, but as usual is an adj.). — Plur. as noun, the Germans.

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, [GES, of unc. kin], 3. v. a., carry (indicating a more lively action than fero), carry on, manage, wage (war), hold (a magistracy), do (any business). — Pass., be done, go on (of operations): rem bene (male) (operate successfully or otherwise, carry on operations, succeed well or ill); negoti bene gerendi, of successful action; his rebus gestis, after these operations; res gestae, exploits, operations, a campaign.

gestus, -a, -um, p. p. of gero.

gladius, -i, [?], m., a sword.

glānīs, glandis, [?], F., a nut, an acorn. — Also, a ball (for shooting).

glēba (glae-), -ae, [?], F., a clod (of earth), a lump.

gloria, -ae, [akin to inclutus, renowned], F., fame, glory.

glōrior, -āri, -ātus, [glorī-], 1. v. dep., glory in, boast of (abl.).

Gnaeus (Cnēius, Cn.), -i, [akin to gnavus, active], m., a Roman prænomen.

Gobannitiō, -onis, [Celtic], m., one of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix.
Gorgobina, -ae, [Celtic], f., a city in the territory of the Hædui, founded by the Boii emigrating from Cisalpine Gaul.

Graecus, -a, -um, [Gr.], adj., of the Greeks, Greek. — As noun, a Greek, the Greeks. Cf. Germanus for relation of noun and adj.

Grāioceli, -orum, [?], m. plur., a people of the Alps, near Mt. Cenis.

grandis, -e, [?], adj., large, of great size.

grātia, -ae, [gratō- (reduced) + ia], f., "gratefulness" (in both Eng. senses of grateful), gratitude (that one has from others or towards others), good-will, favor. Hence, influence, friendship, source of influence, ground of friendship.—Esp.: gratias agere, express gratitude, render thanks, thank; gratias habere, feel gratitude, be grateful; gratias [gratiam] referre, make a grateful return, pay off an obligation, requite; gratiam inire, secure the gratitude of any one, conciliate. — With gen., for the sake of, on account of, for, to (for the purpose of): sui purgandi gratia, to excuse one's self.

grātulātion, -onis, [gratulā- + tio, cf. frumentatio], f., a congratulation (of others or one's self), rejoicing: fit gratulatio, there is great rejoicing.

grātulor, -āri, -ātus, [fgratulō- (gratō + lus)], i. v. dep., congratulate.

grātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of lost verb], adj., pleasing, grateful: gratum facere, do a favor.

gravis, -e, [for tgarvis, tgarus], adj., heavy. — Fig., severely, seriously: gravioris aetatis, of more advanced years; si gravius quid acciderit, if anything serious should occur; caerimonia (solemn, binding); ne quid gravius statueret, that he would not pass any very severe judgment.

gravitās, -tātis, [gravi- + tas], f., weight. — Fig., importance, power.

graviter [gravi- + ter], adv., heavily, with great weight, with force. — Fig., severely, seriously: graviter ferre, take to heart, suffer from; premere (press hard); multo gravius exarsit (more violently).

gravō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [gravi- (as if gravā-)], i. v. a., make heavy (cf. levo). — Pass. as dep., (make heavy for one's self), be reluctant, be unwilling, object.

Grudiī, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Belgian people, dependants of the Nervii.

gubernātor, -tōris, [gubernā-, steer, + tor], m., a pilot, a helmsman.

gustō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [īgustō- (st. akin to gustus, Eng. choose)], i. v. a., taste, eat.
Haedusus (Aed-), -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Hadui, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône. — As noun, a Haeduan, the Hadui.

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [freq. of haerō, stick, cf. dictīto], I. v. n., get caught, stick, struggle (caught in a marsh).

hāmus, -i, [?] M., a hook.

harpagō, -ōnis, [Gr. ἀρπάγη (Latinized) + o], M., a hook (esp. for walls, like a fire-hook), a grappling-iron.

Harūdes, -um, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe originally from Jutland, remaining from the great expedition of the Cimbri.

haud [?], adv., not (negating single words), not at all.

Helvēticus, -a, -um, [Helvetiō-

(reduced) + cus], adj., Helvetian (see Helvetius).

Helvētius, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Helvetii (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine). Cf. Germanus for the form. — Plur. as noun, the Helvetii.

Helviī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Roman province.

Hercynius (Orcyn-), -a, -um, [Teutonic], adj. (only with silva), Hercynian (the great forest embracing all the mountain country of Germany).

hērōditās, -tātis, [hered-, heir (as if heredi-), + tas], F., inheritance, an inheritance.

Hibernia, -ae, [?], F., Ireland.

hībernus, -a, -um, [hiem- + ernus, cf. nocturnus], adj., of winter, winter (as adj.). — Neut. pl. (sc. castra), winter quarters, a winter encampment.

hic [hī- (loc. of hi-) ce], adv., here in this place, there (of a place just mentioned).

hic, haec, hoc, hūius, [hi- (pron. st.) + ce, cf. ecce, cetera], dem. pron., (pointing to something near the speaker in place, time, or interest), this, these, he, they, this man (woman or thing). — Referring to things before mentioned (but with more emphasis than is): hic pagus unus, this one canton; ex his qui arma ferre possent (of these [before enumerated]), those who, etc.). — Less commonly, of what follows: his mandatis (the following, as follows, these). — Esp.: haec memoria, the present generation: tempus (the
hostis, -is, [Ghas (cf. hospes) +

year, but were always so many
twelfths of the solar day.

horreō, horrēre, horrūrī, no p. p.,
[Horr, (orig. Hors, bristle) + us,
prob. used orig. of the sensation
called “goose pimples,” where the
hair seems to stand on end], z. v.
n. and a., bristle (see above). Hence,
shudder at, dread.

horribilis, -e, [horrō- (as if st. of
horreo) + bilis], adj., to be shudder-
ed at, frightful, dreadful.

horridus, -a, -um, [†horrō- (cf.
horreo) + dus], adj., bristling, horri-
ble, dreadful, frightful.

hortātus, -a, -um, p. p. of hortor.

hortor, -tārī, -tātus, [for horitor,
freq. of old ῥ̓̃horior, urge], i. v.
dep., encourage, urge on, urge, ad-
dress.—Less exactly, of things,
urge, move, prompt.

hospes, -ītis, [prob. Ghas-patis,
orig. host (lord of eating)], m., a host.
—Also, a guest, a stranger. Hence,
a guest-friend (in the peculiar re-
lation of hospitium, which was a
kind of hereditary friendship be-
tween persons of different countries,
not personal, but of a family or
state), a friend (of the kind above
mentioned): familiaris et hospes, a
personal and family friend.

hospitium, -ī, [hospit- + ium],
N., the relation of host (or guest).
Hence (cf. hospes), friendship:
hsipitium atque amicitia, alliance
and friendship, family and personal
friendship; hospitio Ariovisti utē-
batur, was in friendly relations with
Ariovistus.

hostis, -is, [Ghas (cf. hospes) +

present); his paucis diebus, within
a few days. — hoc, neut. abl., used
adverbially, in this respect, on this
account, by so much. — Often where
a more definite word is used in
Eng.: his ita respondit (to this
embassy). — Often hic ... ille, the
one ... the other, this (near by) ... the other (farther off), this last
(nearer on the page) ... the other,
the latter ... the former.

hiemō, -are, āvī, -ātūrus, [hiem-(as
if hiema-)], i. v. n., winter, pass the
winter.

hiems (-mps), -emis, [?-], F., winter.

hinc [thim (loc. of thi) + ce],
adv., from here, hence.

Hispānia, -ae, [Hispanō- + ia (F.
of -ius)], F. (of adj., cf. Gallia),
Spain.

Hispānus, -a, -um, [?-], adj.,
Spanish.

homō, -inis, [prob. humō- (the
earth) + o], c., a human being (cf.
vir, a man, as a male), a man (in-
cluding women).

honestus, -a, -um, [honos- (orig.
st. of honor) + tus], adj., esteemed,
respected, worthy, honorable.

honor (-ōs), -ōris, [unc. root + or],
m., honor, respect: honoris causā,
out of respect. — Also, honorable
position.

honōrificus, -a, -um, [honor (as if
honori) -īficus (cf. beneficus)], adj.,
honorable, (giving honor).

hōra, -ae, [Gr.], F., an hour (of
the day). — The Romans divided
day into twelve hours from
sunrise to sunset, which were not
of equal length at all times of the
tis], c., (orig. guest), a stranger, an enemy (of the state), the enemy (collectively, either sing. or plur.).

húc [ho- (dat. of hi-, see híc) + ce], adv., hither, here (in sense of hither), to this (place, etc., cf. eo): huc accedebant, to these [ships before mentioned], were added (see accedo); accedebat huc, to this was added the fact that, etc.

húiusmodi, see hic and modus.

húmánitas, -tätis, [humanó- + tas], F., humanity (as opp. to brushtiness), civilisation, cultivation, refinement, courtesy.

húmánus, -a, -um, [st. akin to homo, man, + nus], adj., civilized, cultivated, refined.

humilis, -e, [humó- (ground') + lis], adj., low, shallow (cf. altus, deep).—Fig., low, humble, poor: Ubios humiliores redegerunt (humbled, rendered less important).

humilitás, -tätis, [humili- + tas], F., lowness, shallowness.—Fig., humble position, insufficiency.

I.

I., for unus, etc., one.

iacēō, -cēre, -cuī, -citūrus, [?, cf. iaculum], 2. v. n., lie, lie dead: iacentes, the slain.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, [?, cf. iaceo], 3. v. a., throw, hurl, cast: aggerem (throw up); ancoras (cast, drop).

iacēō, -are, -āvī, -ātus, [iactō-], 1. v. a., (freq. of iacio), toss, toss about, bandy about (of talk), discuss.

iactūra, -ae, [iactu- + ra (F. of rus)], F., a throwing away, a loss, a sacrifice (of men in war), an offer (of reward).

iacēō, -a, -am, p. p. of iacio.

iaculum, -ī, [tiacēō (akin to iacio, throw)], N., a javelin.

iam [acc. of pron. st.], adv., now (of progressive time, cf. nunc, emphatic and instantaneous), by this time, at last, already, at length; iam non, no longer; iam ante, some time before, even before; iam utebatur, was getting to use; iam reverti (was at last, etc.; was beginning to, etc.); nihil iam, no longer; also with no idea of time, even, in fact.

ibi [old case-form of is (cf. tibi)], adv., there (in a place before mentioned).

Iccius, -i, [?], M., a nobleman of the Remi.

ictus, -tūs, [IC (in ico, strike) + tus], M., a stroke: ictus scorpionis (a shot of, etc.).

Id., for Ídus.

idcircō [id (N. acc. of is) -circo (case-form of same st. as cerca, circum)], adv., for that reason, for this reason, therefore.

ídem, eadem, idem, [is em, cf. dum], dem. adj. pron., the same. — Often as noun, the same thing (things), the same: eadem quaerit, makes the same inquiries; idem castellum, this very fort.

identidem [cf. idem and tandem], adv., repeatedly, again and again.

idōneus, -a, -um, [?, akin to
idem?, adj., fit, suitable, adapted: homo (capable); tempestas (favorable).

Idūs, -uum, [?, perh. akin to aestus], F. plur., the Ides (a day of the lunar month falling at the full moon, conventionally on the 15th of March, May, July, October, and the 13th of other months, and used by the Romans to reckon dates).

Ignis, -is, [?, same word as Sk. agnis, the god of fire], M., fire: igni necari, to be burned to death.
— Plur., camp-fires.

Ignōbilis, -e, [in- (g) nobilis], adj., not famous, obscure.

Ignōminia, -ae, [ignomin- (in- (g)nomen, name) + ia], F., want of fame, disgrace. — Almost concretely, disgraceful defeat.

Ignorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [ignorō-, ignorant], I. v. a., fail to notice, not know, be ignorant of. — Pass., be unobserved: non ignorans, not unaware of.

Ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvi, -nōtus, [in- (unc. which meaning) (g)noscere, know], 3. v. n. and a., overlook, pardon.

Ignōtus, -a, -um, [in- (g)nōtus], adj., unknown, strange.

Ille, -a, -ud, [old ollus, fr. pron. root + lus (?)], dem. pron., that (of something remote, cf. hic). — Often as noun (opposed to some other emphatic word), he, she, it, they: hic ... ille, this ... that, the other, the latter ... the former.

Illic [loc. of ille + ce, cf. hic], adv., there (more remote, opposed to hic, near by), in that place (nation, country, etc.): illic ... quo, in the place to which, (but with more emphasis than ibi ... quo).

Illō [dat. of ille, cf. eo], adv., thither, there (in sense of thither), that way.

Illyricum, -ī, [?, N. of adj.], N., Illyria (the country east of Venetia and the Adriatic, and west of Macedonia and Thrace. It belonged to Caesar’s province along with the two Gauls).

Imbēcillicitās, -tātis, [imbecillō- (weak), + tas], F., weakness, feebleness: animi (feebleness of purpose, pusillanimity).

Imber, imbris, [?], M., a rain-storm, a rain.


Immānis, -e, [in- (manus, good ?)], adj., (‘uncanny’?), monstrous, huge, enormous.

Immineō, -minēre, no perf., no p. p., [in-mineō], 2. v. n., overhang, project. — Fig., threaten.

Immissus, p. p. of immitto.

Immittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, [in-mitto], 3. v. a., let in, let down (into), insert, throw (upon), send against.

Immolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [timomōla- (in-mola, meal)], I. v. a., (sprinkle with the sacred meal), sacrifice.

Immortalīs, -e, [in-mortalis], adj., immortal.

Immūnis, -e, [in- (munis, cf. communis and munia)], adj., free from tribute.
immunitas, -tatis, [immun- + tas], F., freedom from public burdens.

imparatus, -a, -um, [in-paratus], adj., unprepared, not ready.

impedimentum, -i, [impedi- + mentum], N., a hindrance: esse impedimento, to hinder. — Esp. in plur., baggage, a baggage train (including the beasts of burden), pack-horses.

impediō, -ire, -īvī, -ītus, [timped-(in-pes, foot, as if impedi-)], 4. v. a., entangle, hamper, interfere with. — Fig., hinder, embarrass, impede: in iure (hinder in exercise of). — impeditus, -a, -um, p. p., hampered, entangled, occupied, difficult (navigatio), impassable (loca): esse victoribus nihil impeditum (there is no obstacle in the way of, etc.); prospectus (interrupted).

impedītus, p. p. of impedio.

impellō, -pellere, -pului, -pulsus, [in-pello], 3. v. a., drive on. — Fig., instigate, incite, impel.

impendeō, -ere, [in-pendeo, hang], 2. v. n., overhang.

impensus, -a, -um, [p. p. of impendo, expend], adj., expensive, very high (of price).

imperātor, -tōris, [imperā- + tor], m., commander (in chief), general.

imperātum, -i, [N. p. p. of impero], N., an order, a command: ad imperatum, at one's command.

imperātus, -a, -um, p. p. of impero. imperfectus, -a, -um, [in-perfectus], adj., unfinished: re imperfecta, without accomplishing one's purpose, unsuccessful.

imperītus, -a, -um, [in-peritus, skilled], adj., unacquainted with, ignorant, unversed in.

imperium, -i, [timperō- (whence impero, cf. pario, get) + ium], N., command, supreme authority, control, supremacy, supreme power, power (military), rule, sway (both sing. and plur.). — Concrete, an order, a command. — Esp.: novis imperis studere (new forms of government); nullo certo imperio (command of any particular person); imperi aut potestatis, military or civil authority.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [timperō- (in-tparus, cf. pario, get)], 1. v. a. and n., demand (make request), require (in same sense). Hence, order (in military sense), rule, command, give orders: illo imperante, under his command.

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in-patro, bring to pass], 1. v. a., accomplish (anything by a request), succeed in (obtaining), obtain (a request): impetro a, prevail upon, persuade; ab iis impetrari ut, they be persuaded to; ea re impetrata, this being granted; si non impetraret, if his request was not complied with; impetro ut, etc., obtain a request to, be allowed to, etc., succeed in having; impetrari posse, could be granted.

impetus, -tūs, [in-tpetus (cf. peto, aim at)], m., a rush, an attack, an onset, a charge, an assault, violence, fury: facere (inroad, charge, invasion); is impetus, such fury, etc.; impetus gladiatorum exceperunt, re-
ceived the charge of the enemy with drawn swords.

impius, -a, -um, [in-pius], adj., impious (offending divine law).

implicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of implico.

implörō, -āre, -āvi (-ui), -ātus (-itus), [in-plico, fold], 1. v. a., entangle, interweave, entwine.

impōnō, -pōnerē, -posuī, -positus, [in-pono], 3. v. a., place upon, mount (men on horses), place, impose (fig.).

importātus, -a, -um, p. p. of importo.

importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in-porto, carry], 1. v. a., import.

impositus, -a, -um, p. p. of impono.

imprīmis [in primis], adv., among the first, especially, particularly (more than anything else).

improbus, -a, -um, [in-probus, good], adj., bad, wicked, unprincipled.

imprōvisus, -a, -um, [in-provisus], adj., unforeseen: improviso (de improviso), on a sudden, unexpectedly, unawares.

imprōvīdis, -entis, [in-prudens, foreseeing], adj., not expecting, incautious, unsuspecting, off one’s guard, unguarded, not being aware.

imprūdēns, -entis, [in-prudens, foreseeing], adj., not expecting, incautious, unsuspecting, off one’s guard, unguarded, not being aware.

imprūdentia, -ae, [imprudentia], F., ignorance, want of consideration, want of forethought.

impūbēs, -eris (-is), [in-pubes], adj., beardless, immature. Hence, chaste, unmarried.

impūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [in-pugno, fight], i. v. a. and n., attack, invade, charge, fight (in an offensive warfare).

impulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of impello.

impulsus, -sūs, [in-pulsus, cf. impello, drive on], M., impulse. — Fig., instigation.

impūne [N. of impunis (inpoena, punishment, weakened and decl. as adj.).], adv., with impunity.

impūnitās, -tātis, [impuni- + tas], F., freedom from punishment, impunity.

imus, -a, -um, superl. of inferus.
1. in- [cf. Eng. un-], neg. particle, only in composition.
2. in [?; cf. Eng. on; cf. also ināde], prep. a. With acc., of motion, having its terminus within or on (cf. ad, with terminus at or near), into, upon, within, to, against, among: in volgus elatum est (spread abroad among). — Of time, for, to, till. — Fig., without actual motion, but only direction, towards, against, upon: in eos exempla edere (visit upon); in se voluntas (good-will towards). — Often where Eng. has a different conception, in, on: abedere in silvas, hide in the woods; in civitatis conlocasse (had married in, etc.); in utram partem fluit (in which direction, etc.); in conspectum venire (in sight). — In adverbal expressions where no motion appears, in, according to, with, to: mirum in modum (cf. quem admodum); in eam sententiam, to this purport; in speciem, with the appearance; in
altitudinem, in height, cf. to the height of. — Esp.: in Caesarem incidunt, happened to meet Caesar; in perpetuum, for ever; in Morinos (into the country of, etc.) ; in catenas concere, throw into prison; in fungam concere, put to flight.

b. With abl., of rest (lit. and fig.), in, on, among, within: in tanta propinquitate (under circumstances of, in a case of); in tanto imperio P. R., when the R. people had such dominion. — Often, in the case of, in respect to: in eo, in his case, in regard to him. — Esp.: in Meldis (in the country of); in ancoris, at anchor; in eo manere, abide by, etc.; in praesentia, for the present; in potestate, under the power; in opere esse, to be engaged in the work; in illo vestigio temporis positum (depending on, etc.); in eo constare (depend upon, etc.). — In comp. as adv., in, upon, towards, and the like.

inānis, -e, [-?], adj., empty. — Fig., empty, vain, idle, mere, bare.

incautē [old case-form of incautus], adv., incautiously, carelessly.

incautus, -a, -um, [in-cautus, p. p. of caveo], adj., incautious, off one's guard.

incendium, -i, [in-ćandium, cf. incendo], N., a burning, a fire: incendia aediciorum, the burning of buildings, each one being conceived as a separate burning, as is usual in Latin.

incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēnusus, [in-ćando, cf. candeo, glow], 3. v. a., set fire to, burn. — Fig., rouse, excite, fire.

incēnusus, -a, -um, p. p. of incendo.

incertus, -a, -um, p. p. of incipio.

incertus, -a, -um, [in-certus], adj., uncertain, dubious, untrustworthy, (rumores): itinera (obscure, blind); ordinibus (in disorder).

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus, [in-caedo], 3. v. n., fall upon. — Less exactly and fig., fall in with, meet, occur, happen.

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus, [in-caedo], 3. v. a., cut into, half cut down (trees).

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [in-capio, take], 3. v. a. and n., begin, undertake.

incīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of incidō.

incitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of incito.

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in-cito], i. v. a., set in motion (in some particular direction) (lit. and fig.), urge on, drive, impel, excite, rouse. — incitātus, -a, -um, p. p., excited to anger, angered, spurred on: incitato equo, at full gallop; incitato cursu, at full speed. — Esp.: se aestus incitare (rush in).

incōgnitus, -a, -um, [in-cognitus], adj., unknown.


incolumis, -e, [-?], adj., unharmed, unhurt, preserved, safe, safe and sound, uninjured.

incommodē [old case-form of incommodus], adv., inconveniently, unfortunately, badly, ill.

incommodus, -a, -um, [in-commo-

dus], adj., inconvenient, unfortunate.
Indutiomarus

—inse

— Esp., incommodum, n. as noun, disadvantage, misfortune, euphemism for defeat, loss, disaster, harm.

incrēdibilis, -e, [in-credibilis], adj., incredible, marvellous, extraordinary.

increpitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in-crepito- (cf. increpo)], i. v. a., upbraid, taunt, revile.

incumbō, -cumbere, -cubū, -cubītūrus, [in-cumbo], 3. v. n., lie upon.

incursō, -ēnīs, [in-tcursio, cf. incurro, rush upon], F., an inroad, an attack, an invasion, a raid.

incursus, -sūs, [in-cursus, cf. incurro, rush upon], M., an inroad, an attack.

incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in-causeo, cf. causa, cause], i. v. a., upbraid, rebuke, chide.

inde [tim (loc. of is, cf. interim, hinc) -de (form akin to -dem, dum, cf. indu, old form of in)], adv., from there, thence, from the place (which, etc.), after that, then.

indiciu(m), -i, [indic- + ium], N., information: per indicium, through an informer.

indicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictus, [indico, say], 3. v. a., order, proclaim, appoint.

1. indicitus, -a, -um, p. p. of indicō.

2. indicitus, -a, -um, [1. in-dictus], adj., unpleaded (causa, cf. dico), untried, unheard.

indignē [old case-form of indignus], adv., unworthily, shamefully (unworthily of one's self or of the circumstances).

indignitās, -tātis, [indigno- + tas], F., unworthiness, disgrace (cf. indigne), outrage, an indignity.

indignor, -āri, -ātus, [indignō-], i. v. dep., be indignant (deem unworthy of one's self).

indignus, -a, -um, [in-dignus], adj., unworthy.

indiligēns, -entis, [in-diligens], adj., negligent, careless, heedless.

indiligenter [in-diligenter, cf. indiligens], adv., carelessly, negligently.

indiligentia, -ae, [indiligent- + ia], F., carelessness, want of care, want of energy (application).

indūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [in-duco], 3. v. a., draw on. Hence, cover: scuta pellibus.—Also, lead on. Hence, induce, instigate, impel.

inductus, -a, -um, p. p. of induco.

indulgentia, -ae, [indulgent- + ia], F., indulgence, favor, clemency.

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsi,-dultus, [?, perch. st. compounded of indul- cis, pleasant towards], 2. v. n., favor, treat with indulgence.

induō, -duere, -dui, -dūtus, [?, cf. exuo], 3. v. a., put on. Hence, fig. with reflex., pierce, impale (one's self): se vallis; se stimulis (be pierced by).

industriae [old case-form of industrius, active], adv., actively, promptly, with energy.

indūtiae (indūc-), -ārum, [?], F. plur., a truce, an armistice.

Indūtiomārus, -i, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Treveri.
ingens, -entis, [in-gens, not be-


colls, the foot of the hill, ad infi-
mum, at the bottom. — Neut. as noun,
the bottom.

infestus, -a, -um, [in-festus, fr.
fendo, strike], adj., hostile, in hostile
array: infestis signis, arrayed for
fight, in a charge, in order of attack.

inficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [inf-
facio], 3. v. a., (work into?), dye,
stain.

infidēlis, -e, [in-fidelis], adj., un-
faithful, wavering in faith.

infigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus, [in-
figo], 3. v. a., fasten in, fix in, fix on.

infimus, see inferus.

infinitus, -a, -um, [in-finitus],
adj., unbounded, countless, endless,
numberless, infinite.

infirmītās, -tātis, [infirmō + tas]
F., feebleness, unsteadiness, incon-
stancy, fickleness.

infirmus, -a, -um, [in-firmus,
strong], adj., weak, feeble: animus
(feeble courage, want of courage);
areores (unsound, weakened); in-
firmior, less powerful; naves (unsea-
worthy).

infīxus, -a, -um, p. p. of infigo.

inflectō, -flectere, -flexi, -flexus,
[in-flecto], 3. v. a., bend down. —
Pass., or with reflex., become bent.

inflexus, -a, -um, p. p. of inflecto.

infīluo, -fluere, -flūxi, -flūxūrus.
[in-fluo], 3. v. n., flow into, empty
into.

infodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus,
[in-fodio], 3. v. a., dig in, bury.

infra [instr. (?) of inferus], adv.
and prep. with acc., below, farther
down, less than.

ingēns, -entis, [in-gens, not be-
longing to the kind (?), adj., huge, enormous, very large.

ingrātus, -a, -um, [in-gratus], adj., unpleasing.

ingredior, -grediī, -gressus, [ingradior, step], 3. v. dep., march into, enter, march in.

iniciō, -icere, -iōcī, -iectus, [in-iacio], 3. v. a., throw into, throw upon. — Less exactly, place in, put on, embark. — Fig., inspire.

infectus, -a, -um, p. p. of iniciō.

inimicitia, -ae, [inimicō + tia], F., enmity, hostility.

inimicus, -a, -um, [in-amicus], adj., unfriendly, hostile. — As noun, an enemy (personal, or not in war, cf. hostis, an enemy of the state, or an enemy at war), a rival, an opponent.

iniquitās, -tātis, [iniquō + tas], F., inequality, irregularity, unevenness. — Fig., unfairness, unequal nature, unfavorableness.

iniquus, -a, -um, [in-aequus], adj., uneven. — Fig., unjust (of persons and things), unfavorable, unfair, disadvantageous. — Compar., iniquior locus, less favorable position.

initium, -i, [in-ītium (itō + ium), cf. ineō], N., a beginning, the first of: initium capere, facere, begin, start; transeundi (the initiative, the first steps, the first attempt to, etc.); initium fit ab, the start is first made at (also lit.); fugae factum (the first tendency to fly was shown); retinēndi (the first detention); silvarum (the edge); Remorum (boundary); artificiorum initia (the first principles, the first knowledge of, etc.).

iniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūncētus, [in-iungō], 3. v. a., attach to. — Fig., impose upon (his . . . servitutem).

iniūria, -ae, [in-ius (right) + ia, cf. inius], F., injustice, outrage, wrong, violence (as opposed to right), abuse.

iniüssū [in-iussu, abl. of iussus], adv., without orders.

inlatūs (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of infero.

inligātus (ill-), -a, -um, p. p. of inligō (ill-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [in-ligo, bind ], I. v. n., bind on, attach, fasten to.

inlustris (ill-), -e, [in-lustrō (or kindred st.), cf. lustro, light], adj., distinguished, renowned, remarkable, famous: inlustriore loco natus, of any promience.

innāscor, -nāscī, -nātus, [innascor], 3. v. dep., grow in, spring up in. — Fig., be inspired, be excited. — innātus, p. p. as adj., natural, innate.

innātus, -a, -um, p. p. of innascor.

innitor, -nītī, -nīsus (-nixus), [innitor], 3. v. dep., lean upon, support one's self on. — innixus, p. p. in present sense, leaning on.

innixus, -a, -um, p. p. of innitor.

innocēns, -entis, [in-nocens, p. of noceo, injure], adj., harmless, guiltless, innocent.

innocentia, -ae, [innocent- + ia], F., blamelessness, integrity.

inopia, -ae, [inop- (needy) + ia], F., scarcity, dearth, destitution, want, privation, want of supplies.

inopīnāns, -antis, [in-opīnāns], adj., unsuspecting, not suspecting.
inquam, [?], def. v. n., say.
inridēō (irr.-), -ridēre, -rīsi, -rīsum, [in-rideo, laugh], 2. v. n., ridicule, laugh at.
inridiculē (irr.-), [old case-form of irridicus], adv., without humor.
inruptō (irr.-), -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus, [in-rumpo], 3. v. n. and a., break in, break into, storm.
inruptīō (irr.-), -ōnis, [in- ruptio and inrumpo], F., a breaking in, an attack (on a fortified place), raid, incursion.
insulae, -ae, [in-sciens], adj., not knowing, unaware: insciente Caesare, without C.'s knowledge.
inscientia, -ae, [in-scient- + ia], F., ignorance, lack of acquaintance with.
inscius, -a, -um, [in- tscius, cf. conscious and scio], adj., not knowing, unaware, ignorant.
inscūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of inssequor.
inssequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [inssequor], 3. v. dep., follow up, pursue.
insero, -serere, -seruī, -sertus, [insero, join], 3. v. a., insert, stick in.
insidiae, -ārum, [insid- (cf. insideo, sit in) + ia], F. plur., an ambush, a stratagem, a trick, a plot, a trap, treachery: per insidias, with deception, treacherously.
insidior, -āri, -ātus, [insidiā-], 1. v. dep., lie in wait, make treacherous attacks.
insignis, -e, [in-signō, mark, decl. as adj.], adj., marked, memorable, signal,—insigne, N. as noun, signal, sign, decoration (of soldiers).

inskīliō, -silīre, -silui, -sultus, [insalio], 4. v. a., leap upon.
insimulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of insimulo.
insimulū, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [insimulo, make like], 1. v. a., charge, accuse.
insinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [insinuo], 1. v. a. and n., wind in.—With reflex., work one's way into, slip in.
insistō, -sistere, -stitō, no p. p., [insisto], 3. v. a. and n., stand upon, set foot upon, stand, keep one's footing.—Fig., adopt (rationem pugnae), devote one's self (in bellum).
insolenter [insolent- (cf. soleo, be wont) + ter], adv., (in an unusual manner), insultingly, insolently.
inspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [inspecto], 1. v. a. and n., look upon, look on: inspectantibus nobis, before our eyes.
instābilis, -e, [in-stabilis, cf. sto], adj., unsteady.—Fig., changeable, uncertain.
instar [instā + ris (? , reduced)], N. indecl., (an image), in the likeness of (with gen.), like, in the manner of.
instīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [instigō (stim (good) + us)], 1. v. a., good, stimulate, drive on, urge on.
instītuō, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtus, [instatuo], 3. v. a., set up, set in order, array: opus (finish).—Also, provide, procure, get ready.—Also, set about, undertake, begin to practice, adopt (a plan, etc.), begin, set on foot.—So, teach, train, habituate.
institūtum, -I, [N. p. p. of instituō], N., a habit, a practice, an institution, a custom.
instō, -stāre, -stī, -stātūrus, [insto, stand], i. v. n., be at hand, press on.—Fig., threaten, impend, menace: tempus instantis belli, time of active, immediate war.

instrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of instruo.

instrūmentum, -i, [instru- (cf. instruo) + mentum], N., furniture, equipment, tools and stores (of soldiers).

instrō, -struere, -strūxi, -struc-tus, [in-struo, build], 3. v. a., build, fit up, fit out, array, draw up (of troops).


insuetus, -a, -um, [in-suetus], adj., unaccustomed, unused.

insula, -ae, [akin to in-salio?], F., ('tussocks' in a swamp) an island.

insuper [in-super, above], adv., on the top, above, at the top.

integer, -gra, -grum, [in-teger (tag, in tango, touch, + rus)], adj., untouched, unimpaired, unwearied, fresh; as noun, fresh troops.—Esp., not entered upon (of business); re integra, before anything was done, before being committed to any course of action.

integō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus, [intego], 3. v. a., cover over, face (turris coriis).

intellegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus, [inter-lego], 3. v. a., (pick out [distinguish] between), learn, know, find out, discover, see plainly, be aware.

intendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus, [in-tendo], 3. v. a., stretch, strain.—Esp. of the mind or eyes, be intent, be absorbed: oculis intentis, with eyes intent; animis intentis in ea re, with their minds absorbed in this.

intentus, -a, -um, p. p. of intendo.

inter [in + ter, cf. alter], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., between, among: arbitros inter civitatis dat (to decide between); inter aciem, in the line.—Of time, within, for.

—Often in a reciprocal sense: inter se, with, to, from, etc., each other, one another; cohortati inter se, encouraging each other, one another; obsides inter eos dandos curavit, caused them to exchange hostages.

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus, [inter-cedo], 3. v. n., come between, go between, lie between, intervene, exist between, occur between, be, pass (of time): ipsis cum Haeduis intercedere, exist between them and the Haedui.

interceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of intercipio.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [inter-capio, take], 3. v. a., intercept, cut off.

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus, [inter-claudo, shut], 3. v. a., cut off, shut off, block (roads): fugam (stop, cut off).

interdicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus, [inter-dico], 3. v. a., (intervene by an order), forbid, prohibit: Gallia Romanis interdici (exclude the Romans, etc., by order); aqua atque igni (expel, by forbidding fire and water, the regular form of exile); interdicere ne, forbid to, order not to.

interdiū [inter-diu (acc. or abl. ?}
akin to dies), adv., in the daytime, by day.

interdum [inter dum (orig. acc.)], adv., for a time, sometimes.

interēa [inter ea (prob. abl.)], adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.

interēō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītūrus, [interēo (go into pieces?, cf. interficīō)], irr. v. n., perish, die, be killed.

interfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of interficīō.

interficīō, -ficere, -ficēi, -fectus, [inter-facīo], 3. v. a., (cut to pieces, cf. interēo), kill, put to death.

interficīō, -ficere, -ficēi, -fectus, [inter-facīo], 3. v. a., throw in (between).

— Pass., lie between, intervene: spatio interiecto, intervening, i.e. leaving a short interval; portubus interiectis (lying at intervals); sagittariis (thrown in at intervals).

interiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of interficīō.

interim [loc. of †interus, cf. inter, interior], adv., meanwhile.

interior, -us, [comp. of †interus (in-terus, cf. alter)], adj., inner, interior.— Masc. as noun: interiores, men in the interior, men in the town.

interitus, -tūs, [inter-itus, cf. interēo], destruction, death.

intermissus, see intermitto.

intermittō, -mittere, -mĭsi, -missus, [inter-mitto], 3. v. a. and n., (let go between), leave off, discontinue, stop, interrupt, cease: neque diem neque noctem (not cease day or night); spatiis intermissis, leaving intervals; brevi tempore intermisso, waiting a short time; spatio intermisso, after a time; triduo intermisso (leaving an interval of, etc.); nocte intermissa, a night intervening; flumen intermittit (discontinue, leave a vacant place); subeuntes non intermiserunt (did not cease, etc.); intermissa profectione (delaying); vento intermisso (ceasing, failing); nocturnis temporibus ad laborem intermissis, ceasing their toil in the night time; tempus ab opere, at any time cease the work; diem quin, etc. (let a day pass without, etc.); intermissae trabes (separated); intermissa magistratibus, passed over for a year; pars oppidi intermissa a flumine (left unprotected); planities intermissa collibus (broken by, lying between).

interneciō, -ōnis, [inter-†necio, same root as neco, kill], F, extermination, annihilation (excitūs).

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [inter-pello, cf. appello, -āre], 1. v. a., interrupt, interfere with.

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, [inter-pono], 3. v. a., put in between (lit. and fig.), interpose, allege (an excuse to break off something): nulla suspicione bellī interposita, no suspicion of war appearing to hinder; fidem reliquis interponere (give a promise not to do something); decre-tum (put in, introduce, into the affairs of the Gauls); nulla dubitatio interposita, with no hesitation to prevent, etc.

interpres, -pretis, [inter-†pres (akin to pretium?)], c., a mediator, an interpreter.

interpreter, -ārī, -ātus, [inter-pret-], 1. v. dep., interpret, explain.
interrogātus, -a, -um, p. p. of interrogō.

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [interrogo], 1. v. a., (ask at intervals), question, interrogate, ask.

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [inter-rumpo], 3. v. a., break off (between two points), break down (bridges), destroy.

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, [inter-scindo], 3. v. a., cut off (between two points), break down, tear down.

intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, [inter-sum], irr. v. n., be between, be among, be in, be engaged in: non amplius inter sit, there is an interval of not more than, etc.; proelio, divinis rebus (be engaged in, take part in).—Esp., impers., it is of importance, it interests, it concerns; with neg., it makes no difference.

intervallum, -ī, [inter-vallus, distance between stakes in a rampart], n., distance (between two things), distance apart, interval.

interveniō, -venīre, -venī, -venītūrus, [inter-vienio], 4. v. n., come between, come up (at a particular juncture), arrive.

interventus, -tūs, [inter-ventus, cf. eventus and intervenio], m., a coming (to interrupt something), intervention.

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus, [in-texo], 3. v. a., weave in, weave together.

intextus, -a, -um, p. p. of intertexo.

intoleranter [intolerant- (not enduring) + ter], adv., (with no patience or restraint over one's self), fiercely, violently.

intrā [instr. (?)] of tinterus, cf. inter and extra], adv. and prep. with acc., into, within, inside.

intritus, -a, -um, [in-tritus (p. p. of tero, wear)], adj., unworn.—Fig., unexhausted, unwearied.

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [tinterō-], 1. v. a., enter, go in.

intrōdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [intro-duco], 3. v. a., lead in, bring in, march in (troops).

introesō, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itus, [intro-eo], irr. v. a. and n., enter, come in.

introitus, -tūs, [intro-itus, cf. introeō], m., an entrance, an approach (means of entrance).

intrōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of intromitto.

intrōmittō, -mittere, -mitsi, -missus, [intro-mitto], 3. v. a., let go in, send in. —With reflex. or in pass., rush in: intromissus, rushing in.

intrōrīsus [intro-vorsus (petrified nom., p. p. of verto, turn)], adv., into the interior, inside, within.

intrōrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptūrus, [intro-rumpo], 3. v. n., break in, burst in.

intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus (-tūtus), [in-tueor], 2. v. dep., gaze upon, gaze at, cast one's eyes upon.

intulī, see infero.

intus [in + tus], adv., within.

inūsitātus, -a, -um, [in-usitatus], adj., unwonted, unaccustomed; inusitator, less familiar.

inūtilis, -e, [in-utile], adj., of no use, unserviceable.—In a pregnant sense, unfavorable.
inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus, [in-venio], 4. v. a., find, (come upon, cf. reperio, find by search), learn.

inventor, -tōris, [in-ventor, cf. invenio], m., a discoverer, an inventor.

inventus, -a, -um, p. p. of invenio.

inveterāscō, -rāscere, -rāvī, -rātūrus, [in-veterasco], 3. v. n., grow old in, become established in.

invictus, -a, -um, [in-victus], adj., unconquered. — Also, unconquerable, invincible.

invidēō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, [invideo, see], 2. v. n. and a., (look askance at), envy, be jealous of, grudge.

invidia, -ae, [invidē- (envious) + ia], F., envy, odium.

inviolātus, -a, -um, [in-violatus], adj., inviolate. — Also (cf. invictus), inviolable, sacred.

invisus, -a, -um, p. p. of invideo.

invitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of invito.

invitō, āre, āvī, ātus, [?], i. v. a., invite, request, attract.

invitus, -a, -um, [?], adj., unwilling. — Often rendered as adv., against one's will.

ipse, -a, -um, [is-potis (?)], intens. pron., self, himself, etc. (as opp. to some one else, cf. sui, reflex., referring to the subject), he, etc. (emph.), he himself, etc.: hoc ipso tempore, at this very time; ipse per se, in and of itself; inter se (regular reciprocal), each other, with each other, by each other, etc.

iracundia, -ae, [iracundō- + ia], F., wrath (as a permanent quality, cf. ira, a temporary feeling), irascibility, anger, passion, animosity.

irācundus, -a,-um, [ira + cundus], adj., of a violent temper, passionate, irascible.

is, ea, id, [pron. I], dem. pron., this (less emph. than hic), that (unemph.), these, those, etc., the, a, he, she, it: quae pars ea, etc., the part which, etc.; eo deceptus quod, etc. (by the fact that, etc.); et id, and that too; ea quae, the things which, what; Rhodanus influit et is transitur (and this river, etc.); cum ea ita sint, since this is so; is locus quo, a place where; neque eam plenissimam, and that not a very full one; manere in eo quod, etc., abide by what.—Abl. N., eo, the (old Eng. instrumental), so much, on that account, therefore; eo magis, all the more; eo gravius, so much the more severely.

iste, -a, -ud, [is-te (cf. tum, tantus, etc.)], dem. pron., that, of yours.

ita [i + ta (instr. (?) of TA)], adv., so, in such a way, in this way, thus, to such an extent, as follows: ut ... ita, as ... so, though ... yet, both ... and; ita ... ut, in proportion as, as; non ita, not so very, not very.

Italia, -ae, [Iitalo- (reduced) + ia (f. of ius)], F., Italy.

itaque [ita que], adv., and so, accordingly, therefore.

item [i-tem (acc.?, cf. idem)], adv., in like manner, so also, in the same way (before mentioned).

iter, itineris, [st. fr. I (go) + unc. term.], N., a road, a march, a way, a route, a course, a journey: in
itinere, on the road; in eo itinere, on the way; iter facere, march, travel; iter dare, allow to pass; itinere prohibere, forbid to pass, keep from passing; magnis itineribus, by forced marches; tutum iter, a safe passage.

iterum [1 + terus, cf. alter], adv., a second time, again: semel atque iterum, again and again.

Itius [Celtic], adj., (with portus), the port where Cæsar embarked for Britain the second time; either Wissant or Boulogne.

iuba, -ae, [?], F., the mane.
iubeō, iubère, iussi, iūssus, [prob. ius-habeo, cf. præbeo], 2. v. a., order, command, bid.

iūdictium, -i, [iūdic- (in iūdīx, judge) + iūm], N., a judgment, (judicial), a trial, an opinion (expressed officially); an opinion (generally), advice: optimum iūdictium facere, express (by some act) a very high opinion; iūdictio, by design; often translated by court.

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iūdic- (in iūdīx, judge)], 1. v. a., formally decide, decide, judge, adjudge, think, consider: nihil gravius de civitate (think nothing harsh about, etc.).
iūgum, -i, [IUG (in iungo) + um], N., a yoke; sub iūgum mittere (an insult inflicted on a conquered army). Hence, a ridge, a crest (of a row of hills).
iūmentum, -i, [IUG (?-) + men- tum], N., a beast of burden, a pack-horse, a horse.
iūnctūra, -ae, [iunctu- + ra (F. of -rus)], F., a joining, a joint: quantum distatbat iunctura, as far as the distance apart, of two things joined.
iūnctus, -a, -um, p. p. of iungo.
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus, [IUG], 3. v. a., join, unite, attach together. — In pass. or with reflex., unite with, attach one's self to.
iūnior, comp. of iuvenis.

Iūnius, -ī, [? prob. iuveni- + ius, but cf. Iuno], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Decimus Iūnius Brutus, see Brutus. — Also, Quintus Iūnius, a Spaniard in Cæsar's service.

Iuppiter, Iovis, [Iovis-pater], M., the god of the visible heavens and the atmosphere, who was regarded as the supreme divinity of the Romans.

Iūra, -ae, [Celtic], M., a chain of mountains in Gaul, running N.E. from the Rhone to the Rhine, separating the Sequani and the Helvetii.
iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [iur- (st. of ius)], 1. v. n., swear, take an oath.
iūs, iūris, [YU (akin to IUC + us)], N., justice, right, rights (collectively), rights over (anything), claims. iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandi, [see the two words], N., an oath.
iūssū [abl. of tiussus], used as adv., by order, by command.

iūstitia, -ae, [iusto- + tia], F., justice (just behavior), sense of justice, fair dealing.
iūstus, -a, -um, [ius + tus], adj., just, lawful. — Also, complete, perfect, regular: populi Romani iūstitissimum esse imperium, that the Romans were best entitled to dominion.
juvenis, -e, [?], adj., young. — As noun, a young man (not over 45), a youth: iuniores, the younger soldiers. iuventūs, -tūtis, [iuven- (orig. st. of iuvenis) + tus], F., youth. — Concretely, the youth, the young men.

K

Kal., for Kalendae and its cases. Kalendae (Cal-), -ārum, [F. plur. of calendus, p. of verb akin to calo, cal], F. plur., the Calends (the first day of the Roman month, when as it would seem, the times of the moon were announced to the assembled people).

L

L (ψ), [a corrupt form of the Greek letter ψ (prop. χ), originally used for 50, and retained in the later notation], a sign for quinquāgintā.

Laberius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentle name. — See Durus.

Labiēnus, -i, [?], perh., labia (lips) + enus, M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Titus Atius Labienus, a violent partisan of Caesar, a legatus under him in Gaul, but afterwards in the civil war on the side of Pompey.

labor, -ōris, [rabh (seize) + or (for -os)], M., toil, exertion (in its disagreeable aspect), labor (as painful), trouble, hardship.

lābor, lābī, lāpusus, [unc., cf. lābō, totter], 3. v. dep., slip, slide, fall. — Fig., commit an imprudence, go wrong, be disappointed.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -āitus, [labor-], 1. v. n., toil, exert one's self: id contendere et laborare ne, strive and be anxious not to have, etc.; animo

L,
laetitia, -ae, [laetō- + tia], F., joy, gladness (cf. laetus).
laetus, -a, -um, [unc. root (perh. akin to glad) + tus], adj., joyful (of the inner feeling), rejoicing, glad.
languardē [old case-form of languardus], adv., with little energy, feebly.
languardus, -a, -um, [cf. linguo, be weary], adj., spiritless, listless, languid: languidor, with less spirit.
languator, -ōris, [LANG (in linguo, be weary) + or], M., want of spirit, listlessness, weariness.
lapis, -idis, [?], M., a stone (to throw, etc.). — Collectively, stone, stones.
lāpsum, -a, -um, p. p. of labor.
laqueus, -i, [lac (in lacio, entice) + us], M., a slip-noose.
largior, -īri, -ītus, [largō-, abundant], 4. v. dep., give lavishly, bestow upon, supply with.— Also, give bribes, give presents.
largiter [largō- (abundant) + ter], adv., lavishly : largiter posse, possess abundant influence.
largītūdō, -ōnis, [largī- (st. of largior) + tio], F., lavish giving, bribery.
lassitūdō, -ōnis, [lassō- (weary) + tudo, cf. fortitudo], F., weariness, exhaustion.
lātē [old case-form of latus], adv., widely: latus, too far; longe lateque, far and wide.
latebra, -ae, [latē- (in lateo) + bra], F., a hiding-place.
lateō, latēre, latui, no p. p., [?], 2. v. n., lie concealed, lurk, be concealed, pass unnoticed.
laetitūdō, -ōnis, [latō- + tudo] F., breadth, width.
Laotbrigī, -orum, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii.
latrō, -ōnis, [prob. st. borrowed fr. Greek + o], M., a mercenary (?), a robber.
latrōcinium, -ī, [latron- + cinium, cf. ratiocinor], N., freebooting, robbery, highway robbery.
lātus, -a, -um, [prob. for κλέατος, cf. Eng. flat], adj., broad, wide, extensive.
latus, lateris, [prob. latō-], N., the side (of the body). — Also, generally, a side, a flank, an end (of a hill).
lātus, -a, -um, [for tlatos, TLA (cf. tollo, tuli) + tus], p. p. of fero.
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [laud-], I. v. a., praise, commend.
laus, laudis, [?], F., praise, credit, glory, merit (thing deserving praise).
lavō, -āre (-ere), -āvi (lāvī), -ātus (lautus, lōtus), [?], I. v. a., wash. — In pass. used reflexively, bathe.
laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [laxō-, loose], I. v. a., loosen, open out, extend.
lēgātiō, -ōnis, [legā- (despatch) + tio], F., (a sending or commission), an embassy, an embassy (message of ambassadors).
lēgātus, -i, [prop. p. p. of lēgo, commission, despatch], M., an ambassador, envoy. — Also, a lieutenant, a legatus. To a Roman commander were assigned (legare) one or more subordinate officers capable of taking command in his absence or en-
gaging in independent operations under his general direction. These were the legati, and with the questor composed a kind of staff.

Legio, -onis, [leg (select) + io], F., (a levy); hence, a legion (originally the whole levy, later the unit of army organization, numbering from 3000 to 6000 men, divided into ten cohorts).

Legionarius, -a, -um, [legion- +arius], adj., of a legion, of the line, legionary (the Roman heavy infantry of the legion as opposed to all kinds of auxiliary troops).

Lemannus, -i [?], m., (with lacus either expressed or implied), the Lake of Geneva, Lake Leman.

Lemovices, -um, [Celtic], m. pl.: 1. A Gallic tribe in modern Limousin. The name is preserved in Limoges.

Lenis, -e, [?], adj., gentle, smooth.

Lenitas, -tatis, [leni- + tas], F., gentleness, gentle current (of a river).

Leniter [leni- + ter], adv., gently: lenius, with less vigor.

Leponitii, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of the Alps on the Italian side of St. Gothard.

Lepus, -oris, [?]; m., a hare.

Leuci (Levaci), -orum, [Celtic], m. pl., a Gallic tribe on the Moselle.

Levaci, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Belgian Gaul, dependents of the Nervii.

Levis, -e, [for †leghvis, lagh (jump) + us (with inserted i, cf. brevis), Eng. light], adj., light, slight, unimportant, of no weight: auditio (mere hearsay without foundation).—Also (cf. gravis), inconstant, fickle, wanting in character: quid esset leius (less dignified).

Levitatis, -tatis, [levi- + tas], F., lightness.—Also (cf. levis), inconstancy, fickleness.

Levo, -are, -avi, -atus, [levi- (as if levó-)], i. v. a., lighten. Hence, free from a burden, relieve.

Lēx, lēgis, [leg (in lego, select)], F., a statute, a law.

Lexovii, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Normandy.

Libenter [libent- (willing) + ter], adv., willingly, with pleasure.—With a verb, be glad to, etc.

Liber, -bera, -berum, [libō- (whence libet, it pleases) + rus (reduced)], adj., free (of persons and things), unrestricted, undisturbed, unincumbered.

Liberālitās, -tātis, [liberali- + tas], F., generosity, liberality.

Liberālīter [liberali- + ter], adv., generously, kindly (respondit): oratione prosecutus (addressing in generous language).

Liberātus, -a, -um, p. p. of libero.

Liberō [old case-form of liber], adv., freely, boldly, without restraint: liberius, with too little restraint.

Liberi, -orum, [prob. m. plur. of liber, the free members of the household], m. plur., children.

Liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [liberō-], i. v. a., free, set free, relieve (from some bond); liberare se, secure one's freedom.

Libertās, -tātis, [liberō- (reduced) + tas], F., liberty, freedom, independence.
librīlis, -e, [libra- (pound) + ilis], adj., of a pound weight: fundae (heavy missiles from slings, one-pounders).

licentia, -ae, [licent- (cf. licet) + ia], f., lawlessness, want of discipline.

licedor, licēri, licitus, [prob. pass. of licet], 2. v. dep., bid (at an auction).

licet, licēri, licuit (licitum etc.), licet
do you not hinder; licet conspicari, one can see; quibus esse licet, who may be, who have a chance to be; petere ut licet, to ask permission.

Liger, -eris, [Celtic], m., a river of Gaul between the Hœaudi and the Bituriges, the Loire.

lignātiō, -onis, [lignā- (cf. lignum, wood) + tio], f., getting wood.

lignātor, -toris, [lignā- (cf. lignum, wood) + tor], m., wood-forager, wood-cutter.

lilium, -i, [?], n., a lily. The name is applied jocosely to a peculiar kind of chevaux-de-frise.

līnea, -ae, [linē- (flax) + ea (f. of -eus)], f., a line.

Lingones, -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe in the Vosges Mts.

lingua, -ae, [?], f., tongue. Hence, language.

lingula, -ae, [lingua- + la (f. of -lus)], f., a little tongue, a tongue of land.

linter (lunt-), -tris, [?], f. (?), a trough, a skiff, a boat.

diem, to a more distant day; navis longa, a ship of war, a war galley, (opposed to the broader naves one-rariae); longum est exspectare, it is too long to wait, it would take too long to, etc.

loquor, loqui, locútus, [ʔ], 3. v. dep., speak, talk, converse.

lórica, -ae, [loró- (strap) + ica], F., a coat of mail (orig. of leather thongs). — Also, a breastwork, a rampart (on a wall).

Lúcánus, -i, [Lucanó- + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus Lucanius, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Lúcius, -i, [luc- (in lux) + ius], M., a Roman prænomen.

Lucterius, -i, [ʔ, perh. Celtic], M., a Gallic name, perh. borrowed from the Romans. — Esp., Lucterius Cadurcus, a commander under Vercingetorix.

Lugotoríx, -ágis, [Celtic], M., a British prince.

Lúna, -ae, [Luc (in luceo, shine) + na], F., the moon. Also personified, Luna, the Moon.

Lutetia, -ae, [ʔ], F., a city of the Parisii, on the island of modern Paris.

Lúx, lúcís, [Luc, shine, as st.], F., light, daylight: prima luce, orta luce, or luce, at daybreak.

Lúxuria, -ae, [lúxorō- (luxus- (excess) + rus) + ia], F., luxury, riotous living.

M, for Marcus.

M [corruption of Clō (orig. Φ) through influence of mille], 1000.

máceria, -ae, [mācerō- (whence macerō, soften) + ia], F., (mortar?), a wall.

máchinatió, -ónis, [machinā- + tio], F., contrivance (mechanical). — Concretely, a contrivance, an engine, a derrick.

maestus, -a, -um, [p. p. of mæreo, MIS (in miser, wretched) + tus], adj., sad, sorrowful, dejected.

Magetobriga, -ae, [Celtic], F., a town in Gaul where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls. Position uncertain.

magis [MAG (in magnus) + ius (n. comparative)], adv., more, rather: eo magis, so much the more, all the more. See also maxime.

Lucterius, -i, [ʔ, perh. Celtic], M., a Gallic name, perh. borrowed from the Romans. — Esp., Lucterius Cadurcus, a commander under Vercingetorix.

Magistrátus, -tús, [magistrá- (as if st. of ñamigistro, cf. magister, master) + tus], M., a magistracy (office of a magistrate). — Concretely, a magistrate (cf. "the powers that be").

mágnificus, -a, -um, [magnō- + ticus (fac in facio) + us], adj., splendid, grand, magnificent.

mágnitudō, -dinis, [magnō- + tudo], F., greatness, great size, size, extent, stature, force (venti), severity (supplici): silvarum (immense woods); corporum (size, stature).

mágnopere, see opus.

mágnus, -a, -um, [MAG (increase) + nus, cf. magis], adj., great (in any sense, of size, quantity, or degree), large, extensive, important, serious (motus), heavy (portoria), high (aestus), loud (vox): magni habere, to
value highly, make much account of; magni interest, it is of great importance. — māior, compar. in usual sense. — Also, māior (with or without nātu), elder, older. — In plur. as noun, elders, ancestors. — maximus, superl., largest, very large, greatest, very great, etc.: maximis itineribus, by forced marches. See also Maxi-

māiestās, -tātis, [maios- (orig. st. of maior) + tas], F., (superiority), majesty, dignity.

māior, see magnus.

malacia, -ae, [burr. fr. Greek], F., (soft weather), a calm.

male [old case-form of malus], adv., badly, ill, unsuccessfully. — peius, compar. — pessimus, superl.

maleficium, -ī, [maleficō- (mischiefous) + ium], N., harm, mischief.

mālō, mālle, mālūi, no p. p., [mage- (for magis) volo], irr. v. a. and n., wish more, wish rather, prefer, prefer rather. — malus, -a, -um, [?], adj., bad (in all senses), ill. — pēior, compar. — pessimus, superl.

mālus, -ī, [Gr.], m., (apple-tree), mast, beam (upright).

mandātum, -ī, [N. p. p. of man-
do], N., a trust (given to one), instructions (given), a message (given to some one to deliver).

mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?], mandō- (manu-do)], I. v. a., put into one’s hands, entrust, instruct (give instructions to), commit: se fugae (take to); quibus mandatum est, who had been instructed.

Mandubīi, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe north of the Haedui.

Mandubracius, -ī, [Celtic], m., a Briton, prince of the Trinobantes.

māne [old case-form of †manis (ʔ, ma + nis, cf. Matuta, goddess of dawn)], adv., in the morning.

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, 2. v. n., stay, remain, stay at home (absolutely, opp. to proficiscor). — Fig., continue, stand by (in eo quod).

manipulāris, -īs, [manipulō- + aris, prop. adj.], m., comrade (of the same maniple or company).

manipulus, -ī, [manu- †pulus (ple + us)], m., (a handful, esp. of hay, used as an ensign), a maniple (two centuries, a third of a cohort).

Manlius, -ī, [?], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Man-
lius, as proconsul, beaten by the Aquitani in B.C. 78.

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -feci, -factus, [†mansueō- (cf. mansuesco, grow tame, and calefacio) -facio], 3. v. a., tame. — Pass., mānsuēfīō, be tamed.

mānsuētūdō, -dinis, [†mansue-
(cf. mansueficio) + ūdo], F., tameness, gentle disposition, kindness.

manus, -ūs, [?], F., the hand: in manibus nostris, just at hand, within reach; manu defendere (by arms); dat manus, hold out the hands to be bound, acknowledge one’s self con-
quered, give in. — Also (cf. manipu-
lus), a company, a band, a troop.

Marcomannī, -ōrum, [Teutonic, akin to march and man, “the men of the marches”?], m. plur., a sup-
posed German tribe in the army of Ariovistus.
Mārcus, -ī, [the hammer, akin to marceo, be soft, and morior, die], M., a Roman praenomen.

mare, -is, [?], N., the sea: mare oceanum, the ocean; nostrum (i.e. the Mediterranean).

maritimus, -a, -um, [maritimus, cf. finitimus], adj., of the sea, maritime, naval, on the sea:

aestus (in the sea); ora (the seashore).—Also, maritus.

Marius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., Gaius Marius, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and Teutones (B.C. 101) and freed Rome from the fear of a Northern invasion.

Mārs, Mārtis, [?], perh. MAR (in morior, die) + tis, the slayer, but more probably of wolves than of men in battle], M., Mārs, originally probably a god of husbandry defending the sheep, but afterwards identified with the Greek Ἀρης and worshipped as the god of war. Cæsar again identifies him with the Celtic Hesus.—See aequus.

mās, maris, [?], adj., male.—Noun, a male.

matara, -ae, [Celtic], F., a javelin (of a peculiar kind, used by the Gauls).

māter, -tris, [?], prob. MA (create) + ter], F., a mother, a matron.

māter familias (old gen. of familia), F., a matron.

māteria, -ae (es, -ō), [?], prob. mater + ia (F. of -ius)], F., wood

(cut, for material), timber, (cf. lignum, wood for fuel).

māterior, -āri, -ātus, [mater-],

1. v. dep., get timber, bring wood.

Mattiscō, -onis, [Celtic], F., a city of the Hædui, now Macon.

mātrimōnium, -ī, [mater- (as if matri) + monium], N. (motherhood), marriage, matrimony: in matrimonium ducere, marry.

Matrona, -ae, [Celtic], M., a river of Gaul, joining the Seine near Paris, the Marne.

māturē [old case-form of maturus], adv., early, speedily.

māturēscō, -tūescere, -tūri, no p. p., [maturē- (cf. matureo) + sco],

3. v. n., get ripe, ripen.

māturō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [maturō-],

1. v. a. and n., hasten, make haste.

māturūs, -a, -um, [matur- (MA, in mane) + tus] + rūs], adj., early.

—Also (by unc. conn. of ideas), ripe, mature.

maximē [old case-form of maximus], adv., in the greatest degree, most, very, in the highest degree, especially: ea maxime ratione, in that way more than any other; maxime confidebat, had the greatest confidence.

Maximus [sup. of magnus, as noun], M., a Roman family name.

medeor, -ēri, no p. p., [medō- (whence medicus, remedium), root unc., cf. meditor], 2. v. dep., attend (as a physician), heal.—Fig., remedy, relieve.

mediocris, -cre, [mediō- + cris], adj., middling, moderate: spatium (a little, no great); non mediocris, no little, no small degree of.
mediocr iter [mediocr-i- + ter], adv., moderately: non mediocr iter, in no small degree.

Mediomatici, -orum, (-um), [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Rhine, about Metz.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, [mediō-terra (land) + aneus], adj., inland.

medius, -a, -um, [MED (cf. Eng. mid) + ius], adj., the middle of (as noun in Eng.), mid-: in colle medio (half way up); locus medius utriusque (half way between); de media nocte, about midnight.

Meldi, -orum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul.

melior, compar. of bonus.

Melodūnum, -ī, [Celtic], N., a city of the Senones, on an island in the Seine, now Melun; see Metiosedum.

membrum, -ī, [prob. formed with suffix -rum (N. of -rus)], N., a limb, a part of the body.

memini, -isse, [perf. of MAN, in mens, etc.], def. verb a., remem-

memoria, -ae, [memor + ia], F., (mindfulness), memory, recollection, power of memory: memoria tenere, remember; memoriam proderere, hand down the memory (of something just mentioned); memoriam deponere, cease to remember; memoria prodi-
tum, handed down by tradition; supra hanc memoriam, beyond the memory of this generation; dignum memoria, worthy of remembrance; nostrā memoria, within our memory, in our own time.

Menapiī, -orum, [Celtic], M. plur., a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Scheldt.

mendācium, -ī, [mendac- (false) + ium], N., falsehood, a falsehood.

mēns, mentis, [MAN + tis (reduced)], F., (a thought?), the intellect (as opposed to the moral powers, cf. animus), the mind, a state of mind: mentes animosque, minds and hearts; oculis mentibusque, with eyes and thoughts.

mēnsis, -is, [unc. form fr. MA, measure (cf. moon, month)], M., a month.

mēnsūra, -ae, [†mensu- (MA, measure, as if man, + tu) + ra (F. of -rus)], F., measure: ex aqua mensurae, measures by the water-clock; itinerum (accurate length).

mentiō, -onis, [as if MAN (in memini) + tio (prob. †menti + o)], F., mention.

mercātor, -tōris, [†mercā- (cf. mercor, trade) + tor], M., a trader (who carries his own wares abroad).

mercātūra, -ae, [†mercatu- + ra (F. of rus)], F., traffic, trade, commercial enterprise.

mercēs, -ēdis, [mercē- (cf. merx, merchandise) + ēus (reduced)], F., hire, pay, wages.

Mercurius, -ī, [unc. form, akin to merces, etc.], M., Mercury, the Roman god of gain, traffic, etc. Afterwards, identified with the Greek Hermes, he was considered also the god of eloquence as well as of trade, the messenger of the gods, and the god of roads, etc. He is identified by Cæsar with a Celtic divinity, probably Teutates.
moneor, -ērī, -itus, (also meroe, active), 2. v. dep., moneor, deserve, gain.

— Also (from earning pay), serve: moneiri de, serve the interests of.

meriđiānus, -a, -um, [meridiē- + anus], adj., of midday: tempus (noon).

meridiēs, -ēs, [prob. medio- (reduced) -dies], M., midday, noon.— Also, the south.

meritum, -ī, [N. p. p. of meroe], N., desert, service.— meritō (abl. as adv.), deservedly: minus merito, without the fault; magis . . . quam merito eorum, more than by any act of theirs; merito eius a se fieri; that he deserved that he should do it.

meritus, -a, -um, p. p. of meroe.

Messāla, -ae, [?], M., a Roman family name.— Esp., Marcus Valerius Messala, consul, B.C. 61, with Marcus Piso.

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus, [†meti- (ma + tis ?)], 4. v. dep., measure, measure out, deal out (rations), distribute.

Metiosēdum, -i, [Celtic], N., earlier name of Melodunum.

Mētius, -i, [?], M., a Gaul in relations of hospitality (see hospes) with Ariovistus.

metō, metere, messui, messus, [?], 3. v. a., cut, reap, gather.

metus, -tūs, [unc. root + tus], M., fear.— Often superfluous with other words of fearing: metu territare, terrify.— Esp.: hoc metu, fear of this.

meus, -a, -um, [MA (in me) + ius], poss. adj. pron., my, mine.

mihi, see ego.

miles, -itis, [unc. st. akin to mille as root + tis (reduced)], c., a soldier, a common soldier (as opposed to officers), a legionary soldier (heavy infantry, as opposed to other arms of the service).— Collectively, the soldiers, the soldiery.

militāris, -e, [milit- + aris], adj., of the soldiers, military: signa (battle-standards). See res.

militia, -ae, [milit- + ia], F., military service, service (in the army).

mille, indecl. millia, -iūm, [akin to miles], adj. in sing., noun in plur., a thousand: mille passuum, a thousand paces, a mile.

Minerva, -ae, [unc. form akin to memini, etc.], F., Minerva, the goddess of intellectual activity, and so of skill and the arts, identified with the Greek Athene.

minimē [old case-form of minimus], adv., in the smallest degree, least, very little, not at all.

minimus, -a, -um, [lost st. (whence minuo) + imus (cf. infimus), superl. of parvus], adj., smallest, least.— Neut. as noun and adv., the least, least, very little.

minor, -us, [lost st. (cf. minimus) + ior (compar. ending)], adj., compar. of parvus, smaller, less: dimidio minor, half as large.— Neut. as noun and adv., less, not much, not very, not so much, not so: quo minus, in order that . . . not; si minus, if not; minus valebat (not so strong, less, etc.); minus uti (not so well); minus magnus fluctus (less violent, smaller).

Minucius (Minut-), -i, [perh. akin
to minus], m., a Roman gentle name. See Basilus and Rufus.

minuō, -uere, -uī, -útus, [†minu- (cf. minus)], 3. v. a. and n., lessen, weaken, diminish: aestus (ebb); v. iugum (break the force, etc.); controversies (settle); desidiam (cure, correct); ostentationem (humble).

mirātus, -a, -um, p. p. of miror.

miror, -ārī, -ātus, [mirō-], 1. v. dep., wonder, wonder at, be surprised. — mirātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pres. sense, surprised.

mirus, -a, -um, [?, SMI (cf. smile) + rus], adj., surprising, marvellous, wonderful: mirum in modum, in a surprising manner.

miser, -era, -erum, [MIS (cf. mæreo) + rus], adj., wretched, pitiable, miserable, poor.

misericordia, -ae, [misericord- (merciful) + ia], f., mercy, pity, clemency.

miseror, -ārī, -ātus, [†miserō-], 1. v. dep., bewail, complain of.

missus, -a, -um, p. p. of mitto.

missus, -sūs, [MIT (?), root of mitto] + tus, m., a sending: missu Caesaris, despatched by Caesar, under orders of Caesar.

mitissimē [old case-form of mitissimus], adv., superl. of mite (N. of mitis), very gently, very mildly, in very gentle terms.

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [?], 3. v. a., let go (cf. omitto), send, despatch, discharge, shoot: sub iugum mittere, send under the yoke. See iugum.

mōbilis, -e, [prob. mōvi- (as if st. of moveo, or a kindred st.) + bilis], adj., easily moved, movable, mobile, fickle, hasty.

mōbilītās, -tātis, [mōbilī- + tas], f., mobility, activity (of troops), in constancy, fickleness.

mōblīter [mōbilī- + ter (prob. terum, reduced)], adv., easily (of motion), readily.

moderor, -ārī, -ātus, [†moder- (akin to modus, cf. genus, genero)], 1. v. dep., control, regulate, restrain.

modestia, -ae, [modestō- + ia], f., moderation, self-control, subordination (of soldiers).

modō [abl. of modus], adv., (with measure ?), only, merely, just, even, just now, lately: paulum modo (just, a very); non ... modo, not only; aspectum modo, the mere sight.

modus, -ī, [MOD (cf. moderor) + us], m., measure, quantity. Hence, manner, fashion, style, method: ad hunc modum, after this fashion; nullo modō, in no way. See eiusmodi.

moenia, -ium, [MI (distribute ?) + nis (cf. communis) (orig. shares of work done by citizens?)], N. plur., fortifications, walls of a city.

mōlēs, -is, [?, cf. molestus], F., a mass. — Esp., a dike, a dam.

molestē [old case-form of molestus, troublesome], adv., heavily, severely: molestē ferre, take hardly, be vexed at.

mōlimentum, -ī, [moli- (st. of molior, strive) + mentum], N., trouble, difficulty, exertion.

mōlitus, -a, -um, p. p. of molo.

mollīō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, [mollī-], 4. v. a., soften. — Fig., make easy: clivum.
mollis, -e, [?], adj., soft, tender. — Fig., weak, feeble, not hard, not firm: animus ad resistendum; litus (gently sloping).

mollitiēs, -ēī (also, -a, -ae), [mollis- + ties (cf. -tia)], F., softness. — Fig., weakness: animi (seebleness of purpose, weakness of character).

molō, -ere, -ui, -itus, [?], 3. v. a., grind. See cibarius.

mōmentum, -i, [movi- (as st. of moveo, move) + mentum], N., means of motion, cause of motion. — Fig., weight, importance, influence: habere (be of importance).

Mona, -ae, [Celtic], F., the Isle of Man, off the coast of Britain, but confounded with Anglesea.

moneō, -ere, -ui, -itus, [causative of man (in memor)] or denominative fr. a kindred st.], 2. v. a., remind, warn, advise, urge.

mōns, montis, [man (in mineo, project) + tis (reduced)], M., a mountain, height.

mora, -ae, [prob. root of memor, mindful, + a], F., delay, grounds of delay.

moralus, -a, -um, p. p. of moror.

morbus, -i, [mar (in morior, die) + bus], M., sickness, illness.

Morini, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Belgae on the coast of Picardy.

morior, mori (mori), mortuus (moriturus), [mar (cf. mors)], 3. v. dep., die.

Moritāsgus, -i, [Celtic], M., a chief of the Senones.

moror, -āri, -ātus, [mora-], 1. v. dep., retard, hinder, check (the advance of), delay, wait, stay.

mors, mortis, [mar (cf. morior) + tis], F., death: sibi mortem consciscere, commit suicide.

mortuus, -a, -um, p. p. of morior.

mōs, moris, [?], M., a custom, a usage, a way (of acting). — Plur., customs, habits, character (as consisting of habits, cf. ingenium and incolae, of native qualities).

Mosa, -ae, [Celtic], M., a river in Belgic Gaul, now the Meuse, or Maas.

mōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of moveo.

mōtus, -tūs, [movi- (as st. of moveo) + tus], M., a movement, a disturbance, an uprising: expediētor (movement of ships); celer atque instabilis (changes, of the passage of events in maritime warfare); siderum (revolutions).

moveō, movēre, movēi, mōtus, [?], 2. v. a., set in motion, move, stir: castra (move from a place to another; also, absolutely, break camp).

mulier, -eris, [?], F., a woman.

mūliō, -onis, [mulo- + o], M., a muleteer, a driver.

multītūdō, -dinis, [multo- + tuo], F., a great number, great numbers, number (generally). — Esp., the multitude, the common people.

mūlō, see multitūdō.

multūs, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [multa-, fine], 1. v. a., punish (by fine), deprive (one of a thing as a punishment).

multum, see multitūdō.

multus, -a, -um, [?], poss. root of mille, miles, + tus], adj., much,
many: mucho die, late in the day; ad multam noctem, till late at night. — multum, neut. as noun and adv., much. — Also, plur., multa, many things, much, a great deal. — Abl., multo, much, far: molto facilius. — As compar., plus, pluris, N. noun and adv.; plur. as adj., more, much, very: as noun, several, many. — As superl., plurimus, -a, -um, most, very many, very much: quam plurimis possunt, the most they can; plurimum posse, have most power, be very strong or influential; plurimum valere, have very great weight.

mulus, -i, [prob. akin to molos, grinda], M. (the mill-beast), a mule.

Mūnātius, -i, [prob. akin to munus], M., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Lucius Munatius Plancus, a legatus in Caesar’s army.

mundus, -i, [prob. akin to mundus], M. (orig. adj., well ordered, a translation of Gr. κόσμος), the universe, the world.

mūnimentum, -i, [muni- + mentum], N., a fortification. — Plur., a defence.

mūniō, -ire, -īvi (-īvī), -itus, [munio- (st. of moenia)], 4. v. a. and n., fortify. — Less exactly, protect, defend, furnish (by way of protection), make (by embankment), construct: castra; iter. — munitissima castra (very strongly fortified).

mūnītō, -onis, [muni- + tō], F., fortification (abstractly). — Concretely, a fortification, works, fortifications, defences: munitio operis, building works of defence; munitonis causa, to build works, etc.

mūnitus, -a, -um, p. p. of munio.

mūnus, -eris, [min (as root of moenia) + us, orig. share (cf. moenia)], N., a duty, a service, a task: munus militiae, military service. — Also, (a contribution), a tribute, a gift, a present.

mūrālis, -ē, [mūro- + alis], adj., of a wall, wall: pila (heavy javelins for service in siege operations).

mūrus, -i, [prob. akin to mundus], M., a wall (in itself considered, cf. moenia, defences).

mūsculus, -i, [mus + culus, dimin.], M., (little mouse), a shed (small and very strong, for covering besieging soldiers).

 mutilus, -a, -um, [?], adj., mutilated: cornibus (with short broken horns, of the elk).

N

nactus, -a, -um, p. p. of nanciscor.

nam [old case-form, cf. tam, quam], conj., for.

Nammēius, -i, [Celtic], M., a Helvetician sent as ambassador to Caesar.

Namnetes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a Gallic tribe on the Loire around Nantes.

namque [nam-que], conj., for (a little more emphatic than nam).

nanciscor, -cisc, nactus (nancus), [NAC], 3. v. dep., find, get, procure, light upon, get hold of, obtain.

nancus, -a, -um, p. p. of nanciscor.
Nantuātes, -um, [Celtic], m. pl., a tribe of Gaul of uncertain position, probably in Savoy.

Narbō, -onis, [Celtic], m., a city of the Roman province of Gaul, early made a Roman colony, now Narbonne.

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, [GNA, cf. gigno], 3. v. dep., be born, arise, be produced, spring up, be raised (of beasts), be found (plumbum).—nātus, p. p., sprung, born.

Nasua, -ae, [?], Germanic], m., a leader of the Suevi.

nātālis, -e, [natu- (reduced) + alis], adj., of birth: dies natalis, a birthday.

nātiō, -onis, [GNA (cf. nascor) + tio, perh. through intermediate st.], F., (a birth), a race, a nation, a tribe, a clan.

nātivus, -a, -um, [natu- (reduced) + ivus], adj., native, natural.

nātūra, -ae, [natur- + ra (f. of -rus)], F., (birth), nature, character (of living creature), character, nature (of inanimate things); ea rerum natura, such the state of the case; secundum naturam fluminis, down stream; natura triquetra (in form); natura cogebat, must necessarily; de rerum natura (physical science); eadem feminae marisque (form, organization); naturam vincere (human nature); natura loci, nature of the ground.

nātus, -a, -um, p. p. of nascor.

nātus, -tūs, [GNA (cf. nascor) + tus], m., birth: maiores nati, elders.

nauta, -ae, [borrowed from Gr, ναῦτης], m., a sailor, a boatman.

nauticus, -a, -um, [nauta- + cusi, adj., of a sailor (or sailors), naval.

nāvālis, -e, [navi- (reduced) + alis], adj., of ships, naval: navalis pugna, sea-fight.

nāvicula, -ae, [navi- + cula], F., a boat, a small vessel, a skiff.

navigātiō, -onis, [naviga- + tio], F., a sailing, a voyage, travelling by sea, a trip (by sea).

nāvigium, -i, [navigō- (?), naviga- + tio, see navigium], i. v. n., sail.

nāvis, -is, [(s)NU, float (increased), with added i], F., a ship, a vessel, a boat: oneraria (a transport); longa (a war galley); navi egredi, land.

nāvō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [navigō-, (see navigium)], i. v. a., do one's best: operam (do one's best).

nē [NA, unc. case-form], conj., lest, that . . . not, not to (do anything), from (doing anything), so that . . . not, for fear that.—After verbs of fearing, that.—Also adv., ne . . . quidem, not . . . even, not . . . either; ne Vorenus quidem, nor Vorenus either; Vorenus,too,did not, etc.

-ne (enclitic) [prob. same as nē, orig. = nonne], conj., not? (as a question, cf. nonne), whether, did (as question in Eng.), do, etc.—See also necne, nec.

nec, see neque.

necessārius, -a, -um, [necessāri, (reduced) + arius], adj., (closely bound?), necessary: tempus (critical); causa (pressing, unavoidable);
necessa (absolutely necessary, needful, indispensa-ble).— Also, as noun, a connection (a person bound by any tie), a kinsman, a close friend.— Abl. as adv., necessariō, of necessity, necessarily, unavoidably.

necesse [nec essēs, cf. cedo], indecl. adj., necessary.— With est, one must, one cannot but, one must inevitably.

necessitās, tētās, [tēcessō + tas], F., necessity, constraint, compulsion: temporis (exigency); suarum necessitatum causa (interests).

necessitūdō, -dīnīs, [tēcessō + tudo], F., close connection (cf. necessarius), intimacy, close relations.

necne [nec ne], conj., or not (in double questions).

necō, āre, āvī (-ui), ātus (-tus), [nec (st. of nex, death)], i. v. a., put to death, kill, murder (in cold blood).

nēcubi [nec cubi (? for quobi, see ubi)], conj., that nowhere, lest anywhere, that not ... anywhere.

nēfārius, -a, -um, [nēfas + ius], adj., wicked, infamous, abominable.

nēfās, [nēfas], N. indecl., a crime (against divine law): nēfas est, it is not allowable.

nēlegō (necl-), -legere, -lēxī, -lēctus, [nec (= ne) -lego], 3. v. a., not regard, disregard, neglect: iniurias (leave unavenged, leave unpunished); hac parte neglecta (leave unnoticed); metu mortis neglecto (careless of, etc.).

nēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?, poss. ne-aio], i. v. a. and n., say no, say ... not, refuse.

nēgotior, -āri, -ātus, [nēgotō-], i. v. dep., do business (on a large scale, as in money, etc.).

nēgotium, -ī, [nēc-otium, ease], N., business, occupation, an undertaking.— Less definitely, a matter, a thing.— Also, difficulty, trouble: in ipso negatio, at the moment of action; negatio conficere, make a thorough business of a thing, finish a thing up; quid negoti, what business? cf. Eng. “what business have you here?”; dare negotium alicui, do and insist on being paid.

Nemetes, -um, [Teutonic], M. pl., a German tribe on the Rhine

nēmō, tēnēminis, [nē-homo, man], c., no one, nobody: non nemo, many a one.

nēquāquam [nē-quāquam, anyway (cf. eā, quā)], adv., in no way, by no means.

nēque (nec) [nē-que], adv., and not, and yet ... not, nor: neque ... neque, neither ... nor.

nēqui(d)quam (nēquic-), [ne ... qui(d)quam, anything], adv., to no purpose, in vain, not without reason.

Nervicus, -a, -um, [Nerviō- (reduced) + cus], adj., of the Nervii, Nervian.

Nervius, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., Nervian.— M. plur., the Nervii, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.

nervus, -ī, [prob. for tnevrus], M., a sinew. — Fig., in plur., strength, vigor.

nēu, see neve.

nēuter, -tra, -trum, [nē-uter, which (of two)], adj. pron., neither. — Plur., neither party, neither side.
nēve (neu) [ne-ve], conj., or not, and not, nor.

nex, necis, [?], F., death, violent death, execution.

nihil, see nihilum.

nihilum, -ī (nihil), [ne-hilum, trīs-, whit?], N. (also indecl.), nothing: nihil reliqui, nothing left; nihil respondere, make no answer.—nihilō, abl. as adv., none, no.—nihil, acc. as adv., not at all: non nihil, somewhat.

nimiōs, -a, -um, [nimi- (?, st. of nimis, too much) + ius], adj., too much, too great.

nisi [ne-si], conj., (not ... if), unless, except, except in case: nisi cum, until; nisi rogatus, without being asked.

nīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of nitor.

Nitiobriges (-broges), -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Aquitania, on the Garonne.

nitor, nīsus (nīxus), nītī, [prob. genu, kneet], 3. v. dep., (strain with the knee against something), struggle, strive, exert one's self: niti insidiis (rely upon).

nix, nivis, [?], F., snow.

nōbilis, -e, [as if (g)nō (root of nosco, know) + bilis], adj., famous, noble, well-born (cf. "notable").—Plur. as noun, the nobles.

nōbilitās, -tātis, [nobilī- + tas], F., nobility.—Concretely, the nobility, the nobles.

nocēns, see nōceō.

nocēō, nocēre, -uī, no p. p., [akin to nex, death], 2. v. n., do harm to, injure, harm, harass.—nocēns, -entis, p. as adj., hurtful, guilty (of some harm).

nocū [abl. of †noctus (noc- + tus)], as adv., by night.

noctūrus, -a, -um, [noc- + turnus, cf. diūturnus], adj., of the night, nightly, nocturnal, in the night, by night: tempus (night-time).

nōdus, -ī, [?], M., a knot, a joint: nodi et articuli, protuberant joints.

nōlō, nōlē, nōlūi, [ne-velo], irr. v. a. and n., not wish, be unwilling, wish not, not like to have: noli, nolo, do not (with infin.).

nōmen, -minis, [(g)no (root of nosco, know) + men], N., a name (what one is known by), name (fame, prestige).—As a name represents an account, an account: nomine dotis (on account of, as); suo nomine, on his own account; nomine obsidium, under pretence of hostages.

nōnātim [acc. of real or supposed †nominatis (nominā- + tis)], adv., by name (individually).

nōninē, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [nomin-], i. v. a., name, mention, call by name.

nōn [ne-oenum (unum)], adv., not: non est dubium, there is no doubt; non mediocriter, in no small degree.

nōnāgintā, indecl., num., ninety.

nōndum (see dum), not yet.

nōnnūllus (see nullus), some.

nōnnumquam (see numquam), sometimes.

nōnus, -a, -um, [†novi- (?) + nus (mus)], num. adj., ninth.

Nōrēia, -ae, [Teutonic], F., a city of the Norici, in modern Styria.

Nōricus, -a, -um, [st. akin to Noreia + cus], adj., of the Norici, Norican.

nōs, nōsmet, see ego, egomet.
nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus, [(G)NA, know], 3. v. a., learn, become acquainted with.— In perf. tenses, know. — nōtus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., known, familiar, well-known: notis vadis (being acquainted with, etc.).

nōter, -tra, -trum, [prob. nos (nom. plur.) + ter], poss. adj. pron., our, ours.— In plur., our men (the Romans), our forces.

nōtitia, -ae, [notō- + tia], F., acquaintance with, knowledge.

nōtus, p. p. of nosco.

novem [unc. reduced case-form], indecl. num. adj., nine.


novitās, -tātis, [novō- + tas], F., novelty, strangeness, strange character: rei (novelty, unexpected occurrence).

novus, -a, -um, [?, cf. Eng. new], adj., new, novel, fresh: res novae, a change of government, revolution. — novissimus, -a, -um, superl., latest, last: agmen (the rear).

nox, noctis, [akin to noceō, harm], F., night: prima nocte, in the early part of the night; multa nocte, late at night.

noxia, -ae, [NOC (in noceō, harm) + unc. term.], F., crime, guilt.

nūbō, nūbere, nūpīs, nūptus, [akin to nubes, cloud], 3. v. n., veil one's self (of the bride), marry (of the woman).

nūdātus, -a, -um, p. p. of nudo.

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nudō-], 1. v. a., lay bare, expose, strip.—

Less exactly, clear (murum defenso-ribus).

nūdus, -a, -um, [?, root (akin to naked) + dus], adj., naked, bare, unprotected, exposed.

nūllus, -a, -um, [ne-ullus], adj., not any, no. — As noun, no one.— nōn nūllus, some. — Plur. as noun, some, some persons.

num [pron. NA, cf. tum], adv., interrog. particle, suggesting a neg. answer, does, is, etc., it is not, is it? and the like: num posse (in indirect discourse, could he, etc.).

nūnum, -inis, [NU (in nuo, nod) + men], N., (a nod), will, power. Hence, divinity.

numerus, -i, [†numo- (cf. nummus, Numa) + rus], M., a number, number: in hostium numero habuit (in the place of, etc., euphemism for slaughtered); totidem numero, the same number; impedimentorum (quantity, i.e. number of packhorses); ad numerum, to the required number; aliquo numero, of some account.

Numida, -ae, [?], M., a Numidian (employed in the Roman army as cavalry, cf. Zouave, Turco).

nummus, -i, [akin to numerus], M., a coin: pro nummo, for coin.

numquam (num-) [ne-umquam], adv., never.

nunc [num-ce, cf. hic], adv., now (emphatic, as an instantaneous now, cf. iam, unemphatic and continuous): etiam nunc, even then (of the past considered as present).

nūntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of nuntio.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [nuntiō-],
nūter [for novi-per, cf. parum per],
adv., lately, recently, not long ago.
nūsquam [ne-usquam], adv., nowhere, in no case (almost equal never).

nūtus, -tūs, [NU + tus], M., a
nod, a sign: ad nutum, at one's beck, at one's command; nutu, by signs.

oblique [old case-form of oblīquus], adv., obliquely, slanting.

oblīquus, -a, -um, [ob-īliquus, cf. lī(c)mus, aslant], adj., slanting.

oblīvīscor, -livisci, -litus, [ob-īlivio, cf. liveo], 3. v. dep., (grow
dark against ?), forget.

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [manufactured from ob sacrum (near or
by some sacred object)], I. v. a.,
entreat, adjure, implore.

obsequentia, -ae, [obsequent-
yielding] + ia], F., compliance,
defERENCE: nimia obsequentia, too
ready compliance.

observātus, -a, -um, p. p. of ob-
servo.

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob-
servo], I. v. a., (be on the watch
towards ?), guard, maintain, keep:
judicium (follow, comply with); dies
natalia (keep, celebrate).

obses, -idis, [ob-īses, cf. praeses
and obsideo], C., (a person under
guard), a hostage.

obsessio, -onis, [ob-īsessio, cf.
obsideo], F., a blockade, a siege, a
state of siege (cf. oppugnatio, of
actual siege operations).
obressus, -a, -um, p. p. of obsideo.

obsideo, -sidère, -sēdī, -sessus, [ob-sedeo], 2. v. a., (sit down against), blockade, beset, guard.

obsidiō, -ōnis, [obsidiō- (reduced) + o], F., a siege (cf. obsessio), a blockade: obsidione liberare (from besetting enemies).—Also, the art of siege.

obsignātus, -a, -um, p. p. of ob-signo.

obsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob-signo], 1. v. a., seal up, seal.


obstinatē [old case-form of obstinatus, fr. obstino, persist], adv., persistently.

obstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of ob-stringo.

obstringō, -stringere, -strīnī, -strictus, [ob-stringō], 3. v. a., bind (lit. and fig.): habere obstrictas (under obligation).

obstruēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of ob-struō.

obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strictus, [ob-struō, pile], 3. v. a., block up, barricade.

obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [ob-tempero], 1. v. n., (conform to), comply with, submit to.

obtestātus, -a, -um, p. p. of ob-testor.

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus, [ob-testor, cf. testis, witness], 1. v. dep., implore (calling something to witness).

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus, [ob-teneo], 2. v. a., hold (against something or somebody), retain, maintain, occupy, possess: provinciam

(have control of as praētor); justis-simam apud eum causam obtinere, be entirely free from obligation towards him, as having a perfect right to benefits conferred.

obtuī, perf. of offero.

obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, [ob-venio], 4. v. n., come to, come in one's way, fall to (by lot).

obviam [ob-viam], adv., in the way of, to meet (any one): obviam venire, come to meet.

occāsiō, -ōnis, [ob-+casio, cf. occido], F., opportunity: occasio brevis, a short time; rem occasionis, a matter of opportunity.

occāsus, -sūs, [ob-casus, cf. occido], M., a falling, a setting (of the sun): solis (the sunset, the west).

occīdō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cāsūrus, [ob-cādo], 3. v. n., fall, be slain, set: sol occidens, the west.

occīdō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsus, [ob-caedo, cut], 3. v. a., kill, massacre: occisi, the slain.

occīsus, -a-num, p. p. of occīdo.

occultātiō, -ānis, [occulta- + tio], F., concealment.

occultātus, -a, -um, p. p. of occulto.

occultē [old case-form of occultus], adv., secretly.

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [occultō-], 1. v. a., conceal, hide.

occultus, -a-num, [p. p. of occulto], as adj., concealed: in occulto, in secret; ex occulto, from an ambush, in ambush; in occulto esse continere, keep themselves hidden; insidiandi ex occulto, of attacking from an ambuscade.
occupātiō, -ōnis, [occupā- + tio], s., occupation (engagement in business), business affaires (of business): occupationes tantularum rerum, engagement in such trifling matters.

occupātus, -a, -um, p. p. of occupo.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [occupō- or ōccup-, ob and st. akin to capio], i. v. a., seize, take possession of, seize upon, occupy (only in military sense): regna (usuśp); in opere occupati (engaged, employed).

occurreō, -currere, -currī (-cucurri?), -currūs, [ob-currō], 3. v. n., run to meet, meet, come upon, find, fall in with, meet. Hence in pregnant sense, thwart, baffle, frustrate: eo (run, to meet an enemy); ad animum (occur).

Oceanus, -i, [Gr.], M., the ocean (with or without mare).

Ocelum, -i, [Celtic], N., a town of the Graioceli in Cisalpine Gaul (prob. Oulx in Piedmont).

octāvus, -a, -um, [octo + vus, poss. toctau + us], num. adj., eighth.

dingenti, -ae, -a, [st. akin to octo + centum], num. adj., eight hundred.

octō [ʔ], indecl. num. adj., eight.

octōdecim [octo-decem], indecl. num. adj., eighteen.

Octodūrus, -i, [Celtic], M., a town of the Veragri, now Martigny.

octōgintā [octo + ?], indecl. num. adj., eighty.

octōnī, -ae, -a, [octo + nus], adj., eight at a time, eight each, eight.

oculus, -i, [tōcō̆ (cf. ak, see) + lus], M., the eye: sub oculis, in sight before the eyes.

ōdī, ōdisse, [perf. of lost verb (with pres. sense), akin to odium], def. v. a., hate, detest.

odium, -i, [VADH (spurn) + ium], N., hatred.

offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fensus, [ob-fendo], 3. v. a. and n., dash against, hurt: animum (hurt the feelings, alienate, shock). — Absolutely, suffer a mishap.

offensiō, -ōnis, [ob-ṇfensio, cf. defensio and offendō], r., striking against. — Fig., offence: sine offensiōne animi, without wounding one’s feelings.

offereō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus, [ob-fero], irr. v. a., (bring to), throw in one’s way, offer: se hostibus (throw themselves upon); se morti (expose one’s self to); quos sibi oblatos (placed in his power); beneficium (confer, render).

officium, -i, [ob-ṛfacium, cf. beneficium], N., (doing something to one), a service, performance of a duty. — Transf., a duty, allegiance, an obligation: discedere ab officio, fail of one’s duty.

Ollovicō, -ōnis, [Celtic], M., a king of the Nitiobriges.

omittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, [ob-mitto], 3. v. a., let go by: consulium (leave untried, neglect); omnibus omisissus rebus, leaving everything else.

omnīnō [abl. of omniinus (omni- + nus)], adv., altogether, entirely, only, utterly, in all, at all, any way, only just, whatever (with negatives).
omnis, -e, [?], adj., *all, the whole* of (as divisible or divided, cf. *totus* as indivisible or not divided). — In sing., *every* (without emphasis on the individuals, cf. *quisque*, each, emphatically); *celerius omni opinione* (of any one); *omni tempore, on all occasions, always; omnes preces, every form of prayers*; *omnia rebus, everything, everything else; per omnia, etc. (through nothing but, etc.). — In plur. as a short expression for all others.

*onerarius, -a, -um, [oner- (as st. of *onus*) + arius], adj., *for burdens: naves* (transports).

*onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [oner- (as st. of *onus*)], I. v. a., *load: celeritas onerandi* (of ships), *facility of loading:*

*onus, -eris, [unc. root + us], N., *a burden, a load, a freight, a cargo. — Abstr., *weight. — Esp.: tanta onera navium, ships of such weight.*

*opera, -ae, [oper- (as st. of *opus*) + a (f. of *-us*)], F., *work, pains, attention: operam navare, do one's best; operam dare, devote one's self, exert one's self, take pains. — With ut, try, take care: opera uti (services, help, etc.); quorum opera interfectus (through whose means, agency).*

*opiniō, -onis, [opinō- (cf. nec-opinus) + o], F., *notion, expectation: celerius omni opinione, quicker than any one would suppose; opinio virtutis (reputation for, etc.); tanta opinio huius belli (impression); tantam opinionem timoris praebuit (gave such an idea, impression); also, opinio timoris (display, cause for an impression); speciem atque opinione nem pugnantium praebere, make a show and give an impression of being combatants; nomen atque opinio (reputation); ut fert illorum opinio, as their notion is; ad opinionem Galliae, for an impression on the Gauls; opinione praecipere, to anticipate.*

*opportet, -ère, -uit, no p. p., [noun-st. from ob and st. akin to *porto*, cf. *opportunus*], 2. v. *impers., it behoves, it ought, it is best: poenam sequi (the punishment was to follow); frumentum metiri (he ought, etc.); alio tempore atque opportuit (than it should have been).*

*oppidānus, -a, -um, [oppidō- (reduced) + anus], adj., *of a (the) town. — Plur. as noun, the townspeople.*

*oppidum, -i, [ob-ipedum (a plain?)], N., (the fortified place which, according to ancient usage, commanded the territories of a little state), *a stronghold, a town (usually fortified).*

*oppōnō, -pōnerē, -posuī, -positus, [ob-pono], 3. v. a., *set against, oppose (something to something else): novem oppositias legionibus, with nine legions opposed to the enemy. — oppositus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., opposed, lying in the way, opposite.*

*opportūnē [old case-form of *opportunus*], adv., *opportune, seasonably.*

*opportuṇītās, -tātis, [opportunō- + taś], F., *timeliness, fitness (of time or circumstance), good luck (in time or circumstance), favorable chance,*
convenience (of a means of fortification).

opportunus, -a, -um, [ob-portunus, cf. portus, harbor, and Portunus], adj., (coming to harbor?), opportunus, advantageous, lucky.

oppositus, -a, -um, p. p. of oppono.

oppressus, -a, -um, p. p. of opprimo.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [ob-premo], 3. v. a., (press against), overwhelm, crush, overpower, overtake (surprise).

oppügnātio, -ōnis, [oppugnā- + tio], F., a siege (of actual operations, cf. obsidio, blockade), besieging, an attack (in a formal manner against a defended position).

oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [ob-pugno, fight], 1. v. a., attack (formally, but without blockade), lay siege to, carry on a siege, assail (a defended position).

[ops, cf. Ops, the goddess], opis, [?] F., help, aid.— Plur., resources, means, strength, blessings.— Also, help (from several sources).

optātus, -a, -um, [p. p. of opto, wish], as adj., desired, desirable, wished for, welcome.

optimē, superl. of bene.

optimus, -a, -um, [op (cf. ops?) + timus (cf. finitimus)], superl. of bonus.

opus, operis, [op + us], N., work, labor (as accomplishing its purpose, cf. labor, as tiresome).— In military sense, a work, works, fortifications: natura et opere munitus (by nature and art); operum atque artificiorum (trades, handicrafts).— In abl., magno (quanto) (tanto) opere, very much, very, greatly: (how much), (so much, so, so earnestly): often as one word, magnopere, quantopere, tantopere.

opus [same word as preceding], N. indecl., need, necessity: si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, if he needed anything of Caesar; si quid opus facto, etc., if anything needs to be done.

ōra, -ae, [?], F., a shore, a coast.

ōrātiō, -onis, [orā- (speak) + tio], F., speech, words, talk, address, discourse, argument.

ōrātor, -āris, [orā- (speak) + tor], M., a speaker, an ambassador, envoy.

orbis, -is, [?], M., a circle (a circular plane): orbis terrarum, the circle of lands, the whole world.— Less exactly, a hollow square (in military language), a circle.

Orcynia, -ae, [Teutonic or Celtic], F., see Hercynius.

ōrdō, -inis, [akin to ordior, begin a web], M., a series, a row, a tier, a rank (of soldiers), a grade (of centurions, as commanding special ordines of soldiers, also the centurions themselves), an arrangement, an order: perturbatis ordinibus, the ranks being broken; ratio ordoque agminis, the plan and arrangement of the march; ordines servare, to keep their places, (of soldiers, also of anything laid in rows or tiers, preserve the arrangement, not deviating from it).

Orgetorix, -īgis, [Celtic], M., a nobleman of the Helvetii.
P., for Publius.
pābulātiō, -ōnis, [pabulā- + tio], F., a foraging, getting fodder: pabulationis causa, for forage.
Pābulātor, -tōris, [pabulā- + tor], M., a forager.
Pābulor, -āri, -ātus, [pabulō-], I. v. dep., forage, gather fodder.
Pābulum, Ī, [PA (in pasco, feed) + bulum], N., fodder (for animals, including the stalk as well as the grain), green fodder.
Pācātus, -a, -um, p. p. of paco.

Paciscor, -isci, pācūs (also paciscō, ere) [paci (as st. of pāco, agree) + sco], 3. v. a. and dep., bargain. — Esp., pāactus, -a, -um, p. p., agreed upon, settled.
Pācō, āre, -āvi, -ātus, [pac-, in pax, peace], I. v. a., pacify, subdue.—Pācā tus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., peaceable, quiet, subject (as reduced to peace).
Pāctum, -ī, [see pactus], N., (a thing agreed), an agreement, an arrangement. Hence, a method, a way (of doing anything): quo pacto, in what way, how.
Pācūs, -a, -um, p. p. of paciscor and pango.

Padus, -ī, [Celtic], M., the Po, the great river of Northern Italy (Cisalpine Gaul).
Paemāni

—ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., people of the Belgians.

paene [?], adv., almost, nearly.

paenitet, —ēre, —uit, [ṭōenītē— (perh. p. p. of verb akin to pōniō, punish)], 2. v. a., imper., it repents (one), one repents, one regrets.

pāgus, —ī, [PAG (in pango) + us (with unc. conn. of ideas)], m., a district, a canton (cf. vicus, a smaller collection of dwellings).


palmā, —ae, [Gr.], f., the palm (of the hand).

palūs, —ūdis, [?], f., a marsh.

palūster, —trīs, —tre, [palūd- + trīs], adj., marshy, swampy.

pandō, pandere, pandō, passus, [akin to pandus, bent], 3. v. a., spread out (perh. orig. of the hands, bending back the wrist): passis manibus, with outstretched hands; passis capillis, with dishevelled hair.

pār, paris, [perh. akin to paro, pario (through the idea of barter or exchange)], adj., equal, alike, like: intervallum (the same). — Esp., equal in power, a match for.

parātus, —a, —um, p. p. of paro.

parcē, [old case-form of parcus], adv., sparingly, frugally.

parcō, parcere, peperci (parsī), parsūrus (parcitūrus), [akin to parcus (par + cus), acquisitive, and so frugal?], 3. v. n., spare. — Esp., save alive: parcedo, by economy, by frugality.

parēns, —entis, [PAR (in pario) + ens], c., a parent.

parentō, —āre, —āvī, —ātus, [parent-], i. v. n., make a funereal offering (to deceased relatives, esp. parents). Hence, avenge (making an offering of the wrong-doer).

pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus, [parō— (cf. opiparōs)], 2. v. n., be prepared, appear, obey, submit to.

— pariō, parere, peperī, partus (paritūrus), [PAR, procure (perh. orig. by barter, cf. par)], 3. v. a., procure, acquire, secure.

Parisīi, —ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Celtic tribe around modern Paris, whose town Lutetia takes its modern name from them, cf. Rheims, (Remi), Trèves (Treveri).

parō, —āre, —āvī, —ātus, [parō—, cf. opiparōs, and pareō], i. v. a., procure, provide, prepare, get ready for (bellum used concretely for the means of war), arrange. — parātus, —a, —um, p. p. as adj., ready, prepared: animo parato (with mind resolved), resolute, determined; paratus in armis, armed for war.

pars, partis, [PAR + tīs (reduced), akin to portio, and perh. to par through idea of barter], f., (a dividing), a portion, a part, a share.

— Often of position or direction merely, side, direction, region: una ex parte, on one side; in utram partem, in which direction; ex utraque parte, on both sides; sinistra pars, the left flank; pars fluminis (bank); maior pars, the majority. — Fig.: qua ex parte, in which respect; omnibus partibus, in all respects; in utramque partem, in both respects, both ways, (of a plan); in
partim, see pars.

partior, -īrī, -ītus, [parti-], 4. v. dep., divide: partitīs temporibus, alternately.

partītus, -a, -um, p. p. of partior.

partus, -a, -um, p. p. of pario.

parum, [akin to parvus, perh. for parvum], adv., not very, not much, not sufficiently: parum diligenter, too carelessly, without sufficient care.

parvulus, -a, -um, [parvō- + lus], adj., small, slight, insignificant: ab parvulis, from infancy.

parvus, -a, -um, [perh. for paulus, cf. paucus], adj., small, slight, little.

passim [acc. of passis (pad in pando, spread) + tis], adv., in all directions, all about.

passus, -a, -um, p. p. of pando.

passus, -a, -um, p. p. of patior.

passus, -sīs, [PAD (in pando) + tus], m., (a spreading of the legs), a stride (of both feet), a step, a pace (esp. as a measure, about five Roman feet): mille passuum, a Roman mile, five thousand feet.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus, [noun-st. akin to pateo + facio], 3. v. a., lay open, open.

patefactus, -a, -um, p. p. of patefacio.

patefīō, pass. of patefacio.

pateō, -ere, -uī, no p. p., [?], 2. v. n., be extended, lie open, spread, extend, be wide, be open.—pātēns, -entis, p. as adj., open, exposed.

pater, -trīs, [PA (in pasco?) + ter], m., a father.—Plur., ancestors.

patienter, [patient- + ter], adv., patiently.

patientia, -ae, [patient- + ia], f., patience, endurance, forbearance (in refraining from fighting).

patior, patī, passus, [?], 3. v. dep., suffer, endure, allow, permit: vim tempestatis (endure, stand).

patrius, -a, -um, [patr- + ius], adj., of a father, ancestral, of one's fathers.

patronus, -i, [fr. pater, for form cf. colonus + nus], m., a patron, a protector.

patruus, -i, [pat (e) r- + vus?], m., an uncle (on the father's side, cf. avunculus, on the mother's).

paucitās, -ātīs, [paucō- + tās], f., small number.

paucus, -a, -um, [PAU (cf. paulus and parvus) + cus], adj., almost always in plur., few, some few (but with implied only in a semi-negative sense): paucis (pauca) respondit (in a few words, briefly).

paulātim [paulō- (reduced) + atim, as if acc. of † paulātis († paula + tis)], adv., little by little, a little at a time, gradually, few at a time.

paulisper [paulis (abl. plur. of paulus?) per], adv., a little while.
paulō [abl. of paulus, little], as adv., a little, slightly.

paululum [acc. of paululus, dim. of paulus], as adv., a very little.

paulum [acc. of paulus (pau-lus, cf. paucus)], as adv., a little, a short distance, somewhat.

pāx, pācis, [PAC (fix), as st.], F. (a treaty?), peace, favor.

peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, (?], I. v. n., go wrong, commit a fault.

pectus, -oris, [perh. pect (as root of pecto, comb) + us, from the rounded shape of the breast, cf. pectinatus], N., the breast.

pecūnia, -ae; [pecūnī- (pecū- (cattle) + nus, cf. Vacuna) + iā], F., money (originally cattle), wealth.

pecus, -oris, [pec (tie?) + us], N., cattle (especially sheep and goats): pecore vivere (flesh of cattle).

— Pl., cattle, flocks and herds.

pedālis, -ē, [ped- + alis], adj., of a foot (in thickness), a foot thick.

pedes, -itis, [ped- (as if pedi) + tis (reduced)], c., a footman, a foot-soldier. — Collectively, the infantry.

pedester,-tris,-tre, [pedit- + tris], adj., of infantry, of persons on foot: itinera (journeys on foot, marches, land routes); proellium (on land); copiae (the foot, the infantry).

peditātus, -tūs, [pedit- + atus, cf. consulatus], M., foot, infantry.

Pedius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentle name. — Esp., Quintus Pedius, a nephew of Cæsar and a legatus under him in Gaul. He sided with Augustus, and was afterwards made consul by Augustus's patronage.

pēior, see malus.

pēlius, see male. lcl

pellis, -is, [?], F., a hide, a skin (either on or off the body of an animal): sub pellibus, in tents, i.e. in the field.

pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsus, [?].

3. v. a., strike, beat, drive, defeat, repulse, rout.

pendō, pendere, peperendi, pēensus, [?].

3. v. a., hang, weigh, weigh out. Hence (since money was earlier weighed, not counted), pay, pay out.

— Esp. with words of punishment, pay (a penalty), suffer (punishment, cf. dare and capere).

penes [prob. acc. of st. in –os akin to penitus], prep. with acc., in the power of:

penitus [st. akin to penes, penus, etc., + itus, cf. antiquitus], adv., far within, deeply, entirely, utterly: penitus ad extremos finis (clear to, all the way to).

1. per [unc. case-form], adv. (in composition) and prep. w. acc., through, along, over, among. — Fig.; through, by means of (cf. ab, by, directly), by the agency of. — Often accompanied by the idea of hindrance: per anni tempus potuit, the time of the year would allow; per te licere, you do not prevent, you allow; per aetatem non poterant (on account of). — Often in adv. expressions:

per fidem, in good faith, in reference to a deception on the other side; per concilium, in council; per insidias, treacherously; per cruciatum, with torture; per vim, forcibly; locus ipse per se (in and of itself).

2. per [prob. a different case of
same st. as 1. per], adv. in comp., very, exceedingly, completely.

peractus, -a, -um, p. p. of perago.

peragō, -agere, -ēgi, -actus, [1. perago], 3. v. a., conduct through, finish, accomplish: concilium (hold to the end); conventus (finish holding).

perangustus, -a, -um, [2. perangustus], adj., very narrow.

perceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of perceiving.

perciö, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus, [1. per-capio], 3. v. a., take in (completely), learn, acquire, hear. — Esp. of harvests, gather. Hence, fig., reap: fructus victoriae.

percontātiō, -ōnis, [percontā- (inquire) + tio], F., inquiry, inquiries (though sing. in Latin).

percurrō, -currere, -cūrri, -currī, -cursus, [1. per-curro], 3. v. n. and a., run along.

percussus, -a, -um, p. p. of percussio.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus, [1. per-quatio, shake], 3. v. a., hit, strike, run through.

perdiscō, -discere, -didicī, no p. p., [1. per-disco], 3. v. a., learn thoroughly, get by heart.

perditus, -a, -um, p. p. of perdō.

perdo, perderere, perdīdi, perdītus, [1. per-do], 3. v. a., destroy (cf. interference), ruin. — perditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., ruined, desperate, abandoned.

perduō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, [1. per-duco], 3. v. a., lead through, lead along, bring over, carry along, make (fossam), march (legionem). — Fig., prolong, win over, bring: rem ad extremum casum (reduce).

perductus, -a, -um, p. p. of perdītus.

perendīnus, -a, -um, [perendī (i-peren-die, cf. postridie) + inus], adj., (of the day beyond, cf. per), of day after to-morrow: perendino die, day after to-morrow, in two days.

pereō, -ire, -ī (īvi), -ītūrus, [1. per-eo, go], irr. v. n., perish, be killed (in battle).

perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [1. per-quito, cf. eques], 1. v. a. and n., ride over (or around).

perexiguus, -a, -um, [2. per-exiguus], adj., very small.

perfacilis, -e, [2. per-facilis], adj., very easy.

perfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of perceiving.

perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [1. per-freo], irr. v. a., carry through (or over): opinionem (spread among); consilium (carry over); famam (bring). — Also, bear through (to the end), endure, suffer, submit to.

perficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus, [1. per-facio, make], 3. v. a., accomplish, complete, finish, make (complete). — With ut (uti), succeed (in doing or having done), cause to.

perfidia, -ae, [perfidiō + ia], F., perfidy, treachery, faithlessness.

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgi, frāctus, [1. per-frango], 3. v. a., break through.

perfuga, -ae, [1. per-†fuga (fug + a, cf. scriba)], M., a refugee, a fugitive, a deserter.

perfugiō, -fugere, -fugi, no p. p., [1. per-fugio], 3. v. n., run away, flee (to a place), escape to.
perfugium, -i, [I. per-tfugium, cf. perfugio], N., a place of refuge, refuge.

pergō, pergere, perrēxi, perrēctus (?), [I. per-rego, keep straight],

3. v. n., (keep one's direction?), keep on, continue to advance, advance.

periclitor, -āri, -ātus, [†periclitō-(as if p. p. of periclor, cf. periculum), I. v. dep., try, make a trial, be exposed, be put in peril.

periculōsus, -a, -um, [periculō-+ osus], adj., dangerous.

periculum (-clum), -ī, [†peri- (cf. experior, try) + culum], N., a trial, an attempt. Hence, peril, danger, risk.

peritus, -a, -um, [†peri- (cf. experior, try) + tus], p. p. as adj., (tried), experienced, skilled, skilful.

perlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of perfero.

perlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of perlago.

perlēgo, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctus, [I. perlago], 3. v. a., read through, read (a letter aloud).

perluō, -luere, -lui, -lūtus, [I. perlūo], 3. v. a., wash all over.— Pass. (as reflex.), bathe.

permāgnus, -a, -um, [2. permagnus], adj., very great, very large.

permancē, -manēre, -mānī, mānīsurs, [I. per-mancē], 2. v. n., remain (to the end), continue, hold out, persist: in eadem libertate (continue to live, etc.).

permiscē, -miscēre, -miscuī, -mixtus (-mistus) [2. permisceō], 2. v. a., mix (thoroughly), mingle.

permissus, -a, -um, p. p. of permitto.

permittō, -mittere, -misī, -missus, [I. per-mitto], 3. v. a., (give over), grant, allow, give up, entrust: fortunas (trust); summam imperi (place in the hands of, etc.); suffragiis rem (leave the matter to, etc.).

permīxtus, -a, -um, p. p. of permisceo.

permōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of permoveo.

permovēō, -movere, -mōvi, -mōtus, [I. per-movēo], 2. v. a., move (thoroughly), influence, affect.—

permōtus, -a, -um, p. p., much affected, much influenced, overcome.

permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsi, -mulsus, [I. per-mulceō], 2. v. a., smooth over. Hence, soothe, pacify.

perniciēs, -ēi, [?, akin to nex, death], F., destruction, ruin.

perpaucus, -a, -um, [2. perpaucus], adj.— Plur., very few, but very few, only a very few.

perpendiculum, -i, [perpendi- (st. of perpendo, hang down) + culum], N., a plumb line: ad perpendicularum, perpendicularly.

perpetior, -petī, -pessus, [I. perpetiar], 3. v. dep., suffer, endure.

perpetuus, -a, -um, [I. per-†petuus (PET (aim) + vus)], adj., (keeping on through), continuing, continued, continuous, without interruption, lasting, permanent: vita (whole); paludes (continuous); in perpetuum, forever, permanently.—Abl. as adv., perpetuō, forever, constantly, continually.

perquīrō, -quīrere, -quisīvi, -quisitus, [I. per-quāero], 3. v. a., search for, inquire about.
perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [i. per-rumpo], 3. v. a. and n., break through, force one's way through, break, force a passage.
perruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of perrumpō.
perscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, [i. per-scribo], 3. v. a., write out (in full).
persequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [i. per-sequor], 3. v. dep., follow up, pursue, attack: mortem, injurias (avenge).
perseverō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [per-severō, very strict], 1. v. n., persist.
persolvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solvūtus, [2. per-solvo], 3. v. a., pay (fully). — Esp. (cf. pendo) of penalties, pay, suffer (punishment).
perspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of perspicio.
perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [i. per-† specio], 3. v. a., see through, see, inspect, examine. — Also, see thoroughly. — Fig., see clearly, see, understand, learn, observe, find, discover.
perstō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātūrus, [i. per-sto], 1. v. n., stand firm, persist, remain firm, be firm.
persuādeo, -suādere, -suāsī, -suāsus, [i. per-suadeo, advise], 2. v. a. and n., induce, persuade: hoc volunt persuadere (make people believe). — Pass. (impers.), be persuaded (dat. of person), be satisfied, believe.
perterreō, -terrēre, -terrūi, -terrītus, [i. per-terreo], 2. v. a., terrify, alarm: perterrītus equitatus (put in a panic); timore perterrītus, struck with terror; quos perterrītos (panic-stricken, flying in terror).
pertinācia, -ae,[pertinac- + ia], F., obstinacy, stubbornness.
pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, no p. p., [i. per-teneo], 2. v. n., (hold a course towards), tend, extend. — Fig., have to do with, tend: eodem illo ut, etc. (have the same purpose, look in the same direction); res ad plures pertinēt (more are implicated in, etc.).
pertulī, see perfero.
perturbātiō, -ōnis, perturbā- + tio], F., disturbance, alarm, panic, demoralisation.
perturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of perturbo.
perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [i. perturbo, disturb], 1. v. a., disturb, throw into confusion, confuse, throw into disorder, alarm, terrify.
pervagor, -āri, -ātus, [i. pervagor], 1. v. dep., roam about, scatter.
perveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventus, [i. per-venio], 4. v. n., (come through to), arrive at, get as far as, reach, come. — Fig., arrive: ad hunc locum (come to this point); pars (of property, come, fall).
perventus, -a, -um, p. p. of perveniō.
pēs, pedis, [PAD, tread, as st.], M., the foot. — Also, as a measure, a foot. — Esp.: pedem referre, draw back, give way; pedibus proelari (on foot); ad pedes desilire (to the ground, from on horseback, etc.); pedibus aditus, approach by land.
pētō, petere, petiū, petitus, [PAT], 3. v. a. and n., (fall?, fly?), aim at, attack, make for, try to get, seek, go to get, go to. Hence, ask, request,
look for, get: *petentibus Haedu is (at the request of, etc.);* fugam (*take to*).

Petrocorii, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a tribe on the Garonne (*Perigord*).

Petrọnii, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentile name.— Esp., *Marcus Petrọnius*, a centurion in Cæsar’s army.

Petrosidius, -î, [?], m., a Roman gentile name.— Esp., *Lucius Petrọsidius*, a standard-bearer in Cæsar’s army.

Phalanx, -angis, [Gr. ἡ ἀλαγξ], f., a *phalanx* (properly an arrangement of troops in a solid mass from eight to twenty-four deep, but applied also to other bodies of troops), *an array*.

Pictones (Pect-), -um, [Celtic], m. plur., a Celtic tribe south of the Loire (Poitou).

Pietas, -tās, [piō-, dutiful, + tās], f., *filial affection, affection* (for the gods or one’s country, etc.), *patriotism*.

Pīlus, -i, [pīlum], n., *a pestle*.— Also, *a javelin* (the peculiar weapon of the Roman legion, with a heavy wooden shaft about 4 ft. long, and an iron head on a long iron shank, making a missile more than 6 ft. long): *pīlum murale*, a heavier missile of the same kind for use in siege works.

Pīlus, -i, [pīlum], m., *a century* (of soldiers, a name applied to indicate the rank of centurions, see *centurio*).— Also, *a centurion* (of a particular rank).— Phrases: *prīmi pili centurio* (of the first century or rank); *prīnum pīlum duxerat*, had commanded in the first century of the first cohort, been first centurion.

Pīnna, -ae, [= penna, *feather* (pet (fly) + na)], f., *an artificial parapet* (of osier or the like run along the top of a wall).

Pīrūstae, -ārum, [?], m. plur., *a tribe of Illyria*.

Pīscis, -īs, [?], m., *a fish*.— Collectively, *fish*.


Pix, pīcis, [?], f., *pitch*.

Placēō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, [† placīō- (cf. placō, and placidus)], 2. v. n., *please*.— Esp. in third person, *it pleases* (one), *one likes*, *one determines, one decides*.

Placidē [old case-form of placidus, *quiet*], adv., quietly, calmly.

Plācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [st. akin to *placeo*], 1. v. a., *pacify, appease*.

Plancus, -i, [perh. akin to planus], m. (Flat-foot), *a Roman family name*.— See *Munatius*.

Plānē [old case-form of planus], adv., flatly, clearly, entirely.

Plānitiēs, -ēi, [planō- + ties, cf. -tia], f., *a plain*.

Plānus, -a, -um, [unc. root + nus], adj., flat, level, even: *carinae planiores* (less deep, less rounding).
plêbs (plêbēs), -is (-ēs), [PLE (in plenus) + unc. term. (cf. turba)], F., the populace, the multitude, the common people.

plênē [old case-form of plenus], adv., fully, entirely, completely.

plênus, -a, -um, [PLE (in pleo, fill) + nus], adj., full: luna; legio.

plêrumque, see plerusque.

plêrusque, -aque, -umque, [PLE (in pleo, fill) + rus-que (cf. -pletus, plenus)], adj. only in plur., most of, very many. — Acc. sing. as adv., plêrumque, generally, usually, for the most part, very often.

Pleumoxii, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Belgic Gaul, clients of the Nervii.

plumbum, -ī, [?], N., lead.— plumbum album, tin.

plûrimus, see multus.

plûs, [akin to pleo, fill], see multus.

pluteus, -ī, [?], M., a mantelet, a cover (movable, for defence). — Also, a bulwark, a defence, a breastwork.

pôcûlum, -ī, [root (or st.) po- (in potus, drink) + culum], N., a drinking-cup.

poea, -ae, [perh. † povi- (Pū) + na (cf. punicus, punish)], F., a penalty. Hence, a punishment (see persolvo, repeto).

pollex, -icis, [?], M., the thumb (with or without digitus).

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus, [tpor- for pro (cf. portendo) -licor, bid], 2. v. dep., offer, promise (voluntarily): liberaliter (made liberal offers). 

pollicitātiō, -ōnis, [pollicitā- + tio], F., an offer, a promise.

pollicitus, -a, -um, p. p. of polliceor.

Pompēius, -ī, [†pompe- (dialectic form of quinque) + ius], M., a Roman gentle or family name.— Esp.: 1. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, the great rival of Caesar, consul with Marcus Crassus in B.C. 58. — 2. Gnaeus Pompeius, an interpreter of Quintus Titurius, probably a Gaul enfranchised by one of the Pompeys.

pondus, -eris, [PEN (in pendo, weigh) + us], N., weight.

pōnō, pōnerē, posui, positus, [prob. †por-sino (cf. polliceor)], 3. v. a., lay down, place, put: posita tollere (things laid up, consecrated); ponere custodes (set); castra (pitch); praesidium (station, but see below). — Fig., place, lay, make, depend on: in fuga praesidium; spem salutis in virtute (find, found, seek). — positus, -a, -um, p. p., situated, lying, depending on: posita est, lies; positum est, in, etc., depends on, etc.

pōns, pontis, [?], M., a bridge.

populātiō, -ōnis, [populā- + tio], F., a plundering, a raid.

populor, -ārī, -ātus, [populō-], 1. v. dep., (strip, of people?, cf. Eng., skin, shell, bark a tree), ravage, devastate.

populus, -ī, [PAL? (in pleo, fill), reduplicated + us], M., (the full number, the mass), a people (in its collective capacity), a nation, a tribe (as opposed to individuals): populus Romanus (the official designation of the Roman state).

por-, port-, [akin to pro], obs. prep., only in comp., forth.
porrectus, -a, -um, p. p. of porrigo.
porrigō, -rigere, -réxi, réctus, [†por- (cf. polliceor), -rego], 3. v. a., stretch forth: porrecta loca pertinent (stretch out in extent).

portō [?, akin to †por (cf. porrigo)], adv., furthermore, further, then (in narration).

porta, -ae, [FOR (go through) + ta], F., (way of traffic?), a gate.

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [porta-?], i. v. a., carry (perh. orig. by way of traffic), bring, convey.

portōrium, -i, [?, porta (reduced) + orium (N. of -orius), perh. orig. †portor + ius], N., (gate-money? or carrier's money?), a duty (an impost), a toll.

portus, -tūs, [FOR (cf. porta) + tus], M., (a place of access), a harbor, a haven, a port.

poscō, poscere, poposci, no p. p., [perh. akin to prex, prayer], 3 v. a., demand (with some idea of claim, stronger than peto, weaker than flagito), require, claim.

positus, -a, -um, p. p. of pono.

possessō, -onis, [†por-†sessio (cf. obsessio)], F., possession, occupation —Concretely (as in Eng.), possessions, lands (possessed).

possideō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessus, [†por-sedeō], 2 v. a., (settle farther on?), occupy (in a military sense), possess (lands, of a people), hold possession of.

possum, posse, potuī, [pote- (for potis) -sum], irr. v. n., be able, can, etc.: plurimum posse, be most powerful, have very great influence; tan-
tum potest, has so much weight, power, influence; largiter posse, have great influence; multitudine posse, be strong in numbers; equitatu nihil posse, have no strength in cavalry; quicquid possunt, whatever power they have; quid virtute possent, what they could do by valor; fieri posse, be possible; ut spatium intercedere posset (might intervene); quam maximum potest, the greatest possible.

post [?; prob. abl. of st. akin to postis (cf. ante, antes, rows, and antae, pilasters)], adv. and prep. with acc., behind, after: post diem tertium, three days after; post se, in their rear; post hunc, next to him.

postea [post ea], adv., afterwards.
posteāquam [postea quam], conjunctive adv., (later than), after (only with clause).

posterus, -a, -um, [post- (or st. akin) + terus (orig. compar.)], adj., the next, later: postero die, the next day; in posterum, the next day. Plur. as noun, posterity.—postrēmus, -a, -um, superl., last.—postrēmō, abl., lastly, finally.

postpōnō, -pōnerē, -posuī, -positus, [post-pono], 3. v. a., place behind, postpone: omnibus rebus postpositis, disregarding everything else.

postpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of postpono.

postquam, [post quam], conjunctive adv., (later than), after.
postrēmō, see posterus.
postrēmus, see posterus.
postridē [†posteri- (loc. of pos-
terus) -die], adv., the next day: postridie eius diei, the next day after that.

postulátum, -i, [N. p. p. of postuló], N., a demand, a requirement, a request, a claim.

postuló, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [?], 1. v. a., claim (with idea of right, less urgent than posco), ask, request, require: tempus anni (require, make necessary).

potēns, -entis, [p. of possum as adj.], adj., powerful: homo (influential); potentiores, men of influence.

potentátus, -tūs, [potent- + atus, cf. consulatus], M., the chief power, supremacy.

potentia, -ae, [potent- + ia], F., power (political influence), authority (not official or legal).

potestās, -tātis, [potent- + tas], F., power (official, cf. potentia, and civil, not military, cf. imperium), power (generally), control, ability, opportunity, chance: sui potestatem facere, give a chance at them, give an opportunity to fight them; se potestati alicuis permittere (surrender, etc.); consistendi potestas erat nulli (chance, possibility); discendii potestatem facere (give permission, etc.); facta potestate, having obtained permission; imperium aut potestas, military or civil power; deorum vis ac potestas, the power and dominion of the gods.

potior, potīri, potītus, [poti-, cf. potis, able], 4 v. dep., become master of; possess one's self of; get the control of: imperio (secure); castris (capture).
praecipuus, -a, -um, [praectcapptius (CAP + VUS)], adj., (taking the first place), special.

praecludō, -clüdere, -clüsi, -clüssus, [praec-cludo], 3. v. a., (close in front of some one or something), shut off, barricade.

praecō, -ōnis, [?], M., a herald. Praecōninus, -i, [praecōn- + inus], M., a Roman family name.— See Valerius.

praecurrō, -currere, -currendus, [praec-curre], 3. v. n., run on before, hasten on before, hasten in advance, hurry on before: equites (ride on in advance); celeritate (get the start of, etc.).

praeda, -ae, [prob. praehīda (root of -hendo, seisse, + a)], f., booty, prey, plunder.

praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†praedicō- (or similar st. from praec with DIC)], i. v. a. and n., make known (before one), proclaim, assert, describe, boast, vaunt one’s self.

praedor, -āri, -ātus, [praeda], i. v. dep., plunder, take booty.

praedūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -dūctus, [praed-duco], 3. v. a., lead (etc.), before: murum (carry out, draw round).

praefectus, -a, -um, p. p. of praeficio. — As noun, see praeficio.

praefero, -ferre, -tuli, -latus, [praefero], irr. v. a., place before, esteem above, prefer to (with quam): se aliqui (show one’s self better than).

praeficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectus, [praef-facio], 3. v. a., put before, place in command of, set over.— praefectus, p. p. as noun, a cap-
tain (esp. of cavalry), a commander, an officer.

praefigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, [praef-figo], 3. v. a., fix in front, set on the edge (of something).

praefixus, -a, -um, p. p. of praefigo.

praemetuō, -metuere, no perf., no p. p., [praemetuo], 3. v. a. and n., fear beforehand, be anxious.

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus, [praem-mitto], 3. v. a., send forward, send on, send ahead.

praemium, -i, [praem-ium (EM, in emo, buy, + ium)], (taken before the general distribution or disposal of booty?), n., a reward, a prize, distinction (as a reward or prize): magno praemio remunerari (a great price).

praecoccupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [praec-occupo], i. v. a., take in opposition or beforehand: timor animos (take complete possession of, to the exclusion of everything else); vias (close against one), preoccupy.

praeeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [praeeopto], i. v. a., wish in preference, choose rather, prefer.

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [praeparo], i. v. a., prepare beforehand.

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus, [praep-pono], 3. v. a., put in command, set over.

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus, [praer-rumpo], 3. v. a., break off (at the end or in front). — praeruptus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., precipitous.

praeruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of praerumpo.

praesaepiō (-sēp), -saepire, -saepsi,
praesaeptus, [praesaeptio], 4. v. a., hedge in, wall off.

praesaeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of praesaepio.

praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, [praescribo], 3. v. a., (write down beforehand), prescribe, order, direct, give directions.

praescriptum, -i, [N. p. p. of praescribo], N., an order, orders.

praescriptus, -a, -um, p. p. of praescribo.

praesēns, -entis, p. of praesum.

praesentia, -ae, [praesent- + ia], F., presence, the present moment: in praesentia, for the moment, at the moment.

praesentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, [praesentio], 4. v. a., see beforehand, find out in time, find out (beforehand).

praesertim [as if acc. of praesertis (ser, in sero [join] + tis)], adv., especially, particularly.

praesidium, -i, [praesidium (sed + ium), cf. obsidium], N., (a sitting down before), a guard, a garrison, a force (detached for occupation or guard): intra praesidia, within the lines. — Fig., protection, assistance, support: praesidio litterarum (with the assistance of, etc.); in fuga praeidium ponere, seek safety in flight.

praesto [?, perh. "praesto," I am here (as if quoted)], adv., on hand, ready, waiting for, in attendance upon: praesto esse, be waiting for, meet.

praestō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātus (-stitus), [praesto], 1. v. a. and n., stand before, be at the head, excel, be superior: praestat, it is better. — Also, causatively (bring before), furnish, display: officium (discharge, perform); stabilitatem (afford, possess); fidem (keep, perform one’s duty).

praesum, -esse, -fui, [praesum], irr. v. n., be in front, be at the head of, be in command: magistraturi (hold). — praesēns, -entis, p., present, immediate: pluribus praesentibus, in the presence of many; praesens adesse, be present in person.

praeter [compar. of praer (cf. inter)], adv. and prep. with acc., along by, past, beyond. — Fig., except, beside, contrary to.

praeterēā [praeter-ea (abl.) ?], adv., furthermore, besides: si nemo praetera, if no one else.

praeterēō, -ire, -iī, -itus, [praeter eo], irr. v. a. and n., go by, pass by, pass over. — praeteritus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., past. — Esp. N. plur., praeterita, the past (cf. "bygones").

praeteritus, -a, -um, p. p. of praetero.

praetermittō, -mittere, -mitteri, -missus, [praeter-mitto], 3. v. a., let go by, let slip, omit, neglect.

praeterquam [praeter-quam], conjunctive adv., except, besides.

praetor, -tōris, [praet-itor, (1, go + tor)], M., (a leader), a commander. — Esp., a praetor, one of a class of magistrates at Rome. In early times two had judicial powers and the others regular commands abroad. Later all during their year of office had judicial powers, but like the
priratlin
praetoria
[prae-verto,
ea
praestae
primos
—
locus
prehendo,
plur.
a
v*
*guard,
an
each
before.
-v.
prendl,
tor).
first
propraetors:
praetors)
consuls
[lieutenant in command, acting as a praetor).
praetorius, -a, -um, [praetor- + ius], adj., of a praetor (in all its senses);
praetoria cohors, the body guard, of a commander (see praetor).
praeurō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstus,
-[praeu-uro], 3. v. a., burn at the end (in front); praestae sudes (burnt at the point, to harden them).
praevūstus, -a, -um, p. p. of praevuro.
praevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus,
-[praeverto, turn], 3. v. a., anticipate, forestall, attend to first.
praevus, -a, -um, [?], adj., crooked.
Fig., wrong, vicious.
premō, premere, pressī, pressus,
prendō (prehendo), prendere, prendi, prēnsus, [praev- hendo], 3. v. a., seize (against some one else?), seize (generally), take, grasp.
pretium, -ī, [?], N., a price, cost, value.
† prex, precis (dat., acc., and abl. only; plur. entire), [?], F., a prayer, an entreaty, an imprecation.
pridiē [loc. of st. of pro (prae?)
die, cf. postridie], adv., the day before.
primipilus [primō-pilus], m., the first centurion. See centurio and pilus.
primō [abl. of primus], adv., at first (opposed to afterwards, cf. primum).
primum [acc. of primus], adv., first (in order of incidents, opposed to next, etc.), in the first place: cum primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible.
primus, -a, -um, see prior.
princeps, -ipis, [primō- (reduced)
† ceps (CAP as st.]), adj., (taking the lead), first, chief, foremost: principes belli inferendi (leaders in, etc.); locus (chief, highest); ea princeps persolvit (was the first to).—Often as noun, leading man, leader, chief man, chief: legationis (head).
principātus, -tūs, [princip- + atus, cf. consulatus], m., foremost position, first place, highest place, the lead (in power and influence among states), leadership.
prior, -us, -ōris, [compar. of st. of pro], adj., former, before: priores, those in front; non priores inferre (not the first to, etc.).—prius, N. as adv., before (see also priusquam).—
primus, -a, -um, superl., first: agmen (front); primos civitatis (the best men); a prima obsidione, from the beginning of the siege: in primis, especially.—See primo and primum.
pristinus, -a, -um, [prius-tinus, cf. diutinus], adj., (of former times, old, former: pristinus dies, the day before.
prius, see prior.
priusquam [prius- quam], conj. adv., earlier than, before. Often separated.
privātim [as if acc. of † priva-
privátus, -a, -um, p. p. of privo, deprive, adj., (destitute of official character), private, personal.

prō [for prod, abl. of st. akin to prae, prior, etc.], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with abl., in front of, before. Hence, in place of, instead of, for, as, on behalf of: nihil pro sano, nothing prudent; pro explorato, ascertained, as certain. — Also, in view of, in accordance with, in proportion to, according to, considering, in return for, for. — In comp., before, forth, away, for, down (as falling forward).

probátus, -a, -um, p. p. of probo.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [probō-], i. v. a., (make good, find good), approve, test, prove, show, be satisfied with, favor (a plan), adopt (a measure).

procéđō, -cedere, -cessī, -cessus, [pro-cedo], 3. v. n., go forward, advance, proceed: longius (go to a distance).

Procillius, -ı, [Proculō- + lus], M., a Roman family name. — See Valerius.

prōclīnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of proclino.

prōclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [proclino], i. v. a., (bend forward), throw down: res proclinata (falling, ruined).

prōcōnsul, -ulis, [pro-consul, on account of the phrase pro consul], M., a proconsul, an ex-consul (during his term of service abroad).

procul [?; †proco-, “off” (pro + cus) + lus (reduced, cf. simul)], adv., at a distance (not necessarily great), at some distance, afar, from afar.

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, no p. p., [pro-cumbo, lie], 3. v. n., fall (forward), fall (generally), sink down, lie down (for rest), become lodged (of grain). — Less exactly, incline, slope, lean.

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [procuro], i. v. a., care for, have charge of, attend to.

prōcurrō, -currere, -currī, -currī, -currūs, [pro-curro], 3. v. n., run forward, charge, rush out.

prōdeō, -ēre, -ēvī (-iī), -itus, [prod (see pro) -eō], irr. v. n., go forth, come forth, come out, go forward: longius (go to any distance).

prōdesse, see prōsum.

prōdītīō, -ānis, [pro-dditio, cf. prodo], F., (a giving away), treason, treachery.

prōdītor, -tōris, [pro-dator (cf. prodo)], M., a traitor, a betrayer.

prōditus, -a, -um, p. p. of prodo.

prōdō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditus, [prodo], 3. v. a., (give forward), give forth, publish, betray (give away), transmit, hand down: memoriam (preserve, by handing down to posterity); memoria proditum, told in tradition, handed down.

prōducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus, [pro-duco], 3. v. a., lead forth, lead out, bring out (iumenta), draw up (troops). — Fig., protract, prolong.
prōductus, -a, -um, p. p. of produco.

proelior, -āri, -ātus, [proelīō-], i. v. dep., fight (in war).

proelium, -i, [?], N., a battle (a single encounter, great or small), a contest, an engagement, a general engagement, a skirmish: committere (engage, join battle, risk a battle, begin an engagement, begin the fight, fight).

profectio, -ōnis, [pro-factio (cf. proficiscor)], f., a setting out, a departure, retreat (the special idea coming from the context), starting, evacuation.

prōfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of proficire.

prōfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of proficiscor.

prōferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [profere], irr. v. a., bring forth, bring out.

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectūrus, [pro-facio], 3. v. n., (make way forward), advance (cf. proficiscor).
— Fig., gain advantage (“get on”), gain (much or little), accomplish (something): satis ad laudem profectum est, enough has been done for glory; ad pacem parum proficī, not much was doing towards peace; plus multitudine telorum proficere (have the advantage in).

proficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus, [proficiscor (cf. proficio)], 3. v. dep., (make way forward).— Esp., start, leave, depart, set out, withdraw, march out, go out, come out, sail out: quo proficiscimur, whither we are going; unde erant profectī, whence they had come; ad proficiscendum pertinere (to a journey, etc.).

proficere, -fīteri, -fessus, [profateor, confess], 2. v. dep., declare publicly: se (offer one’s self, volunteer as, declare one’s self).

prōfligātus, -a, -um, p. p. of profligo.

prōfligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [†prōfligō- (pro-†ligus, FLIG + us)], 1. v. a., (dash to the ground).— Esp., put to rout, rout.


profugīō, -fugere, -fugi, -fugītūrus, [pro-fugio], 3. v. n., flee forth, flee, escape, make one’s escape.

prōgnātus, -a, -um, [pro-(g)natus], p. p. as adj., sprung from: progenit ex, descendants of.

prōgrederior, -gredi, -gressus, [progradior, step, go], 3. v. dep., go forward, march forward, march out, come out.— Also, fig., proceed, go: amentia longius (go).

prōgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōgredior.

prohibēō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus, [pro-habeo], 2. v. a., hold off, keep off, repel, stop, prevent, restrain, hinder from, forbid.— Also (by a change of relation of the two things concerned), protect: aliquem ab omni militia inuria (keeping one protected from the assailant).

prohibitus, -a, -um, p. p. of prohibeo.

prōcìō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, [proiciaco], 3. v. a., throw forward, throw away, cast (down, cf. pro), abandon: aquilam intra vallum (throw over);
proiectae, casting themselves; se ex navis (leap).

proinde [pro-inde], adv., (from there forward), therefore, hence.

prōminēns, -entis, p. of prōmineo.

prōmineō, -minēre, -minui, no p. p., [prō-mineo (cf. minor, project)], 2. v. n., lean forward, lean over.

prōmiscue [old case-form of prōmiscuus], adv., in common.

prōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōmitto.

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, [prō-mitto], 3. v. a., (let go forward), let grow (of the hair): promissō capillo sunt, they wear long hair.

prōmōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōmoveo.

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [prō-moveō], 2. v. a., move forward, advance, push forward.

prōmptus, -a, -um, [p. p. of promo, bring forth], as adj., (taken out of the store ready for distribution), ready, quick, active.

prōmunturium, (-mon-), -i, [akin to promineo], n., a headland.

prōnē [old case-form of pronus, leaning], adv., with a slope.

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [prōnuntio], 1. v. a., (publish forth), make known, communicate, declare, give orders, make proclamation.

prope [?, akin to pro, cf. procul and proximus], adv. and prep. with acc., near. — Fig., almost, nearly. — Compar., proprius, nearer: proprius tumulum (as prep.). — Superl., proximē, lately, last.

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus, [pro-pello], 3. v. a., drive away (cf. pro), repulse, rout, dislodge, force back (changing the point of view).

properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [pro-perō, quick], 1. v. a. and n., hasten, be in haste, make haste.

propinquitās, -tātis, [propinquaa + tas], f., vicinity, a being near, a position near: propinquitates fluminum (positions near, etc.). — Esp., nearness in blood, relationship, a relation (by blood).

propinquus, -a, -um, [st. akin to prope (or case-form) + cas], adj., near at hand, near. — Esp. by blood, related. — As noun in pl., relatives.


prōpōnē, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus, [pro-pono], 3. v. a., place before, set before, lay before: vexillum (hang out). — Less exactly, offer, put in the way, present (difficulty), make known, state, represent.

prōpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of propono.

proprius, -a, -um, [?, akin to prope?], adj., of one's own: fines (particular); hoc proprium virtutis (a peculiar property, a mark).

propter [prope + ter, cf. aliter, praeter], adv. and prep. with acc., near by. — Also, on account of (cf. “all along of”).
propertea [propert-ea (prob. abl. or instr. of is)], adv., on this account. — With quod, because, inasmuch as.

propunator, -tōris, [propunator (cf. propugno)], m., a defender.

propunō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [propungō], i. v. n., (rush forward to fight, or fight in front), rush out (fighting), discharge missiles (ex silvis).

propulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [propulso (cf. propello)], i. v. a., repel, keep off, drive off, defend one’s self against.

prōrā, -ae, [Gr.], F, the prow (of a ship).

prōrūō, -ruere, -ruī, - rutus, [prōrō], 3. v. a., dash down, overthrow, demolish.

prōrūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōrō.

prōsecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of prosequor.

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [prosequor], 3. v. dep., pursue, follow (on one’s way), escort. — Fig. (from escorting), address, take leave of one (with some kind of attention).

prōspectus, -tūs, [prospectus (cf. propicio)], m., outlook, view: in prospectu, in sight; prospectu tenebris adempto, the view cut off by the darkness.

prōspiciō, -spicare, -spēxī, -spectus, [proспектio], 3. v. a., look forward, look out. — Fig., provide for, take care, look out.

prōsternō, - sternere, -strāvī, -strātus, [pro-sterno], 3. v. a., dash to the ground, overthrow (lit. and fig.).

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfūl, prōfutūrus, [pro(d)-sum], irr. v. n., be for the advantage of, benefit: quod alia cui prodest, by which one profits.

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus, [pro-tego], 3. v. a., (cover in front), protect, cover.

prōterreō, -terrēre, - terruī, - territus, [prō-terreo], 2. v. a., frighten away, drive away in fright.

prōterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōterreo.

prōtinus (-tenus), [pro-tenus, as far as], adv., forward, straight on. Hence, straightforward, forthwith, at once, instantly (keeping right on).

prōturbātus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōturbō.

prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [prō-turbo, disturb], i. v. a., drive in confusion, drive off, dislodge.

prōvectus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōveho.

prōvehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus, [prō-vehō], 3. v. a., carry forward. — In pass., be carried forth, sail out, set sail: leni Africo provectus (sail with, be driven by).

prōveniō, -venire, -venī, -ventūrus, [prō-venire], 4. v. n., come forward. — Esp. of fruits, come up, grow.

prōventus, -tūs, [pro-ventus, cf. eventus and provenio], m., an issue (a coming forth), success, a result.

prōvideō, -videre, -vidi, -visus, [pro-video], 2. v. a., foresee, see beforehand, take care, make provision, provide, arrange beforehand: satis est provisum, sufficient provision has been made.

prōvincia, -ae, [provinci- (vinc-
as root of vinco (conquer) + us + ia], F., (office of one extending the frontier by conquest in the field), office (of a commander or governor), a province (in general), a function. — Transf., a province (governed by a Roman magistrate). — Esp., The Province (of Gaul); so with nostra, ulterior, citerior (the province, as opposed to the unconquered parts of Gaul).

prōvīniālis, -e, [provincia- + lis], adj., of a province. — Esp., of the province (of Gaul).

provisus, -a, -um, p. p. of provideo.

prōvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [provolō], i. v. n., fly forth. — Less exactly, rush forth, rush out, fly out (of cavalry, etc.).

proximē, see prope.

proximus, see propior.

prūdentia, -ae, [prudent-, foreseeing, + ia], F., foresight, discretion.

Ptiāniī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Aquitania.

pūbēs (pūber), -ēris, [?], prob. same root as puer], adj., adult. — Plur. as noun, adults, grown men, young men of age.

pūbicē [old case-form of publicus], adv., publicly, in the name of the state, as a state, on behalf of the state: publice iurare (for the people, making the oath bind them).

pūbicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [publicō-], i. v. a., (make belong to the people), confiscate.

pūbicōs, -a, -um, [publicō- + cus], adj., of the people (as a state), of the state, public: consilium (a state measure, a public measure, action by the state, action by general consent); res publica, the commonwealth, the state, the interests of state, public business; relatis in publicum cornibus (publicly displayed); mulieres in publicum procurare (abroad into the streets).

Pūblius, -ī, [prob. populō- + ius, cf. publicus], M., a Roman prænomen.

pudet, pudēre, puduit (puditum est), [?], 2. v. imper., (it shames), one is ashamed (translating the accusative as subject).

pudor, -ōris, [PUD (in pudet) + or], M., shame, a sense of shame, a sense of honor.

puer, -ī, [?], M., a boy. — Plur., children (of either sex); a pueri, from childhood.

puerilis, -e, [puerō- (reduced) + ilis], adj., of a child: aetas (of childhood).

pūgnā, -ae, [PUG (in pugno) + na], F., a fight (less formal than proelium): ad pugnam, for fighting; genus pugnae (of fighting).

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [pugna-], i. v. n., fight, engage. — Often imper. in pass., pugnatum est, etc., an engagement took place, they fought. the fighting continued. — Esp.: pugnandi potestatem fecit, offered battle; pugnantes, those engaged.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, [?], adj., beautiful, handsome, fine. — Fig., fine, noble, splendid.

Pullō, -ōnis, [?], M., a Roman family name. — Esp., Titus Pullō, a centurion in Cæsar’s army.
pulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of pello.
pulsus, -ús, [pél (in pello) + tus], m., a stroke, a beat: pulsu re-
memorum praestare (the working, etc.).
pulvis, -ēris, [f.], m., dust.
puppis, -īs, [f.], m., the stern.
pūrgātus, -a, -um, p. p. of pur-
go.
pūrgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [purūgō-
(pūrō + ṭagus, cf. ago)], i. v. a.,
clean, clear.—Fig., excuse, exoner-
ate, free from suspicion, exculpate.
putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [putō- (st.
of putus, clean)], i. v. a., clean up,
clear up.—Esp.: rationes (clear up
accounts). Hence alone, reckon,
think, suppose.
Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, [f.], adj., only
with montes, the Pyrenees moun-
tains, between France and Spain.

Q., for Quintus.
quā [abl. or instr. (? of qui], rel.
adv., by which (way), where.
quadragēnī, -ae, -a, [quadraginta
(reduced) + nus], distrib. num. adj.,
forty each, forty (each often omitted
in Eng.).
quadragintā [akin to quattuor],
indecl. num. adj., forty.
quadringentī, -ae, -a, [akin to
quattuor], num. adj., four hundred.
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaes-
isitus, [?, with r for original s], 3. v.
a., search for, look for, inquire about,
inquire, ask: eadem (make the same
inquiries).
quaestīō, -ōnis, [quaes (as root of
quaerō) + tio], f., an investigation:
habere de aliquo (examine, as wit-
nesses, usually by torture).
quaestor, -tōris, [quaes (as root
of quaerō) + tor], m., (investigator,
or acquirer, perh. both).—Esp., a
quaestor (the Roman officer who had
charge of the finances of an army).
quaestus, -ūs, [quaes (as root of
quaerō) + tus], m., acquisition.
quālis, -e, [quō- (st. of quis) +
alīs], inter. adj., of what sort? qualis
ascensus (what is the nature of? etc.).
quam [case-form of quis and qui,
cf. tam, nam], adv. and conj.: 1. Inter-
rog., how?—2. Rel., as, than:
preferrē quam (rather than).—Often
with superlatives, as much as possible:
quam maximus, the greatest possible;
quam maxime, very much.—See
also postquam, posteaquam, prius-
quam (often separated), which are
best translated by a single word,
omitting the relative part, according
to the common English idiom.
quamdiū (often written sepa-
rately), adv. (see diu): 1. Interrog.,
how long?—2. Rel., as long, as
long as (with antecedent omitted).
quam ob rem (often found togeth-
er), adv. phrase: 1. Interrog.,
why?—2. Rel., on which account,
for which reason.
quamvis [quam vis], adv., as you
please, however, no matter how.
quandō [quam + unc. case-form
akin to de], adv., at any time: si
quando, if ever, whenever.
quanto, see quantus.
quantus, -a, -um, [prob. for ka-(root of qua-) + vant + us], adj.: 1. Interrog., how great? how much? quantum boni, how much good? quantae civitates (how important?). — 2. Relative, as great as, as much as: tantum . . . quantum, so much . . . as; so quanta . . . tanta pecunia.

quantusvis, -avis, -umvis, [quantus-vis (from volo)], however great, as great as you please.

quà rē, adv. phrase, by which thing, wherefore, therefore, on account of which (circumstance, etc.); why. — The relative and interrogative senses are not always distinguishable; neque commissum qua re, nothing had been done for which, etc.; res hortabantur qua re, etc. (many reasons for doing so urged, etc., to).

quartus, -a, -um, [quattuor- (reduced) + tus], num. adj., fourth: quartus decimus, fourteenth.

quasi [quam (or quā) -si], conj., as if: quasi vero, as if forsooth (ironical).

quattuor [?, reduced pl.], indecl. num. adj., four.

quattuordecim [quattuor-decem], indecl. num. adj., fourteen.

-que [unc. case-form of qui], (always appended to the word or to some part of the phrase which it connects), conj., and. — Sometimes connecting the general with the particular, and in general, and other.

quem ad modum, phrase as adv., how, just as, as.

queror, quērī, questus, [?, with r for original s], 3. v. dep., complain of, find fault, find fault with, bewail, lament.

questus, -a, -um, p. p. of queror.

qui, quae, quod, cūius, [prob. quō+i (demon.)], rel. pron., who, which, that. — Often where a demon. is used in Eng., this, that. — Often implying an antecedent, he who, etc.: ea quae, things which, whatever; qua de causa, for this reason; qui patebant (though they, etc.); qui videant, men to see, scouts; qui, and they; habere sese quae, with subj. (somethingto, etc.); qui potuis- sent (men who); qui postularent, to demand; haec esse quae, this was what; qui faceret, in that he, etc.; paucis diebus quibus (after); idem quod, the same as.—quō, abl. of degree of difference as adv., the (more, less, etc.). — See also quis, quod, 2 quo, and 3 quo.

quicquam, see quisquam.

quicumque, quae-, quod-, [quicumque (cf. quisque)], indef. rel. pron., whoever, whichever, whatever.

quidam, quae-, quod- (quid-), [qui-dam (case of DA, cf. nam, tam)], indef. adj. pron., a (possibly known, but not identified), a certain, certain, a kind of (referred to as belonging to the class, but not exactly the thing spoken of: artificio quodam, a kind of trick; quidam ex militibus (one).

quidem [unc. case-form of qui + dem (fr. DA, cf. tandem, idem)], adv., giving emphasis, but with no regular English equivalent: ne . . . quidem, not . . . even, not . . . either; vestrae quidem certe, yours at least,
with emphasis; si quidem, if at least, in so far as, since.

quiēs, -ēs, [quiē- (st. of quiesco, keep quiet) + tis (reduced)] F., rest, sleep, repose.

quiētus, -a, -um, [quiē- (st. of quiesco, cf. quies) + tus], p. p. as adj., at rest, quiet, peaceable, settled, at peace, free from disturbance.

quīn [qui (abl. or instr. of qui) + ne], conj., interrog., how not? and rel., by which not: quin etiam, nay even, in fact. — After negative verbs of hindrance and doubt, so but that, but that, that, from (doing a thing), to (do a thing); non dubito quin, I doubt not that; also, rarely, I do not hesitate to; non aliter sentio quin, I have no other idea than that; non exspecto quin, I do not delay doing, etc.; nec abest ab eo quin, it is not far from being the case that, etc.

quīnām (quis-), quaē-, quod-(quid-), cūius-, [qui-nam], interr. pron., who? etc. (emph.): quibusnam manibus (with what possible? etc.).

quīncūnx, -ūncis, [quinque-uncia, ounce], F., (an arrangement of dots in the form marked on the five-ounce piece of copper, ::), a quincunx: in quincuncem dispositis (in quincuncial or alternate order).

quīndecim [quinque-decim], indecl. num. adj., fifteen.

quinquentī, -ae, -a, [quinque-centum], num. adj., five hundred.

quinī, -ae, -a, [quinque + nēs], distrib. num. adj., five at a time, five (at a time).

quinquāgintā [quinque + unc. st.], indecl. num. adj., fifty.

quinque [?], indecl. num. adj., five.

quintus, -a, -um, [quinque + tus], num. adj., fifth. — Esp. as a Roman prænomen (orig. the fifth-born?).

Quintus, -i, see quintus.

quis (qui), quae (qua), quid (quod) cūius [st. qui- and quō-]: 1. Interrog. adj. pron., who? which? what? — 2. Indef., one, any one, any thing: ne quid, that nothing; ubi quis, when any one; si quis, if any one.

quisnam, see quinam.

quispiam, quaē-, quid- (quod-), cūius-, [quis-piam (pe-iam, cf. quīppe, nempe)], indef. adj. pron., any, any one, any thing.

quisquam, no fem., quid- (quic-), cūius-, [quis-quam], indef. pron. used substantively (cf. ullus), only with negatives and words implying a negative, making a universal negative, any one, anything. — As adj., any.

quisque, quaē-, quid- (quod-), cūius-, [quis-que], indef. adj. pron. (distrib. universal), each, each one, every. — Esp. with superlatives, implying that things are taken in the order of their quality: nobilissimus quisque, all the noblest, one after the other in the order of their nobility; antiquissimum quoque tempus, the most ancient times in their order; decimus quisque, every tenth, the tenth part of, one in ten. — With ut, and ita, a proportion is indicated, in proportion as . . . so, the more . . . the more.

quisquis, quaequeae, quicquid (quidquid), cūiuscuius, [quis,
doubled], indef. rel. pron., whoever, whatever, every one who, all who.

qui vis, quae-, quid- (quod-), cuius-, [qui-vis], indef. adj. pron., who you please, any one, any whatever (affirmative), any (whatever).

1. quō, see qui.

2. quō [old dat. of qui], adv.: 1. Interrog., whither? — 2. Rel., whither, into which, as far as (i.e. to what end): quo intrare (which); habere quo (have any place to go to, or the like). — 3. Indef., anywhere.

3. quō [abl. of qui], as conj., in order that (with comparatives), that: magis eo quam quo (than that, than because). — Esp., quō minus, that not, so that not: recusare quominus, refuse to.

quoad [quo-ad], conj., (up to which point), as far as, until, as long as.

quod [n. of qui], conj., (as to which), because, inasmuch as, in that, as for the fact that, the fact that, as for (with clause ex-

pressing the action): quod si, now if, but if.

quō minus, see 3 quo.

quoniam [quom (cum) -iam], conj., (when now), inasmuch as, since, as, seeing that.

quoque [?], conj., following the word it affects, (by all means?), also, as well. Cf. etiam (usually preceding).

quoque, see quisque.

quoque, quo with enclitic.

quoqueversus, see versus.

quot [akin to quis], adj. pron. decl.: 1. Interrog., how many? — 2. Rel., as many, as many as (with implied antecedent), the number which.

quotannis [quot-annis], adv., (as many years as there are), every year, yearly.

quotiens [quot + iens, cf. quin-quiens], adv.: 1. Interrog., how often? how many times? — 2. Rel., as often, as often as (with implied antecedent).

R

radix, -icis, [?], F., a root. — Plur., the roots (of a tree), the foot (of a mountain).

rádó, rádere, rásí, rásus, [?], 3. v. a., shave, scrape.

rámus, -i, [?], M., a branch, a bough, a prong (of antlers).

rapiditás, -tátis, [rápidō- + tas], F., swiftness, rapidity.

rapina, -ae, [rapī- (as if st. of rapio, seize) + na (F. of -nus)], F., plunder. — Plur., plunderine.

rárus, -a, -um, [?], adj., thin, scattered, singly, in small bodies (of soldiers), a few at a time, few (as being wide apart).

rásus, -a, -um, p. p. of rado.

ratió, -onis, [ráti- (ra, in reor, + ti) + o], F., a reckoning, an account, a roll. — Also, calculation, reason, prudence, terms, a plan, science (or art, or knowledge, as systematic), a reason (as consisting in a calculation), a manner, a method,
rationem habere, take an account, take account of; have regard to, take into consideration, take measures, take care of, a mercantile term, cf. account; rei miliaris (art, also nature); omnibus rationibus, in all ways, in all respects; proeli (character); reposcere (demand an account, make one responsible); rationem habere ut, take care that, etc.; rationem habere frumentandii (take measures for, etc.).

ratis, -is, [?, F., a raft.

Rauraci, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe on the upper Rhine.

re-, red-, [abl. of unc. st. perh. akin to -rus], insep. prep., back, again, away, out, un-. — Esp. implying a giving; or taking something which is due, or which creates an obligation by the taking, see recipio, refero.

rebellio, -onis, [rebelli- + o], F., a renewal of war, an uprising, a rebellion.

Rebilus, -i, [?], M., a Roman family name. — See Caninius.

receddo, -cessere, -cessi, -cessurus, [re-cedo], 3. v. n., make way back, retire, withdraw.

recens, -entis, [prob. p. of lost verb frecceo, be back, (cf. recipere)], adj., (?, just coming back?), new, fresh, late.

recenseo, -censere, -censui, -census, [re-censeo, estimate], 2. v. a., review, inspect (of troops).

receptaculum, -i, [recepta- + culum], N., a retreat, a place of refuge.

receptus, -a, -um, p. p. of recipio.
objections: de stipendio (refuse to pay, etc.); quin (refuse to); quomimus (refuse to); periculum (refuse to incur).

rědá (rhědā), -ae, [perh. Celtic form akin to rota], F., a wagon (with four wheels).

redăctus, -a, -um, p. p. of redigo.

redditus, -a, -um, p. p. of redo.

reddō, -dere, -didi, -ditus, [re (red) -do], 3. v. a., give back, restore, pay (something due, cf. re), render: supplicatio (offer).

redemptus, -a, -um, p. p. of redeem.

redeō, -ēre, -ēi (ēvi), -iōrus, [re (red)- eo], irr. v. n., go back, return, come down again (collis ad planitiem): eodem unde redierat (come); summum (be referred).

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctus, [re (red) ago], 3. v. a., bring back, reduce, render, bring (sub imperium Galliam), make (one thing out of another).

redimō, -āmare, -āmī, -āmptus, [re (red) emo], 3. v. a., buy back, redeem, purchase, buy.

redintegrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of redintegrō.

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re (red) integrō], 1. v. a., renew (again), restore, revive (spem).

reditō, -onis, [red-ītīo (cf. redeō)], F., a return.

reditus, -tūs, [re (red) titus], M., a return.

Redones, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Brittany.

redūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus, [re-duco], 3. v. a., lead back, bring back, draw back, draw in, extend back.

rectus, -a, -um, p. p. of ficio.

referō, -ferre, -ītuli, -lātus, [refero], irr. v. a., bring back, return, bring (where something belongs), report. — Esp.: ad senatum (lay before for action); de re publica (consult in regard to); gratiam (make return, show one's gratitude); pedem (retreat, draw back).

reificō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus, [refacio], irr. v. a., repair, refresh: se ex labore (rest); exercitum (allow to recover).

refractus, -a, -um, p. p. of refringo.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctus, [re-frango], 3. v. a., break away, break in (portas): vim fluminis (break, opposite to its direction).

refugīō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, [re-fugio], 3. v. n., run away, escape.

Rēginus, -ī, [akin to rex], M., a Roman family name. — See Antistius.

regió, -ōnis, [reg + io, but cf. ratio], F., a direction, a part (of the country, etc.), a region, a country, a district: recta regio, straight, along, parallel; e regione, over against, just opposite.

rēgius, -a, -um, [reg + ius], adj., of a king, regal, royal.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [regnō-], 1. v. n., rule, be in power, reign.

rēgnōrum, -i, [reg + num (N. of -nus)], N., a kingdom, royal power, a throne. — Plur., the royal power (of several cases).
regō, regere, réxi, réctus, [akin to rex], 3. v. a., direct, manage, rule, have control of.

réiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus,[re-iacio], 3. v. a., throw back, hurl back, drive back, throw away, drive off.

réiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of réicio.

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, no p. p., [re-langueisco], 3. v. n., languish away, be relaxed, be weakened, be deadened.

relātus, -a, -um, p. p. of refero.

relēgātus, -a, -um, p. p. of rélego.

relēgo, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-lėgo, depūte], i. v. a., remove, separate.

relīctus, -a,-um, p. p. of relinquo.

religīi, -ōnis, [?, re-legio (cf. religo)], f., (the original meaning unct), a religious scruple, a religious observance, the service of the gods, a superstition, a superstitious terror, religion.— Plur., religious matters (of all kinds).

relinquō, -linquere, -liquē, -līctus, [re-linquo], 3. v. a., leave behind, leave, abandon: obsidionem (raise).— Pass., be left, remain.

reliquus, -a, -um, [re-liquus (LIQ (leave) + us)], adj., left, remaining, the rest, the other, other (meaning all other), the others, all other, future (of time), remaining: nihil est reliqui, there is nothing left; nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt, made the greatest possible speed.

remanēō, -manère, -mānsi, -mānsūrus, [re-maneo], 2. v. n., remain behind, remain, stay.

rēmex, -igis, [remō- with unc. term. (perh. ūagus)], M., an oarsman, a rower.

Rēmī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of the Belgāe about Rheims, which was their capital.

rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [re-mig-], i. v. n., row.

remigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [re-migrō], i. v. n., move back, return.

reminisciō, -minisci, [re-†minisci (MAN, in memini, + isco)], 3. v. dep., remember.

remissus, -a, -um, p. p. of remitto.

remittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missus, [re-mitto], 3. v. a., let go back, send back, throw back.— Fig., relax, cease to use, give up: remissionibus frigorisbus (less intense).

remollēscō, -mollēscere, no perf., no p. p., [remollesco], 3. v. n., soften away, soften, become feeble.

remōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of removeo.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, [re-moveo], 2. v. a., move back, move away, send away, remove, draw away, get out of the way.— remotus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., far away, remote.

remūneror, -āri, -ātus, [re-munero], i. v. dep., repay, requite.

Rēmus, -ī, [?], M., one of the Remi.

rēmus, -ī, [?], M., an oar.

rēnō, -ōnis, [?], M., a skin, a pelt.

renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-novo, fr. novus, new], i. v. a., renew.

renūntiātus, -a, -um, p. p. of renuntio.

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [renuntio], i. v. a., bring back word, report, proclaim.
repellē, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, [re-pello], 3. v. a., drive back, repel, repulse: ab hac aep repulsi, disappointed in this hope.

repente [?], adv., suddenly.

repentīnus, -a, -um, [repente + inus], adj., sudden, hasty. — repentīnō, abl. as adv., suddenly.

reperiō, reperire, repperi, repertus, [re- (red-) pario], 4. v. a., find out, discover, find (by inquiry, cf. invenio): reperti suntmulti, there were many.

repertus, -a, -um, p. p. of reperio.

repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītus, [re-peto], 3. v. a., try to get back, demand back, ask for: poenas (in-\(\text{f}\)lict, exact, cf. sumo).

repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus, [re-pleo], 2. v. a., fill up, supply well.

repletus, -a, -um, p. p. of repleo.

reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-reporto], 1. v. a., carry back.

reposcō, -poscere, no perf., no p. p., [re-posco], 3. v. a., demand back, demand (something due).

repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-praesento], 1. v. a., make present, do at once.

reprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hensus, [re-prehendo], 3. v. a., drag back, seize hold of, find fault with, blame, censure.

repressus, -a, -um, p. p. of reprimō.

reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressus, [re-premo], 3. v. a., check.

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [repudi-], 1. v. a., (spurn with the feet, cf. tri-pudium), spurn, refuse, reject.

repŭgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-pugno, fight], 1. v. n., resist. — Fig., be in opposition.

repulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of repello.

requīrō, -quīrere, -quisīvī, quisītus, [re-quaero], 3. v. a., search out. Hence, request, require, demand, need.

rēs, rei, [akin to reor, reckon], F., property, business, an affair, a matter, a thing (in the most general sense), a fact, an occurrence, an event, a case, an action, an act. — Often to be translated from the context: ob eam rem, for this reason; quam ob rem, for which reason, wherefore; his rebus, by these means, for these reasons, on this account; ea res, this, (often equivalent to a pronoun); qua in re, in which; eius rei, of this; his rebus cognitis (this); qua ex re futurum, the result of which would be; huic rei, for this purpose, for this; alia re iurare (in any other way); nihil earum rerum quas, etc., nothing of what, etc.; sine certa re, without certain grounds; omnibus rebus, in every respect, in all ways; his omnibus rebus unum repugnabant (considerations, reasons, arguments); quibus rebus occurrendum esse (dangers); rem deferre, lay the matter before, not for consultation, bring information, cf. rem referre; rerum omnium casus, all accidents; rem gerere, operate, conduct operations, in war, succeed well or ill; his rebus gestia, after these operations, events; male re gesta, want of success; rerum natura, nature, also, state of the case;
imperitus rerum, ignorant of the world; omnium rerum summa (of the whole, of all the forces); ei rei student. (this branch, cavalry); cuius rei, of which, ships.—Esp., the affairs (of a person), position, interests, condition, fortunes, circumstances: Gallicis rebus favere (the interests of Gaul); rem esse in angusto (affairs, things); commutatio rerum, change of fortunes.—Esp.: res secundae, or adversae, success, prosperity, or adversity, want of success; res publica, the commonwealth, the state, the general interests, public business, politics; res communis, the common interest; de re publica, in regard to the welfare of the state, about politics; res divinae, divine worship, and everything pertaining to it, religion; res familiaris, property; res militaris, warfare, the art of war; res frumentaria, grain supply, grain; res alci est, one has business with, has to do with, and the like; one's affair is; res est, it is a fact, it is so; novae res, a new form of government, revolution.

rescindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissus, [re-scindo], 3. v. a., cut away, tear down, break down, destroy.

resciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitus, [re-scisco, inquire], 3. v. a., find out, learn, discover.

rescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus, [re-scribo, write], 3. v. a., transfer (by writing).

reservātus, -a, -um, p. p. of reservo.

reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [re-servo], 1. v. a., keep back, reserve, hold in reserve.

resideō, -sidēre, -sēdi, no p. p., [re-sedeo], 2. v. n., sit back, sit down, remain behind, remain.

residō, -sīdere, -sēdi, no p. p., [re-sido], 3. v. n., sink down, become calm, subside.

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, no p. p., [re-sisto], 3. v. n., stand back, stop, withstand, make a stand, resist, remain.

respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [re-tspecio], 3. v. a. and n., look back, look back at, look behind one, see behind one, consider.

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī,-spōnsus, [re-spondeo, promise], 2. v. n., reply, answer.

respōnsum, -i, [N. p. p. of respondeo], N., a reply. — Plur., a reply (of several parts).

rēs pūblica, see res.

respuō, -spuere, -spul, no p. p., [re-spuo], 3. v. a., spit out. — Fig., spurn, reject.

restīnticus, -a, -um, p. p. of restinguo.

restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxi, -stīnticus, [re-stinguo, quench], 3. v. a., extinguish.

restitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of restituō.

restituō, -stituere, -stitī, -stitūtus, [re-statuo], 3. v. a., set up again, replace, restore, make anew.

restitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of restituō.

retentus, -a, -um, p. p. of retineo.

retineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus, [re-teneo], 2. v. a., hold back, restrain, (quin, from doing something), detain, retain: memoriam (preserve); Gallos (arrest).

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus,
[re-traho], 3. v. a., drag back, bring back (a person).

revello, -vellere, -vellō, -vulsum, [re-vello, pull], 3. v. a., tear away, pull away.

reversus, -a, -um, p. p. of revertō.

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus, [re-vertō], 3. v. n., return (in perfect tenses). — Pass. as deponent in present tenses, return, go back, come back.

revincio, -vincire, -vīxi, -vinctus, [re-vincio], 4. v. a., bind back (to something), make fast, fasten, bind.

revinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of revincio.

revocatus, -a, -um, p. p. of revoco.

revocātus, -a, -um, p. p. of revocō.

rückus, -oris, [rōbus, (red?)], m., a Roman family name. — See Sulpicius.

Rutēni, -orum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe on the borders of Provence.

Rutilus, -i, [prob. akin to ruber], m., red. — As a Roman family name. — Esp., Marcus Sempronius Rutulus, a cavalry officer under Cæsar.

Sabīnus, -i, [unc. st. (cf. sabulus, sand) + inus], m., (Sabine). — As a Roman family name. — See Titurius.

Sabis, -is, [Celtic], m., a river of Gaul flowing into the Meuse, now Sambre.
saepe [N. of *taepis* (perh. same as *saepes*), adv., often: *minime* saepes, most rarely.—*saepius*, compar., many times, repeatedly.]

saepe[ numeros [saepe, numero], adv., oftentimes, many times.

saepès, -is, [akin to *saepio*, hedge *in*], F., a hedge.

saeviō, -ire, -iō, -itūrus, [saevō-,] raging (as if *saevi-*)], 4. v. n., be angry, rage, be violent.

sagitta, -ae, [f.], F., an arrow.

sagittārius, -i, [sagitta- + arius], m., an archer, a bowman.

sagulum, -i, [sagō-(cloak) + ium], N., a cloak (military).

saltus, -tūs, [?] perh. sal (in salio, leap) + tus], M., a wooded height, a glade, a pass (in the mountains).

salūs, -ūtis, [salvō-, (?) safe, + tis (cf. virtus)], F., health, well-being, welfare, safety, preservation, deliverance, life (as saved or lost); salute desperata, despairing of saving one's self; salutis suae causa, to protect one's self; ad salutem contendere (a place of safety).

Samarobrīva, -ae, [Celtic], F., a city of the Ambiani, now Amiens.

sanciō, sancire, sānxī, sāntus, [sac (in sacer)], 4. v. a., bind (in some religious manner), make sacred, solemnly establish (by law).—sāntus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., holy, sacred, solemn, inviolable.

sāntus, -a, -um, p. p. of sancio.

sanguis, -inis, [?], M., blood (as the vital fluid, generally in the body, cf. crur).
satisfactiō, -ōnis, [satis-factio (cf. satisfacīō)], F., amends, excuses, an apology.

satus, -a, -um, p. p. of sero.

saucius, -a, -um, [?], adj., wounded.

saxum, -ī, [?], N., a rock (as movable), cf. rupes.

scālae, -ārum, (sing. rare), [perh. scad- (in scando, climb) + 1a], F., a ladder, a scaling ladder.

Scaldis, -is, [?], M., a river of Gaul, the Scheldt.

scapha, -ae, [Gr., orig. a "dug-out"], F., a skiff, a boat.

scelerātus, -a, -um, [as if (perh. really) p. p. of scelero (stain with crime?)], adj., villainous, accursed.


scienter [scient- (cf. scio) + ter], adv., knowingly, skilfully.

scientia, -ae, [scient- (cf. scio) + ia], F., knowledge, acquaintance with (thing in the genitive), skill.

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissus, [scīd, split], 3. v. a., tear, tear down.

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, [?], 4. v. a., (separate?), distinguish, know.

scorpiō, -ōnis, [?], M., a scorpion; a machine for throwing darts. Hence, a shot from an engine (of that kind).

scribō, scribere, scriptūrō, scriptus, [?], 3. v. a. and n., write, give an account (in writing).

scrobis, -is, [prob. akin to scribō], M. and F., a ditch, a pit.

scūtum, -ī, [?], N., a shield, of the Roman legion, made of wood, covered with leather.

sē- sēd- [old abl. of unc. st.], prep., mostly as adv. in comp., apart, away, aside, off, un-.

sē, see sui.

sēbum, -ī, [?], N., tallow.

secō, secāre, secūi, sectus, [prob. causative of sec], i. v. a., cut, reap.

sectētō [abl. of secretus, p. p. of sectēm, separate], adv., in private, privately.

sectiō, -ōnis, [sect (in seco) + tio], F., a cutting. Hence (prob. from dividing in lots), a lot of booty, booty.

sector, -āri, -ātus, [prob. sectā (sequ + ta, cf. monēta)], i. v. dep., pursue, chase after.

sectūra, -ae, [prob. sectū- (sec + tus) + ra, F. of -rus], F., a cutting, a mine, a shaft, a gallery.

secundum, see secundus.

secundus, -a, -um, [part. in -dus of sequor], adj., following. Hence, second.—Also (as not opposing), favorable, successful: secundiores res, greater prosperity; proelium secundum nostrīs (in favor of); secundo flumine, down the stream; secunda aces, the second line of battle, the second division.—Neut. acc. as prep. with acc., along, in the direction of, in accordance with; secundum ea, besides that.

secūris, -is, [sec + unc. term.], F., an axe.—Esp., the axe of the ictor (as a symbol of the power of life and death).

sēcus, [sequ (in sequor) + unc. term.], adv., (inferior), otherwise.—
Compar., secius (sētius), less: nihilosecius, none the less, nevertheless.

secūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of sequor.

sed [abl. of unc. st., cf. re], conj., apart (cf. sedītio, and securus), but (stronger than autem or at), but yet.

sēdecim [sex-decem], indecl. num. adj., sixteen.

sēdēs, -is, [sed + es (M. and F. term. corresponding to N. -us)], F., a seat. Hence, an abode (both in sing. and plur.), a settlement: locus acsedes, a place of abode.

sēdītīō, -ōnis, [sedītīo (i + tio)], r., a secession, a mutiny, an uprising.

sēdītīōsus, -a, -um, [sedition- + osus], adj., seditious, factious.

Sedulius, -i, [?], M., a leader of the Lemovices.

Sedūnī, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of the Alps.

Sedusii, -ōrum, [Teut.], M. plur., a tribe of Germans.

seges, -etis, [unc. st. + tis], F., a crop of grain (growing), a field (of grain).

Sēgni, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of Belgic Gaul.

Segonax (-ovax), -actis, [Celtic], M., a British king.

Segontiaci, -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Britain.

Segusiāvi (-āni), -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people west of the Rhone, near modern Lyons.

semel [prob. N. of adj., akin to similis], adv., once: semel atqueiterum, more than once, again andagain; ut semel, when once, as soon as.

sēmentis, -tis, [semen (seed) +tis, cf. Carmentis, virtus], F., a sow ing: sementis facere, sow grain.

sēmita, -ae, [se- (sed-) + tmita (mi, in meo, go, cf. comes)], F., a side path, a by path, a path (over the mountains).

semper [†semō- (?) (in semel) -per (cf. parumper)], adv., through all time, all the time, always.

Semprōnius, -i, [?], M., a Roman gentle name. — See Rutilius.

senātor, -tōris, [†senā- (as if verb-st. akin to senex, perh. really so, cf. senatus) + tor], M., (an elder). Hence, a senator.

senātus, -tūs, [†senā- (as if, perh. really, verb-st. akin to senex)], M., a senate (council of old men). — Esp., the senate (of Rome, the great body of nobles acting as an administrative council).

senex [seni- + cus (reduced)]. — Gen., senis, [?], cf. seneschal], adj. (only M.), old. — Esp. as noun, an old man (above forty-five).

sēni, -ae, -a, [sec(s) + ni], distrib. num. adj., six each, six (where each is implied in Eng. by the context).

Senones, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Seine, near Sens (their chief town, anciently Agedincum).

sententia, -ae, [†sentent- (p. of simpler pres. of sentio) + ia], F., (feeling, thinking). Hence, a way of thinking, an opinion, a view, a determination, a sentiment, a feeling, a purpose, a design. — Esp., officially, a judgment, an opinion, a sentence, a vote: in ea sententia permanere
(of that mind); in eam sententiam, to this purport.

sentió, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsus, [?], 4. v. a., perceive (by the senses), know, see, think (of an opinion made up), learn about, learn: unum sentient ac probant, hold the same opinion, etc.

sentis, -is, [?], m., a briar.

sēparātim [as if acc. of separātis (separā- + tis)], adv., separately, privately (apart from others).

sēparātus, -a, -um, p. p. of separo.

sēparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [se- (sed-) paro], i. v. a., (get apart?), separate.
—Esp. sēparātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., separate.

septem [?], indecl. num. adj., seven.

septentriōnēs (septem, triones), -um, m. plur., the seven plough oxen (the stars of the Great Bear).—Hence, the north.—Also (by an error), in the sing., septentrio, -ōnis, the north: a septentriōnibus, in the north; sub septentriōnibus, in the north, towards the north.

septimus, -a, -um, [septem + mus, cf. primus], adj., the seventh.

septingenti, -ae, -a, [septem (in some form) -centum (?)], num. adj., seven hundred.

septuāgintā [from septem, in some unc. manner], indecl. num. adj., seventy.

sepultūra, -ae, [sepultu- (cf. sepelio, bury) + ra (f. of -rus)], f., burial, burying.

Sēquana, -ae, [Celtic], F., the Seine.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Sequani (a tribe of Gaul, on the Rhone, N. of Macon).—Masc. sing., one of the Sequani, a Sequanian.—Masc. plur., the Sequani.

sequor, sequī, secūtus, [sequi], 3. v. dep., follow, accompany: damnum poena (be inflicted upon, the penalty following the condemnation); eventus (ensue); hiems quae secuta est (the following); fidem (hold to, remain under, come under, surrender one's self to, etc.); aestūs (take advantage of).

Ser., for Servius.

sermō, -ōnis [ser (in sero, twine) + mo (prob. -mō- + o)], m., (series?). Hence, conversation (continuous series of speech), talk, intercourse, conversation with (genitive).

serō, serere, sēvī, satus, [sā, redup.], 3. v. a., plant, sow.

sērō [abl. of serus], adv., too late.

Sertōrius, -i, [sētor (garland-maker?) + ius], m., a Roman gentile name. —Esp., Q. Sertorius, a partisan of Marius, who held a command in Spain against the party of Sulla from B.C. 80 to B.C. 72.

servīlis, -e, [servi- (as if st. of servus or akin, cf. servio) + lis], adj., of slaves, of a slave, servile: in servilem modum, as with slaves, (i.e. by torture); tumultus (the servile war, the revolt of the slaves under Spartacus in B.C. 73).

serviō, ōre, if (-īvi), -īturus [servi- (as if st. of servus or akin)], 4. v. n., be a slave (to some one or something); rumoribus (be blindly guided by, follow); bello (devote one's self to).

servitūs, -tūtis, [servitu- (servō
Servius, i, [servō−ius], m., a
Roman praenomen.

Servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [servō−], i. v. a., watch, guard, keep; preserve:
presidia (hold, maintain); ordinēs (keep); fidēm (keep one's word).

Servus, -i, [unc. root (ser, bind?)]
+sus], m., a slave.
sēsē, see sui.
sēsquipedālis, -e, [tēsesquiped-(a foot and a half) + ails], adj., of a foot and a half, eighteen-inch (beams, etc.).

Sex [?] indecl. num. adj., six.
sexāgintā [sex + unc. term.], indecl. num. adj., sixty.
sexcentī (ses-), -ae, -a, [sex-centum], num. adj., six hundred.

Sextius, -i, [sextō−ius], m., a
Roman gentile name.—Esp.: i.
Titus Sextius, a legatus of Cæsar.
2. Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion in Cæsar's army.

Sī [loc. prob. akin to se], conj., (in this way, in this case, so, cf. sic), if, in case.—Esp., to see if, whether:
id si fieret, should this happen, etc.
sibi, see sui.

Sibusātes, -um, [Celtic], m. pl., a people of Aquitania, near the Pyrenees.
sīc [si-ce, cf. hic], adv., so, in this manner, in such a manner,
thus: sic...ut, so...that, so well...that; sic reperiebat (this).—
sicūtī, as conj., just as, just as if.
siccitās, -tātis, [siccō−tas], f., dryness, drought, dry weather.—Plur.
in same sense, of different occasions.
sicut (sicutī), see sic.
sīdus, -eris, [sed + us], N.,
(position?), a heavenly body.
signifer, -feri, [signo-fer (bear) + us], m., a standard-bearer.
significātiō, -onis, [significā−tio], f., a making of signs, a signal,
an intimation, a warning.
significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [significā− (signō-ficus, cf. facio)], i. v.
n., make signs, indicate, make known, spread news, give an intimation, give information, show: hac re significari, this is an indication; de fuga; deditionem (make signs of).
signum, -i, [unc. root + num (N. of -nus)], N., (a device?), a sign, a signal.—Esp., a standard (for military purposes, carried by any body of men, consisting of some device in metal on a pole).—Phrases: signa converseret, wheel, change front, face about; signa in ferre, advance to attack, charge; conversa signa in ferre, change front and charge; infestis signis (for an attack, at charge); signa ferre, move, move on, march; signa subsequi, keep the line of march; signa reliquere, leave the ranks; se continere ad signa, keep the ranks; a signis discedere, desert, leave the ranks; ad signa convenire, join the army; ad signa consistere, rally around the standard; signa constituere, halt.
Silānus, -ī, [♀], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Marcus Silānus, a legatus of Cæsar.

silentium, -ī, [silent- + ium], n., stillness, silence. — silentiō, abl., in silence, silently.

Silius, -ī, [♀], m., a Roman gentle name. — Esp., Titus Silius, a military tribune in Cæsar’s army.

silva, -ae, [♀], f., a forest, woods, forests. — Plur. in same sense.

cf. palustris] + tris], adj., woody, wooded.
	similis, -e, [‘simō- (cf. simplex, semper) + lis], adj., like, similar.

similitūdō, -inis, [simili- + tudo], F., likeness, resemblance (to, genitive).

simul [N. of similis, cf. facul], adv., at the same time: simul atque (or without atque), as soon as; simul . . . simul, both . . . and.

simulācrum, -i, [simulā- + crum], N., an image, a likeness.

simulātiō, -ōnīs, [simulā- + tio], F., a pretence, a show, deceit.

simulātus, -a, -um, p. p. of simulō.

simulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [simili-(as if, perh. orig., †simulō)], I. v. a., pretend, make a show of (something), feign.

simultās, -tātis, [similī- (cf. simul) + tas], F., (likeness ?, equality ?), rivalry.

sin [si-ne], conj., (if not), but if.

sincērē [old case-form of sincerus], adv., honestly, truly, frankly.

sine [♀], prep. with abl., without.

singillātim (singul-), [as if singulā- (singulus) + tim (acc. of -tis)], adv., singly, one by one, individually.


singuī, -ae, -a, [sim (in similis) + unc. term.], adj., one at a time, single, each, one by one, several (severally). — Often to denote distribution, one to each: singuli singulos, (with verb), one . . . each; singulis legionibus singulos legatos (one over each); ab singulis legionibus singulos legatos discedere (each from his); inter singulas legiones (between each two, one to each); navis singulas Romanis equitibus (severally, separately, one to each); sevcocare singulos (individuals, one by one).

sinister, -tra, -trum, [♀], adj., left: sub sinistra (manu), on the left.

sinistrōrsus [sinistro-vorsus (versus)], adv., to the left.

sinō, sinere, sivī, situs, [si (of unc. meaning)], 3. v. a., (lay down, cf. pono), leave. Hence, permit, allow.

situs, -tūs, [si + tus], m., (a laying, a leaving), situation, position, site.

sīve, seu, [si-ve], conj., if either, or if: sive . . . sive, either . . . or, whether . . . or.

socer, -erī, [♀], m., a father-in-law.

societās, -tātis, [sociō- + tas], F., an alliance.

socius, -ī, [sequ (follow) + ius], m., a companion, an ally, a comrade.

sōl, solis, [♀], m., the sun. — Also personified, Sol, the Sun. — See also under orior, occido, occasus.
sölăcium (sölāt-), -l, [solacō- + ium], N., a consolation, a comfort.
soldurius, -l, [Teutonic], M., a retainer, a follower.
soleō, solēre, solitus, [?], 2. v. n., be wont, be accustomed.
sölitūdō, -inis, [solō- + tudo], F., loneliness. Hence, a wilderness.
sollertia, -ae, [sollert- (sollō- + ars, with complete skill, cf. sollicito)] + ia], F., skill, ingenuity, shrewdness.
sollicitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of sollicito.
sollicitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [sollicitō- (sollō-citus, entirely roused)], r. v. a., stir up, instigate, make overtures to, tamper with, approach (with money, etc.), offer bribes to, tempt.
sollicitūdō, -inis, [†sollicitu- (st. akin to sollicitus) + do], F., anxiety, apprehension.
solum, -l, [?], N., the soil, the foundation, the bottom: solum agri, the bare ground; ab infimo solo, from the very bottom.
sōlus, -a, -um, [?], adj., alone, only.—sōlum, N. as adv., alone, only.
solitus, -a, -um, p. p. of solvo.
solvō, solvere, solvi, solūtus, [prob. se-luo, loose], 3. v. a., unbind, loose.—Esp. with navis, weigh anchor, set sail.—Also without navis, absolutely, set sail.
sonitus, -tūs, [soni- (as st. of sono) + tus], M., a sound, noise.
sonus, -l, [son + us], M., a sound.
soror, -ōris, [?], F., a sister: soror ex matre, a half-sister.
sors, sortis, [perh. ser (in sero) + tis, but the orig. sense is unc.], F., a lot (for divination), chance.

Sōtiātes, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a people of Aquitania.
spatium, -l, [?], N., space, extent, a space, a distance.—Transf., time, space of time, lapse of time.—Phrases: quantum fuit diei spatium, as much as there was time for; intermisso spatio, after an interval; spatia omnis temporis, the whole course of time.
speciēs, -iēs, [SPEC + ies (akin to -ia)], F., (a sight, prob. both act. and pass.).—Passively, a sight, a show, an appearance: summa species earum stantium, a perfect appearance of standing trees (lit. of them standing); ad speciem, for show.
spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [spectō-].

spondō, -nō, -nōs, -nōtus, [spondō-], M., a spy, a scout.
spectātorius, -a, -um, [spectulator + ius], adj., (of a scout), scouting, reconnoitring (navigia).
speculator, -āri, -ātus, [speculā-, cf. specula, watch-tower], r. v. dep., spy, reconnoitre: speculandi causa, as a spy.
spērātus, -a, -um, p. p. of spero.
spēro, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [spēs- (prob. orig. st. of spēs) with r for s], r. v. a. and n., hope, hope for, expect.

spēs, -ei, [?], F., hope, expectation: summa in sper venire, have the greatest hope.
spiritus, -tus, [spiri- (as st. of spiro, breathe) + tus], M., breath.—Also, spirit. Hence, in pl., pride, arrogance, temper.
spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [spoliō-, bootī], 1. v. a., despoil, strip. — Fig., rob, deprive, despoil.

spontis (gen.), sponte (abl.), [prob. akin to spondeo, promise], F., only with poss. or (poetic) gen., of one's own accord, voluntarily, on one's own account. — Rarely, by one's influence.

stabiliō, -āre, -āvi (ii), -āitus, [stabili-], 4. v. a., make firm.

stabilitās, -tātis, [stabili- + tās], F., steadiness, firmness.

statim [acc. of tstatīs (sta- + tīs)], adv., (as one stands, on the spot), at once, forthwith, immediately.

statiō, -ānis, [apparently sta + tio, prob. tstatī- + o, whence the common -tio used as ending without regard to its origin], F., (a standing), a position, a post, a picket: in statione, on guard.

statūa, -ae, [statu- + ra, F. of -rus], F., (a standing), stature, size.

status, -tūs, [sta + tus], M., (a standing), a position, a condition, a state, a situation.

stimulus, -ī, [tstigmō- (stig + mus) + lus], M., a goad, a spur.
— As name of a cithrōp or instrument of defence, "spurs."

stipendiārius, -a, -āmum, [stipendiō- + arius], adj., tributary, under tribute, subject to tribute.

stipendium, -ī, [stipi-, gift, and st. akin to pendo (perh. tpendus, cf. pendulus) + ium], N., a tribute.

stipés, stipitis, [?], M., a trunk (of a tree).

stirps, stirpis, [?], M. and F., a stock, a stem. — Fig., a race: stirpem hominum interfecti, men to be killed root and branch.

stō, stāre, stetī, statūrus, [STA], 1. v. n., stand, be placed: decreto (stand by, abide by).

strāmentum, -ī, [STRA (form of root of sterno) + mentum], N., (something strewn), straw, thatch.
— Also plur., saddle-cloths.

strepitus, -ītus, [strepī- (as st. of strepo, roar) + tus], M., a noise, a confused din.

studeō, studère, studuī, no p. p., [tstūdō- (or tstudae-), cf. studium], 2. v. n., be eager for, be devoted to, pay attention to, attend to, desire (a thing in the dat.).

studīōse, [old case-form of studiosus], adv., eagerly, zealously.

studium, -ī, [prob. tstudō- + ium, cf. studeo], N., eagerness, zeal, devotion, fondness (for a thing), enthusiasm. Hence, a pursuit (to which one is devoted), an occupation.

stultitia, -ae, [stultō- (foolish) + tia], F., folly.

sub [unc. case, prob. abl., akin to super], adv. (in comp.) and prep.: a. With abl. (of rest in a place), under: sub oculis, before the eyes.
— Also, just by: sub monte (at the foot of); sub sinistra, at the left; sub vallo, just under the wall.

b. With acc. (of motion towards
a place), under, close to. — Of time, just at, just before: sub vesperum.
  c. In comp., under, up (from under), away (from beneath), secretly (underhand), in succession, a little, slightly.

 subæctus, -a, -um, p. p. of subigo.
 subdolus, -a, -um, [sub-dokus, artifact], adj., cunning, sly.

 subducō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductus, [sub-duco], 3. v. a., draw up, lead up; navis (beach, draw up).
 subductio, -onis, [sub-ductio, cf. subductus], F., a drawing up, a beaching (of ships).

 subductus, -a, -um, p. p. of subduce.

 subeō, -ire, -i, -itus, [sub-eo], irr. v. a., go under, undergo, encounter, come up, approach.

 subfodiō (suff.), -fodere, -fodi, -fossus, [sub-fodio], 3. v. a., dig under, stab (underneath).

 subfossus, -a, -um, p. p. of subfodie.

 subiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus, [sub-iacio], 3. v. a., throw under, place below, place under, subject, expose to. — Also, throw up. — subiectus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., lying near.

 subigō, -igere, -igi, -actus, [sub-ago], 3. v. a., bring under, subject.

 subitō, see subitus.

 subitus, -a, -um, [p. p. of subeo], adj., (coming up secretly from under), sudden, suddenly (as if adv. taken with the verb), quick, hasty. — subitō, abl. as adv., suddenly, of a sudden.

 sublātus, -a, -um, [sub- (t) latus], p. p. of tollō.

 sublevātus, -a, -um, p. p. of sublevō.

 sublevō, -äre, -āvi, -ātus, [sublevo], 1. v. a., lighten up, lighten, raise, raise up, assist, render assistance. — With reflexive, rise up. — sublevātus, p. p., supporting one’s self.

 sublica, -ae, [?], f., a pile.

 subluō, -luere, no perf., -lūtus, [sub-luo], 3. v. a., wash underneath, wash: flumen collis radices.

 subministrō (sum-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [sub-ministro], 1. v. a., supply (as needed), furnish (from time to time), provide.

 submitto (sum-), -mittere, -missi, -missus, [sub-mitto], 3. v. a., send up, send to one’s assistance, send as reinforcements, send (as help), reinforce.

 submōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of submoveo.

 submoveō (sum-), -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, [sub-moveo], 2. v. a., drive off, dislodge.

 subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutus, [subruo], 3. v. a., dig under, undermine.

 subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [subsequor], 3. v. dep. follow up, follow on, follow, succeed to.

 subsidium, -i, [sub-сидiwm (sed + ium)], N., (a sitting in reserve), a reserve, a reinforcement, help, relief, support, assistance, resources, provisions: subsidio mittere, send assistance; subsidium ferre, rescue; subsidium comparare, make provision.

 subsidō, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessūrus, [sub-sidō], 3. v. n., sit down, remain behind.
subsistō, -sistere, -stītī, no p. p., [sub-sisto], 3. v. n., stop behind, halt, make a stand: ancorae (hold).

subsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrūs, [sub-sum], irr. v. n., be under, be near, be close by (a certain distance off), be near at hand, approach.

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus, [sub-traho], 3. v. a., take away (underneath), carry away, take away (generally).

subvectīō, -ōnis, [sub-vectio, cf. subvehō], f., bringing up, transportation, conveyance.

subvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectus, [sub-vehō], 3. v. a., bring up.

subvenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventūrūs, [sub-venio], 4. v. n., come under, come to the support of, come to the assistance of, assist.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrūs, [sub-cedo], 3. v. n., come up, advance, come in place of, succeed to, take the place of, come next.—Also, be successful, prosper.

succendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēnsus, [sub-ndo (cf. candeo, glow), 3. v. a., set on fire (as if beneath).

succēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of succeedo.

successus, -ūs, [sub-cesus (cf. succeedo)], m., a coming up, an advance, a close approach.

succidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisus, [sub-caedo], 3. v. a., cut under, cut down.

succīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of succido.

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitūrus, [sub-cumbo], 3. v. n., lie down (under), give way, succumb.

succurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursū-
Sulla, -ae, [?], m., a Roman family name. — Esp., Lucius Cornelius Sulla, the great partisan of the nobility and opponent of Marius, called the Dictator Sulla.


sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, [as, cf. am, is], irr. v. n., be (exist). — Also, with weakened force, be (as a mere copula). — Phrases: erant duo itinera (there were); sibi esse in animo, that he had in mind, intended; pars quae est ad Hispaniam (lies); eorum est, they have; multum sunt in venationibus (much engaged).

summa, -ae, [F. of summus as noun], F., (the top), the sum, the total, the main part: summum rerum, the whole amount; belli, (the general management, the chief control); imperi (the chief command); imperi bellique administrandi (the chief management, etc.); rerum consiliorumque (chief control); summa exercitūs, the main body, etc.; summam victoriae, the whole victory.

summus, see superus.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmpsum, [sub-emō, take], 3. v. a., take away, take, get, assume: supplicium de ( inflict, cf. capere); laborem (spend).

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, [suumtus- + osus], adj., expensive, costly.

sūmptus, -tūs, [sub-temptus, cf. sumo], m., (a taking out of the stock on hand), expense.

superātus, -a, -um, p. p. of supero.

superbē [old case-form of superbus], adv., haughtily, arrogantly, with arrogance.

superior, see superus.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [superō-], 1. v. a. and n., overtop. Hence, get the upper hand of, overcome, conquer, defeat, be superior to, prevail, overmatch, survive (vita).

supersedēō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessūrus, [super-sedeō], 2. v. n., sit above. Hence, be above, decline, refrain from.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, [super-sum], irr. v. n., be over and above, remain, survive.

superus, -a, -um, [super- (st. akin to sub, perh. same) + rus (cf. inferus)], higher, being above (of space only). — Compar. (in wider meanings), superior, higher, upper, preceding (of time), past, before, superior, victorious. — Superl., superēmus [supera- (?) +imus (?)], highest. — Also, summus [sup- + mus], highest, the highest part of, the top of. — Fig., greatest, most important, very great, most perfect, perfect, supreme, most violent: ab summō, from the top, at the end; summīs copiis, with all the forces, in force, with all one's might.

suppetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitūrus, [sub-peto, aim at], 3. v. n., (? but cf. sufficio and subvenio), be on hand, be supplied, be to be found, hold out.

supplēmentum, -i, [supplē- (as st. of suppleo, fill up) + mentum], N., a supply (to fill up), a reinforcement.

supplex, -icis, [sub-plex (PLIC ×
supplicātiō (fold), as st., cf. *duplex*], c., a supplicant.
supplicātiō, -ēnis, [supplicā- + tio], F., a supplication. — Esp., a thanksgiving (prayer to the gods upon any signal success, decreed by the senate).
suppliciter [supplici- (as st. of supplex) + ter], adv., in the guise of suppliants, as suppliants.
supplicium, -i, [supplic- (st. of supplex) + ium], N., a supplication, a sacrifice. — Also, esp., a punishment (usually of death).
supportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, [sub-porto], 1. v. a., bring up, convey, supply, furnish.
supra [instr. (?) of superus], adv. and prep. with acc., above, before.
susceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of suspicio.
suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus, [sub(s)-capio], 3. v. a., take up, take upon one's self (sibi), assume, undertake, engage in, undergo.
susceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of suspicio.
suspicātus, -a, -um, p. p. of suspicor.
suspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus, [sub-specio], 3. v. a. and n., look up, look up at, look askance at. Hence, suspect: suspecta nobis, an object of suspicion to us.
suspiciō (-spītiō), -ēnis, [sub-

†specio, cf. suspicio], F., suspicion.

tabulātus, -a, -um, [tabulā- (as

†bus ?) + la], F., a board. Hence, a record (written on a board covered with wax), a document, a list.
taeō 149 tegō

if st. of ῶtabulo) + tus], adj., made with boards.—tabulātum, N., a flooring, a story.

taceō, tacere, tacuī, tacitus, [ tua- (TA + us)], 2. v. a. and n., be silent, be silent about, keep secret, conceal, say nothing about.—tacitus, p. p. as adj., silent, in silence.


tacitus, -a, -um, p. p. of taceō.

tālea, -ae, [perh. akin to tālūs, ankle-bone], F., a rod, a bar.

tālis, -e, [TA (akin to that) + alis], adj. pron., such, so great.

tām [unc. case of TA (cf. quam, nam)], adv., so (as indicated in the context), so much.

tamen [unc. case-form of TA (locat.?)], adv., (introducing a thought opposed to some preceding concession expressed or implied), yet, nevertheless, still, however, for all that, notwithstanding, after all, at least.

Tamesis, -is, [Celtic], M., the Thames.

tametsi, [tamen (or tam?) -etsi], adv., (still although, anticipating the thought to which tamen properly belongs), although, though.

tandem [tam-dem, cf. idem], adv., (just so, even so?), at last.—In questions, to add emphasis, pray, tell me, or trans. only by emphasis.

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus, [TAG], 3. v. a., touch, border on.

tantopere, see opus.

tantulus, -a, -um, [tantō- + lus], adj., so small, so little, so trifling.

tantum, see tantus.

wantummodo [tantum modo], adv., [so much only], only, merely, only just.

tantundem (tantum-dem, cf. idem], adv., just so far.

tantus, -a, -um, [prob. TA + vant (adj. term.) + us], adj., so much, so great, such (of magnitude) : tanti est, is of so much weight; tanta exiguitas temporis, so little time.—Esp., so much (and no more), only so much: tantum progredi (so far as).

—tantum, N. as adv., only, merely.

Tarbellī, -orum, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of Aquitania.

tardātus, -a, -um, p. p. of tardō.

tardē [old case-form of tardus], adv., slowly, tardily, with delay.

tardō, —äre, —āvi, —ātus, [tardō-], I. v. a., retard, check, hinder: Romanos ad insequendum (hinder from pursuing, retard the pursuit of, etc.).

tardus, -a, -um, [?], adj., slow, slack, sluggish, without alacrity.

Tarusātēs, -ium, [Celtic], M. pl., a tribe of Aquitania.

Tasgetius, -i, [Celtic], M., a prince of the Carnutes.

taurus, -i, [perh. STAV + rus, akin to steer'], M., a bull.

Taximagulus, -i, [Celtic], M., a prince of Britain.

taxus, -ii, [?], F., a yew-tree.—Also, yew (the berries used as poison).

Tectosages, -um, [Celtic], M. pl., a branch of the Volcae, which see.

tēctum, -i, [N. p. p. of tego], N., a roof, a house.

tēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of tego.

tegimentum (tegu-), -i, [tegi- (st. of tego) + mentum], N., a covering.

tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctus, [TEG], 3. v. a., cover, thatch, hide, conceal.
tēlum, -ī, [?] N., a weapon (of offence), a missile, a javelin, a spear.
temerarius, -a, -um, [†temerō- + arius], adj., reckless, rash, hasty.
temerē [old case-form of †temerus], adv., blindly, without reason, without cause. Hence, recklessly, hastily.
temeritas, -tātis, [†temerō- (hasty) + tas], F., blindness, thoughtlessness, recklessness, hasty temper.
temō, -ōnis, [?], M., a pole (of a wagon, etc.).
temperantia, -ae, [temperant- + ia], F., self-control, prudence.
temperatus, -a, -um, p. p. of tempero.
temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [temper- (st. of tempus)], I. v. a., (divide, mix properly. Hence, control, control one's self, refrain, restrain one's self from (quin). — Esp., temperātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., temperate, mild.
tempestās, -tātis, [tempes- (st. of tempus) + tas], F., a season, weather. — Esp., bad weather, a storm, a tempest.
temptō (tentō), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [tentō-, p. p. of teneo, hold], I. v. a., handle. Hence, try, attempt, make an attempt upon, tempt: iter (try to force).
tempus, -oris, [tem (cut, with root determinative or accidental p) + us], N., (a cutting). — Esp., a division of time, a time, time (in general), a season, an occasion, an emergency, a crisis; tam necessario tempore, at so critical a moment; omni tempore, at all times, always; in reliquum tempus, for the future; uno tempore, at once; tempore exclusus, cut off by the want of time.
Tencteri (-theri), -ōrum, [Teutonic], M. plur., a branch of the Usipetés, which see.
tendo, tendere, tetendi, tēnusus (tentus), [ten + do (of unc. origin)], 3. v. a., stretch, stretch out. — Esp., stretch a tent, encamp.
tenebrae, -ārum, [?, perh. akin to temere], F. plur., darkness.
teneō, tenēre, tenui, tensus (tensus), [tenō- (ten + us)], 2. v. a., hold, retain, keep, possess, occupy: circuitus millia (occupy, extend). — Also, restrain, detain: tenere obsidibus (bind); se tenere, remain; memoriam tenere, remember.
tener, -era, -erum, [ten + rus], adj., (stretched, thin), delicate, tender, young.
tenuis, -e, [ten + us, with accidental i, cf. gravis], adj., thin, delicate, feeble, meagre, poor.
tenuitās, -tātis, [tenui- + tas], F., thinness, weakness, poverty.
tenuiter (tenui- + ter), adv., thinly, slightly.
ter [prob. mutilated case of tres], num. adv., three times, thrice.
teres, -etis, [tere- (as st. of tero) + tis], adj., (rubbed), smooth and round, tapering.
tergum, -ī, [?], N., the back: terga vertere, turn and fly; a tergo, in the rear.
ternī, -ae, -a, [tri- + nus], distrib. num. adj., three each, three at once.
terra, -ae, [ters(i) + a, cf. torreo, dry up], F., (the dry land), the earth, the land. — Also, a land, a
region.—Also, the ground.—Plur., the world.

Terrasidius, -i, [Celtic], m., a Roman gentile (?) name.—Esp., Titus Terrasidius, a military tribune in Caesar’s army.

terrēnus, -a, -um, [terra- (as if terrē-) + nus], adj., of earth.

terreō, terrēre, terruit, territus, [†terra- (?)], 2. v. a., frighten, alarm, frighten off, deter.

tertius, -a, -um, [prob. tri- + iuS], num. adj., third (in order); pars (one-third).

testamentum, -i, [testā- (witnesS) + mentum], N., a will.

 testimōniun, -i, [testi- + moniun], N., proof, evidence.

 testis, -is, [?], c., a witness.

testūdō, -inis, [†testu- (akin to testa, tile) + do], F., a tortoise.—Esp., a covered column (made by lapping the shields of one rank over those of another).—Also, a shelter (a small roof over attacking soldiers).

Teutomatus, -i, [Celtic], m., a king of the Nitiobriges.

Teutones, -um, (-i, -örum), [Teu-tonic], m. plur., a great German people in Jutland who overran Gaul in B.C. 113 along with the Cimbri. They were defeated by Marius in B.C. 102 at Aquae Sextiae (Aix).

tignum, -i, [?], N., a log, a timber, a pile.

Tigurinus, -a, -um, [Celtic], adj., of the Tigurini.—m. pl., the Tigu-rini, a canton or division of the Helvetii.

timeō, -ère, -uf, no p. p., [†timō- (cf. timidus)], 2. v. a. and n., be afraid, fear.—With dat., be anxious for, be anxious about: nihil (have nothing to fear); timentes, as noun, the timid, the fearful.

timidē [old case-form of timidus], adv., with timidity: non timide, fearlessly.

timidus, -a, -um, [†timō- (cf. timeo) + or], m., alarm, fear, dread.

Titūrius, -i, [?], m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., Quintus Titu-rius Sabinus, a legatus of Caesar.

Titus, -i, [?], m., a Roman pra-nomen.

tolerō, -äre, -āvī, -ātus, [†toler- (tol + us)], 1. v. a. and n., (raise up), bear, endure, hold out, support: famem (keep from starvation).

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, [TOL], 3. v. a., raise, carry, carry off.

Hence, remove, take away, destroy: conloquium (break off).—Esp., sub- lātus, -a, -um, p. p., elated.

Tolōsa, -ae, [Celtic], F., Toulouse, a city of the Volcae Tectosages.

Tolōsātēs, -ium, [Tolosa- + tis], m. plur., the people of Toulouse.

tormentum, -i, [torqu + mentum], N., (means of twisting), torture.—Also, an engine (for throwing missiles by twisted ropes). Hence, a shot from an engine, a missile.

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostus,
tränos, -täis, [tranquillōs + tās], F., stillness, calm.
trāns [?], akin to terebra, auger], adv. (in comp.) and prep. with acc., across, over. Hence, on the other side of. — In comp., over, across, through.
Trānsalpinus, -a, -um, [trans-Alpes + inus], adj., Transalpine (lying beyond the Alps from Rome).
trānsducē, see traduco.
trānseō, -ēre, -ērē, -ērus, [trans-eō], irr. v. a. and n., go across, cross, pass over, go over, pass through, pass, migrate, pass by.
trānsferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, [trans-fero], irr. v. a., carry over, transfer, change the place of: ad se bellum (direct against, transferring from somewhere else).
trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus, [trans-figo], 3. v. a., pierce through.
trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossa, [trans-fodo], 3. v. a., dig through. — Also, pierce through, wound (by stabbing).
trānsgredior, -gredi, -gressus, [trans-gradior], 3. v. dep., step across, step over, cross.
trānsgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of transgredior.
trānsitus, -tūs, [trans-itus, cf. transeo], M., a crossing: difficult transitus, of difficult passage, difficult to cross.
trānslātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transfero.
trānsmarinus, -a, -um, [transmare (sea) + inus], adj., foreign.
transmissus, -īs, [trans-missus, cf. transmitto], M., a crossing, a distance across: pari spatio transmissus, with a passage of the same length.

transmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of transmitto.

transmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [trans-mitto], 3. v. a., send over.

transportātus, -a, -um, p. p. of transporto.

transportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [transporto], I. v. a., bring over (with two accusatives), transport, carry over: milites navibus transportari (were crossing, being taken over).

Trānsrhenānus, -a, -um, [trans-Rhenum + anus], adj., living across the Rhine.—Plur. as noun, the people across the Rhine.

transstrum, -ī, [trans (trant-) + trum], N., a thwart, cross-beam.

transversus, -a, -um, [p. p. of transverto], as adj., across, athwart, oblique, transverse: fossa (a cross-ditch).

Trebius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name.—See Gallus.

Trebonius, -ī, [?], M., a Roman gentile name.—Esp., Gaius Trebonius: 1, a Roman knight; 2, a legatus in Cæsar’s army.

trecenti, -ae, -a, [tri-centum], num. adj., three hundred.

tredécim [tres-decem], indecl. num. adj., thirteen.

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [trepido-], I. v. n., bustle about, hurry; totis trepidatur castris, there is a bustle throughout the camp.

très, tria, gen. trium, [st. tri-], num. adj., three.

Treverī (-virī), -ōrum, [Celtic], M. plur., a people in Gaul, originally German, on the Moselle. Sing., Trevir.

Triboces, -um (-ī, -ōrum), [Celtic], M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine, about Strasburg.

tribūnus, -ī, [tribu-+ nus], M., (a chief of a tribe). With or without plebis, a tribune (one of several magistrates elected in the assembly of the plebs voting by tribes, to watch over the interests of the commons).—With militum or mili- taris, a tribune of the soldiers, a military tribune.

tribuō, -uere, -uī, -uitus, [tribu-], 3. v. a., (distribute by tribes), distribute. Hence, grant, render, assign, attribute: tantum dignitatis (pay such respect); magnopere virtuti (attribute it so very much to valor); rei publicae (grant out of regard to); plus libertati (have more regard for).

tribūtum, -ī, [N. p. p. of tribuo], N., a tribute.

triduum, -ī, [tri- + st. akin to dies, cf. biduum], N., three days’ time, three days.

triennium, -ī, [trienni- (tri-annus) + ium], N., three years.

trigintā, indecl. num. adj., thirty.

trīnī, -ae, -a, [tri- + nus], distrib. num. adj., three each, three sets of, three (of things in sets).

Trinobantes, -um, [Celtic], M. plur., a people of southern Britain, in the region of Colchester.

tripartītus (tripert-), -a, -um,
triplex I 54 tuus

[tri-partitus, p. p. of partio], adj., divided in three. — Esp., tripartitō, abl. as adv., in three divisions.

triplex, -icus, [tri-plex (PLIC as st.)], adj., threefold: acies (in three divisions or lines), triple.

triquetrus, -a, -um, [tri-queturus (quattuor), cf. "three-square"], adj., three-cornered, triangular.

tristis, -e, [unc. root + tis], adj., sad, gloomy, dejected.

tristitia, -ae, [tristi- + tia], F., sadness, a gloomy state (of mind).

truncus, -i, [?] M., a trunk.

tū, tūi, [TVA], plur. vōs [VA], pron. 2d person, you (sing.), you (plur.).

tuba, -ae, [?], F., a trumpet (a straight instrument for infantry).

tueor, tuērī, tūtus (tuītus), [?], 2. v. dep., watch, guard, protect. See also tūtus.

tuli, perf. of fero.

Tulingi, -orum, [Teutonic], M. plur., a German tribe.

Tullius, -i, [Tullo- + ius], M., a Roman gentile name. — See Cicero.

Tullus, -i, [?] M., a Roman family name. — See Volcatius.

tum [prob. acc. of TA], adv., then (at a time indicated by the context), at this time: cum . . . tum, see cum; tum vero (then, with emphasis, of the decisive point of a narrative); tum maxime, just then, but especially.

tumultuor, -ārī, -ātus, [tumultu-], 1. v. dep., make an uproar. — As impersonal, there is an uproar.

tumultuōsē [old case-form of tumultuosus], adv., with disorder, noisily.

tumultus, -tūs, [tumulō- (perh. reduced) + tus], M., (a swelling, an uprising?), an uproar, confusion, a commotion. — Esp., an uprising, a commotion (of revolt, or a war not regularly declared). — See servilis.

tumulus, -ī, [†tumū- (whence tumeo, swell) + ius], M., (a swelling?), a hill, a mound.

tunc [tum-ce, cf. hic], adj., just then, then, at that time.

turma, -ae, [TUR (cf. turba, turbo) + ma], F., (a throng?), a squadron, a troop (of horse, consisting of thirty men).

Turones, -um (-ī, -ōrum), [Celtic], M. plur., a tribe of Gaul on the Loire. Their city became afterwards Tours.

turpis, -e, [?], adj., ugly (in appearance). Hence, unbecoming, disgraceful, base, dishonorable.

turpiter [turpi- + ter], adv., dishonestly: turpiter factum, an inglorious deed.

turpitudō, -inis, [turpi- + tudo], F., baseness. Hence, disgrace.

turris, -is, [?], F., a tower.

tūtē [old case-form of tutus], adv., safely, with safety.

tūtus, -a, -um, [p. p. of tueor], as adj., protected, safe, secure: victis nihil tutum, no safety for the conquered. — tūtō, abl. as adv., in safety, safely.

tuus, -a, -um, [TVA + ius], adj pron., your, yours.
ubi [supposed to be quō (dat. of quō-)+ bi], adv., where, in which: ibi ubi, in the place where.—Also, of time, when: ubi primum, as soon as.

Ubiī, -ōrum, [Teutonic], m. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine, opposite Cologne, near which city they were afterwards settled.

ubi [ubi-que, cf. quisque], adv., everywhere, anywhere.

ubique, ubique, ubi, ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus, [?], 3. v. dep., punish (an injury, or the doer), avenge (an injury), take vengeance (absolutely).

ullus, -a, -um; gen. -i us, [unō-+lus], adj., a single (with negatives), any.—As noun (less common), wybody, any one.

ulterior, -us, -ōris, [comp. of ulterior, cf. ultra], adj., farther, more remote: ulteriora, those farther off. — Superl., ultimus, -a, -um, [ul-+timus], farthest: ultimi, those in the rear.

ultra [unc. case, perh. instr., of tulter], adv. and prep. with acc., beyond.

ultrō [dat. of tulter (us)], adv., to the farther side, beyond: ultrō citroque, this way and that, back and forth.—Esp. beyond what is expected or required, voluntarily, without provocation, freely, besides: sibi par cere cogi (in spite of himself); ad se venire (without his asking it).

ultus, -a, -um, p. p. of ulciscor.

ululātus, -tūs, [ululā- (yell)+tus], m., a yell, a loud cry.

umerus, -i, [?], M., the shoulder.

umquam (unquam), [supposed to be for cum-quam (cf. quisquam)], adv. (with neg.), ever: neque . . . umquam, and never.

ūnā, [instr. (or abl.?) of unus], adv., together, along with them, etc., at the same time, in the same place also.

unde [supposed to be for †cunde (cum, cf. umquam, + de, cf. inde)], adv., whence, from which.

undecim [unus-decem], indecl. num. adj., eleven.

undecimus, -a, -um, [unus-decumus], num. adj., eleventh.

undique [unde-que, cf. quiisque], adv., from every side, from all quarters. —Also (cf. ab), on every side.

universus, -a, -um, [unō-versus], adj., all together, all (in a mass), entire.

ūnus, -a, -um; gen. -i us, [?], old oenus], adj., one, a single, the same, alone (as adv.): una celeritate (alone); unum se esse, that he was the only one; ad unum, to a man.

urbānus, -a, -um, [urbi- (reduced) + anus], adj., of a city. —Esp., of the city (Rome), in the city.

urbs, urbis, [?], F., a city. —Esp., the city (Rome).


ūrus, -i, [Teutonic], m., a wild ox.

Usipetes, -um, [Teutonic], m. pl., a German tribe who migrated from eastern Germany to the lower Rhine.
üsitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of usit- or.

üsitor, -ārī, -ātus, [tusitō- (as if p. p. of tusō, freq. of utor)], m. v. dep., practise. — üsitātus, -a, -um, p. p. in pass. sense, used, practised, customary, much practised.

úsque [unc. case of quō (cf. usquam) -que (cf. quisque)], adv., everywhere, all the way, even to, to that degree (with eo ut), all the time, till, even till.

úsus, -a, -um, p. p. of útor.

úsus, -ūs, [ut (in utor) + tus], m., use, practice, experience. Hence, advantage, service. — Esp.: usus est, it is necessary, there is need, is necessary (with personal subject); also, ex usu, usui, of advantage, of service, advantageous, to the advantage; usu venire, happen, occur, turn out, come to pass (on trial, in practice); usum navium eripi, be deprived of all use of the ships; quae sunt usui, which are serviceable, are needed, are of use.

ut (utī), [supposed to be for quoti (quō- + ti?)], adv. and conj.: a. Interrog., how? — b. Rel., as, so as, when, inasmuch as, considering that it was. — Esp. with subjv., that, in order that, to, so that, so as to, although, granting that. — Often with object-clause compressed in Eng. into some other form of speech: poenam ut, etc. (of being), etc.; id facere ut, do this, namely. — Esp.: ut semel, when once, as soon as; timere ut, fear that not; ut quisque est . . . ita (in proportion as).

uter, -tra, -trum; gen. trius [quō (cf. ubi) + terus (reduced), cf. alter], adj.: a. Interrog., which (of two)? : uter utri, which to the other. — b. Relative, whichever (of two), the one who (of two). — Neut., utrum, adv., (of which the two), whether.

uterque, utra-, utrum; gen. utrius-, [uter-que, cf. quisque], adj., both: medium utriusque, between the two. — Plur., of sets: utraque castra, both camps; utrique, both parties. — Rarely of single things: utraque, both women.

uti, see ut.

ūtilis, -e, [tutī- (st. akin to utor) + is], adj., useful, of use, helpful.

ūtilītās, -tātis, [utili- + tas], f., advantage, benefit, service.

ūtor, ētī, īsus, [?, old oetor, akin to aveo?], 3. v. dep., avail one's self of, use, exercise, practise, enjoy, adopt, employ, have (in sense of enjoy or employ), possess, show (qualities which one exercises), occupy (a town), navigate (a sea): pace (remain at peace). — Esp. with two nouns, employ as, have as, and the like: aliquo adiutore (have one's services). — usus, p. p., often merely with.

utrimque [unc. case of uter (cf. interim) + que (cf. quisque)], adv., on both sides.

utrum, see uter.

uxor, -ōris, [?], f., a wife.
V, for quinque, five.

Vacalus, -ī, [?], m., the west branch of the Rhine, at its mouth.

vacātīō, -onis, [vacā- + tio], f., freedom (from something), exemption, immunity.

vacō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, [prob. vacō- (cf. vacuus)], i. v. n., be vacant, be free from, be unoccupied, lie waste.

vacuus, -a, -um, [prob. vac (empty) + vus], adj., free, unoccupied, vacant, destitute of (ab or abl.).

vadum, -ī, [VAD (in vado, go) + um], n., a ford.—Plur., a ford, shoals, shallows: vado, by fording.

vagātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vagor.

vāgīna, -ae, [?], f., a sheath.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus, [vagō-, roving], i. v. dep., roam about, roam, wander.

valeō, valēre, valui, valitūrus, [?], prob. denominative, cf. validus, strong], 2. v. n., be strong, have weight, have influence, be powerful.

—Often with N. pron. or adj. as cog. acc.: plurimum valere, be very strong, have great weight, have great influence; minus valet, is not very strong; quicquid possunt pedestribus copiis valent, whatever strength they have is in infantry; tantum valebat, had such weight; pudor valet, self-respect controls.

Valerius, -ī, [akin to valeo], m., a Roman gentile name.—Esp.: 1. Gaius Valerius Flæcus, propraetor in Gaul, B.C. 83.—2. Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, a legatus under some unknown propraetor in Gaul.

He was defeated and killed in Aquitania.—3. Gaius Valerius Caburus, a Gaul who received the Roman citizenship prob. from No. 1.—4. Gaius Valerius Procillus, and (5) Gaius Valerius Donnatorius, sons of No. 3, who fought for Caesar in the war against Vercingetorix.

Valetūcas, -ī, [?], m., a noble of the Hædui.

valētūdō, -inis, [prob. valent- + tudo], f., health.—Also, ill health.

vallēs, -is, [?], f., a valley.

vāllum, -ī, [N. of vallus], n., a palisade, a rampart (the regular fortification of the Romans, made of stakes and built up with earth), a wall.

vāllus, -ī, [?], m., a stake.

Vangiones, -um, [Teutonic], m. plur., a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine, about modern Worms.

varietās, -tātis, [variō- + tas], F., diversity, variety: pellium (different colors).

varius, -a, -um, [prob. akin to vārus, bent], adj., various, diverse.

vāstātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vasto.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [vastō-], i. v. a., lay waste, devastate, ravage.

vāstus, -a, -um, [?], adj., waste.—Also, immense, vast.

vāticinātiō, -onis, [vaticinā- (foretell) + tio], f., divination.

-vē [?], conj. enclit., or.

vectīgal, -ālis, [N. of vectīgalis], n., an impost, tribute.—Plur., revenues (of a state).
vectigālis, -e, [†vectigō- (vectis, akin to veho, + unc. term., cf. castigo) + alis], adj., tributary: vectigalis habent, make tributary.

vectōrius, -a, -um, [vector- (cf. veho, carry) + ius], adj., carrying: navigia (transports).

vehementer [vehement- (violent) + ter], adv., violently, severely, strongly, hotly, exceedingly.

vel [prob. imperat. of volo, wish], conj., or: vel ... vel, either ... or. — As adv., even.

Velānius, -ī, [?], m., a Roman gentile name. — Esp., Quintus Velanius, a tribune of the soldiers in Caesar's army.

Veliocassēs, -ium, (-ī, -ōrum), [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe of Normandy, about Rouen.

Vellaunodūnum, -ī, [Celtic], n., a town of the Senones.

Vellāvii, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a tribe of Gaul in the Cevennes mountains.

vēločītās, -tātis, [veloci- + tas], F., swiftness, fleetness, speed.

vēloctēr [veloci- + ter], adv., swiftly, quickly.

vēlōx, -ōcis, [st. akin to volo (cf. colonus) + cus (reduced?)], adj., swift, quick.

vēllum, -ī, [?], cf. vexillum], n., a curtain, a veil. — Also, a sail.

velut [vel-ut], adv., even as, just as: velut si, just as if; as if, no less than if.

vēnātīō, -ōnis, [venā- (hunt) + tio], F., hunting, the chase. — Plur., hunting, hunting excursions.

vēnātōr, -ōris, [venā- (hunt) + tor], m., a hunter.

vēndō, -dere, -dī, -ditus, [venum do], 3. v. a., put to sale, sell.

Venellī (Unellī), -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul in modern Normandy.

Venetī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a tribe of Gaul in modern Brittany.

Venetia, -ae, [venētō- + ia (f. of -ius)], F., the territory of the Veneti.

Veneticus, -a, -um, [Venētō- + cus], adj., of the Veneti.

venia, -ae, [?], F., indulgence, favor, pardon: petentibus veniam dare, grant their request.

veniō, venire, vēnī, ventūrus, [gam (for gvenio)], 4. v. n., come, go: in spem (have hopes). — See also usu.

ventītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [as if ventiō- (from vento, old freq. of venio)], i. v. n., come often, visit.

ventus, -ī, [?], m., the wind: vento se dare, run before the wind.

vēr, vēris, [for †vasar, vas, burn], N., spring.

Veragri, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pi., a Gallic people of the Alps, on the upper Rhone.

Verbigenus, -ī, [Celtic], m., a canton of the Helvetii.

verbum, -ī, [?], cf. morbus], n., a word: pluribus verbis, at great length; animos verbis confirmavit (with encouraging words); facit verba, speak for, etc.; magna contumelia verborum, with most insulting words.

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, [Celtic], m., one of the Arverni, the uncle of Vercingetorix.

Vercingetorix, -īgis, [Celtic], m., a noble of the Arverni. Being
chosen king, he made a stout resistance to Cæsar, but was finally overpowered by the Romans and surrendered by his followers.

vereor, -ēri, -itus, [prob. †verō- (akin to wary)], 2. v. dep., fear, be afraid, dread.— veritus, p. p. in pres. sense, fearing.

vergō, -ere, no perf., no p. p. [?], 3. v. n., incline, slope, look towards (of an exposure), lie towards.

vergobretus, -īr, [Celtic], m., Celtic title of the chief magistrate among the Haedui.

vērīsimilis, -e, [veri similis], adj., (like the truth), probable, likely.

veritus, -a, -um, p. p. of vereor.

vērō [abl. of vērus], adv., in truth, in fact, certainly.— With weakened force, but, on the other hand, however.— Often untranslatable, expressing an intensive (emphatic) opposition, or pointing to the main time, circumstance, fact, or agent in a narrative.

versō, -āre, -āvī, -āitus, [versō-], 1. v. a., turn (this way and that), deal with (some one or some thing).— Esp. in pass. as dep., turn one's self, engage in, be, fight (as indicated by the context).

versus, -a, -um, p. p. of veto.

versus (versum), [orig. p. p. of veto], adv. and prep. with acc., towards, in the direction of: quoque versus (or as one word), in every direction, all about.

versus, -ūs, [vert + tus], m., a turning.— Esp., a verse (of poetry, where the rhythm turns and begins anew), a line.

Verticō, -onis, [Celtic], m., one of the Nervii.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, [vert], 3. v. a., turn : terga (turn and flee).

Verudoctius, -īr, [Celtic], m., a noble of the Helvetii.

vērus, -a, -um, [?; ver (in vereor) + us], adj., (seen, visible), true.— Neut. as noun, the truth: reperit esse vera, found the truth to be.— Also, just, right.— See .also vero.

verūtum, -īr, [veru (a spit) + tum], N., a spear (of a light kind), a dart.

Vesontiō, -onis, [Celtic], m., the chief town of the Sequani, now Besançon.

vesper, -ēri, [?], m., the evening.

vester, -tra, -trum, [ves- + ter (us)], poss. adj. pron., your, yours.

vestigium, -īr, [†vestigō- (cf. vestigo) + ium], N., the footprint, the footprint, a track.— Esp.: e vestigio, forthwith (from one's tracks ?); eodem vestigio, in the same spot; in illo vestigio temporis, at that instant of time.

vestiō, -ire, -ivi (ii), -itus, [vesti-], 4. v. a., clothe, cover.— Pass., cloth one's self with (with thing in abl.), wear.

vestis, -is, [ves (cover) + tis], F., clothing, garments.

vestitus, -tūs, [vesti- + tus], m., clothing, garments.

veterānus, -a, -um, [veterā- (as if st. of vetero) + nus], adj., veteran (long in service).

vetō, vetāre, vetūi, vetitus, [st. akin to vetus], 1. v. a., forbid.
Vetus, -eris, [?], adj., old, former, of long standing: milites (old soldiers, veterans).

Vexātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vexo.

Vēxillum, -ī, [?], apparently a dim. of velum], N., a flag: sub vexillo, in a detachment, without any signa, which were carried only in the regular corps.

Vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [†vexō- (as if p. p. of veho)], I. v. a., (carry this way and that), harass, annoy, commit depredations on, overrun (a country), ravage (lands).

Via, -ae, [for veha? (veh- + a)], F., a road, a way, a route, a march: tridui viam, three days' journey.

Viātor, -tōris, [†viā- (as st. of †vio) + tor], M., a traveller.

Viciēni, -ae, -a, [akin to viginti], distrib. num. adj., twenty (apiece).

Vicēsimus, -a, -um [akin to viginti], num. adj., twentieth.

Viciēs (-ēns), [akin to viginti], num. adv., twenty times: vices centum milia passuum, two thousand miles.

Viciinitās, -tātis, [vicinō- (neighbor- ing) + tas], F., neighborhood, vicinity. — Plur., neighbors.

Vicas, gen. (nom. not found), change, turn: in vicem, in turn.

Victima, -ae, [akin to vinco, perh. going back to the sacrifice of prisoners], F., a victim, a sacrifice.

Victor, -tōris, [vic (in vinco) + tor], M., a victor. — Often as adj., victorious, triumphant.

Victōria, -ae, [victor- + ia], F., victory, success (in war).

Victus, -a, -um, p. p. of vinco.

Vicitus, -tūs, [VIG (?), (cf. vixi) + tus], M., living, life. — Also, means of living, food: domus victusque, intercourse, life in common.

Vīcus, -i, [Vic (enter) + us], M., (a dwelling), a village (a collection of dwellings).

Vidēō, vidère, vīdī, vīsus, [vid, perh. through a noun-st.], 2. v. a., see, observe, examine (reconnoitre), take care (see that). — In pass., be seen, appear, seem, seem best.

Vienne, -ae, [Celtic], F., a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone, now Vienne.

Vigilia, -ae, [vigil- (awake) + ia], F., a watch, watching. The Romans divided the night into four watches, and reckoned the time thereby.

Viginti [dvi- (st. of duo) + form akin to centum (perh. the same)], indecl. num. adj., twenty.

Vīmen, -inis, [root (or st.) vi (twine) + men], N., a twig (flexible, for weaving), osier.

Vincō, vincire, vinxi, vinctus, [perh. akin to vinco], 4. v. a., bind, fetter.

Vincō, vincere, vici, victus, [Vic], 3. v. a. and n., conquer, defeat, prevail: naturam (outdo).

Vinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of vincio.

Vinculum (vinculum), -ī, [†vincō- (st. akin to vincio, perh. primitive of it) + lum (N. of lus)], N., a chain: ex vinculis, in chains, see ex: in vincula, into prison, into confinement.

Vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -atūs, [vindic- , defender], 1. v. a., claim, claim one's rights against, defend: in aliquem (punish); Galliam in libertatem
(establish the liberty of, a phrase derived from the formal defence of freedom in a Roman court).

**vinea, ae [vīnō + ea (f. of -eus)], f., a vineyard, a vine arbor. Hence, / a shed (defence, for a besieging party, made like an arbor).**

**vinum, -ī, [?], N., wine.**

**violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [?], i. v. a., abuse, violate (a sacred object), lay waste: hospites (injure, a guest being held sacred).**

**vir, virī, [?], m., a man, a husband.**

**vīrēs, see vis.**

**vīrgō, -inis, [?], f., a maiden, a maid, a virgin.**

**vīrgultum, -ī, [†vīrgula- (?) + tum, cf. tumultus], n., only in pl., shrubbery, a thicket, bushes (cut for military purposes).**

**Viridomārus, -ī, [Celtic], m., a noble of the Hædui.**

**Viridovīx, -īcis, [Celtic], m., a prince of the Venelli.**

**vīrītim [vir + itim, as if acc. of verbal in -tis], adv., man by man (of distribution), to each individual.**

**Viromandum, -īrum, [Celtic], m. plur., a Gallic tribe in modern Picardy.**

**vīrtūs, -tūtis, [vīrō- (reduced) + tus], f., manliness, valor, prowess, courage. — Also, merit (generally), noble conduct, virtue: vīrtūs (with gen.), thanks to. — Plur., vīrtūs, merits, good qualities.**

**vis, vīs (?), [?], f., force, might, violence. — Esp.: vi cogere (forcibly); vīm facere, use violence; vīm hostium prohibere (violent attack); vi fluminis oppressi, overcome by the violent current. — Plur., strength, force, powers, bodily vigor.**

**visor, -s, -um, p. p. of video.**

**vīta, -ae, [root of vivo + ta], f., life, the course of life.**

**vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [? vita-?], i. v. a., (escape with life, live through?), escape, avoid, dodge.**

**vītrum, -ī, [?], n., woad (a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue).**

**vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctus, [vic (vigor?), cf. victus], 3. v. n., live: lacte (live on).**

**vīvus, -a, -um, [vigor (?) + us], adj., alive, living.**

**vix [poss. vic (in vincō)], adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely, barely. — Also, of time, hardly (... when).**

**Vocātēs, -īum, [Celtic], m. plur., a people of Aquitania, on the Garonne.**

**Vocciō, -onis, [Celtic], m., a king of Noricum.**

** vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [voc- (st. of vox)], i. v. a., call by name, call, summon, invite.**

**Vocontiī, -ōrum, [Celtic], m. pl., a tribe between the Isère and the Durance.**

**Volcae, -ārum, [Celtic], m. plur., a people of Gaul in the Roman province. — See Tectosages and Arecomici.**

**Volcānus (Vul-), -ī, [?], M., Vulcan (the god of fire and metals).**

**Volcātius, -ī, [?], m., a Roman genteil name. — Esp., Gaius Volcatius Tullius, a young man in Cesar’s suite.**

**volgus (vul-), -ī, [volg (press) + us], N., the crowd, the common people, the mass: in volgus efferri,
be spread abroad; militum (the common soldiers, the army).—vol-
gō, abl. as adv., commonly, generally, everywhere.

volnerātus, -a, -um, p. p. of vol-
nero.

volnerō (vul-), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, [volner-], i. v. a., wound, hurt.

volnus (vul-), -eris, [prob. akin to vello, pluck], N., a wound.
volō, velle, voluī, [vol-], irr. v. a. and n., wish, be willing, want:
velle aliquem aliquid, want one for anything, want anything of one;
quid sibi vellent, what they wanted, or meant, or intended to do, what business they had.

voltus (vul-), -tūs, [vol + tūs], m., (wish, expression of counte-
nance), look, countenance, face: vol-
tūs fingere, compose one's counte-
nance, conceal one's feelings; alicuius
voltum ferre, dare to look in one's face.

voluntārius, -a, -um, [volent- (p. of volo) + arius], adj., voluntary.
— As noun, a volunteer.

voluntās, -tātis, [volent- (p. of volo) + tas], F., willingness, good-
will, consent, desire, will, approval, an inclination: voluntates alienare
(good-will).

voluptās, -tātis, [volup- (akin to volo) + tas], F., pleasure, delight.
Volusēnus, -ī, [?], m., a Roman family name.—Esp., Gaius Volus-
enus Quadratus, a military tribune in Cæsar's army.

Vorēnus, -ī, [?], m., a Roman family name.—Esp., Lucius Vore-
nus, a centurion of Cæsar's army.
vōs, see tu.

Vosegus, -ī, [Celtic], m., the Vosges Mountains, running norther-
ly from the Jura along the Rhine.

voveō, vovere, vōvī, vōtus, [?], 2. v. a., vow, make a vow.

vōx, vōcis, [voc as st.], F., a voice, a word, an expression, a shout.
—Collectively, cries, words, talk.—
Plur., talk, reports: nulla vox au-
dita (not a word); militum vocibus
carpi (taunts); concursu ac vocibus
cogi (outcries).

X, for decem, ten.

XX, for viginti, twenty.